



KM-3050

KM-4050

KM-5050

SERVICE MANUAL



Published in April 2008
842GN119
2GNSM069
Rev. 9

CAUTION

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

ATTENTION

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACÉE PAR UN MODÈLE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISÉES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNÉES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

Revision history

Revision	Date	Replaced pages	Remarks
1	November 10, 2006	CONTENTS, 1-1-1 to 1-1-3, 1-1-5, 1-2-2, 1-2-4 to 6, 1-2-9 to 1-2-12, 1-3-5 to 1-3-102, 1-4-1, 1-4-2, 1-4-6, 1-4-7, 1-4-22, 1-4-25, 1-4-28, 1-4-31, 1-4-32, 1-4-35 to 37, 1-4-57 to 60, 1-5-4 to 8, 1-5-16, 1-5-19, 1-5-23, 1-5-25 to 1-5-40, 1-6-1 to 1-6-4, 2-1-1, 2-1-4, 2-1-10, 2-1-13, 2-1-15, 2-2-4, 2-2-6, 2-3-1, 2-3-2, 2-3-8, 2-3-11, 2-3-13 to 2-3-16, 2-4-1 to 2-4-6	-
2	January 26, 2007	CONTENTS, 1-1-2, 1-1-5, 1-2-3, 1-2-4, 1-2-11, 1-3-5, 1-3-6, 1-3-8, 1-3-9, 1-3-11 to 1-3-14, 1-3-16 to 1-3-19, 1-3-24, 1-3-32, 1-3-49, 1-3-50, 1-3-52 to 1-3-55, 1-3-60, 1-3-65, 1-3-67, 1-3-72 to 1-3-77, 1-3-82 to 1-3-102, 1-4-6, 1-4-9, 1-4-12, 1-4-14, 1-4-15, 1-4-20, 1-4-24, 1-4-40, 1-4-41, 1-4-51, 1-5-13, 1-5-22, 1-5-40, 2-2-1, 2-2-4, 2-3-10, 2-3-12, 2-3-16, 2-4-9	-
3	March 2, 2007	CONTENTS, 1-1-2 to 1-1-4, 1-3-3, 1-3-6, 1-3-41, 1-3-63, 1-3-71, 1-3-85, 1-4-22, 1-4-32, 1-4-43, 2-4-1, 2-4-2	-
4	March 16, 2007	1-3-76	-
5	May 7, 2007	1-3-2, 1-3-5, 1-3-21 to 1-3-23, 1-3-36, 1-3-68, 1-3-70, 1-3-71, 1-3-73, 1-3-74, 1-3-83, 1-4-5, 1-4-15, 1-4-17 to 1-4-21, 1-5-20	-
6	August 31, 2007	CONTENTS, 1-2-1, 1-2-11, 1-2-12, 1-3-7, 1-3-21, 1-3-24, 1-3-25, 1-3-35, 1-3-36, 1-3-39, 1-3-51, 1-3-63, 1-3-68 to 1-3-70, 1-3-85, 1-4-1, 1-4-15, 1-4-22 to 1-4-24, 1-4-43, 1-5-23, 2-3-5	-
7	November 30, 2007	CONTENTS, 1-1-1 to 1-1-3, 1-2-4, 1-3-3 to 1-3-6, 1-3-8 to 1-3-10, 1-3-48 to 1-3-50, 1-3-76, 1-3-77, 1-3-81 to 1-3-105, 1-6-1, 2-4-1, 2-4-2	-
8	April 1, 2008	CONTENTS, 1-1-2, 1-2-13, 1-5-2	-
9	April 25, 2008	1-5-25	-


This page is intentionally left blank.


Safety precautions


This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

Safety warnings and precautions


Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

 **DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

Symbols

The triangle () symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.



General warning.



Warning of risk of electric shock.



Warning of high temperature.

 indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.



General prohibited action.



Disassembly prohibited.

 indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.



General action required.





Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.





Always ground the copier.

1. Installation Precautions


WARNING



- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current. 
- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities. 


CAUTION:


- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury. 
- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock. 
- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material.

This may cause fire. 

- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance. 











- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it. 
- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury. 

- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention. 





- Advise customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook. 

2.Precautions for Maintenance

WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. 
- Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. 
- Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. 
- Always use parts having the correct specifications. 
- Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. 
- When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. 
- Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. 
- Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. 
- Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. 
- Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. 

CAUTION

- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. 
- Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. 
- Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. 
- Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. 

• Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement.



• Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself.



• Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item.



• Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks.



• Remove toner completely from electronic components.



• Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged.



• After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws.



• Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary.



• Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below:



- Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.
- Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.
- Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the power switch on.
- Always wash hands afterwards.

• Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc.



• Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately.



3.Miscellaneous

WARNING

• Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas.



This page is intentionally left blank.

CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications

1-1-1 Specifications	1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names	1-1-4
(1) Machine	1-1-4
(2) Operation panel	1-1-5
1-1-3 Machine cross section	1-1-6

1-2 Installation

1-2-1 Installation environment	1-2-1
1-2-2 Unpacking and installation	1-2-2
(1) Installation procedure	1-2-2
(2) Setting initial copy modes	1-2-10
1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option)	1-2-11
1-2-4 Installing the expanded memory (option)	1-2-13

1-3 Maintenance Mode

1-3-1 Maintenance mode	1-3-1
(1) Executing a maintenance item	1-3-1
(2) Maintenance modes item list	1-3-2
(3) Contents of the maintenance mode items	1-3-6
1-3-2 User management	1-3-90
(1) Using the user management mode	1-3-90
(2) Common settings	1-3-91
(3) Copy settings	1-3-95
(4) Sending settings	1-3-96
(5) Document box/Removable memory settings	1-3-96
(6) Printer settings	1-3-97
(7) Network setup	1-3-99
(8) Printing reports/Sending notice	1-3-99
(9) Adjustment/Maintenance	1-3-100
(10) Date/Timer	1-3-101
(11) Editing Destination (Address Book/Adding One-Touch Keys)	1-3-102
(12) Restarting the system/Connecting the PC	1-3-103
(13) User login administration	1-3-103
(14) Job accounting	1-3-104

1-4 Troubleshooting

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection	1-4-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication	1-4-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions	1-4-2
(3) Paper misfeeds	1-4-11
1-4-2 Self-diagnosis	1-4-22
(1) Self-diagnostic function	1-4-22
(2) Self diagnostic codes	1-4-23
1-4-3 Image formation problems	1-4-44
(1) No image appears (entirely white)	1-4-45
(2) No image appears (entirely black)	1-4-45
(3) Image is too light	1-4-46
(4) Background is visible	1-4-46
(5) A white line appears longitudinally	1-4-46
(6) A black line appears longitudinally	1-4-47
(7) A black line appears laterally	1-4-47
(8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other	1-4-47
(9) Black dots appear on the image	1-4-47
(10) Image is blurred	1-4-48
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original	1-4-48
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original	1-4-48
(13) Paper creases	1-4-48
(14) Offset occurs	1-4-49

(15) Image is partly missing.....	1-4-49
(16) Fusing is poor.....	1-4-49
(17) Image is out of focus.....	1-4-49
(18) Image center does not align with the original center.....	1-4-50
(19) Image is not square.....	1-4-50
1-4-4 Electric problems.....	1-4-51
1-4-5 Mechanical problems.....	1-4-55
1-4-6 Send error code.....	1-4-57
(1) Scan to SMB error codes.....	1-4-57
(2) Scan to FTP error codes.....	1-4-58
(3) Scan to E-mail error codes.....	1-4-59
(4) Network Twain error codes.....	1-4-60
(5) Software trouble error codes.....	1-4-60

1-5 Assembly and Disassembly

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly.....	1-5-1
(1) Precautions.....	1-5-1
(2) Drum.....	1-5-1
(3) Toner.....	1-5-1
(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container.....	1-5-2
1-5-2 Paper feed section.....	1-5-3
(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.....	1-5-3
(2) Detaching and refitting the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys.....	1-5-5
(3) Detaching and refitting the left and right registration cleaner.....	1-5-10
1-5-3 Optical section.....	1-5-12
(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp.....	1-5-12
(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires.....	1-5-14
(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference).....	1-5-19
(4) Adjusting the position of the ISU (reference).....	1-5-21
(5) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit.....	1-5-22
(6) Adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit (reference).....	1-5-24
1-5-4 Drum section.....	1-5-25
(1) Detaching and refitting the drum unit.....	1-5-25
(2) Detaching and refitting the main charger unit.....	1-5-26
(3) Detaching and refitting the drum separation claws.....	1-5-27
1-5-5 Developing section.....	1-5-28
(1) Detaching and refitting the developing unit.....	1-5-28
1-5-6 Transfer section.....	1-5-29
(1) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller unit.....	1-5-29
1-5-7 Fuser section.....	1-5-30
(1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit.....	1-5-30
(2) Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws.....	1-5-31
(3) Detaching and refitting the press roller.....	1-5-32
(4) Detaching and refitting the fuser heater.....	1-5-33
(5) Detaching and refitting the heat roller.....	1-5-34
(6) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit thermistor 1 and 2.....	1-5-35
(7) Adjusting front position of the fuser unit (adjusting lateral squareness).....	1-5-36
1-5-8 Others.....	1-5-37
(1) Detaching and refitting the ozone filter 1 and 2.....	1-5-37
(2) Detaching and refitting the dust filter 1 and 2.....	1-5-38
(3) Detaching and refitting the hard disk.....	1-5-39

1-6 Requirements on PWB Replacement

1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware.....	1-6-1
1-6-2 Adjustment-free variable resistors (VR).....	1-6-1
1-6-3 Remarks on main PWB replacement.....	1-6-2
1-6-4 Remarks on engine PWB replacement.....	1-6-2
1-6-5 Remarks on scanner PWB replacement.....	1-6-3

2-1 Mechanical construction

2-1-1 Paper feed section	2-1-1
2-1-2 Main charging section	2-1-4
2-1-3 Optical section	2-1-5
(1) Original scanning.....	2-1-6
(2) Image printing.....	2-1-7
2-1-4 Developing section.....	2-1-10
(1) Single component developing system.....	2-1-12
2-1-5 Transfer and separation sections.....	2-1-13
2-1-6 Cleaning and charge erasing sections.....	2-1-14
2-1-7 Fuser section	2-1-15
2-1-8 Eject and switchback sections	2-1-16
2-1-9 Duplex section	2-1-17
(1) Paper conveying operation in duplex copying.....	2-1-18

2-2 Electrical Parts Layout

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout.....	2-2-1
(1) PWBs	2-2-1
(2) Switches and sensors	2-2-2
(3) Motors	2-2-4
(4) Other electrical components.....	2-2-5

2-3 Operation of the PWBs

2-3-1 Power source PWB.....	2-3-1
2-3-2 Engine PWB.....	2-3-5
2-3-3 Main operation unit PWB	2-3-13

2-4 Appendixes

Maintenance parts list.....	2-4-1
Maintenance kits	2-4-2
Periodic maintenance procedures	2-4-3
Chart of image adjustment procedures.....	2-4-7
General wiring diagram.....	2-4-9

INSTALLATION GUIDE

DOCUMENT PROCESSOR
PAPER FEEDER
3000 SHEETS PAPER FEEDER
DOCUMENT FINISHER
3000 SHEETS DOCUMENT FINISHER
CENTER-FOLDING UNIT
MAILBOX
HOLE PUNCH UNIT
BUILT-IN FINISHER
JOB SEPARATOR
FAX System (M)
Data Security Kit (C)
UG-30

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-1-1 Specifications

Type	Desktop
Copying method	Indirect electrostatic system
Supported original types	Sheets, books and three-dimensional objects
	Maximum original size: A3/Ledger
Original feed system	Fixed
Paper weight	Cassette: 60 - 105 g/m ² MP tray : 45 - 200 g/m ²
Paper type	Cassette: Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Rough, Letterhead, Color, Prepunched, High quality and Custom1 - 8 MP tray : Plain, Transparency, Preprinted, Labels, Bond, Recycled, Vellum, Rough, Letterhead, Color, Prepunched, Envelope, Cardstock, Thick paper, High quality and Custom1 - 8
Paper size	Cassette: Ledger, Legal, Oficio II, 8.5 x 13.5", Letter, LetterR, StatementR, A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Folio, 8K, 16K, 16KR MP tray : Ledger, Legal, Oficio II, 8.5 x 13.5", Letter, LetterR, Executive, StatementR, A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5(ISO), B5R, A5R, B6R, A6R, Oufuku Hagaki, Hagaki, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Comm.#10, Comm.#9, Comm.#6-3/4, Monarch, Youkei 2, Youkei 4, Folio, 8K, 16K, 16KR
Zoom level	Manual mode: 25 - 400%, 1% increment Auto copy mode: fixed ratios Metric 1:1 ± 1.0%, 1:4.00/1:2.00/1:1.41/1:1.22/1:1.15/1:0.86/1:0.81/1:0.70/1:0.50/1:0.25 Inch 1:1 ± 1.0%, 1:4.00/1:2.00/1:1.29/1:1.21/1:0.78/1:0.64/1:0.50/1:0.25
Copying speed	At 100% magnification in copy mode: [30 ppm model] A3/Ledger: 20 sheets/min. B4/Legal: 20 sheets/min. A4/Letter: 30 sheets/min. A4R/LetterR: 22 sheets/min. B5: 30 sheets/min. B5R: 20 sheets/min. A5R: 14 sheets/min. A6R: 16 sheets/min. [40 ppm model] A3/Ledger: 23 sheets/min. B4/Legal: 23 sheets/min. A4/Letter: 40 sheets/min. A4R/LetterR: 27 sheets/min. B5: 40 sheets/min. B5R: 22 sheets/min. A5R: 16 sheets/min. A6R: 18 sheets/min. [50 ppm model] A3/Ledger: 26 sheets/min. B4/Legal: 26 sheets/min. A4/Letter: 50 sheets/min. A4R/LetterR: 31 sheets/min. B5: 50 sheets/min. B5R: 24 sheets/min. A5R: 18 sheets/min. A6R: 18 sheets/min.
First copy time	3.9 s or less (30 ppm model) 3.5 s or less (40/50 ppm model)
Warm-up time	30 s (room temperature 22°C/71.6°F, 60% RH) Recovery from sleep mode: 15 s (room temperature 22°C/71.6°F, 60% RH)
Paper capacity	Cassette: 500 sheets (80 g/m ²) MP tray : 200 sheets (80 g/m ²)
Output tray capacity	Top tray : 250 sheets (80 g/m ²) 150 sheets (80 g/m ² , with built-in finisher)

Continuous copying	1 to 999 sheets
Light source	Inert gas lamp
Scanning system	Flat bed scanning by CCD image sensor
Photoconductor	a-Si (drum diameter 40 mm)
Image write system	Semiconductor laser
Charging system	Single positive corona charging
Developing system	Dry, reverse developing (single component system) Developer: 1-component, magnetism toner Toner replenishing: automatic from a toner container
Transfer system	Transfer roller
Separation system	Separation electrode
Cleaning system	Cleaning blade and roller
Charge erasing system	Exposure by cleaning lamp
Fusing system	Heat roller Heat source: halogen heaters Abnormally high temperature protection devices: thermostats
Memory	Standard 512 MB/Maximum 1024 MB
Hard disk	80 GB
Resolution	Scanning: 600 x 600 dpi Printing : 600 x 600 dpi (photo mode: 1800 dpi equivalent x 600 dpi)
Operating environment	Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F Humidity: 15 to 80% RH Altitude: 2500 m/8,202 ft maximum Brightness: 1500 lux maximum
Dimensions	599 (W) x 646 (D) x 745 (H) mm 23 9/16" (W) x 25 7/16" (D) x 29 5/16" (H)
Weight	Approx. 85 kg/187 lbs
Space required	753 (W) x 646 (D) mm 29 5/8" (W) x 25 7/16" (D)
Functions	Original size, Paper selection, Mixed sized originals, Original orientation, Collate/Off-set mode, Staple/Punch mode, Output destination, Zoom mode, Combine mode, Margin/Centering mode, Border erase, Booklet from sheets, Duplex, Cover mode, Form overlay, Page numbering, Memo mode, Density adjustment, Selection of image quality, EcoPrint mode, Batch scanning, Auto image rotation, Inverted copying, Mirror image, Job finish notice, File name, Priority override, Multi-page forms, Repeat copy, Programmed copying, Registering shortcuts
Power source	120 V AC, 60 Hz, 11.5 A 220 to 240 V AC, 50 Hz, 6.3 A
Options	Document processor, paper feeder, 3000-sheet paper feeder, document finisher, 3000-sheet document finisher, centerfold unit, mailbox, punch unit, built-in finisher, job separator, key counter, fax kit, security kit, fax backup kit, serial interface, upgrade kit and expanded memory

1-1-2 Parts names

(1) Machine

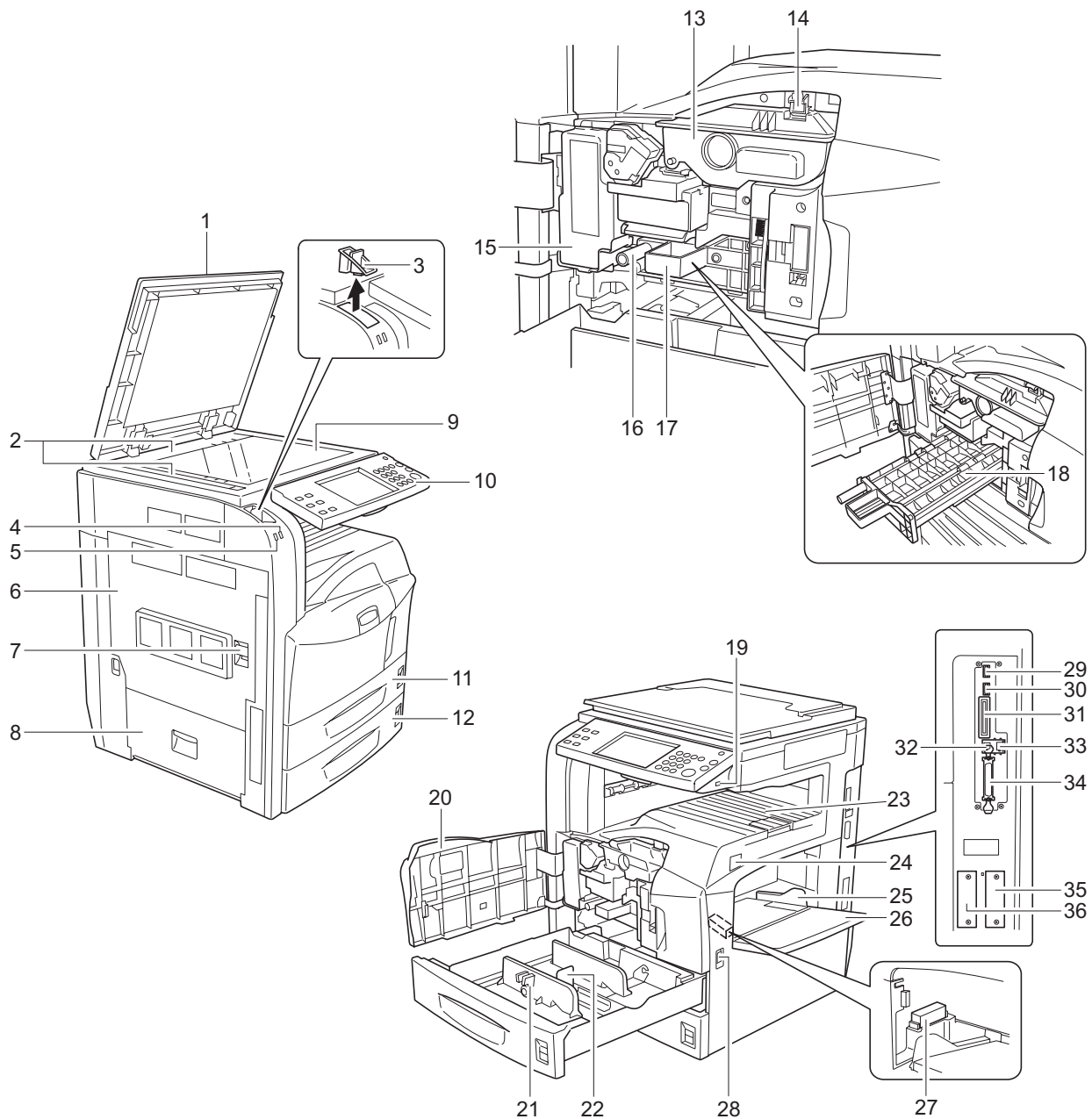
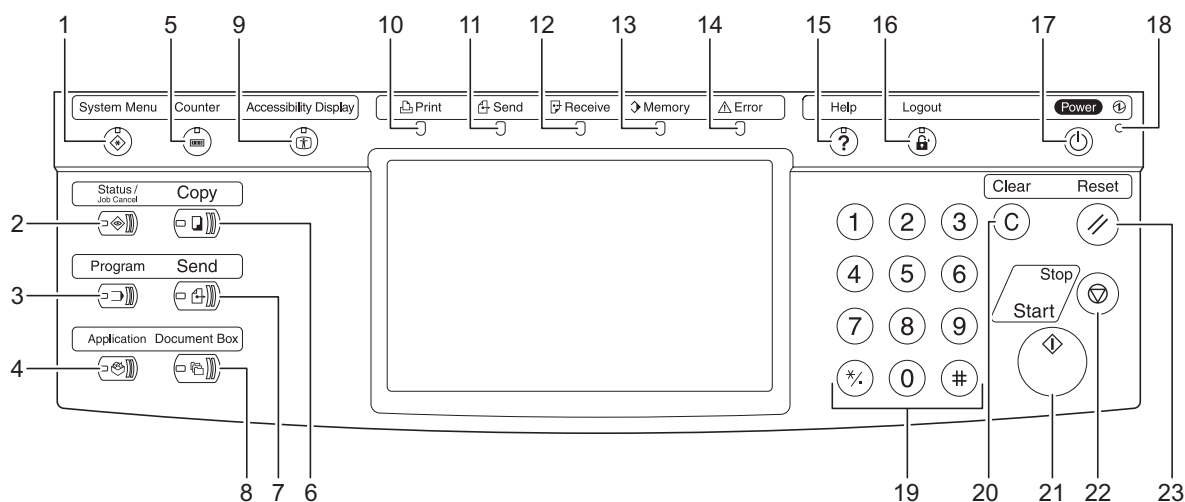


Figure 1-1-1

1. Original cover (Option)
2. Original size indicator plates
3. Clip holder
4. Reception indicator
5. Error indicator
6. Left cover 1
7. Left cover 1 Lever
8. Left cover 2
9. Platen
10. Operation panel
11. Cassette 1
12. Cassette 2

13. Toner container
14. Toner container stopper
15. Waste toner box
16. Green knob (A1)
17. Paper feed unit (A2)
18. Paper feed unit cover (A3)
19. USB memory slot (A1)
20. Front cover
21. Paper width adjusting tab
22. Length adjustment plate
23. Top tray
24. Main power switch

25. Paper width guides
26. Multi purpose tray
27. Memory card cover holder
28. Handles
29. USB memory slot (A2)
30. USB memory slot (A3)
31. Memory card slot
32. USB interface connector
33. Network interface connector
34. Parallel interface connector
35. Option interface slot (OPT1)
36. Option interface slot (OPT2)

(2) Operation panel**Figure 1-1-2**

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. System menu key/indicator | 13. Memory indicator |
| 2. Status/Job cancel key/indicator | 14. Error indicator |
| 3. Program key/indicator | 15. Help key/indicator |
| 4. Application key/indicator | 16. Logout key/indicator |
| 5. Counter key/indicator | 17. Power key |
| 6. Copy key/indicator | 18. Main power indicator |
| 7. Send key/indicator | 19. Numeric keys |
| 8. Document box key/indicator | 20. Clear key |
| 9. Accessibility key/indicator | 21. Start key/indicator |
| 10. Print indicator | 22. Stop key |
| 11. Send indicator | 23. Reset key |
| 12. Receive indicator | |

1-1-3 Machine cross section

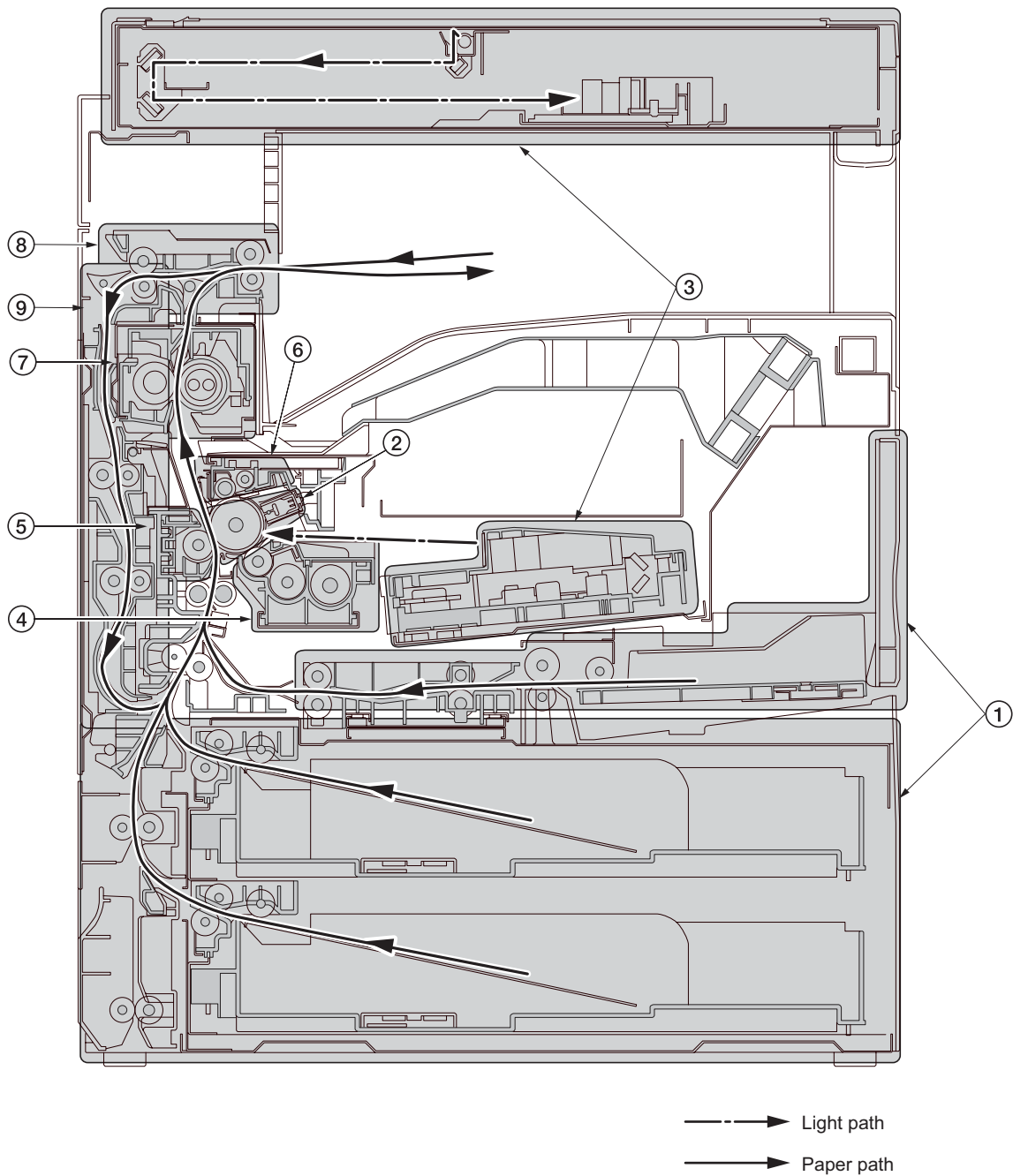


Figure 1-1-3 Machine cross section

1. Paper feed section
2. Main charging section
3. Optical section
4. Developing section
5. Transfer and separation section
6. Cleaning and charge erasing section
7. Fuser section
8. Eject and switchback section
9. Duplex section

1-2-1 Installation environment

1. Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F
2. Humidity: 15 to 80%RH
3. Power supply: 120 V AC, 11.5 A
220 to 240 V AC, 6.3 A
4. Power source frequency: 50 Hz \pm 0.3%/60 Hz \pm 0.3%
5. Installation location
 Avoid direct sunlight or bright lighting. Ensure that the photoconductor will not be exposed to direct sunlight or other strong light when removing paper jams.
 Avoid locations subject to high temperature and high humidity or low temperature and low humidity; an abrupt change in the environmental temperature; and cool or hot, direct air.
 Avoid places subject to dust and vibrations.
 Choose a surface capable of supporting the weight of the machine.
 Place the machine on a level surface (maximum allowance inclination: 1°).
 Avoid air-borne substances that may adversely affect the machine or degrade the photoconductor, such as mercury, acidic or alkaline vapors, inorganic gasses, NOx, SOx gases and chlorine-based organic solvents.
 Select a well-ventilated location.
6. Allow sufficient access for proper operation and maintenance of the machine.
 Machine front: 1000 mm/39 3/8" Machine rear: 100 mm/3 15/16"
 Machine right: 300 mm/11 13/16" Machine left: 300 mm/11 13/16"

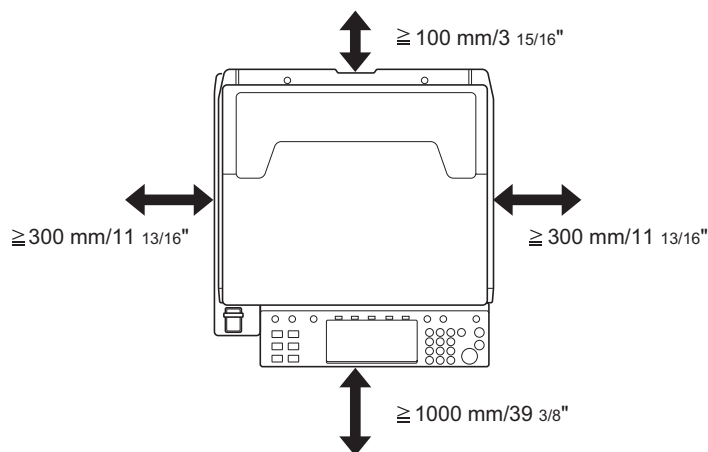
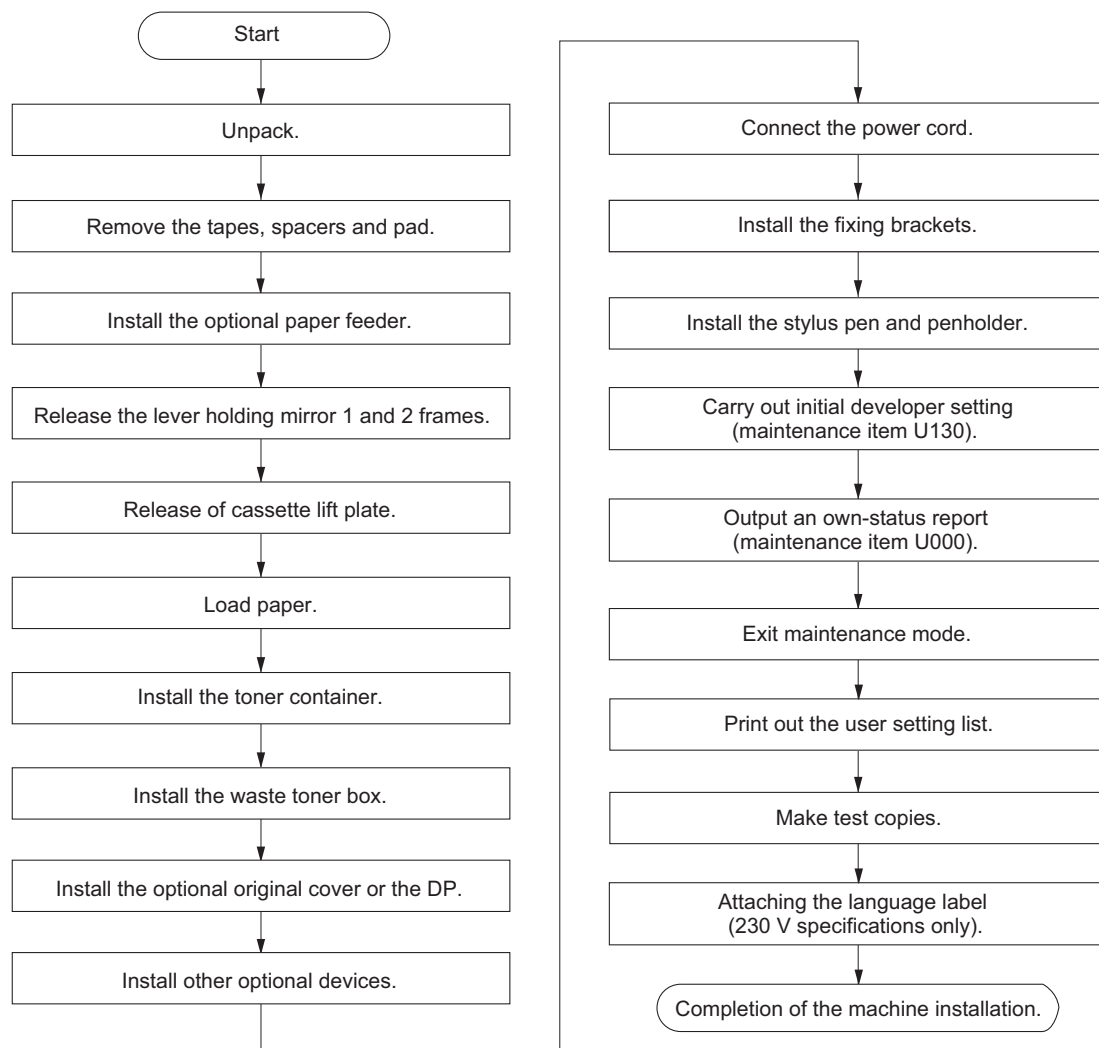


Figure 1-2-1 Installation dimensions

1-2-2 Unpacking and installation

(1) Installation procedure



Moving the machine

When moving the machine, pull out the four handles on the right and left sides and hold them.

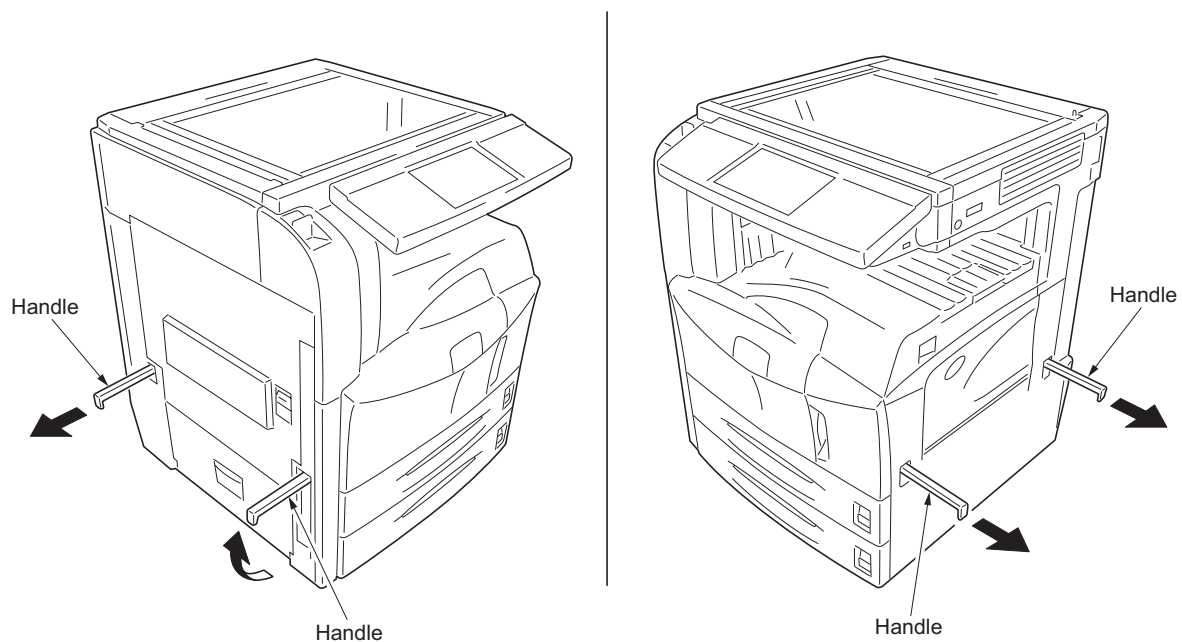


Figure 1-2-2

Unpacking.

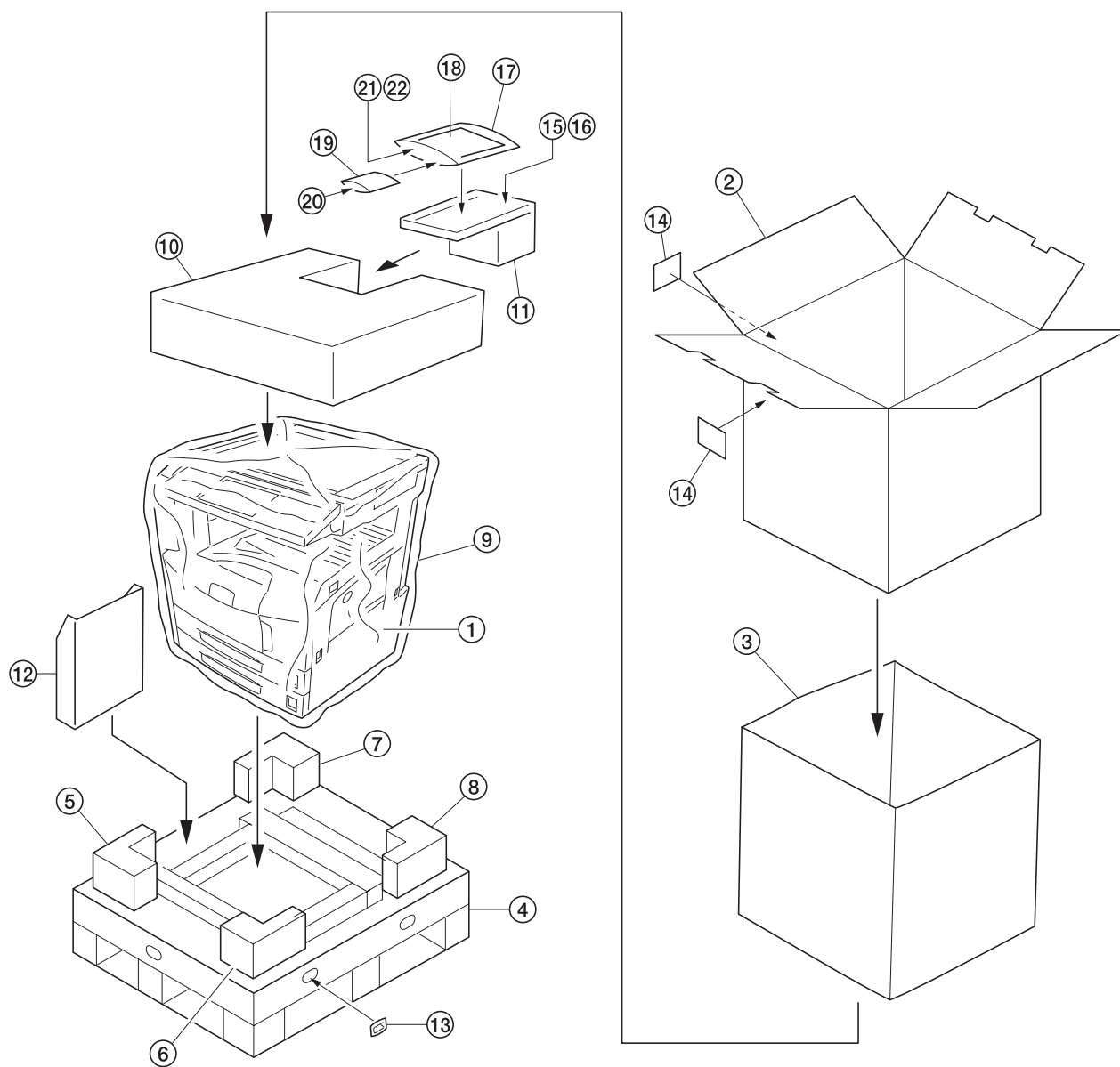


Figure 1-2-3 Unpacking

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Machine | 13. Hinge joints |
| 2. Outer case | 14. Bar code labels |
| 3. Inner frame | 15. Power cord |
| 4. Skid | 16. Fixing brackets |
| 5. Bottom front left pad | 17. Plastic bag |
| 6. Bottom front right pad | 18. Operation guide |
| 7. Bottom rear left pad | 19. Plastic bag |
| 8. Bottom rear right pad | 20. Cursor pins |
| 9. Machine cover | 21. Stylus pen* |
| 10. Upper pad | 22. Penholder* |
| 11. Spacer | |
| 12. Document tray | |

*: Europe and Asia Pacific only.

TONER

www.toner.ca Caution: Place the machine on a level surface.

Remove the tapes, spacers and pad.

1. Remove two tapes.
2. Pull the lever and operation section is lowered.
3. Remove two spacers.
Remove waste textile on the operation panel, if any.
4. Remove the pad.

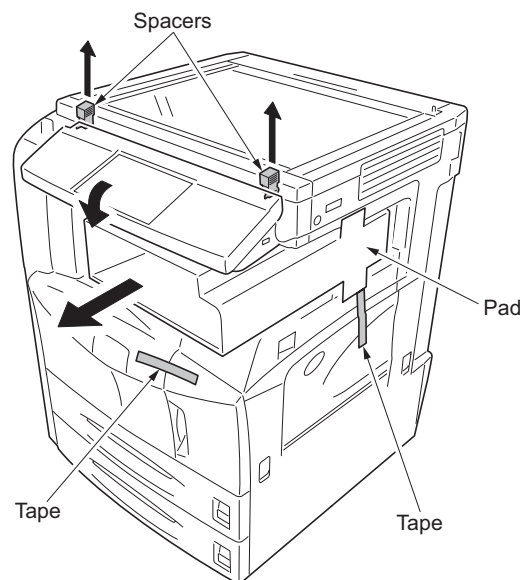


Figure 1-2-4

Install the optional paper feeder.

1. Install the optional paper feeder as necessary.
2. Verify levelness at the four corners of the platen using a level gauge, and adjust the level bolts at the bottom of the machine to optimize levelness.

Release the lever holding mirror 1 and 2 frames.

1. Turn the lever of the machine rear side with the tool to release the lever holding the mirror 1 and 2 frames.

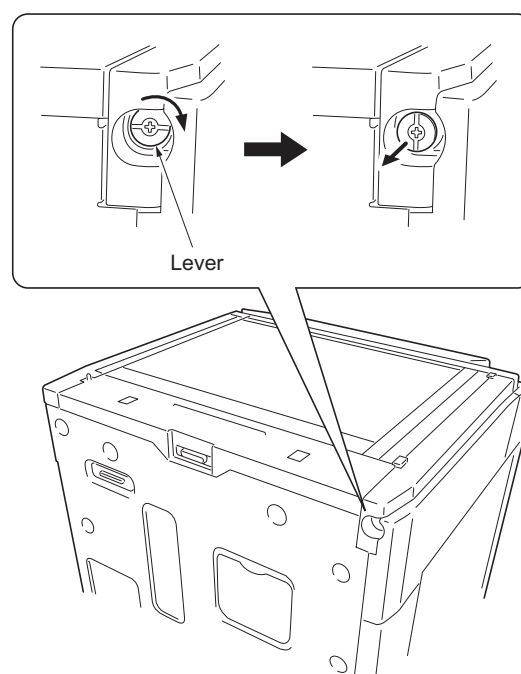


Figure 1-2-5

Release of cassette lift plate.

1. Pull cassette 1 and 2 out.
Remove the lift plate stopper from each cassette and attach it to the storage location.
When moving the machine, attach the lift plate in original position.

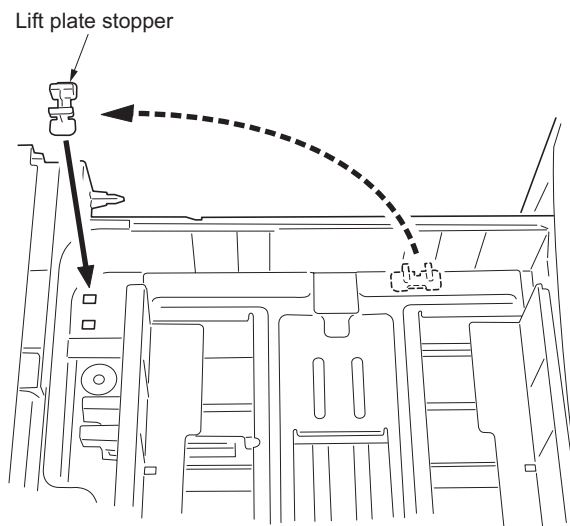


Figure 1-2-6

Load paper.

1. Pull the cassette out.
2. Holding the paper width adjusting tab both ends, move the paper width guides to fit the paper size.

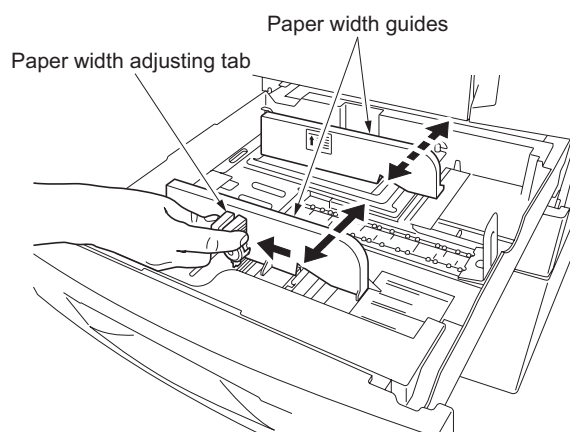


Figure 1-2-7

3. Adjust the length adjustment plate to fit the paper size.

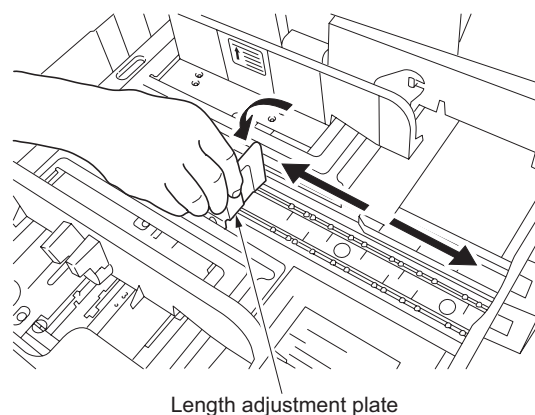


Figure 1-2-8

4. Align the paper flush against the left side of the cassette.

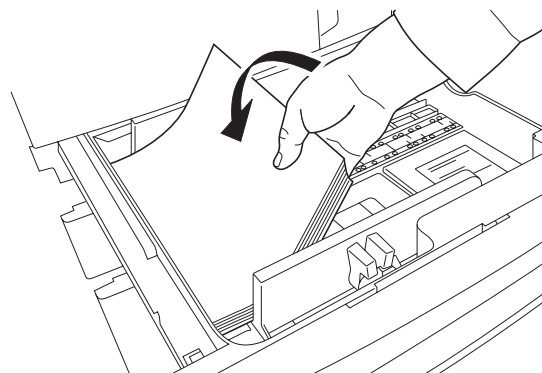


Figure 1-2-9

Install the toner container.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Tap the top of the toner container five to six times.

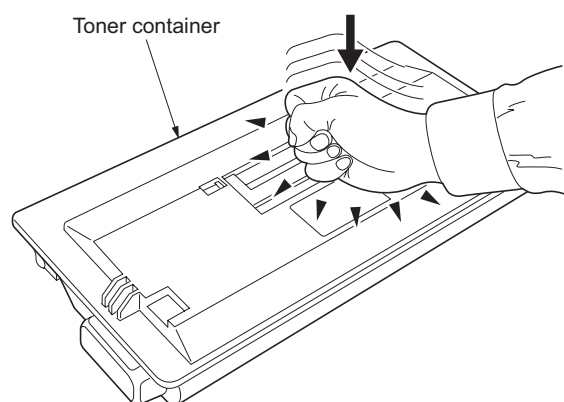


Figure 1-2-10

3. Shake the toner container approximately 10 times in the horizontal direction to stir toner.

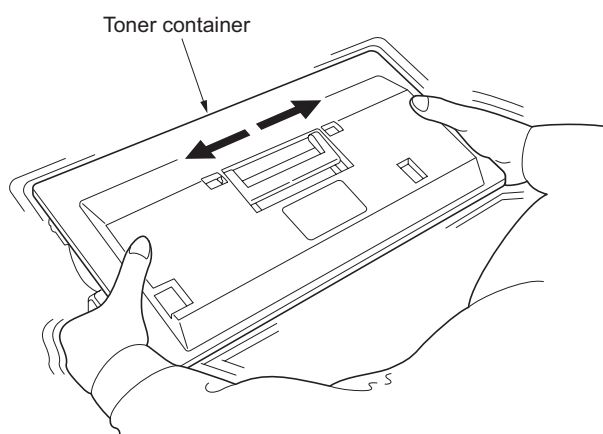


Figure 1-2-11

4. Gently push the toner container into the machine along the rails. Push the container all the way into the machine until it locks in place.

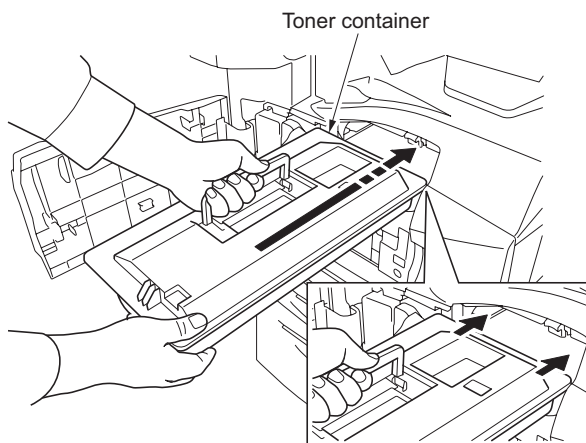


Figure 1-2-12

Install the waste toner box.

1. Install the waste toner box in the machine.
2. Close the front cover.

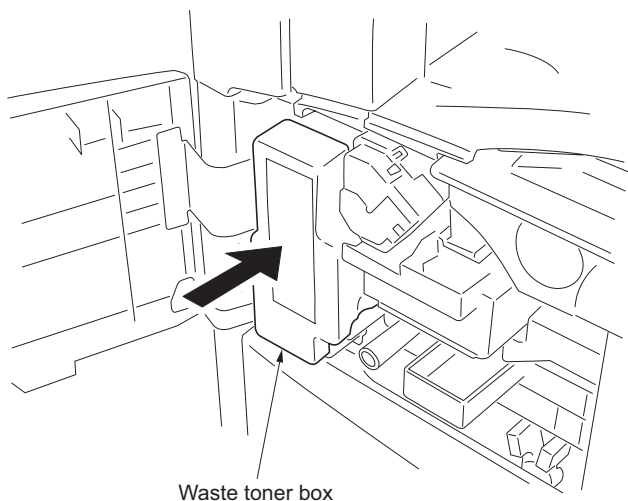


Figure 1-2-13

Install the optional original cover or the DP.

1. Install the optional original cover or DP.

Install other optional devices.

1. Install the optional devices (job separator, built-in finisher, document finisher and/or fax kit etc.) as necessary.

Connect the power cord.

1. Connect the power cord to the connector on the machine.
2. Insert the power plug into the wall outlet.

Install the fixing brackets.

1. Remove two screws from the rear cover.
2. Hook the catch of fixing brackets onto the groove of round frame, and secure them using two screws removed before step.

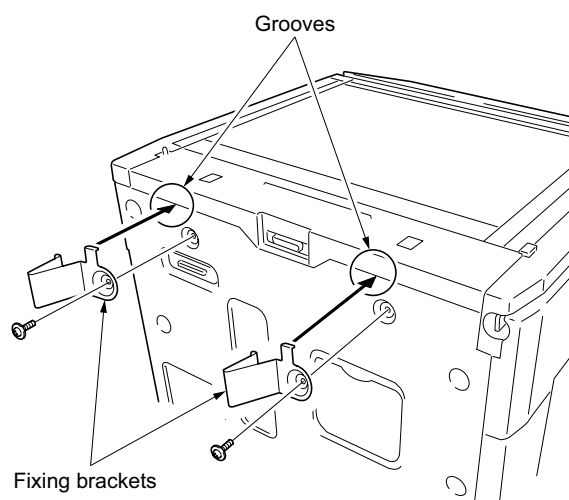


Figure 1-2-14

Install the stylus pen and penholder.

1. Attach the penholder and stylus pen to the machine as necessary.

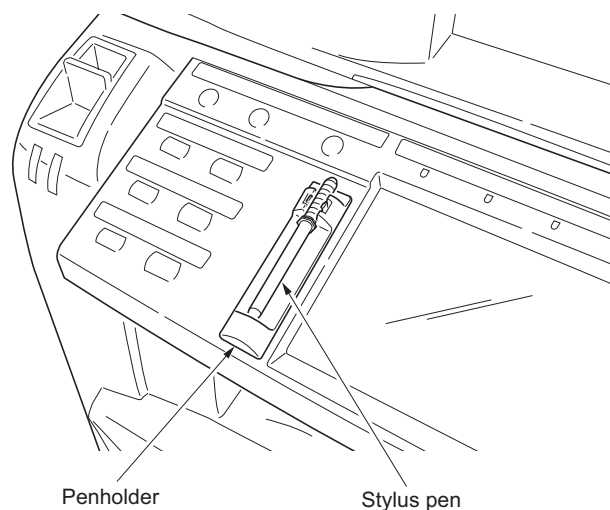


Figure 1-2-15

Carry out initial developer setting (maintenance item U130).

1. Turn the main power switch on and press the status key.
2. Enter the maintenance mode by entering 10871087 using the numeric keys.
3. Enter 130 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
4. Press the start key to execute the maintenance item. The drive stops within approximately 5 minutes.
5. Press the stop key.

Output an own-status report (maintenance item U000).

1. Enter 000 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
2. Select MAINTENANCE and press the start key to output a list of the current settings of the maintenance items.
3. Press the stop key.

Exit maintenance mode.

1. Enter 001 using the numeric keys and press the start key. The machine exits the maintenance mode.

Print out the user setting list.

1. Select [Report Print] to output the user various setting reports.

Make test copies.

1. Place an original and make test copies.

Attaching the language label (230 V specifications only).

1. According to need, attach the correspond language label.

Completion of the machine installation.

(2) Setting initial copy modes

Factory settings are as follows:

Maintenance item No.	Contents	Factory setting
U253	Switching between double and single counts	Double count
U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	After ejection
U285	Setting service status page	ON
U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON
U328	Side ejection setting	OFF
U342	Setting the ejection restriction	ON
U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF

1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option)

Installing the key counter requires the following component:

Key counter (P/N 3025418011)

Key counter set (P/N 302A369708)

Supplied parts of key counter set:

Key counter socket assembly (P/N 3029236241)

Key counter cover (P/N 3066060011)

Key counter mount (P/N 3066060041)

Key counter retainer (P/N 302GR03020)

Key counter cover retainer (P/N 302GR03010)

One (1) M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (P/N 5MBTPB3008PW++R)

Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight P screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010PW++R)

Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight S screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010TW++R)

Two (2) M3 × 6 bronze flat-head screws (P/N 7BB003306H)

One (1) M4 × 20 tap-tight S screw (P/N 7BB100420H)

One (1) M3 bronze nut (P/N 7BC1003055++H01)

One (1) M3 × 8 bronze binding screw (P/N B1B03080)

One (1) M4 × 30 tap-tight S screw (P/N B1B54300)

Five (5) M4 × 6 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04060)

Two (2) M4 × 10 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04100)

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Fit the key counter socket assembly to the key counter retainer using the two screws and nut.
3. Fit the key counter mount to the key counter cover using the two screws, and attach the key counter retainer to the mount using the two screws.

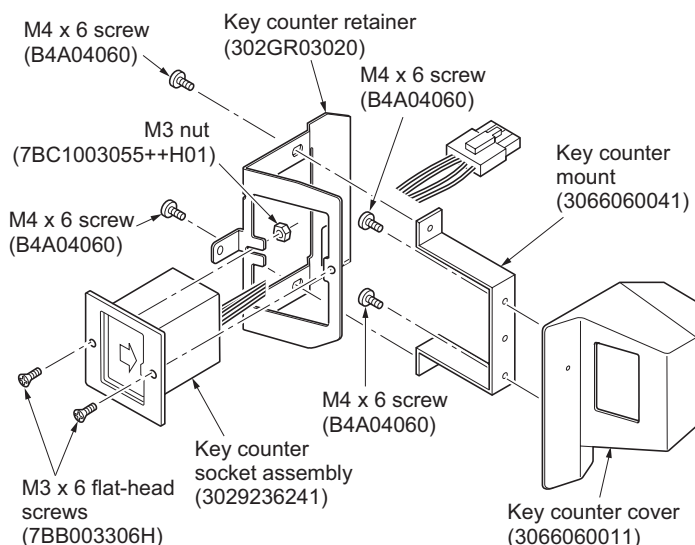


Figure 1-2-16

4. Remove the scanner right cover and the upper right cover.
5. Cut out the aperture plate on the upper right cover using nippers.
6. Pass the connector of the machine through the aperture and refit the upper right cover.

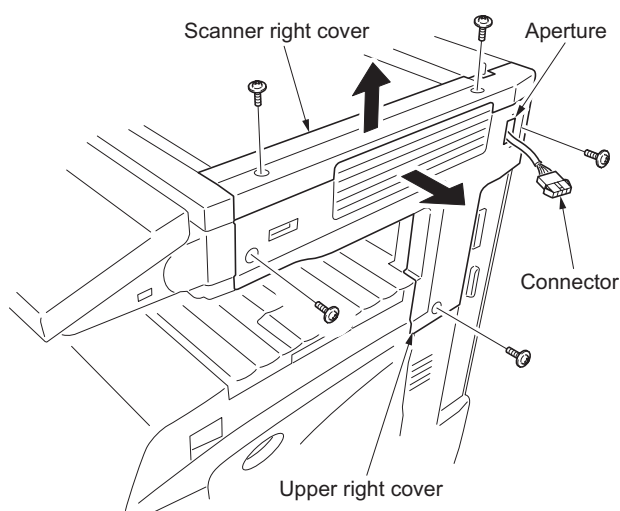


Figure 1-2-17

7. Pass the connector of the machine through the aperture in the key counter cover retainer.
8. Insert the hook of the key counter cover retainer in the slit of the upper right cover.
9. Fit the key counter cover retainer to the machine using the M4 x 20 screw.
10. Refit the scanner right cover.

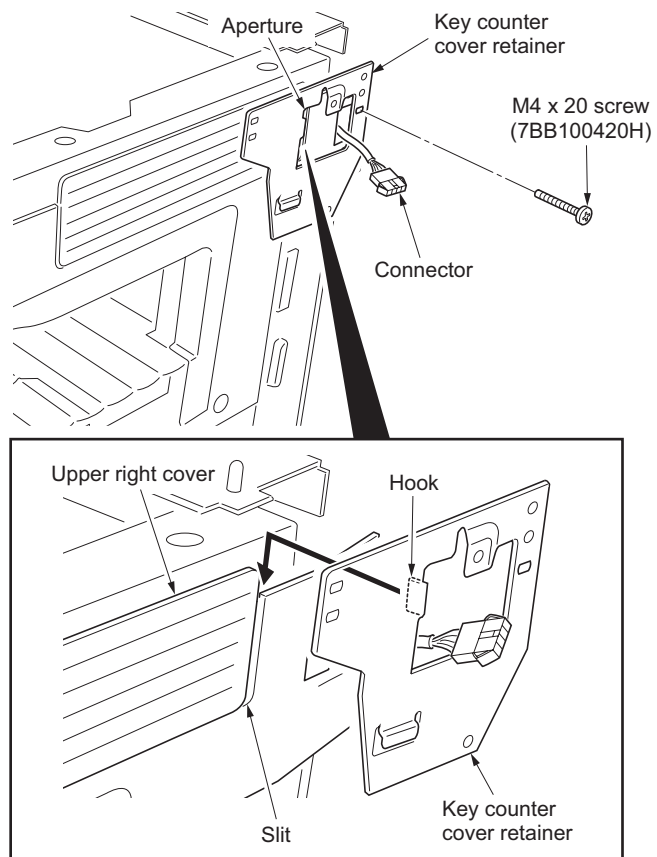


Figure 1-2-18

11. Insert the connector of the key counter signal cable into the connector of the machine.
12. Fit the key counter cover with the key counter socket assembly inserted to the key counter cover retainer using the M4 X 6 screw.
13. Insert the key counter into the key counter socket assembly.

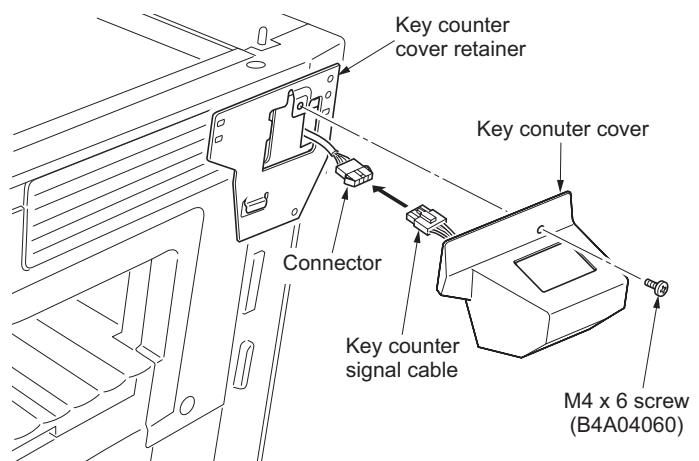


Figure 1-2-19

14. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
15. Run maintenance item U204 and select ON.
16. Exit the maintenance mode.
17. Check that the message requesting the key counter to be inserted is displayed on the touch panel when the key counter is pulled out.
18. Check that the counter counts up as prints are made.

1-2-4 Installing the expanded memory (option)

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Remove the screw and remove the memory slot cover.
3. Open clamps on both ends of the memory socket on the main PWB.
4. Insert the expanded memory into the memory socket so that the notch on the memory align with the corresponding protrusion in the slot.

The memory module is secured to the memory socket with the clamps.

5. Refit the memory slot cover.
 6. Print a status page to check the memory expansion (See page 1-3-6).
- If memory expansion has been properly performed, information on the installed memory.

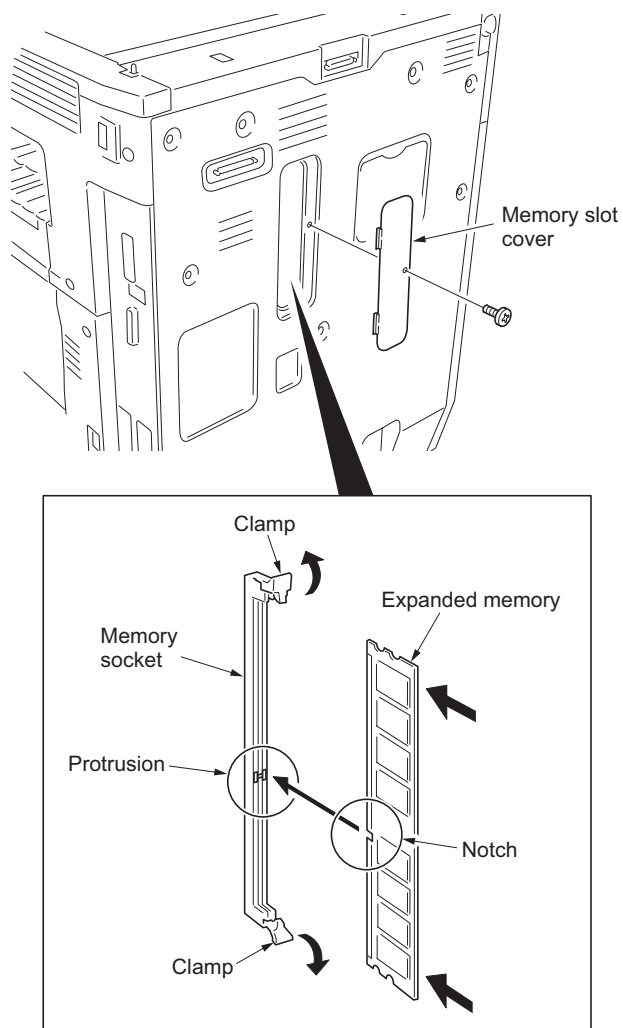


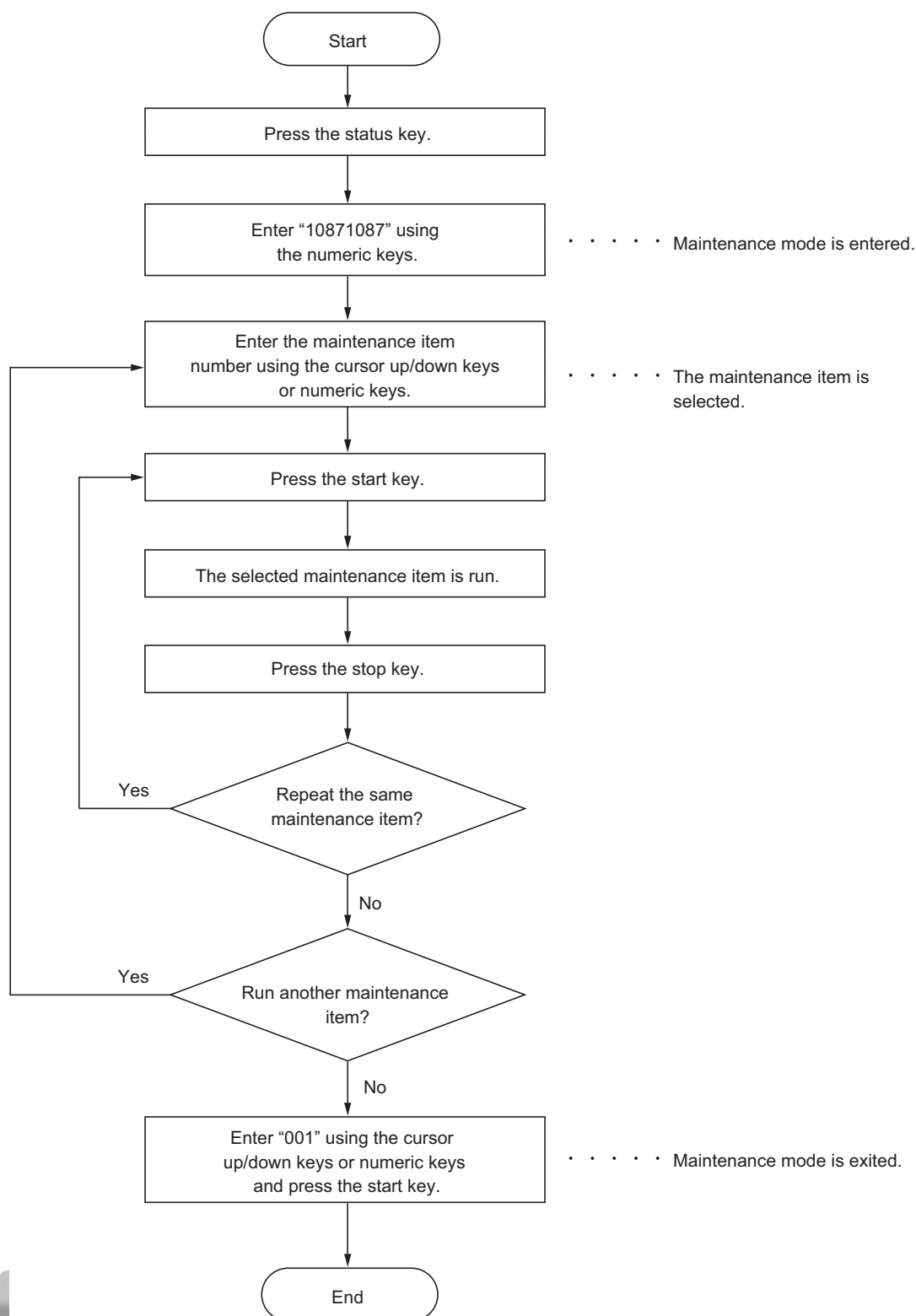
Figure 1-2-20

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-3-1 Maintenance mode

The machine is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

(1) Executing a maintenance item



(2) Maintenance modes item list

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
General	U000	Outputting an own-status report	-
	U001	Exiting the maintenance mode	-
	U002	Setting the factory default data	-
	U003	Setting the service telephone number	*****1
	U004	Displaying the machine number	-
	U005	Copying without paper	-
	U019	Displaying the ROM version	-
Initialization	U020	Initializing all data	-
	U021	Initializing counters and mode settings	-
	U022	Initializing backup memory	-
	U024	HDD formatting	-
Drive, paper feed, paper conveying and cooling system	U030	Checking motor operation	-
	U031	Checking switches for paper conveying	-
	U032	Checking clutch operation	-
	U033	Checking solenoid operation	-
	U034	Adjusting the print start timing Adjusting the leading edge registration Adjusting the center line	245/0/-30/-30*1 490/0/0/0/0/0*1
	U035	Setting the printing area for folio paper Length/Width	330/210*1
	U051	Adjusting the deflection in the paper	0/0/0*1
	U053	Setting the adjustment of the motor speed Drive motor Eject motor Polygon motor	2*1 0*1 -5*1
Optical	U061	Turning the exposure lamp on	-
	U063	Adjusting the shading position	0*1
	U065	Adjusting the scanner magnification Main scanning direction/auxiliary scanning direction	0/0*1
	U066	Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration	0/0*1
	U067	Adjusting the scanner center line	0/0*1
	U068	Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP	0/0*1
	U070	Adjusting the DP magnification	0/0/0*1
	U071	Adjusting the DP scanning timing	0/0/0/0/0*1
	U072	Adjusting the DP center line	0/0/0*1
	U073	Checking scanner operation	-
	U074	Adjusting the DP input light luminosity	0/0/0*1
	U080	Setting the economy mode	-6*1
	U081	Adjusting the correct exposure	0/0/0*1
	U087	Setting DP reading position modification operation	175/170/160*1
	U089	Outputting a MIP-PG pattern	-
	U093	Setting the exposure density gradient Text and photo/Text/Photo	0/0/0*1
	U099	Adjusting original size detection	105/105/105/60/60/60*1 150/240*1

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U020, *2: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
High voltage	U100	Setting the main high voltage	-
	U101	Setting the other high voltages Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation Developing shift bias potential at image formation Developing bias AC component duty at image formation Transfer control voltage Separation control voltage	28* ¹ 1* ¹ 50* ¹ 130* ¹ 20* ¹
	U102	Setting the cleaning interval for the main charger	5* ^{1,2}
	U109	Displaying the drum type	-
	U110	Checking the drum count	-
	U112	Setting toner refresh operation Time of toner refreshment Developing bias on time	120* ¹ 700 (30 ppm)* ¹ 540 (40/50 ppm)* ¹
	U114	Setting separation charger mode	MODE1* ¹
	U117	Checking the drum number	-
	U118	Displaying the drum history	-
Developing	U130	Initial setting for the developing unit	-
	U144	Setting toner loading operation	MODE2* ¹
	U150	Checking sensors for toner	-
	U157	Checking/clearing the developing drive time	-
	U158	Checking the developing count	-
Fuser and cleaning	U161	Setting the fuser control temperature Driving start temperature when warm-up starts Control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.] Control temperature during printing	175 (30 ppm)* ^{1,2} 185 (40/50 ppm)* ^{1,2} 190 (30 ppm)* ^{1,2} 200 (40/50 ppm)* ^{1,2} 190 (30 ppm)* ^{1,2} 200 (40/50 ppm)* ^{1,2}
	U163	Resetting the fuser problem data	-
	U167	Checking/clearing the fuser counts	-
	U196	Turning the fuser heater on	-
	U199	Checking the fuser temperature	-
Operation panel and support equipment	U200	Turning all LEDs on	-
	U201	Initializing the touch panel	-
	U202	Setting the KMAS host monitoring system	-
	U203	Checking DP operation	-
	U204	Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter	OFF/COUNTER* ^{1,2}
	U206	Setting the presence or absence of the coin vender	-
	U207	Checking the operation panel keys	-
	U208	Setting the paper size for the paper feeder	Inch specifications: Letter* ^{1,2} Metric specifications: A4* ^{1,2}
	U220	Setting the trial functions	-
	U223	Operation panel lock	Unlock* ^{1,2}
	U234	Setting punch destination	Inch specifications: INCH* ¹ Metric specifications: EUROPE METRIC* ¹
	U236	Setting the limit for the ejection section of the built-in finisher	OFF* ^{1,2}
	U237	Setting finisher stack quantity	0/0* ^{1,2}
	U240	Checking the operation of the finisher	-

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U020, *2: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
Operation panel and support equipment	U241	Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher	-
	U243	Checking the operation of the DP motors	-
	U244	Checking the DP switches	-
	U245	Checking messages	-
	U246	Setting the finisher 3000-sheet document finisher Centerfold unit Built-in finisher	0/0/0/0/0/0* ¹ 0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0* ¹ 0/0/0* ¹
	U247	Setting the paper feed device	-
Mode setting	U250	Setting the maintenance cycle	400000 (30 ppm)* ^{1,2} 500000 (40/50 ppm)* ^{1,2}
	U251	Checking/clearing the maintenance count	-
	U252	Setting the destination	-
	U253	Switching between double and single counts	Double count* ¹
	U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	After ejection* ^{1,2}
	U265	Setting OEM purchaser code	0* ¹
	U285	Setting service status page	ON* ¹
	U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON/8* ^{1,2}
	U328	Side ejection setting	OFF* ^{1,2}
	U332	Setting the size conversion factor	1.0* ^{1,2}
	U341	Specific paper feed location setting for printing function	-
	U342	Setting the ejection restriction	ON* ^{1,2}
	U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF* ^{1,2}
	U345	Setting the value for maintenance due indication	-
Image processing	U402	Adjusting margins of image printing	74/70/68/85/140/55* ¹
	U403	Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the platen	2.0/2.0/2.0/2.0* ¹
	U404	Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP	3.0/2.5/3.0/4.0* ¹ 3.0/2.5/3.0/4.0* ¹
	U407	Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing	0* ¹
	U411	Adjusting the scanner automatically	-
	U425	Setting the target	-
Network scanner	U510	Setting the enterprise mode	Inch specifications: ON* ^{1,2} Metric specifications: OFF* ^{1,2}
Others	U901	Checking/clearing copy counts by paper feed locations	-
	U902	Checking/clearing the punch-hole scrap counter	35000/0* ^{1,2}
	U903	Checking/clearing the paper jam counts	-
	U904	Checking/clearing the service call counts	-
	U905	Checking/clearing counts by optional devices	-
	U906	Resetting partial operation control	-
	U908	Checking the total counter value	-
	U910	Clearing the black ratio data	-
	U911	Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes	-
	U917	Setting backup data reading/writing	-
	U920	Checking the copy counts	-
	U927	Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)	-

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U020, *2: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
Others	U928	Checking machine life counts	-
	U933	Setting the fax backup kit	-
	U935	Relay board maintenance	-
	U942	Setting of deflection for feeding from DP	0/0 ^{*1}
	U943	Adjusting the prevent appearance of back side image	50 ^{*1}
	U984	Checking the developing unit number	-
	U985	Displaying the developing unit history	-
	U989	HDD scandisk	-
	U990	Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light	-
	U991	Checking the scanner count	-
	U993	Outputting a VTC-PG pattern	-

(3) Contents of the maintenance mode items

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																																																																																																																																																											
U000	<p>Outputting an own-status report</p> <p>Description Outputs lists of the current settings of the maintenance items, and paper jam and service call occurrences. Outputs the event log or service status page. Printing a report is disabled either when a job is remaining in the buffer or when [Pause All Print Jobs] is pressed to halt printing.</p> <p>Purpose To check the current setting of the maintenance items, or paper jam or service call occurrences. Before initial-izing or replacing the backup RAM, output a list of the current settings of the maintenance items to reenter the settings after initialization or replacement.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key.Select the item to be output. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Output list</th></tr><tr><td>MAINTENANCE</td><td>List of the current settings of the maintenance modes</td></tr><tr><td>EVENT LOG</td><td>Outputs the event log</td></tr><tr><td>SERVICE STATUS</td><td>Outputs the service status page</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key. The interrupt print mode is entered and a list is output. When A4/Letter paper is available, a report of this size is output. If not, specify the paper feed location. When output is complete, the screen for selecting an item is displayed. <p>Event log</p> <div><div><h2>Event Log</h2><p>MFP</p><p>Firmware version 2GR_2000.001.036 2006.04.17</p><div><div>(1)</div><div>(2)</div></div><div><div>(3) Paper Jam Log</div><table><tr><th>#</th><th>Count.</th><th>Event Descriptions</th></tr><tr><td>16</td><td>1876543</td><td>10.01.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>15</td><td>166554</td><td>10.01.08.01.02</td></tr><tr><td>14</td><td>4988</td><td>10.01.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>13</td><td>4988</td><td>10.01.08.01.02</td></tr><tr><td>12</td><td>4988</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>11</td><td>4988</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>10</td><td>1103</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>9</td><td>1103</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>8</td><td>1103</td><td>12.03.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>1103</td><td>12.03.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>1027</td><td>12.03.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>1027</td><td>12.03.0A.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>1027</td><td>12.03.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>1027</td><td>12.03.08.01.02</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>550</td><td>12.03.0A.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>28</td><td>12.03.08.01.01</td></tr></table></div><div><div>(4) Service Call Log</div><table><tr><th>#</th><th>Count.</th><th>Service Code</th></tr><tr><td>8</td><td>1881214</td><td>F0.0030</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>178944</td><td>01.1010</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>5296</td><td>F0.4000</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>5295</td><td>F0.3100</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>2099</td><td>01.2000</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>1054</td><td>01.2000</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>809</td><td>01.2500</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>30</td><td>01.2500</td></tr></table></div><div><div>(5) Maintenance Log</div><table><tr><th>#</th><th>Count.</th><th>Item</th></tr><tr><td>8</td><td>1045571</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>704511</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>7045</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>3454</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>3454</td><td>02.00</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>3454</td><td>02.00</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>417</td><td>02.00</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>35</td><td>02.20</td></tr></table></div><div><div>(6) Unknown toner Log</div><table><tr><th>#</th><th>Count.</th><th>Item</th></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>3454</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>3454</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>3454</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>417</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>35</td><td>01.00</td></tr></table></div><div><div>(7) Counter Log</div><table><tr><td>(f) J04:000</td><td>J20:000</td><td>J70:000</td><td>J93:002</td><td>(g) C0101:001</td><td>C2223:001</td><td>C3502:001</td><td>(h) M00:01</td></tr><tr><td>J05:000</td><td>J21:000</td><td>J71:000</td><td>J94:000</td><td>C0102:001</td><td>C2225:001</td><td>C3503:001</td><td>M00:01</td></tr><tr><td>J09:000</td><td>J22:000</td><td>J72:000</td><td>J95:000</td><td>C0107:001</td><td>C2228:001</td><td>C3552:001</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>J10:000</td><td>J23:000</td><td>J73:000</td><td>J96:000</td><td>C0108:001</td><td>C2259:001</td><td>C3553:001</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>J11:002</td><td>J30:002</td><td>J74:002</td><td></td><td>C0220:001</td><td>C3003:001</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>J12:000</td><td>J40:002</td><td>J75:002</td><td></td><td>C2002:001</td><td>C3411:001</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>J13:000</td><td>J41:000</td><td>J76:000</td><td></td><td>C2030:001</td><td>C3412:001</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>J14:000</td><td>J42:000</td><td>J78:000</td><td></td><td>C2031:001</td><td>C3421:001</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td>J43:000</td><td>J80:000</td><td></td><td>C2223:001</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table></div></div></div>	Display	Output list	MAINTENANCE	List of the current settings of the maintenance modes	EVENT LOG	Outputs the event log	SERVICE STATUS	Outputs the service status page	#	Count.	Event Descriptions	16	1876543	10.01.08.01.01	15	166554	10.01.08.01.02	14	4988	10.01.08.01.01	13	4988	10.01.08.01.02	12	4988		11	4988		10	1103		9	1103		8	1103	12.03.08.01.01	7	1103	12.03.08.01.01	6	1027	12.03.08.01.01	5	1027	12.03.0A.01.01	4	1027	12.03.08.01.01	3	1027	12.03.08.01.02	2	550	12.03.0A.01.01	1	28	12.03.08.01.01	#	Count.	Service Code	8	1881214	F0.0030	7	178944	01.1010	6	5296	F0.4000	5	5295	F0.3100	4	2099	01.2000	3	1054	01.2000	2	809	01.2500	1	30	01.2500	#	Count.	Item	8	1045571	01.00	7	704511	01.00	6	7045	01.00	5	3454	01.00	4	3454	02.00	3	3454	02.00	2	417	02.00	1	35	02.20	#	Count.	Item	5	3454	01.00	4	3454	01.00	3	3454	01.00	2	417	01.00	1	35	01.00	(f) J04:000	J20:000	J70:000	J93:002	(g) C0101:001	C2223:001	C3502:001	(h) M00:01	J05:000	J21:000	J71:000	J94:000	C0102:001	C2225:001	C3503:001	M00:01	J09:000	J22:000	J72:000	J95:000	C0107:001	C2228:001	C3552:001		J10:000	J23:000	J73:000	J96:000	C0108:001	C2259:001	C3553:001		J11:002	J30:002	J74:002		C0220:001	C3003:001			J12:000	J40:002	J75:002		C2002:001	C3411:001			J13:000	J41:000	J76:000		C2030:001	C3412:001			J14:000	J42:000	J78:000		C2031:001	C3421:001				J43:000	J80:000		C2223:001			
Display	Output list																																																																																																																																																																																																											
MAINTENANCE	List of the current settings of the maintenance modes																																																																																																																																																																																																											
EVENT LOG	Outputs the event log																																																																																																																																																																																																											
SERVICE STATUS	Outputs the service status page																																																																																																																																																																																																											
#	Count.	Event Descriptions																																																																																																																																																																																																										
16	1876543	10.01.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																										
15	166554	10.01.08.01.02																																																																																																																																																																																																										
14	4988	10.01.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																										
13	4988	10.01.08.01.02																																																																																																																																																																																																										
12	4988																																																																																																																																																																																																											
11	4988																																																																																																																																																																																																											
10	1103																																																																																																																																																																																																											
9	1103																																																																																																																																																																																																											
8	1103	12.03.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																										
7	1103	12.03.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																										
6	1027	12.03.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																										
5	1027	12.03.0A.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																										
4	1027	12.03.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																										
3	1027	12.03.08.01.02																																																																																																																																																																																																										
2	550	12.03.0A.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																										
1	28	12.03.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																										
#	Count.	Service Code																																																																																																																																																																																																										
8	1881214	F0.0030																																																																																																																																																																																																										
7	178944	01.1010																																																																																																																																																																																																										
6	5296	F0.4000																																																																																																																																																																																																										
5	5295	F0.3100																																																																																																																																																																																																										
4	2099	01.2000																																																																																																																																																																																																										
3	1054	01.2000																																																																																																																																																																																																										
2	809	01.2500																																																																																																																																																																																																										
1	30	01.2500																																																																																																																																																																																																										
#	Count.	Item																																																																																																																																																																																																										
8	1045571	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
7	704511	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
6	7045	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
5	3454	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
4	3454	02.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
3	3454	02.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
2	417	02.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
1	35	02.20																																																																																																																																																																																																										
#	Count.	Item																																																																																																																																																																																																										
5	3454	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
4	3454	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
3	3454	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
2	417	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
1	35	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																										
(f) J04:000	J20:000	J70:000	J93:002	(g) C0101:001	C2223:001	C3502:001	(h) M00:01																																																																																																																																																																																																					
J05:000	J21:000	J71:000	J94:000	C0102:001	C2225:001	C3503:001	M00:01																																																																																																																																																																																																					
J09:000	J22:000	J72:000	J95:000	C0107:001	C2228:001	C3552:001																																																																																																																																																																																																						
J10:000	J23:000	J73:000	J96:000	C0108:001	C2259:001	C3553:001																																																																																																																																																																																																						
J11:002	J30:002	J74:002		C0220:001	C3003:001																																																																																																																																																																																																							
J12:000	J40:002	J75:002		C2002:001	C3411:001																																																																																																																																																																																																							
J13:000	J41:000	J76:000		C2030:001	C3412:001																																																																																																																																																																																																							
J14:000	J42:000	J78:000		C2031:001	C3421:001																																																																																																																																																																																																							
	J43:000	J80:000		C2223:001																																																																																																																																																																																																								

Figure 1-3-1

Maintenance item No.	Description			
U000	Detail of event log			
	No.	Items	Description	
	(1)	System version		
	(2)	System date		
	(3)	Paper Jam Log	#	Count. Event
			Remembers 1 to 16 of occurrence. If the occurrence of the previous paper jam is less than 16, all of the paper jams are logged. When the occurrence exceeds 16, the oldest occurrence is removed.	The total page count at the time of the paper jam. Log code (2 digit, hexadecimal, 5 categories) (a) Cause of a paper jam (b) Paper source (c) Paper size (d) Paper type (e) Paper eject
			(a) Cause of paper jam (Hexadecimal)	
			04: Cover open 05: Secondary paper feed does not start 09: 3000-sheet paper feeder sequence error jam 10: No paper feed from cassette 1 11: No paper feed from cassette 2 12: No paper feed from optional cassette 3 13: No paper feed from optional cassette 4 14: No paper feed from MP tray 15: Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 1 16: Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 2 17: Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 3 18: Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section 19: Misfeed in paper feeder vertical paper conveying section 20: Misfeed in MP tray vertical paper conveying section 21: Multiple sheets in paper feed section 22: Multiple sheets in vertical conveying section 23: Multiple sheets in MP tray conveying section 30: Misfeed in registration/transfer section 40: Misfeed in fuser section (MP tray) 41: Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 1) 42: Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 2) 43: Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 3) 44: Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 4) 46: Misfeed in fuser section (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder) 47: Misfeed in fuser section (duplex section) 50: Misfeed in eject section 51: Misfeed in job separator eject section 52: Misfeed in feedshift section 60: Duplex paper conveying section 1 61: Duplex paper conveying section 2 70: No original feed 71: An original jam in the original feed/conveying section 1 72: An original jam in the original feed/conveying section 2 73: An original jam in the original conveying section 74: An original jam in the original registration section 75: An original jam in the original registration section 76: An original jam in the original feed/conveying section 78: Document processor top cover open 80: Jam between the finisher and machine (3000-sheet document finisher) 81: Paper entry sensor nonarrival jam	

Maintenance item No.	Description				
U000	(3) cont.	Paper Jam Log	82: Jam in stapler 83: Exit sensor stay jam 84: Jam in eject section of right sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher) 85: Jam in eject section of left sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher) 86: Jam in eject section of internal tray 1 (3000-sheet document finisher) 87: Jam in eject section of internal tray 2 (3000-sheet document finisher) 88: Jam in eject section of main tray (3000-sheet document finisher) 89: Jam in centerfold unit (3000-sheet document finisher) 90: Jam in mailbox (3000-sheet document finisher) 91: Finisher cover open 92: Exit sensor non-arrival jam (document finisher) 93: Reverse sensor jam (document finisher) 94: Paper entry sensor stay/remaining jam (document finisher) 95: Paper conveying sensor jam (document finisher) 96: Jam between the built-in finisher and machine (built-in finisher)		
			(b) Detail of paper source (Hexadecimal)		
			00: MP tray 01: Cassette 1 02: Cassette 2 03: Cassette 3 (paper feeder/3000-sheet paper feeder) 04: Cassette 4 (paper feeder) 05 - 09: Reserved		
			(c) Detail of paper size (Hexadecimal)		
			01: Monarch 02: Business 03: International DL 04: International C5 05: Executive 06: Letter-R 86: Letter-E 07: Legal 08: A4R 88: A4E 09: B5R 89: B5E 0A: A3 0B: B4	0C: Ledger 0D: A5R 8D: A5E 0E: A6 0F: B6 10: Commercial #9 11: Commercial #6 12: ISO B5 13: Custom size 1E: C4 1F: Postcard 20: Reply-paid postcard 21: Oficio II 22: Special 1	23: Special 2 24: A3 wide 25: Ledger wide 26: Full bleed paper (12 x 8) 27: 8K 28: 16K-R A8: 16K-E 32: Statement-R B2: Statement-E 33: Folio 34: Western type 2 35: Western type 4
			(d) Detail of paper type (Hexadecimal)		
			00: (Not specified) 01: Plain 02: Transparency 03: Preprinted 04: Labels 05: Bond 06: Recycled 07: Vellum 08: Rough	09: Letterhead 0A: Color 0B: Prepunched 0C: Envelope 0D: Cardstock 0E: Coated 0F: 2nd side 10: Media 16 11: High quality	15: Custom 1 16: Custom 2 17: Custom 3 18: Custom 4 19: Custom 5 1A: Custom 6 1B: Custom 7 1C: Custom 8

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description			
U000				
(3) cont.	Paper Jam Log	(e) Detail of paper exit location (Hexadecimal)		
		01: Face down (FD) 02: Face up (FU)/ Document finisher face up (FU)/ 3000-sheet document finisher left sub tray (FU) 03: Document finisher face down (FD) 04: Reserved 05: Reserved 06: 3000-sheet document finisher right sub tray (FU) 07: 3000-sheet document finisher left sub tray (FD) 09: 3000-sheet document finisher right sub tray (FD) 0B: Mailbox tray 1 (FD) 0C: Mailbox tray 1 (FU) 0D: Reserved 0E: Reserved 15: Mailbox tray 2 (FD) 16: Mailbox tray 2 (FU) 1F: Mailbox tray 3 (FD) 20: Mailbox tray 3 (FU) 29: Mailbox tray 4 (FD) 2A: Mailbox tray 4 (FU) 33: Mailbox tray 5 (FD) 34: Mailbox tray 5 (FU) 3D: Mailbox tray 6 (FD) 3E: Mailbox tray 6 (FU) 47: Mailbox tray 7 (FD) 48: Mailbox tray 7 (FU)		
(4)	Service Call Log	#	Count.	Service Code
		Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of self diagnostics error. If the occurrence of the previous diagnostics error is less than 8, all of the diagnostics errors are logged.	The total page count at the time of the self diagnostics error.	Self diagnostic error code (See page 1-4-22) Example: 01.6000 01: Self diagnostic error 6000: Self diagnostic error code number
(5)	Maintenance Log	#	Count.	Item
		Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of replacement. If the occurrence of the previous replacement of toner container is less than 8, all of the occurrences of replacement are logged.	The total page count at the time of the replacement of the toner container.	Code of maintenance replacing item (1 byte, 2 categories) First byte (Replacing item) 01: Toner container 02: Maintenance kit Second byte (Type of replacing item) 00: (fixed)

Maintenance item No.	Description				
U000					
	No.	Items	Description		
	(6)	Unknown Toner Log	#	Count.	Item
			Remembers 1 to 5 of occurrence of unknown toner detection. If the occurrence of the previous unknown toner detection is less than 5, all of the unknown toner detection are logged.	The total page count at the time of the [Toner Empty] error with using an unknown toner container.	Unkown toner log code (1 byte, 2 categories) First byte 01: Fixed (Toner container) Second byte 00: Fixed (Black)
	(7)	Counter Log	(f) Paper jam	(g) Self diagnostic error	(h) Maintenance item replacing
	Comprised of three log counters including paper jams, self diagnostics errors, and replacement of the toner container.	Indicates the log counter of paper jams depending on location. Refer to Paper Jam Log. All instances including those are not occurred are displayed.	Indicates the log counter of self diagnostics errors depending on cause. (See P.1-4-22) Example: C6000: 4 Self diagnostics error 6000 has happened four times.	Indicates the log counter depending on the maintenance item for maintenance. T: Toner container 00: Black M: Maintenance kit 00: (fixed) Example: T00: 1 The toner container has been replaced once.	

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	<div>Service status page (1)</div> <div><div>Service Status Page</div><div>MFP</div><div>(1) Firmware version 2GR_2000.001.001 (2) 2007.01.17</div><div>Controller Information</div><div><div>Memory Status</div><div>(3) Option Slot1 524288KB</div><div>(4) Option Slot2 524288KB</div><div>(5) Total 1048576KB</div><div>Time</div><div>(6) Local Time Zone +01:00_Amsterdam</div><div>(7) Data and Time 10/27/2005 09:06</div><div>(8) Time Server 10.183.53.13</div><div>(9) FRPO Status</div><div>User Top Margin A1+A2/100 0.00</div><div>User Left Margin A3+A4/100 0.00</div><div>User Page Length A5+A6/100 17.30</div><div>Auto Continue Mode Y0 00</div><div>Auto Continue Timer Y1 06</div></div><div>1</div></div>

Figure 1-3-2

Detail of service status page

No.	Description	Supplement
(1)	System version	
(2)	System date	
(3)	Slot 1 RAM size	
(4)	Slot 2 RAM size	
(5)	Total RAM size	
(6)	Local time zone	
(7)	Report output date	Day/Month/Year hour:minute
(8)	NTP server name	
(9)	FRPO setting	

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	<p>Service status page (2)</p> <div> <h3>Service Status Page</h3> <p>MFP</p> <p>Firmware version 2GR_2000.001.001 2006.01.17</p> <hr/> <div> <h4>Engine Information</h4> <p>(10) Engine ROM Version 2GR_1000.003.001 (11) Front Panel ROM Version 2GR_A000.001.019 (12) NVRAM Version Bb04B29_Bb04B29 (13) Scanner Version 2GR_1200.001.088 (14) FAX Slot1 FAX BOOT Version 2GR_5000.001.001 FAX APL Version 2GR_5100.001.001 FAX IPL Version 2GR_5200.001.001 (15) Serial No. AFZ3123456 (16) MAC Address 00:C0:EE:D0:01:0D</p> <h4>Toner Coverage (%)</h4> <p>(17) Period (07/11/2005 - 07/12/2005 08:05) (18) Usage Page (A4/Letter Conversion) 3043.50 (19) Average (%) Total 2.90 Copy 3.56 Printer 2.87 FAX 3.52 (20) Last Page (%) 2.80</p> <h4>Installed Options</h4> <p>(21) Document Processor Installed (22) Paper Feeder Cassette (23) Finisher 3000-Finisher Mail Box Not Installed (24) Job Separator Installed (25) Memory Card Not Installed (26) PDF Expansion Kit Installed (27) Fax Backup Kit Not Installed (28) Security Kit Installed (29) Data Security Kit (C) Software (30) Security Library Version 0.50</p> <p>(35) 1/2 (36) 245/490 (37) 0/-30/-30/-30 (38) 0/0/0/0 (39) 0/50/0/50/10/61/8/11 (40) F00/U00 (41) 12345678/11223344/00001234abcd567800001234abcd5678/01234567890123456789012345678901/0008/00/07 (42) 0000000000/F80C001A37/302A183C00/000100013D/8791BFC305/0000003100/000F5D0000/01FD000000/ 0000000FB7/0000000000/0000260000/0000000000/0000000000/0000008400/0000000000/011F000F51/ 8F0F000000/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/00000000F/</p> </div> <div> <h4>Counter</h4> <p>(31) Printed Total Printed Pages 631 Copier 11 Printer 620 FAX 0 (32) Scanned Total Scanned Pages 1 Copier 0 Other 1 (33) Paper Size A3 69 A4 539 A5 0 B4 36 B5 0 Ledger 7 Folio 0 Legal 0 Letter 0 Statement 0 Other 0</p> <h4>FAX Information Slot1/Slot2</h4> <p>(34) Rings (Normal) 3 Rings (FAX/TEL) 3 Rings (TAD) 3 TX SPEED V.29 9600bps RX SPEED 9600bps ECM TX ON ECM RX OFF V.34 TX REG.G3 TX EQR 4db REG.G3 RX EQR 0db RX MODEM LEVEL -43dBm SGL LVL MODEM -9dBm</p> </div> </div> <p>2</p>

Figure 1-3-3

Maintenance item No.	Description	
U000	Detail of service status page	
	No.	Description
	(10)	Engine ROM version
	(11)	Operation panel ROM version
	(12)	NV RAM version
		_ Bb 04B29 _ Bb 04B29 (a) (b) (c) (d) (e) (f) (a) Consistency of the present software version and the database _ (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (b) Database version (c) The oldest time stamp of database version (d) Consistency of the present software version and the ME firmware version _ (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (e) ME firmware version (f) The oldest time stamp of the ME database version Normal if (a) and (d) are underscored, and (b) and (e) are identical with (c) and (f).
	(13)	Scanner version
	(14)	Fax firmware version
		This item is printed only when the optional fax kit is installed.
	(15)	Serial No.
		10 digits
	(16)	Mac address
	(17)	Cleared date and output date
	(18)	Page of relation to the A4/Letter
	(19)	Average coverage
		Total/Copy/Printer/Fax
	(20)	Coverage on the final output page
	(21)	Presence or absence of the optional DP
		Installed Not Installed
	(22)	Presence or absence of the optional paper feeder
		Cassette: Paper feeder LCF: 3000-sheet paper feeder Not Installed
	(23)	Presence or absence of the optional document finisher
		Inner Finisher: Built-in finisher 3000-Finisher: 3000-sheet document finisher 1000-Finisher: Document finisher Not Installed
	(24)	Presence or absence of the optional job separator
		Installed Not Installed
	(25)	Presence or absence of the memory card
		Installed Not Installed
	(26)	Presence or absence of the optional PDF upgrade kit
		Installed: The formal version is installed Not Installed: The PDF upgrade kit is not installed Trial Version(xx/xx/xx): A trial version is installed
	(27)	Presence or absence of the optional fax backup kit
		Installed Not Installed
	(28)	Presence or absence of the optional security kit
		Installed Not Installed

Maintenance item No.	Description																																															
U000	<table><tr><th>No.</th><th>Description</th><th>Supplement</th></tr><tr><td>(29)</td><td>Identification name for the security kit</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>(30)</td><td>Security kit version</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>(31)</td><td>Printed page counts</td><td>Total/Copy/Printer/Fax</td></tr><tr><td>(32)</td><td>Scanned page counts</td><td>Total/Copy/Other</td></tr><tr><td>(33)</td><td>Counts by paper sizes</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>(34)</td><td>Fax kit information</td><td>This item is printed only when the optional fax kit is installed.</td></tr><tr><td>(35)</td><td>Destination information/Area information</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>(36)</td><td>Printable area setting</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>(37)</td><td>Top offset for each bin</td><td>MP tray/Cassette 2/Cassette 3/Cassette 4</td></tr><tr><td>(38)</td><td>Left offset for each bin</td><td>MP tray/Cassette 2/Cassette 3/Cassette 4</td></tr><tr><td>(39)</td><td>Margin/Page length/Page width settings</td><td>Top margin integer part/Top margin decimal part/ Left margin integer part/Left margin decimal part/ Page length integer part/Page length decimal part/ Page width integer part/Page width decimal part</td></tr><tr><td>(40)</td><td>Panel lock information/USB information</td><td>Panel lock 0: OFF/1: Partial lock/2: Full lock USB 0: Not installed/1: Full speed/2: Hi speed</td></tr><tr><td>(41)</td><td>RFID information</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>(42)</td><td>Maintenance information</td><td></td></tr></table>			No.	Description	Supplement	(29)	Identification name for the security kit		(30)	Security kit version		(31)	Printed page counts	Total/Copy/Printer/Fax	(32)	Scanned page counts	Total/Copy/Other	(33)	Counts by paper sizes		(34)	Fax kit information	This item is printed only when the optional fax kit is installed.	(35)	Destination information/Area information		(36)	Printable area setting		(37)	Top offset for each bin	MP tray/Cassette 2/Cassette 3/Cassette 4	(38)	Left offset for each bin	MP tray/Cassette 2/Cassette 3/Cassette 4	(39)	Margin/Page length/Page width settings	Top margin integer part/Top margin decimal part/ Left margin integer part/Left margin decimal part/ Page length integer part/Page length decimal part/ Page width integer part/Page width decimal part	(40)	Panel lock information/USB information	Panel lock 0: OFF/1: Partial lock/2: Full lock USB 0: Not installed/1: Full speed/2: Hi speed	(41)	RFID information		(42)	Maintenance information	
	No.	Description	Supplement																																													
	(29)	Identification name for the security kit																																														
	(30)	Security kit version																																														
	(31)	Printed page counts	Total/Copy/Printer/Fax																																													
	(32)	Scanned page counts	Total/Copy/Other																																													
	(33)	Counts by paper sizes																																														
	(34)	Fax kit information	This item is printed only when the optional fax kit is installed.																																													
	(35)	Destination information/Area information																																														
	(36)	Printable area setting																																														
	(37)	Top offset for each bin	MP tray/Cassette 2/Cassette 3/Cassette 4																																													
	(38)	Left offset for each bin	MP tray/Cassette 2/Cassette 3/Cassette 4																																													
	(39)	Margin/Page length/Page width settings	Top margin integer part/Top margin decimal part/ Left margin integer part/Left margin decimal part/ Page length integer part/Page length decimal part/ Page width integer part/Page width decimal part																																													
	(40)	Panel lock information/USB information	Panel lock 0: OFF/1: Partial lock/2: Full lock USB 0: Not installed/1: Full speed/2: Hi speed																																													
	(41)	RFID information																																														
(42)	Maintenance information																																															
Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.																																																
U001	Exiting the maintenance mode Description Exits the maintenance mode and returns to the normal copy mode. Purpose To exit the maintenance mode. Method Press the start key. The normal copy mode is entered.																																															
U002	Setting the factory default data Description Restores the machine conditions to the factory default settings. Purpose To move the mirror frame of the scanner to the position for transport (position in which the frame can be fixed). Method <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Press [MODE1(ALL)] on the touch panel.3. Press the start key. The mirror frame of the scanner returns to the position for transport.4. Turn the main power switch off and on. An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error. Refer to the table of the error codes on P.1-3-17. When ERROR 09 occurred, turn main power switch off then on, format the hard disk using maintenance item U024, and execute initialization using maintenance item U002. For other errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U002.																																															

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U003	<p>Setting the service telephone number</p> <p>Description Sets the telephone number to be displayed when a service call code is detected.</p> <p>Purpose To set the telephone number to call service when installing the machine.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The currently set telephone number is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The keys to enter the number are displayed on the touch panel. 2. Enter a telephone number (up to 15 digits). 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U004	<p>Displaying the machine number</p> <p>Description Displays the machine number.</p> <p>Purpose To check the machine number.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The currently machine number is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U005	<p>Copying without paper</p> <p>Description Simulates the copy operation without paper feed.</p> <p>Purpose To check the overall operation of the machine.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be operated. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MFP</td><td>Only the machine operates.</td></tr> <tr> <td>MFP + DP</td><td>Both the machine and DP operate (continuous operation).</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. 4. Press the system menu key. The copy mode screen is displayed. 5. Set the operation conditions required on the copy mode screen. Changes in the following settings can be made. Paper feed locations Magnifications Simplex or duplex copy mode Number of copies: in simplex copy mode, continuous copying is performed when set to 999; in duplex copy mode, continuous copying is performed regardless of the setting. Copy density Keys on the operation panel 6. To control the paper feed pulley, remove all the paper in the drawers, or the drawers. With the paper present, the paper feed pulley does not operate. 7. Press the start key. The operation starts. Copy operation is simulated without paper under the set conditions. To stop continuous operation, press the stop key. 8. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the system menu key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	MFP	Only the machine operates.	MFP + DP	Both the machine and DP operate (continuous operation).
Display	Operation						
MFP	Only the machine operates.						
MFP + DP	Both the machine and DP operate (continuous operation).						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																														
U019	<p>Displaying the ROM version</p> <p>Description Displays the part number of the ROM fitted to each PWB.</p> <p>Purpose To check the part number or to decide, if the newest version of ROM is installed.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The ROM version are displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>MAIN</td><td>Main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>MMI</td><td>Operation PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>ENGINE</td><td>Engine PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>ENGINE BOOT</td><td>Engine PWB booting</td></tr> <tr><td>SCANNER</td><td>Scanner PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>OPTION LANGUAGE</td><td>Optional language ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>DICTIONARY</td><td>-</td></tr> <tr><td>DP</td><td>Optional DP main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>LCF</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>OPTION CASSETTE</td><td>Optional paper feeder main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>DF MAIN</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet document finisher main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>DF MTRAY</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet document finisher internal tray PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>DF SADDLE</td><td>Optional centerfold main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>DF MAILBOX</td><td>Optional mailbox main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>INNER DF</td><td>Optional built-in finisher main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>SIMPLE DF MAIN</td><td>Optional document sheet finisher main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX BOOT1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX APL1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX IPL1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX BOOT2</td><td>Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX APL2</td><td>Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX IPL2</td><td>Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN	Main PWB ROM IC	MMI	Operation PWB ROM IC	ENGINE	Engine PWB ROM IC	ENGINE BOOT	Engine PWB booting	SCANNER	Scanner PWB ROM IC	OPTION LANGUAGE	Optional language ROM IC	DICTIONARY	-	DP	Optional DP main PWB ROM IC	LCF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder main PWB ROM IC	OPTION CASSETTE	Optional paper feeder main PWB ROM IC	DF MAIN	Optional 3000-sheet document finisher main PWB ROM IC	DF MTRAY	Optional 3000-sheet document finisher internal tray PWB ROM IC	DF SADDLE	Optional centerfold main PWB ROM IC	DF MAILBOX	Optional mailbox main PWB ROM IC	INNER DF	Optional built-in finisher main PWB ROM IC	SIMPLE DF MAIN	Optional document sheet finisher main PWB ROM IC	FAX BOOT1	Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)	FAX APL1	Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)	FAX IPL1	Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)	FAX BOOT2	Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)	FAX APL2	Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)	FAX IPL2	Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)
Display	Description																																														
MAIN	Main PWB ROM IC																																														
MMI	Operation PWB ROM IC																																														
ENGINE	Engine PWB ROM IC																																														
ENGINE BOOT	Engine PWB booting																																														
SCANNER	Scanner PWB ROM IC																																														
OPTION LANGUAGE	Optional language ROM IC																																														
DICTIONARY	-																																														
DP	Optional DP main PWB ROM IC																																														
LCF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder main PWB ROM IC																																														
OPTION CASSETTE	Optional paper feeder main PWB ROM IC																																														
DF MAIN	Optional 3000-sheet document finisher main PWB ROM IC																																														
DF MTRAY	Optional 3000-sheet document finisher internal tray PWB ROM IC																																														
DF SADDLE	Optional centerfold main PWB ROM IC																																														
DF MAILBOX	Optional mailbox main PWB ROM IC																																														
INNER DF	Optional built-in finisher main PWB ROM IC																																														
SIMPLE DF MAIN	Optional document sheet finisher main PWB ROM IC																																														
FAX BOOT1	Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)																																														
FAX APL1	Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)																																														
FAX IPL1	Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)																																														
FAX BOOT2	Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																														
FAX APL2	Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																														
FAX IPL2	Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																														

Maintenance item No.	Description																																				
U020	<p>Initializing all data</p> <p>Description Initializes all the backup RAM on the main PWB to return to the original settings. Refer to *1 of the maintenance mode item list about the item initialized. Also, initializes the settings with the system menu in order to restore default settings simultaneously. Reregister the fax settings since the settings are initialized when the optional fax kit is installed.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed as required.</p> <p>Caution Run the maintenance item U411 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) after initialization (see page 1-3-72).</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the destination. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>ASIA PACIFIC</td><td>Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. All data in the backup RAM is initialized. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error. When ERROR 09 occurred, turn main power switch off then on, format the hard disk using maintenance item U024, and execute initialization using maintenance item U020. For other errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U020.</p> <p>Error codes</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Codes</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>ERROR 01</td><td>Configuration initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 02</td><td>Counter initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 03</td><td>One-touch initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 04</td><td>Panel program initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 05</td><td>Event log initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 06</td><td>Account initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 07</td><td>Address book initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 08</td><td>Department initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 09</td><td>Document box initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0a</td><td>Permissibility initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0b</td><td>Job log initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 20</td><td>Engine initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 40</td><td>Scanner initialization error</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications	ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications	Codes	Description	ERROR 01	Configuration initialization error	ERROR 02	Counter initialization error	ERROR 03	One-touch initialization error	ERROR 04	Panel program initialization error	ERROR 05	Event log initialization error	ERROR 06	Account initialization error	ERROR 07	Address book initialization error	ERROR 08	Department initialization error	ERROR 09	Document box initialization error	ERROR 0a	Permissibility initialization error	ERROR 0b	Job log initialization error	ERROR 20	Engine initialization error	ERROR 40	Scanner initialization error
Display	Description																																				
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications																																				
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications																																				
ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications																																				
Codes	Description																																				
ERROR 01	Configuration initialization error																																				
ERROR 02	Counter initialization error																																				
ERROR 03	One-touch initialization error																																				
ERROR 04	Panel program initialization error																																				
ERROR 05	Event log initialization error																																				
ERROR 06	Account initialization error																																				
ERROR 07	Address book initialization error																																				
ERROR 08	Department initialization error																																				
ERROR 09	Document box initialization error																																				
ERROR 0a	Permissibility initialization error																																				
ERROR 0b	Job log initialization error																																				
ERROR 20	Engine initialization error																																				
ERROR 40	Scanner initialization error																																				



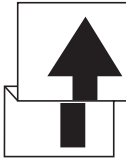
Maintenance item No.	Description																
U021	<p>Initializing counters and mode settings</p> <p>Description Initializes all settings, except those pertinent to the type of machine, namely each counter, service call history and mode setting. Also initializes backup RAM according to region specification selected in maintenance item U252 Setting the destination. Refer to *2 of the maintenance mode item list about the item initialized.</p> <p>Purpose To return the machine settings to their factory default.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. All data other than that for adjustments due to variations between machines is initialized based on the destination setting. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error. Refer to the table of the error codes on P.1-3-17. When ERROR 09 occurred, turn main power switch off then on, format the hard disk using maintenance item U024, and execute initialization using maintenance item U021. For other errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U021.</p>																
U022	<p>Initializing backup memory</p> <p>Description Initializes only the backup data for image processing. Also, initializes the settings with the system menu in order to restore default settings simultaneously when [MAIN+ENGINE] is selected. Reregister the fax settings since the settings are initialized when the optional fax kit is installed.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed as required.</p> <p>Caution Run the maintenance item U411 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) after initialization the backup data of scanner PWB or DP main PWB (see page 1-3-72).</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to initialize. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN+ENGINE</td><td>Initialize the backup data of main PWB and engine PWB.</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCANNER</td><td>Initialize the backup data of scanner PWB.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP</td><td>Initialize the backup data of DP main PWB.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. When selecting [MAIN+ENGINE], select the destination. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>ASIA PACIFIC</td><td>Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Press the start key. All data in the backup RAM is initialized. 5. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error. Refer to the table of the error codes on P.1-3-17. When ERROR 09 occurred, turn main power switch off then on, format the hard disk using maintenance item U024, and execute initialization using maintenance item U022. For other errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U022.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN+ENGINE	Initialize the backup data of main PWB and engine PWB.	SCANNER	Initialize the backup data of scanner PWB.	DP	Initialize the backup data of DP main PWB.	Display	Description	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications	ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications
Display	Description																
MAIN+ENGINE	Initialize the backup data of main PWB and engine PWB.																
SCANNER	Initialize the backup data of scanner PWB.																
DP	Initialize the backup data of DP main PWB.																
Display	Description																
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications																
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications																
ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications																

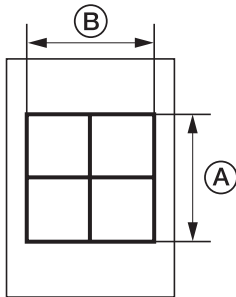
Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U024	<p>HDD formatting</p> <p>Description Initializes the HDD. In addition, the following settings are also initialized by initializing the HDD. System menu (user login administration, job accounting, address book, one-touch keys and document box etc.), shortcuts and panel programs</p> <p>Purpose To initialize the HDD when replacing the HDD after shipping.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key to initialize the hard disk. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. 																				
U030	<p>Checking motor operation</p> <p>Description Drives each motor.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each motor.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the motor to be operated. 3. Press the start key. The operation starts. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED</td><td>Paper feed motor operates</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIN</td><td>Drive motor operates</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT(FW)</td><td>Eject motor rotates forward</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT(REV)</td><td>Eject motor rotates in reverse</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. To stop operation, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	FEED	Paper feed motor operates	MAIN	Drive motor operates	EJECT(FW)	Eject motor rotates forward	EJECT(REV)	Eject motor rotates in reverse										
Display	Operation																				
FEED	Paper feed motor operates																				
MAIN	Drive motor operates																				
EJECT(FW)	Eject motor rotates forward																				
EJECT(REV)	Eject motor rotates in reverse																				
U031	<p>Checking switches for paper conveying</p> <p>Description Displays the on-off status of each paper detection switch on the paper path.</p> <p>Purpose To check if the switches for paper conveying operate correctly.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status. <p>When a switch is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch will be highlighted.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED1</td><td>Feed switch 1 (FSW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED2</td><td>Feed switch 2 (FSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED3</td><td>Feed switch 3 (FSW3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MP TRAY</td><td>MP feed switch (MPFSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>REGIST</td><td>Registration switch (RSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT</td><td>Eject switch (ESW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH</td><td>Feedshift switch (FSSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>JOB SEPARATOR</td><td>Job separator eject switch (JBESW)*</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Optional.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	FEED1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)	FEED2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)	FEED3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)	MP TRAY	MP feed switch (MPFSW)	REGIST	Registration switch (RSW)	EJECT	Eject switch (ESW)	BRANCH	Feedshift switch (FSSW)	DUPLEX	Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)	JOB SEPARATOR	Job separator eject switch (JBESW)*
Display	Switches																				
FEED1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)																				
FEED2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)																				
FEED3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)																				
MP TRAY	MP feed switch (MPFSW)																				
REGIST	Registration switch (RSW)																				
EJECT	Eject switch (ESW)																				
BRANCH	Feedshift switch (FSSW)																				
DUPLEX	Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)																				
JOB SEPARATOR	Job separator eject switch (JBESW)*																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																						
U032	<p>Checking clutch operation</p> <p>Description Turns each clutch on.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each clutch.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the clutch to be operated. 3. Press the start key. The clutch turns on for 1 s. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Clutches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PF1</td><td>Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PF2</td><td>Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PF MP TRAY</td><td>MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED1</td><td>Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED2</td><td>Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED3</td><td>Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED MP TRAY</td><td>MP feed clutch (MPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>REGIST</td><td>Registration clutch (RCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MOTOR ON</td><td>The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned ON.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>To stop motor driving, press [MOTOR ON] again.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Clutches	PF1	Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)	PF2	Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)	PF MP TRAY	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)	FEED1	Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)	FEED2	Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)	FEED3	Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)	FEED MP TRAY	MP feed clutch (MPFCL)	REGIST	Registration clutch (RCL)	DUPLEX	Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)	MOTOR ON	The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned ON.
Display	Clutches																						
PF1	Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)																						
PF2	Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)																						
PF MP TRAY	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)																						
FEED1	Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)																						
FEED2	Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)																						
FEED3	Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)																						
FEED MP TRAY	MP feed clutch (MPFCL)																						
REGIST	Registration clutch (RCL)																						
DUPLEX	Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)																						
MOTOR ON	The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned ON.																						
U033	<p>Checking solenoid operation</p> <p>Description Applies current to each solenoid in order to check its ON status.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each solenoid.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the solenoid to be operated. 3. Press the start key. The solenoid turns on for 1 s. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Solenoids</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TONER</td><td>Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH1</td><td>Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH2</td><td>Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)*</td></tr> <tr> <td>MOTOR ON</td><td>The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*Optional. To stop motor driving, press [MOTOR ON] again.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Solenoids	TONER	Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL)	BRANCH1	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)	BRANCH2	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)*	MOTOR ON	The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.												
Display	Solenoids																						
TONER	Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL)																						
BRANCH1	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)																						
BRANCH2	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)*																						
MOTOR ON	The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																															
U034	<p>Adjusting the print start timing</p> <p>Description Adjusts the leading edge registration or center line.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original. Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>LSU OUT TOP</td><td>Leading edge registration adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>LSU OUT LEFT</td><td>Center line adjustment</td></tr></table> <p>Adjustment: leading edge registration adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>TOP</td><td>Adjustment of reference value</td><td>0 to 500</td><td>245</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>MP TRAY</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray*</td><td>-250 to 250</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE</td><td>Paper feed from cassette*</td><td>-250 to 250</td><td>-30</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex mode (second)*</td><td>-250 to 250</td><td>-30</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr></table> <p>*: Setting the difference value from reference value</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">2. Press the system menu key.3. Press the start key to output a test pattern.4. Press the system menu key.5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For output example 1, decrease the value. For output example 2, increase the value. <div><p>Leading edge registration</p><p>Correct image Output example 1 Output example 2</p></div> <p>Figure 1-3-4</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">6. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U034</div><div>→</div><div>U066 (P.1-3-27)</div><div>→</div><div>U071 (P.1-3-31)</div></div>	Display	Description	LSU OUT TOP	Leading edge registration adjustment	LSU OUT LEFT	Center line adjustment	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	TOP	Adjustment of reference value	0 to 500	245	0.042 mm	MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray*	-250 to 250	0	0.042 mm	CASSETTE	Paper feed from cassette*	-250 to 250	-30	0.042 mm	DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second)*	-250 to 250	-30	0.042 mm
Display	Description																															
LSU OUT TOP	Leading edge registration adjustment																															
LSU OUT LEFT	Center line adjustment																															
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																												
TOP	Adjustment of reference value	0 to 500	245	0.042 mm																												
MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray*	-250 to 250	0	0.042 mm																												
CASSETTE	Paper feed from cassette*	-250 to 250	-30	0.042 mm																												
DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second)*	-250 to 250	-30	0.042 mm																												

Maintenance item No.	Description																																								
U034	<p>Adjustment: center line adjustment</p> <p>1. Select the item to be adjusted.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>LEFT</td><td>Adjustment of reference value</td><td>0 to 1000</td><td>490</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>MP TRAY</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 1</td><td>Paper feed from cassette 1*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 2</td><td>Paper feed from cassette 2*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 3</td><td>Paper feed from optional cassette 3*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 4</td><td>Paper feed from optional cassette 4*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex mode (second)*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr></table> <p>*: Setting the difference value from reference value</p> <p>2. Press the system menu key.</p> <p>3. Press the start key to output a test pattern.</p> <p>4. Press the system menu key.</p> <p>5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For output example 1, decrease the value. For output example 2, increase the value.</p> <div><p>Center line of printing</p><p>Correct image Output example 1 Output example 2</p></div> <p>Figure 1-3-5</p> <p>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U034</div><div>→</div><div>U067 (P.1-3-28)</div><div>→</div><div>U072 (P.1-3-33)</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	LEFT	Adjustment of reference value	0 to 1000	490	0.042 mm	MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm	CASSETTE 1	Paper feed from cassette 1*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm	CASSETTE 2	Paper feed from cassette 2*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm	CASSETTE 3	Paper feed from optional cassette 3*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm	CASSETTE 4	Paper feed from optional cassette 4*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm	DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second)*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																					
LEFT	Adjustment of reference value	0 to 1000	490	0.042 mm																																					
MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					
CASSETTE 1	Paper feed from cassette 1*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					
CASSETTE 2	Paper feed from cassette 2*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					
CASSETTE 3	Paper feed from optional cassette 3*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					
CASSETTE 4	Paper feed from optional cassette 4*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					
DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second)*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					
U035	<p>Setting the printing area for folio paper</p> <p>Description Changes the printing area for copying on folio paper.</p> <p>Purpose To prevent cropped images on the trailing edge or left/right side of copy paper by setting the actual printing area for folio paper.</p> <p>Setting</p> <p>1. Press the start key.</p> <p>2. Select the item to be set.</p> <p>3. Change the setting using the +/- keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Setting</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>LENGTH DATA</td><td>Length</td><td>330 to 356 mm</td><td>330</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH DATA</td><td>Width</td><td>200 to 220 mm</td><td>210</td></tr></table> <p>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Setting	Setting range	Initial setting	LENGTH DATA	Length	330 to 356 mm	330	WIDTH DATA	Width	200 to 220 mm	210																												
Display	Setting	Setting range	Initial setting																																						
LENGTH DATA	Length	330 to 356 mm	330																																						
WIDTH DATA	Width	200 to 220 mm	210																																						







Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U051	<p>Adjusting the deflection in the paper</p> <p>Description Adjusts the deflection in the paper.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is missing or varies randomly, or if the copy paper is Z-folded.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MP TRAY</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE</td><td>Paper feed from cassette</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex mode (second)</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>MP TRAY (THICK)</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray (thick paper)</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.5. Press the system menu key.6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value. The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection. <div><div><p>Original</p></div><div><p>Copy example 1</p></div><div><p>Copy example 2</p></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-6</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">7. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0	CASSETTE	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	0	DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	0	MP TRAY (THICK)	Paper feed from MP tray (thick paper)	-30 to 20	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																		
MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0																		
CASSETTE	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	0																		
DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	0																		
MP TRAY (THICK)	Paper feed from MP tray (thick paper)	-30 to 20	0																		

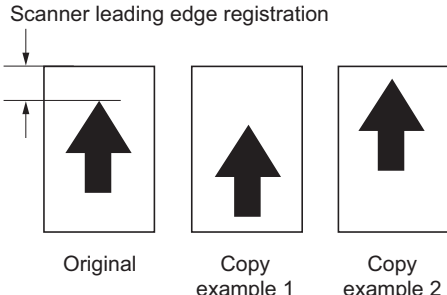
Maintenance item No.	Description																
U053	<p>Setting the adjustment of the motor speed</p> <p>Description Performs fine adjustment of the speeds of the motors.</p> <p>Purpose To adjust the speed of the respective motors when the magnification is not correct.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MAIN MOTOR</td><td>Drive motor speed adjustment</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>EJECT MOTOR</td><td>Eject motor speed adjustment</td><td>-7 to 15</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>POLYGON MOTR</td><td>Polygon motor speed adjustment</td><td>-20 to 20</td><td>-5</td></tr></table> <p>Adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the system menu key.2. Press the start key to output an A3/Ledger VTC pattern. <div><p>Correct values for an A3/Ledger output are: A = 300 ± 0.75 mm B = 260 ± 1.35 mm</p></div> <p>Figure 1-3-7</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. A: Drive motor speed adjustment Increasing the setting makes the image longer in the auxiliary scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image shorter in the auxiliary scanning direction. B: Polygon motor speed adjustment Increasing the setting makes the image shorter in the main scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image longer in the main scanning direction.5. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MAIN MOTOR	Drive motor speed adjustment	-40 to 40	2	EJECT MOTOR	Eject motor speed adjustment	-7 to 15	0	POLYGON MOTR	Polygon motor speed adjustment	-20 to 20	-5
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting														
MAIN MOTOR	Drive motor speed adjustment	-40 to 40	2														
EJECT MOTOR	Eject motor speed adjustment	-7 to 15	0														
POLYGON MOTR	Polygon motor speed adjustment	-20 to 20	-5														

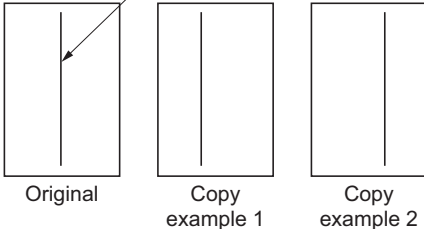
Maintenance item No.	Description								
U061	<p>Turning the exposure lamp on</p> <p>Description Turns the exposure lamp on.</p> <p>Purpose To check the exposure lamp.</p> <p>Method</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>CCD</td><td>Exposure lamp</td></tr><tr><td>CIS</td><td>CIS (optional DP exposure lamp)</td></tr></table><div><div>3. Press the start key. The selected lamp lights.</div><div>4. To turn the exposure lamp off, press the stop key.</div></div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	CCD	Exposure lamp	CIS	CIS (optional DP exposure lamp)		
Display	Description								
CCD	Exposure lamp								
CIS	CIS (optional DP exposure lamp)								
U063	<p>Adjusting the shading position</p> <p>Description Changes the shading position of the scanner.</p> <p>Purpose Used when white lines continue to appear longitudinally on the image after the shading plate is cleaned. This is due to flaws or stains inside the shading plate. To prevent this problem, the shading position should be changed so that shading is possible without being affected by the flaws or stains.</p> <p>Method</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</div></div><table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Shading position</td><td>-12 to 18</td><td>0</td><td>0.11 mm</td></tr></table><div>Increasing the setting moves the shading position toward the machine left, and decreasing it moves the position toward the machine right.</div><div>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div> <p>Supplement While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Shading position	-12 to 18	0	0.11 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step						
Shading position	-12 to 18	0	0.11 mm						

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description															
U065	<p>Adjusting the scanner magnification</p> <p>Description Adjusts the magnification of the original scanning.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if the magnification in the main scanning direction is incorrect. Make the adjustment if the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction is incorrect.</p> <p>Caution Adjust the magnification of the scanner in the following order.</p> <div><div>U053 (P.1-3-24)</div>→<div>U065 (main scanning direction)</div>→<div>U065 (auxiliary scanning direction)</div>→<div>U067 (P.1-3-28)</div>→<div>U070 (P.1-3-29)</div></div> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key.Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>MAIN SCAN ADJ</td><td>Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction</td><td>-15 to 15</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 %</td></tr><tr><td>SUB SCAN ADJ</td><td>Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction</td><td>-25 to 25</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 %</td></tr></table> <p>Adjustment: main scanning direction</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the system menu key.Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.Press the system menu key.Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><div> Original</div><div> Copy example 1</div><div> Copy example 2</div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-8</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Adjustment: auxiliary scanning direction</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the system menu key.Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.Press the system menu key.Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><div> Original</div><div> Copy example 1</div><div> Copy example 2</div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-9</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	MAIN SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	-15 to 15	0	0.1 %	SUB SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
MAIN SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	-15 to 15	0	0.1 %												
SUB SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %												







Maintenance item No.	Description															
U066	<p>Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration</p> <p>Description Adjusts the scanner leading edge registration of the original scanning.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>ADJUST DATA 1</td><td>Scanner leading edge registration</td><td>-45 to 45</td><td>0</td><td>0.11 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA2</td><td>Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)</td><td>-45 to 45</td><td>0</td><td>0.10 mm</td></tr></tbody></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.5. Press the system menu key.6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><p>Scanner leading edge registration</p><p>Original Copy example 1 Copy example 2</p></div> <p>Figure 1-3-10</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">7. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U066</div><div>→</div><div>U403 (P.1-3-69)</div><div>→</div><div>U071 (P.1-3-31)</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-70)</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA 1	Scanner leading edge registration	-45 to 45	0	0.11 mm	ADJUST DATA2	Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-45 to 45	0	0.10 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
ADJUST DATA 1	Scanner leading edge registration	-45 to 45	0	0.11 mm												
ADJUST DATA2	Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-45 to 45	0	0.10 mm												




Maintenance item No.	Description				
U067	Adjusting the scanner center line Description Adjusts the scanner center line of the original scanning. Purpose Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original. Adjustment 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted.				
	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
	ADJUST DATA 1	Scanner center line	-70 to 70	0	0.08 mm
	ADJUST DATA 2	Scanner center line (rotate copying)	-25 to 25	0	0.10 mm
	3. Press the system menu key. 4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy. 5. Press the system menu key. 6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.				
	<div><div><div>Scanner center line</div><div></div></div></div>				
	Figure 1-3-11				
	7. Press the start key. The value is set.				
	Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.				
	<div><div>U067</div><div>→</div><div>U403 (P.1-3-69)</div><div>→</div><div>U072 (P.1-3-33)</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-70)</div></div>				
	Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.				




Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U068	<p>Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP</p> <p>Description Adjusts the position for scanning originals from the DP. Performs the test copy at the four scanning positions after adjusting.</p> <p>Purpose Used when the image fogging occurs because the scanning position is not proper when the DP is used. Run U071 to adjust the timing of DP leading edge when the scanning position is changed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA</td><td>Starting position adjustment for scanning originals</td><td>-55 to 55</td><td>0</td><td>0.11 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TEST POSITION</td><td>Scanning position for the test copy originals</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td><td>0.71 mm</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Select [ADJUST DATA] of the screen for selecting an item.Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. When the setting value is increased, the scanning position moves to the right and it moves to the left when the setting value is decreased.Press the start key. The value is set.Select [TEST POSITION] of the screen for selecting an item.Select the scanning position using the +/- or numeric keys.Press the start key. The value is set.Set the original (the one which density is known) in the DP and press the system menu key. The screen for the test copy mode is displayed.Press the start key. Test copy is executed.Perform the test copy at each scanning position with the setting value from 0 to 3 and check that no black line appears and the image is normally scanned. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA	Starting position adjustment for scanning originals	-55 to 55	0	0.11 mm	TEST POSITION	Scanning position for the test copy originals	0 to 3	0	0.71 mm					
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																	
ADJUST DATA	Starting position adjustment for scanning originals	-55 to 55	0	0.11 mm																	
TEST POSITION	Scanning position for the test copy originals	0 to 3	0	0.71 mm																	
U070	<p>Adjusting the DP magnification</p> <p>Description Adjusts the DP original scanning speed.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if the magnification is incorrect in the main scanning direction or auxiliary scanning direction when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key.Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>CIS MAIN ADJ</td><td>Magnification in the main scanning direction of CIS</td><td>-25 to 25</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 %</td></tr><tr><td>CONVEY SPEED</td><td>Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD</td><td>-25 to 25</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 %</td></tr><tr><td>CIS SUB ADJ</td><td>Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CIS</td><td>-15 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.05 %</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	CIS MAIN ADJ	Magnification in the main scanning direction of CIS	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %	CONVEY SPEED	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %	CIS SUB ADJ	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CIS	-15 to 10	0	0.05 %
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																	
CIS MAIN ADJ	Magnification in the main scanning direction of CIS	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %																	
CONVEY SPEED	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %																	
CIS SUB ADJ	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CIS	-15 to 10	0	0.05 %																	

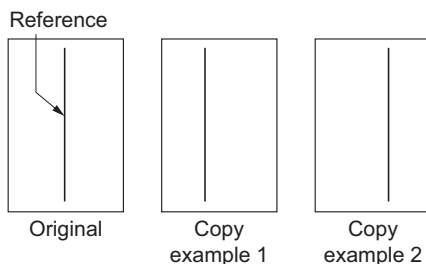
TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description
U070	<p>Adjustment: main scanning direction of CIS</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the system menu key.2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.3. Press the system menu key.4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div><div>Original</div><div>Copy example 1</div><div>Copy example 2</div></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-12</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U070</div><div>→</div><div>U071 (P.1-3-31)</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-70)</div></div> <p>Adjustment: auxiliary scanning direction of CCD/CIS</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the system menu key.2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.3. Press the system menu key.4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div><div>Original</div><div>Copy example 1</div><div>Copy example 2</div></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-13</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U070</div><div>→</div><div>U071 (P.1-3-31)</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-70)</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																														
U071	<p>Adjusting the DP scanning timing</p> <p>Description Adjusts the DP original scanning timing.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading or trailing edges of the original and the copy image when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA1</td><td>Leading edge registration (first page)</td><td>-32 to 32</td><td>0</td><td>0.09 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA2</td><td>Trailing edge registration (first page)</td><td>-32 to 32</td><td>0</td><td>0.09 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA3</td><td>Leading edge registration (second page)</td><td>-45 to 45</td><td>0</td><td>0.09 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA4</td><td>Trailing edge registration (second page)</td><td>-45 to 45</td><td>0</td><td>0.09 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA5</td><td>Leading edge registration (rotate copying)</td><td>-20 to 20</td><td>0</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr></table> <p>Adjustment: leading edge registration</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the system menu key.2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.3. Press the system menu key.4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><div><p>Original</p></div><div><p>Copy example 1</p></div><div><p>Copy example 2</p></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-14</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U071</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-70)</div></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA1	Leading edge registration (first page)	-32 to 32	0	0.09 mm	ADJUST DATA2	Trailing edge registration (first page)	-32 to 32	0	0.09 mm	ADJUST DATA3	Leading edge registration (second page)	-45 to 45	0	0.09 mm	ADJUST DATA4	Trailing edge registration (second page)	-45 to 45	0	0.09 mm	ADJUST DATA5	Leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-20 to 20	0	0.17 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																											
ADJUST DATA1	Leading edge registration (first page)	-32 to 32	0	0.09 mm																											
ADJUST DATA2	Trailing edge registration (first page)	-32 to 32	0	0.09 mm																											
ADJUST DATA3	Leading edge registration (second page)	-45 to 45	0	0.09 mm																											
ADJUST DATA4	Trailing edge registration (second page)	-45 to 45	0	0.09 mm																											
ADJUST DATA5	Leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-20 to 20	0	0.17 mm																											

Maintenance item No.	Description
U071	<p>Adjustment: trailing edge registration</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the system menu key.2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.3. Press the system menu key.4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><div><p>Original</p></div><div><p>Copy example 1</p></div><div><p>Copy example 2</p></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-15</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U071</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-70)</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U072	<p>Adjusting the DP center line</p> <p>Description Adjusts the scanning start position for the DP original.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the centers of the original and the copy image when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA1</td><td>Center line for the simplex copy mode</td><td>-39 to 39</td><td>0</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA2</td><td>Center line for the duplex copy mode</td><td>-39 to 39</td><td>0</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA3</td><td>Center line for rotate copying</td><td>-7 to 7</td><td>0</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr></table><div><div><div>3. Press the system menu key.</div><div>4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</div><div>5. Press the system menu key.</div><div>6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</div></div><div>For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</div></div><div><div><div><div>Reference</div><div></div><div><div>Original</div><div>Copy example 1</div><div>Copy example 2</div></div></div></div><p>Figure 1-3-16</p><div><div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div><p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p><div><div><div>U072</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-70)</div></div></div><p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p></div></div></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA1	Center line for the simplex copy mode	-39 to 39	0	0.17 mm	ADJUST DATA2	Center line for the duplex copy mode	-39 to 39	0	0.17 mm	ADJUST DATA3	Center line for rotate copying	-7 to 7	0	0.17 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																	
ADJUST DATA1	Center line for the simplex copy mode	-39 to 39	0	0.17 mm																	
ADJUST DATA2	Center line for the duplex copy mode	-39 to 39	0	0.17 mm																	
ADJUST DATA3	Center line for rotate copying	-7 to 7	0	0.17 mm																	

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																						
U073	<p>Checking scanner operation</p> <p>Description Simulates the scanner operation under arbitrary conditions.</p> <p>Purpose To check scanner operation.</p> <p>Start</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be operated. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>SCANNER MOTOR</td><td>Scanner operation</td></tr><tr><td>HOME POSITION</td><td>Home position operation</td></tr><tr><td>DP READING</td><td>DP scanning position operation</td></tr><tr><td>DUST CHECK</td><td>Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on</td></tr></table> <p>Setting: SCANNER MOTOR</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [SCANNER MOTOR].2. Select the item.3. Change the setting using the +/- keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Operating conditions</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>ZOOM</td><td>Magnification</td><td>25 to 400 %</td></tr><tr><td>SIZE</td><td>Original size</td><td>See below.</td></tr><tr><td>LAMP</td><td>On and off of the exposure lamp</td><td>0 (off) or 1 (on)</td></tr></table> <p>Original sizes for each setting in SIZE</p> <table><tr><th>Setting</th><th>Paper size</th><th>Setting</th><th>Paper size</th></tr><tr><td>5000</td><td>A4</td><td>5000</td><td>A5R</td></tr><tr><td>4300</td><td>B5</td><td>7800</td><td>Folio</td></tr><tr><td>5100</td><td>11" x 8 1/2"</td><td>10200</td><td>11" x 17"</td></tr><tr><td>10000</td><td>A3</td><td>9000</td><td>11" x 15"</td></tr><tr><td>8600</td><td>B4</td><td>8400</td><td>8 1/2" x 14"</td></tr><tr><td>7100</td><td>A4R</td><td>6600</td><td>8 1/2" x 11"</td></tr><tr><td>6100</td><td>B5R</td><td>5100</td><td>5 1/2" x 8 1/2"</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the start key. Scanning starts under the selected conditions.5. To stop operation, press the stop key. <p>Method: HOME POSITION</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [HOME POSITION].2. Press the start key. The mirror frame of the scanner moves to the home position. <p>Method: DP READING</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [DP READING].2. Press the start key. The mirror frame of the scanner moves to the reading position. <p>Method: DUST CHECK</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [DUST CHECK].2. Press the start key. The exposure lamp lights.3. To turn the exposure lamp off, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key when scanning stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	SCANNER MOTOR	Scanner operation	HOME POSITION	Home position operation	DP READING	DP scanning position operation	DUST CHECK	Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on	Display	Operating conditions	Setting range	ZOOM	Magnification	25 to 400 %	SIZE	Original size	See below.	LAMP	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)	Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size	5000	A4	5000	A5R	4300	B5	7800	Folio	5100	11" x 8 1/2"	10200	11" x 17"	10000	A3	9000	11" x 15"	8600	B4	8400	8 1/2" x 14"	7100	A4R	6600	8 1/2" x 11"	6100	B5R	5100	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"
Display	Description																																																						
SCANNER MOTOR	Scanner operation																																																						
HOME POSITION	Home position operation																																																						
DP READING	DP scanning position operation																																																						
DUST CHECK	Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on																																																						
Display	Operating conditions	Setting range																																																					
ZOOM	Magnification	25 to 400 %																																																					
SIZE	Original size	See below.																																																					
LAMP	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)																																																					
Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size																																																				
5000	A4	5000	A5R																																																				
4300	B5	7800	Folio																																																				
5100	11" x 8 1/2"	10200	11" x 17"																																																				
10000	A3	9000	11" x 15"																																																				
8600	B4	8400	8 1/2" x 14"																																																				
7100	A4R	6600	8 1/2" x 11"																																																				
6100	B5R	5100	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"																																																				

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U074	<p>Adjusting the DP input light luminosity</p> <p>Description Adjusts the luminosity of the exposure lamp for scanning originals from the DP.</p> <p>Purpose Used if the exposure amount differs significantly between when scanning an original on the contact glass and when scanning an original from the DP.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>R</td><td>DP input light luminosity of R image</td><td>-12 to 12</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>G</td><td>DP input light luminosity of G image</td><td>-12 to 12</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>B</td><td>DP input light luminosity of B image</td><td>-12 to 12</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. Increasing the setting makes the luminosity higher, and decreasing it makes the luminosity lower.4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Supplement While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	R	DP input light luminosity of R image	-12 to 12	0	G	DP input light luminosity of G image	-12 to 12	0	B	DP input light luminosity of B image	-12 to 12	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting														
R	DP input light luminosity of R image	-12 to 12	0														
G	DP input light luminosity of G image	-12 to 12	0														
B	DP input light luminosity of B image	-12 to 12	0														
U080	<p>Setting the economy mode</p> <p>Description Sets the level in the economy mode.</p> <p>Purpose To increase or decrease the image density in the eco-print mode.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select [ADJUST DATA]. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Exposure is toner economy mode</td><td>-12 to 0</td><td>-6</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. Increasing the setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter.4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Supplement While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Exposure is toner economy mode	-12 to 0	-6										
Description	Setting range	Initial setting															
Exposure is toner economy mode	-12 to 0	-6															

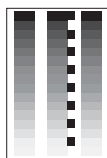

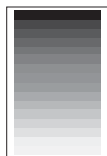
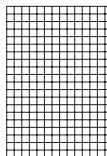
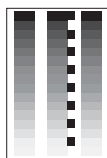

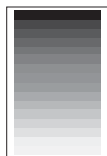
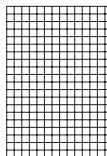
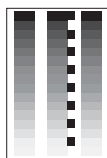

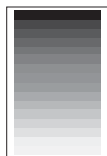
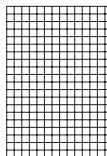
TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																									
U081	<p>Adjusting the correct exposure</p> <p>Description Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode, text mode or photo mode.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed as required.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MIX ADJ</td><td>Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode</td><td>-5 to 5</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>TEXT ADJ</td><td>Adjusts the correct exposure in text mode</td><td>-5 to 5</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>PHOTO ADJ</td><td>Adjusts the correct exposure in photo mode</td><td>-5 to 5</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. Increasing the setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter.4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Supplement While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>				Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MIX ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode	-5 to 5	0	TEXT ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text mode	-5 to 5	0	PHOTO ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in photo mode	-5 to 5	0						
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																							
MIX ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode	-5 to 5	0																							
TEXT ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text mode	-5 to 5	0																							
PHOTO ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in photo mode	-5 to 5	0																							
U087	<p>Setting DP reading position modification operation</p> <p>Description The presence or absence of dust is determined by comparing the scan data of the original trailing edge and that taken after the original is conveyed past the DP original scanning position. If dust is identified, the DP original scanning position is adjusted for the following originals.</p> <p>Purpose When using optional DP, to solve the problem when black lines occurs due to the dust with respect to original reading position.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>CCD</td><td>Setting of standard data when dust is detected.</td></tr><tr><td>BLACK</td><td>Initialization of original reading position.</td></tr></table> <p>Setting: standard data when dust is detected</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be set.2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>CCD R</td><td>Lowest density of the R regard as the dust.</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>175</td></tr><tr><td>CCD G</td><td>Lowest density of the G regard as the dust.</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>170</td></tr><tr><td>CCD B</td><td>Lowest density of the B regard as the dust.</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>160</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Setting: Initialization of original reading position</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [CLEAR].2. Press the start key. The setting is cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>				Display	Description	CCD	Setting of standard data when dust is detected.	BLACK	Initialization of original reading position.	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	CCD R	Lowest density of the R regard as the dust.	0 to 255	175	CCD G	Lowest density of the G regard as the dust.	0 to 255	170	CCD B	Lowest density of the B regard as the dust.	0 to 255	160
Display	Description																									
CCD	Setting of standard data when dust is detected.																									
BLACK	Initialization of original reading position.																									
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																							
CCD R	Lowest density of the R regard as the dust.	0 to 255	175																							
CCD G	Lowest density of the G regard as the dust.	0 to 255	170																							
CCD B	Lowest density of the B regard as the dust.	0 to 255	160																							

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U089	<p>Outputting a MIP-PG pattern</p> <p>Description Selects and outputs the MIP-PG pattern created in the machine.</p> <p>Purpose To check copier status other than scanner when adjusting image printing, using MIP-PG pattern output (without scanning).</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the MIP-PG pattern to be output and press the start key. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>PG pattern to be output</th><th>Purpose</th></tr><tr><td>GRAYSCALE</td><td></td><td>To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics.</td></tr><tr><td>MONO-LEVEL</td><td></td><td>To check the drum quality.</td></tr><tr><td>256-LEVEL</td><td></td><td>To check resolution reproducibility in printing.</td></tr><tr><td>1 dot-LINE</td><td></td><td>To check fine line reproducibility. To adjust the position of the laser scanner unit (lateral squareness)</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. To change the output conditions of MONO-LEVEL and 1dot-LINE, use the +/- or numeric keys to change the preset values and press the start key to register the setting. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Output density of MONO-LEVEL</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>1dot-LINE</td><td>0 to 21</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the system menu key.5. Press the start key. A MIP-PG pattern is output.6. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the system menu key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose	GRAYSCALE		To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics.	MONO-LEVEL		To check the drum quality.	256-LEVEL		To check resolution reproducibility in printing.	1 dot-LINE		To check fine line reproducibility. To adjust the position of the laser scanner unit (lateral squareness)	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Output density of MONO-LEVEL	0 to 255	0	1dot-LINE	0 to 21	0
Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose																							
GRAYSCALE		To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics.																							
MONO-LEVEL		To check the drum quality.																							
256-LEVEL		To check resolution reproducibility in printing.																							
1 dot-LINE		To check fine line reproducibility. To adjust the position of the laser scanner unit (lateral squareness)																							
Description	Setting range	Initial setting																							
Output density of MONO-LEVEL	0 to 255	0																							
1dot-LINE	0 to 21	0																							

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U093	<p>Setting the exposure density gradient</p> <p>Description Changes the exposure density gradient in the manual density mode, depending on respective image quality modes.</p> <p>Purpose To set how the image density is altered by a change of one step in the manual density adjustment for respective image quality modes. Also used to make copy images darker or lighter.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the image quality mode. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MIXED</td><td>Density in text and photo mode</td></tr><tr><td>TEXT</td><td>Density in text mode</td></tr><tr><td>PHOTO</td><td>Density in photo mode</td></tr></table> <p>Setting: Density in text and photo mode</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be set.2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MIXED DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>MIXED LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.</p> <div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-17</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Setting: Density in text mode</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be set.2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>TEXT DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>TEXT LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.	Display	Description	MIXED	Density in text and photo mode	TEXT	Density in text mode	PHOTO	Density in photo mode	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MIXED DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	MIXED LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0
Display	Description																																
MIXED	Density in text and photo mode																																
TEXT	Density in text mode																																
PHOTO	Density in photo mode																																
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																														
MIXED DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																														
MIXED LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																														
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																														
TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																														
TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																														

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U093	<p>Setting: Density in photo mode</p> <p>1. Select the item to be set.</p> <p>2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>PHOTO DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>PHOTO LIGTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.</p> <p>Supplement</p> <p>While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p>Completion</p> <p>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	PHOTO DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	PHOTO LIGTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting										
PHOTO DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0										
PHOTO LIGTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0										

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																									
U099	<p>Adjusting original size detection</p> <p>Description Checks the operation of the original size detection sensor and sets the sensing threshold value.</p> <p>Purpose To adjust the sensitiveness of the sensor and size judgement time if the original size detection sensor malfunctions frequently due to incident light or the like.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item. The screen for executing each item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>DATA</td><td>Displaying detection sensor transmission data</td></tr><tr><td>B/W LEVEL</td><td>Setting detection sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time</td></tr></table> <p>Method to display the data for the sensor</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Place the original and close the original cover or DP. The detection sensor transmission data is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA R</td><td>Detected original width size (R)</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA G</td><td>Detected original width size (G)</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA B</td><td>Detected original width size (B)</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA</td><td>Detected original width size</td></tr><tr><td>SIZE SW L</td><td>Displays the original detection switch ON/OFF</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">2. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Setting detection sensor threshold value</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select an item to be set.2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL R</td><td>Original threshold value (R)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>105</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL G</td><td>Original threshold value (G)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>105</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL B</td><td>Original threshold value (B)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>105</td></tr><tr><td>LIGHT SOURCE R</td><td>Light source threshold value (R)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>60</td></tr><tr><td>LIGHT SOURCE G</td><td>Light source threshold value (G)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>60</td></tr><tr><td>LIGHT SOURCE B</td><td>Light source threshold value (B)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>60</td></tr><tr><td>WAIT TIME</td><td>Time from activation of the original detection switch (ODSW) to original size judgment</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>150</td></tr><tr><td>A4R AREA</td><td>Original size detection position display (mm)</td><td>220/240</td><td>240</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>				Display	Description	DATA	Displaying detection sensor transmission data	B/W LEVEL	Setting detection sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time	Display	Description	ORIGINAL AREA R	Detected original width size (R)	ORIGINAL AREA G	Detected original width size (G)	ORIGINAL AREA B	Detected original width size (B)	ORIGINAL AREA	Detected original width size	SIZE SW L	Displays the original detection switch ON/OFF	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	ORIGINAL R	Original threshold value (R)	0 to 255	105	ORIGINAL G	Original threshold value (G)	0 to 255	105	ORIGINAL B	Original threshold value (B)	0 to 255	105	LIGHT SOURCE R	Light source threshold value (R)	0 to 255	60	LIGHT SOURCE G	Light source threshold value (G)	0 to 255	60	LIGHT SOURCE B	Light source threshold value (B)	0 to 255	60	WAIT TIME	Time from activation of the original detection switch (ODSW) to original size judgment	0 to 255	150	A4R AREA	Original size detection position display (mm)	220/240	240
Display	Description																																																									
DATA	Displaying detection sensor transmission data																																																									
B/W LEVEL	Setting detection sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time																																																									
Display	Description																																																									
ORIGINAL AREA R	Detected original width size (R)																																																									
ORIGINAL AREA G	Detected original width size (G)																																																									
ORIGINAL AREA B	Detected original width size (B)																																																									
ORIGINAL AREA	Detected original width size																																																									
SIZE SW L	Displays the original detection switch ON/OFF																																																									
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																																							
ORIGINAL R	Original threshold value (R)	0 to 255	105																																																							
ORIGINAL G	Original threshold value (G)	0 to 255	105																																																							
ORIGINAL B	Original threshold value (B)	0 to 255	105																																																							
LIGHT SOURCE R	Light source threshold value (R)	0 to 255	60																																																							
LIGHT SOURCE G	Light source threshold value (G)	0 to 255	60																																																							
LIGHT SOURCE B	Light source threshold value (B)	0 to 255	60																																																							
WAIT TIME	Time from activation of the original detection switch (ODSW) to original size judgment	0 to 255	150																																																							
A4R AREA	Original size detection position display (mm)	220/240	240																																																							

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U100	<p>Setting the main high voltage</p> <p>Description Performs main charging.</p> <p>Purpose To check main charging.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be operated.3. Press the start key. The selected operation starts. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MC ON</td><td>Turning the main charger on</td></tr><tr><td>LASER ON/OFF</td><td>Turning the main charger on and the laser scanner unit on and off</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. To stop operation, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key when main charger output stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MC ON	Turning the main charger on	LASER ON/OFF	Turning the main charger on and the laser scanner unit on and off																		
Display	Description																								
MC ON	Turning the main charger on																								
LASER ON/OFF	Turning the main charger on and the laser scanner unit on and off																								
U101	<p>Setting the other high voltages</p> <p>Description Sets the developing bias control voltage, the transfer control voltage, and the separation control voltage or checks the output of these voltages.</p> <p>Purpose To check the developing bias, the transfer voltage and the separation voltage or to take measures against drop of image density or background fog.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set.3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>DEV BIAS</td><td>Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation</td><td>20 to 32</td><td>28</td></tr><tr><td>DEV SBIAS</td><td>Developing shift bias potential at image formation</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>DEV DUTY</td><td>Developing bias AC component duty at image formation</td><td>0 to 100</td><td>50</td></tr><tr><td>TC DATA</td><td>Transfer control voltage</td><td>0 to 300</td><td>130</td></tr><tr><td>SC DATA</td><td>Separation control voltage</td><td>0 to 60</td><td>20</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the DEV BIAS setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter. Increasing the DEV SBIAS setting makes the image darker. Increasing the DEV DUTY setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker. Increasing the TC DATA setting makes the transfer voltage higher, and decreasing it makes the voltage lower. Increasing the SC DATA setting makes the separation voltage higher, and decreasing it makes the voltage lower.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	DEV BIAS	Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation	20 to 32	28	DEV SBIAS	Developing shift bias potential at image formation	0 to 3	1	DEV DUTY	Developing bias AC component duty at image formation	0 to 100	50	TC DATA	Transfer control voltage	0 to 300	130	SC DATA	Separation control voltage	0 to 60	20
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																						
DEV BIAS	Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation	20 to 32	28																						
DEV SBIAS	Developing shift bias potential at image formation	0 to 3	1																						
DEV DUTY	Developing bias AC component duty at image formation	0 to 100	50																						
TC DATA	Transfer control voltage	0 to 300	130																						
SC DATA	Separation control voltage	0 to 60	20																						

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U102	<p>Setting the cleaning interval for the main charger</p> <p>Description Changes the intervals at which the main charger is cleaned.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting when the background is visible.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Main charger cleaning operation intervals</td><td>0 to 20 (unit: 1000 sheets)</td><td>5</td></tr></table> <p>When set to 0, the cleaning for the main charger is not operated.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Main charger cleaning operation intervals	0 to 20 (unit: 1000 sheets)	5						
Description	Setting range	Initial setting											
Main charger cleaning operation intervals	0 to 20 (unit: 1000 sheets)	5											
U109	<p>Displaying the drum type</p> <p>Description Displays the drum surface potential set as EEPROM of the drum unit.</p> <p>Purpose To check the drum surface potential.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. Drum surface potential (V) is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>												
U110	<p>Checking the drum count</p> <p>Description Displays the drum counts for checking.</p> <p>Purpose To check the drum status.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The drum counter count is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>												
U112	<p>Setting toner refresh operation</p> <p>Description Sets the toner refresh operation time and the developing bias on time at power on and after copying.</p> <p>Purpose To change the toner refresh operation time and the developing bias on time at power on and after copying if image flow level is low.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set.3. Change the setting using the +/- keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>ON TIME(SEC)</td><td>Toner refresh operation time</td><td>50 to 150 (sec)</td><td>120</td></tr><tr><td>BIAS TIME(MSEC)</td><td>Developing bias on time</td><td>500 to 1000 (msec)</td><td>700 (30 ppm) 540 (40/50 ppm)</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	ON TIME(SEC)	Toner refresh operation time	50 to 150 (sec)	120	BIAS TIME(MSEC)	Developing bias on time	500 to 1000 (msec)	700 (30 ppm) 540 (40/50 ppm)
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting										
ON TIME(SEC)	Toner refresh operation time	50 to 150 (sec)	120										
BIAS TIME(MSEC)	Developing bias on time	500 to 1000 (msec)	700 (30 ppm) 540 (40/50 ppm)										

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U114	<p>Setting separation charger mode</p> <p>Description Sets the separation charger mode.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting if the fuser offset or carrier leaking occurs.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MODE</td><td>Separation charger mode</td><td>0 to 255 (0 to 3)*</td><td>3</td></tr></table> <p>*: Entering a value other than 0 to 3 will engage the MODE3 (value 3) separation mode.</p> <p>Details on the modes</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MODE0 (Value 0)</td><td>Full page separation for both first and second pages</td></tr><tr><td>MODE1 (Value 1)</td><td>First page: Separation on leading and trailing edges Second page: Full page separation</td></tr><tr><td>MODE2 (Value 2)</td><td>Full page separation is activated for both first and second pages provided the ambient temperature is less than 19°C/66.2°F. First page: Separation is activated for both leading and trailing edges, second page: Full page separation, provided the ambient temperature is more than 20°C/68°F.</td></tr><tr><td>MODE3 (Value 3)</td><td>Separation is activated on both leading and trailing edges for both first and second pages</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MODE	Separation charger mode	0 to 255 (0 to 3)*	3	Display	Description	MODE0 (Value 0)	Full page separation for both first and second pages	MODE1 (Value 1)	First page: Separation on leading and trailing edges Second page: Full page separation	MODE2 (Value 2)	Full page separation is activated for both first and second pages provided the ambient temperature is less than 19°C/66.2°F. First page: Separation is activated for both leading and trailing edges, second page: Full page separation, provided the ambient temperature is more than 20°C/68°F.	MODE3 (Value 3)	Separation is activated on both leading and trailing edges for both first and second pages
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																
MODE	Separation charger mode	0 to 255 (0 to 3)*	3																
Display	Description																		
MODE0 (Value 0)	Full page separation for both first and second pages																		
MODE1 (Value 1)	First page: Separation on leading and trailing edges Second page: Full page separation																		
MODE2 (Value 2)	Full page separation is activated for both first and second pages provided the ambient temperature is less than 19°C/66.2°F. First page: Separation is activated for both leading and trailing edges, second page: Full page separation, provided the ambient temperature is more than 20°C/68°F.																		
MODE3 (Value 3)	Separation is activated on both leading and trailing edges for both first and second pages																		
U117	<p>Checking the drum number</p> <p>Description Displays the drum number.</p> <p>Purpose To check the drum number.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The drum number is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																		
U118	<p>Displaying the drum history</p> <p>Description Displays the past record of machine number and the drum counter.</p> <p>Purpose To check the count value of machine number and the drum counter.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. Past record of 5 cases is displayed.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MACHINE No.1 to 5</td><td>Past record of machine number</td></tr><tr><td>COUNT 1 to 5</td><td>Past record of drum counter</td></tr></table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MACHINE No.1 to 5	Past record of machine number	COUNT 1 to 5	Past record of drum counter												
Display	Description																		
MACHINE No.1 to 5	Past record of machine number																		
COUNT 1 to 5	Past record of drum counter																		

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U130	<p>Initial setting for the developing unit</p> <p>Description Replenishes toner to the developing unit to a certain level from the toner container that has been installed.</p> <p>Purpose To operate when installing the machine or replacing the developing unit.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press the start key. Toner installation is started and the output value of the sensor and execution time are displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TONER SENSOR</td><td>Output value of the sensor</td></tr> <tr> <td>TIME(SEC)</td><td>Execution time</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key after initial setting is complete. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	TONER SENSOR	Output value of the sensor	TIME(SEC)	Execution time								
Display	Description														
TONER SENSOR	Output value of the sensor														
TIME(SEC)	Execution time														
U144	<p>Setting toner loading operation</p> <p>Description Sets toner loading operation after completion of copying.</p> <p>Purpose To set whether or not toner is loaded on the drum after low density copying. Normally no change is necessary from the initial setting.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MODE0</td><td>Toner not loaded</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE1</td><td>Toner loaded after simplex or duplex copying</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE2</td><td>Toner loaded after simplex copying</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: MODE2</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MODE0	Toner not loaded	MODE1	Toner loaded after simplex or duplex copying	MODE2	Toner loaded after simplex copying						
Display	Description														
MODE0	Toner not loaded														
MODE1	Toner loaded after simplex or duplex copying														
MODE2	Toner loaded after simplex copying														
U150	<p>Checking sensors for toner</p> <p>Description Displays the on-off status of each sensor or switch related to toner.</p> <p>Purpose To check if the sensors and switches operate correctly.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch is detected, that switch is displayed in reverse. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DEVELOPER SENSOR</td><td>Toner sensor (TNS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONTAINER SET</td><td>Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONTAINER SENSOR</td><td>Toner container sensor (TCS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WASTE BOX SET</td><td>Waste toner detection switch (WTDSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WASTE BOX SENSOR</td><td>Overflow sensor (OFS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MOTOR ON</td><td>The toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>To stop motor driving, press [MOTOR ON] again.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	DEVELOPER SENSOR	Toner sensor (TNS)	CONTAINER SET	Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)	CONTAINER SENSOR	Toner container sensor (TCS)	WASTE BOX SET	Waste toner detection switch (WTDSW)	WASTE BOX SENSOR	Overflow sensor (OFS)	MOTOR ON	The toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.
Display	Switches														
DEVELOPER SENSOR	Toner sensor (TNS)														
CONTAINER SET	Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)														
CONTAINER SENSOR	Toner container sensor (TCS)														
WASTE BOX SET	Waste toner detection switch (WTDSW)														
WASTE BOX SENSOR	Overflow sensor (OFS)														
MOTOR ON	The toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.														

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U157	<p>Checking/clearing the developing drive time</p> <p>Description Displays the developing drive time for checking, or clearing a figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the toner control.</p> <p>Purpose To check the developing drive time after replacing the developing unit.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The developing drive time is displayed in minutes.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the clear key.2. Press the start key. The time is cleared. <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Enter a drive time (in minutes) using the +/- or numeric keys.2. Press the start key. The time is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																
U158	<p>Checking the developing count</p> <p>Description Displays the developing count for checking.</p> <p>Purpose To check the developing count after replacing the developing unit.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The developing counter count is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																
U161	<p>Setting the fuser control temperature</p> <p>Description Changes the fuser control temperature.</p> <p>Purpose Normally no change is necessary. However, can be used to prevent curling or creasing of paper, or solve a fuser problem on thick paper.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set.3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>DRIVE START TEMP</td><td>Driving start temperature when warm-up starts</td><td>0 to 255 (°C)</td><td>175 (30 ppm) 185 (40/50 ppm)</td></tr><tr><td>READY CONTROL T</td><td>Control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.]</td><td>0 to 255 (°C)</td><td>190 (30 ppm) 200 (40/50 ppm)</td></tr><tr><td>PRINT CONTROL T</td><td>Control temperature during printing</td><td>0 to 255 (°C)</td><td>190 (30 ppm) 200 (40/50 ppm)</td></tr></table> <p>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	DRIVE START TEMP	Driving start temperature when warm-up starts	0 to 255 (°C)	175 (30 ppm) 185 (40/50 ppm)	READY CONTROL T	Control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.]	0 to 255 (°C)	190 (30 ppm) 200 (40/50 ppm)	PRINT CONTROL T	Control temperature during printing	0 to 255 (°C)	190 (30 ppm) 200 (40/50 ppm)
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting														
DRIVE START TEMP	Driving start temperature when warm-up starts	0 to 255 (°C)	175 (30 ppm) 185 (40/50 ppm)														
READY CONTROL T	Control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.]	0 to 255 (°C)	190 (30 ppm) 200 (40/50 ppm)														
PRINT CONTROL T	Control temperature during printing	0 to 255 (°C)	190 (30 ppm) 200 (40/50 ppm)														

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U163	<p>Resetting the fuser problem data</p> <p>Description Resets the detection of a service call code indicating a problem in the fuser section.</p> <p>Purpose To prevent accidents due to an abnormally high fuser temperature.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. The fuser problem data is initialized. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. 						
U167	<p>Checking/clearing the fuser counts</p> <p>Description Displays and clears the fuser counts for checking.</p> <p>Purpose To check or clear the fuser counts after replacing the fuser unit.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The fuser counts is displayed.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the clear key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Change the count using the +/- or numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The count is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U196	<p>Turning the fuser heater on</p> <p>Description Turns the fuser heater M or S on.</p> <p>Purpose To check fuser heaters turning on.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the heater to be turned on. 3. Press the start key. The selected heater turns on for 2 s and then turns off. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN</td><td>Fuser heater M (FH-M)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB</td><td>Fuser heater S (FH-S)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key when fuser heaters M and S are off. The screen for selecting the maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN	Fuser heater M (FH-M)	SUB	Fuser heater S (FH-S)
Display	Description						
MAIN	Fuser heater M (FH-M)						
SUB	Fuser heater S (FH-S)						

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U199	<p>Checking the fuser temperature</p> <p>Description Displays the fuser temperature, the ambient temperature and the absolute humidity.</p> <p>Purpose To check the fuser temperature, the ambient temperature and the absolute humidity.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The fuser temperature and ambient temperature are displayed in centigrade (°C) and the absolute humidity is displayed in percentage (%).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FIX CENTER TEMP</td><td>Fuser center temperature (°C)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FIX EDGE TEMP</td><td>Fuser edge temperature (°C)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SURROUND TEMP</td><td>Ambient temperature (°C)</td></tr> <tr> <td>HUMIDITY</td><td>Absolute humidity (%)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FIX CENTER TEMP	Fuser center temperature (°C)	FIX EDGE TEMP	Fuser edge temperature (°C)	SURROUND TEMP	Ambient temperature (°C)	HUMIDITY	Absolute humidity (%)
Display	Description										
FIX CENTER TEMP	Fuser center temperature (°C)										
FIX EDGE TEMP	Fuser edge temperature (°C)										
SURROUND TEMP	Ambient temperature (°C)										
HUMIDITY	Absolute humidity (%)										
U200	<p>Turning all LEDs on</p> <p>Description Turns all the LEDs on the operation panel on.</p> <p>Purpose To check if all the LEDs on the operation panel light.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. All the LEDs on the operation panel light. 2. Press the stop key. The LEDs turns off. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>										
U201	<p>Initializing the touch panel</p> <p>Description Automatically correct the positions of the X- and Y-axes of the touch panel.</p> <p>Purpose To automatically correct the display positions on the touch panel after it is replaced.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the [INITIALIZE] or [CHECK]. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INITIALIZE</td><td>Adjusts the display on the panel automatically.</td></tr> <tr> <td>CHECK</td><td>Checks the display on the touch panel.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: INITIALIZE</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press the center of the + keys. Be sure to press three + keys displayed in order. The touch panel is adjusted automatically. 3. Press the indicated three + keys, and then check the display. 4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. <p>Method: CHECK</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press the indicated three + keys, and then check the display. When adjusting the display, press [INITIALIZE] to execute the adjustment automatically. 3. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	INITIALIZE	Adjusts the display on the panel automatically.	CHECK	Checks the display on the touch panel.				
Display	Description										
INITIALIZE	Adjusts the display on the panel automatically.										
CHECK	Checks the display on the touch panel.										
U202	<p>Setting the KMAS host monitoring system</p> <p>Description Initializes or operates the KMAS host monitoring system. This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.</p>										

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U203	<p>Checking DP operation</p> <p>Description Simulates the original conveying operation separately in the optional DP.</p> <p>Purpose To check the DP operation.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Place an original in the DP if running this simulation with paper.3. Select the item to be operated.4. When selecting [TEST2], to set the magnification using the +/- keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Operation</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>TEST 1(NON P)</td><td>Without paper</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>TEST 2</td><td>With paper</td><td>100 to 200 (%)</td><td>100</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Press the start key. The operation starts.6. To stop continuous operation, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	Setting range	Initial setting	TEST 1(NON P)	Without paper	-	-	TEST 2	With paper	100 to 200 (%)	100
Display	Operation	Setting range	Initial setting										
TEST 1(NON P)	Without paper	-	-										
TEST 2	With paper	100 to 200 (%)	100										
U204	<p>Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter</p> <p>Description Sets the presence or absence of the optional key card or key counter.</p> <p>Purpose To run this maintenance item if a key card or key counter is installed.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>KEY-DEVICE</td><td>Sets the presence or absence of the key card or key counter</td></tr><tr><td>MESSAGE</td><td>Sets the message when optional equipment is not installed</td></tr></table> <p>Setting: KEY-DEVICE</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select ON or OFF. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ON</td><td>The key card or the key counter is installed</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not installed</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">2. Press the start key. The setting is set.3. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Setting: MESSAGE</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the [COUNTER], [CARD] or [COIN].2. Press the start key. The setting is set.3. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	KEY-DEVICE	Sets the presence or absence of the key card or key counter	MESSAGE	Sets the message when optional equipment is not installed	Display	Description	ON	The key card or the key counter is installed	OFF	Not installed
Display	Description												
KEY-DEVICE	Sets the presence or absence of the key card or key counter												
MESSAGE	Sets the message when optional equipment is not installed												
Display	Description												
ON	The key card or the key counter is installed												
OFF	Not installed												
U206	<p>Setting the presence or absence of the coin vender</p> <p>Description Sets the presence or absence of the optional coin vender. Also sets the details for coin vender operation, such as mode and unit price. This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.</p>												

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U207	<p>Checking the operation panel keys</p> <p>Description Checks operation of the operation panel keys.</p> <p>Purpose To check operation of all the keys and LEDs on the operation panel.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. COUNT0 is displayed and the leftmost LED on the operation panel lights. 3. As the keys lined up in the same line as the lit indicator are pressed in the order from the top to the bottom, the figure shown on the touch panel increases in increments of 1. When all the keys in that line are pressed and if there are any LEDs corresponding to the keys in the line on the immediate right, the top LED in that line will light. 4. When all the keys on the operation panel have been pressed, all the LEDs light for up to 10 seconds. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>														
U208	<p>Setting the paper size for the paper feeder</p> <p>Description Sets the size of paper used in optional 3000-sheet paper feeder.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting when the size of paper used in the paper feeder is changed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the paper size (A4, B5 or Letter). Initial setting: Letter (Inch specifications)/A4 (Metric specifications) 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. 														
U220	<p>Setting the trial functions</p> <p>Description Enables the trial of USB functions by period limitation.</p> <p>Purpose To try USB activation functions.</p> <p>Method Press the start key.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FUNCTION</td><td>Selecting trial functions</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRIAL STATUS</td><td>Displays the current setting (1: Under trial, 0: Not trial)</td></tr> <tr> <td>COUPON COUNT</td><td>Displays remaining times</td></tr> <tr> <td>TIME LIMIT</td><td>Displays the end term of the function under present trial</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRIAL START</td><td>Starts the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRIAL STOP</td><td>Stops the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Setting: FUNCTION</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [FUNCTION]. 2. Select the function using the +/- keys. 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. [COUPON COUNT], [TIME LIMIT], [TRIAL START] and [TRIAL STOP] are displayed. <p>Method: TRIAL START</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [TRIAL START]. 2. Press the start key. Trial of the function selected with [FUNCTION] is started. The display of [COUPON COUNT] decreases one. The display of [TIME LIMIT] will be the date of the present date plus 30 days. <p>Method: TRIAL STOP</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [TRIAL STOP]. 2. Press the start key. Trial of the function selected with [FUNCTION] is stopped. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FUNCTION	Selecting trial functions	TRIAL STATUS	Displays the current setting (1: Under trial, 0: Not trial)	COUPON COUNT	Displays remaining times	TIME LIMIT	Displays the end term of the function under present trial	TRIAL START	Starts the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION	TRIAL STOP	Stops the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION
Display	Description														
FUNCTION	Selecting trial functions														
TRIAL STATUS	Displays the current setting (1: Under trial, 0: Not trial)														
COUPON COUNT	Displays remaining times														
TIME LIMIT	Displays the end term of the function under present trial														
TRIAL START	Starts the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION														
TRIAL STOP	Stops the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION														

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U223	<p>Operation panel lock</p> <p>Description Sets the operation panel lock function to ON or OFF.</p> <p>Purpose To restrict operation in the system menu on the operation panel.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Unlock</td><td>Release the lock of the operation from the system menu.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Partial Lock</td><td>Partially lock the operation from the system menu.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Lock</td><td>Entirely lock the operation from the system menu.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: Unlock</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Unlock	Release the lock of the operation from the system menu.	Partial Lock	Partially lock the operation from the system menu.	Lock	Entirely lock the operation from the system menu.		
Display	Description										
Unlock	Release the lock of the operation from the system menu.										
Partial Lock	Partially lock the operation from the system menu.										
Lock	Entirely lock the operation from the system menu.										
U234	<p>Setting punch destination</p> <p>Description Sets the destination of optional punch unit of 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To be set when installing a different punch unit from the destination of the machine.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the destination. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>AUTO</td><td>With no punch unit</td></tr> <tr> <td>JAPAN METRIC</td><td>Metric (Japan) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: INCH (Inch specifications)/EUROPE METRIC (Metric specifications)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. 	Display	Description	AUTO	With no punch unit	JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications
Display	Description										
AUTO	With no punch unit										
JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications										
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications										
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications										

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U236	<p>Setting the limit for the ejection section of the built-in finisher</p> <p>Description If the machine is equipped with an optional built-in finisher, this mode sets whether A5R/B5R/statement size paper is output to the machine eject tray or not.</p> <p>Purpose If the machine is equipped with an optional built-in finisher and if paper jams occur due to curling of paper in the built-in ejection section when two-sided copying onto A5R/B5R/statement size paper is performed, this mode is used to change the setting to ON to disable ejection to the machine eject tray.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Does not eject to the machine eject tray.</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Eject to the machine eject tray.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Does not eject to the machine eject tray.	OFF	Eject to the machine eject tray.												
Display	Description																		
ON	Does not eject to the machine eject tray.																		
OFF	Eject to the machine eject tray.																		
U237	<p>Setting finisher stack quantity</p> <p>Description Sets the number of sheets of each stack on the main tray and on the internal tray in the optional 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting when a stack malfunction has occurred.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN TRAY</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the main tray</td></tr> <tr> <td>MIDDLE TRAY</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort copying or staple copying</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Setting the number of sheets of stack on the main tray</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Setting</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>3000 sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>1500 sheets</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Setting the number of sheets of stack on the internal tray</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Setting</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>For sort copying: 10 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>For sort copying: 10 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray	MIDDLE TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort copying or staple copying	Setting	Description	0	3000 sheets	1	1500 sheets	Setting	Description	0	For sort copying: 10 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets	1	For sort copying: 10 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets
Display	Description																		
MAIN TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray																		
MIDDLE TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort copying or staple copying																		
Setting	Description																		
0	3000 sheets																		
1	1500 sheets																		
Setting	Description																		
0	For sort copying: 10 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets																		
1	For sort copying: 10 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets																		

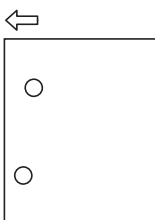
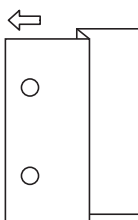
Maintenance item No.	Description																																																				
U240	<p>Checking the operation of the finisher</p> <p>Description Turns each motor and solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher ON.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each motor and solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press the start key. Select the item to be checked. The screen for executing each item is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FINISHER MOTOR</td><td>Checking the motor of the 3000-sheet document finisher</td></tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER SOL</td><td>Checking the solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIL BOX</td><td>Checking the motor and solenoid of the mailbox</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET</td><td>Checking the motor of the centerfold unit</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: Checking the motor of the 3000-sheet document finisher</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select the item to be operated. The operation starts. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Motor</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED IN MOTOR M</td><td>Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on counterwise.</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED IN MOTOR L</td><td>Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on clockwise.</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONV MOTOR H</td><td>Paper conveying motor is turned on at high speed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONV MOTOR M</td><td>Paper conveying motor is turned on at middle speed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONV MOTOR L</td><td>Paper conveying motor is turned on at low speed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT MOTOR H</td><td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT MOTOR M</td><td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT MOTOR L</td><td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB PATH MOTOR H</td><td>Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterwise.</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB PATH MOTOR M</td><td>Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise.</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE UP MOTOR</td><td>Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DOWN MTR</td><td>Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH TEST(A3)</td><td>Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH TEST(LD)</td><td>Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE FR MOTOR</td><td>Staple shift motor 1 (STSM1) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE S MOTOR</td><td>Staple shift motor 2 (STSM2) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE MOTOR</td><td>Staple motor (STM) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY MOTOR</td><td>Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH MOTOR</td><td>Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUDDLE MOTOR</td><td>Paddle motor (PDM) is turned on.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> To stop operation, press the stop key. 	Display	Description	FINISHER MOTOR	Checking the motor of the 3000-sheet document finisher	FINISHER SOL	Checking the solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher	MAIL BOX	Checking the motor and solenoid of the mailbox	BOOKLET	Checking the motor of the centerfold unit	Display	Motor	FEED IN MOTOR M	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on counterwise.	FEED IN MOTOR L	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on clockwise.	CONV MOTOR H	Paper conveying motor is turned on at high speed.	CONV MOTOR M	Paper conveying motor is turned on at middle speed.	CONV MOTOR L	Paper conveying motor is turned on at low speed.	EJECT MOTOR H	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed.	EJECT MOTOR M	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed.	EJECT MOTOR L	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed.	SUB PATH MOTOR H	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterwise.	SUB PATH MOTOR M	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise.	BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on.	BUNDLE DOWN MTR	Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on.	WIDTH TEST(A3)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) is turned on.	WIDTH TEST(LD)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) is turned on.	STAPLE FR MOTOR	Staple shift motor 1 (STSM1) is turned on.	STAPLE S MOTOR	Staple shift motor 2 (STSM2) is turned on.	STAPLE MOTOR	Staple motor (STM) is turned on.	TRAY MOTOR	Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on.	PUNCH MOTOR	Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on.	PUDDLE MOTOR	Paddle motor (PDM) is turned on.
Display	Description																																																				
FINISHER MOTOR	Checking the motor of the 3000-sheet document finisher																																																				
FINISHER SOL	Checking the solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher																																																				
MAIL BOX	Checking the motor and solenoid of the mailbox																																																				
BOOKLET	Checking the motor of the centerfold unit																																																				
Display	Motor																																																				
FEED IN MOTOR M	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on counterwise.																																																				
FEED IN MOTOR L	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on clockwise.																																																				
CONV MOTOR H	Paper conveying motor is turned on at high speed.																																																				
CONV MOTOR M	Paper conveying motor is turned on at middle speed.																																																				
CONV MOTOR L	Paper conveying motor is turned on at low speed.																																																				
EJECT MOTOR H	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed.																																																				
EJECT MOTOR M	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed.																																																				
EJECT MOTOR L	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed.																																																				
SUB PATH MOTOR H	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterwise.																																																				
SUB PATH MOTOR M	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise.																																																				
BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on.																																																				
BUNDLE DOWN MTR	Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on.																																																				
WIDTH TEST(A3)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) is turned on.																																																				
WIDTH TEST(LD)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) is turned on.																																																				
STAPLE FR MOTOR	Staple shift motor 1 (STSM1) is turned on.																																																				
STAPLE S MOTOR	Staple shift motor 2 (STSM2) is turned on.																																																				
STAPLE MOTOR	Staple motor (STM) is turned on.																																																				
TRAY MOTOR	Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on.																																																				
PUNCH MOTOR	Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on.																																																				
PUDDLE MOTOR	Paddle motor (PDM) is turned on.																																																				

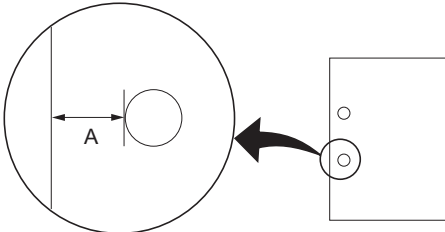
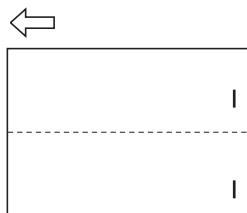
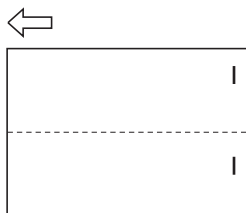
Maintenance item No.	Description																																																												
U240	<p>Method: Checking the solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher</p> <p>1. Select the item to be operated. The solenoid turns on for 1 s.</p> <table> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Solenoid</th></tr> <tr> <td>FEED IN SOL</td><td>Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>REAR DOWN SOL 1</td><td>Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>REAR DOWN SOL 2</td><td>Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB PATH SOL</td><td>Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB TRAY R SOL</td><td>Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB TRAY L SOL</td><td>Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET SOL</td><td>Feedshift solenoid 3 (FSSOL3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PADDLE SOL</td><td>Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>HOLD DOWN SOL</td><td>Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SOL</td><td>Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH SOL</td><td>Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>M-TRAY LOCK SOL</td><td>Lock solenoid (LSOL)</td></tr> </table> <p>Method: Checking the motor and solenoid of the mailbox</p> <p>1. Select the item to be operated. The operation starts.</p> <table> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Motors and solenoids</th></tr> <tr> <td>FEED IN MOTOR</td><td>Mailbox drive motor (MBDM)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH SOL 2</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 1 (TFSSOL1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH SOL 3</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 2 (TFSSOL2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH SOL 4</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 3 (TFSSOL3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH SOL 5</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 4 (TFSSOL4)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH SOL 6</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 5 (TFSSOL5)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH SOL 7</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 6 (TFSSOL6)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED IN SOL</td><td>Mail paper entry solenoid (MPESOL)</td></tr> </table> <p>2. To stop operation, press the stop key.</p> <p>Method: Checking the motor of the centerfold unit</p> <p>1. Select the item to be operated. The operation starts.</p> <table> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Motor</th></tr> <tr> <td>CONV MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold main motor (CMM)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BLADE MOTOR</td><td>Blade motor (BLM)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE UP MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DOWN MTR</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH TEST(A3)</td><td>Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH TEST(LD)</td><td>Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)</td></tr> </table> <p>2. To stop operation, press the stop key.</p> <p>Completion</p> <p>Press the stop key with the operation stopped. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Solenoid	FEED IN SOL	Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)	REAR DOWN SOL 1	Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)	REAR DOWN SOL 2	Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)	SUB PATH SOL	Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)	SUB TRAY R SOL	Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)	SUB TRAY L SOL	Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)	BOOKLET SOL	Feedshift solenoid 3 (FSSOL3)	PADDLE SOL	Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)	HOLD DOWN SOL	Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)	EJECT SOL	Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)	PUNCH SOL	Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)	M-TRAY LOCK SOL	Lock solenoid (LSOL)	Display	Motors and solenoids	FEED IN MOTOR	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM)	BRANCH SOL 2	Tray feedshift solenoid 1 (TFSSOL1)	BRANCH SOL 3	Tray feedshift solenoid 2 (TFSSOL2)	BRANCH SOL 4	Tray feedshift solenoid 3 (TFSSOL3)	BRANCH SOL 5	Tray feedshift solenoid 4 (TFSSOL4)	BRANCH SOL 6	Tray feedshift solenoid 5 (TFSSOL5)	BRANCH SOL 7	Tray feedshift solenoid 6 (TFSSOL6)	FEED IN SOL	Mail paper entry solenoid (MPESOL)	Display	Motor	CONV MOTOR	Centerfold main motor (CMM)	BLADE MOTOR	Blade motor (BLM)	BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)	BUNDLE DOWN MTR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)	WIDTH TEST(A3)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)	WIDTH TEST(LD)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)	STAPLE MOTOR	Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)
Display	Solenoid																																																												
FEED IN SOL	Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)																																																												
REAR DOWN SOL 1	Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)																																																												
REAR DOWN SOL 2	Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)																																																												
SUB PATH SOL	Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)																																																												
SUB TRAY R SOL	Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)																																																												
SUB TRAY L SOL	Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)																																																												
BOOKLET SOL	Feedshift solenoid 3 (FSSOL3)																																																												
PADDLE SOL	Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)																																																												
HOLD DOWN SOL	Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)																																																												
EJECT SOL	Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)																																																												
PUNCH SOL	Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)																																																												
M-TRAY LOCK SOL	Lock solenoid (LSOL)																																																												
Display	Motors and solenoids																																																												
FEED IN MOTOR	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM)																																																												
BRANCH SOL 2	Tray feedshift solenoid 1 (TFSSOL1)																																																												
BRANCH SOL 3	Tray feedshift solenoid 2 (TFSSOL2)																																																												
BRANCH SOL 4	Tray feedshift solenoid 3 (TFSSOL3)																																																												
BRANCH SOL 5	Tray feedshift solenoid 4 (TFSSOL4)																																																												
BRANCH SOL 6	Tray feedshift solenoid 5 (TFSSOL5)																																																												
BRANCH SOL 7	Tray feedshift solenoid 6 (TFSSOL6)																																																												
FEED IN SOL	Mail paper entry solenoid (MPESOL)																																																												
Display	Motor																																																												
CONV MOTOR	Centerfold main motor (CMM)																																																												
BLADE MOTOR	Blade motor (BLM)																																																												
BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)																																																												
BUNDLE DOWN MTR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)																																																												
WIDTH TEST(A3)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)																																																												
WIDTH TEST(LD)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)																																																												
STAPLE MOTOR	Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)																																																												

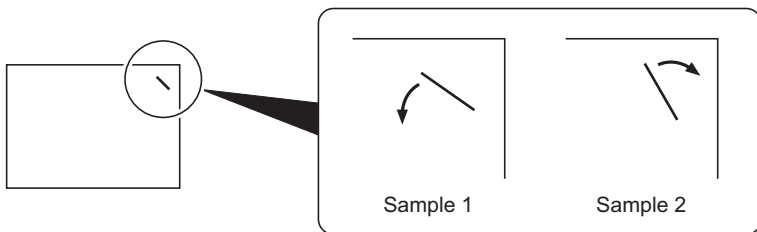
Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																
U241	<p>Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher</p> <p>Description Displays the status of each switch of the 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each switch of the 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be checked. <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td><td>Checking the switch of the 3000-sheet document finisher</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIL BOX</td><td>Checking the switch of the mailbox</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET</td><td>Checking the switch of the centerfold unit</td></tr> </table> <p>Method: Checking the switch of the 3000-sheet document finisher</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the respective switches on and off manually to check the status. When a switch is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch will be highlighted. <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr> <tr> <td>FRONT COVER SW</td><td>Front cover switch (FCSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TOP COVER SW</td><td>Top cover switch (TCSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RIGHT COVER SW</td><td>Sub tray right switch (STRSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SET SW</td><td>Joint switch (JSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET SW</td><td>Centerfold set switch (CSSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH TANK SW</td><td>Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY L-LIMIT SW</td><td>Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY U-LIMIT SW</td><td>Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY MIDDLE SW</td><td>Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PAP HOLD DOWN SW</td><td>Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>LOAD DET SW</td><td>Main tray load detection sensor (MTLDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED IN SW</td><td>Paper entry sensor (PES)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW 1</td><td>Eject switch 1 (ESW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW 2</td><td>Eject switch 2 (ESW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW 3</td><td>Eject switch 3 (ESW3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE HP SW 1</td><td>Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE HP SW 2</td><td>Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MIDDLE FEED SW1</td><td>Internal tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MIDDLE FEED SW2</td><td>Internal tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DET SW 1</td><td>Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DET SW 2</td><td>Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE UP HP SW</td><td>Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BNDL DOWN HP SW</td><td>Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP SW 1</td><td>Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP SW 2</td><td>Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE INTERF SW</td><td>Paper conveying belt position detection sensor (PCBDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>VCARRY SW</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS)</td></tr> </table>	Display	Description	FINISHER	Checking the switch of the 3000-sheet document finisher	MAIL BOX	Checking the switch of the mailbox	BOOKLET	Checking the switch of the centerfold unit	Display	Switches	FRONT COVER SW	Front cover switch (FCSW)	TOP COVER SW	Top cover switch (TCSW)	RIGHT COVER SW	Sub tray right switch (STRSW)	SET SW	Joint switch (JSW)	BOOKLET SW	Centerfold set switch (CSSW)	PUNCH TANK SW	Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)	TRAY L-LIMIT SW	Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)	TRAY U-LIMIT SW	Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)	TRAY MIDDLE SW	Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)	PAP HOLD DOWN SW	Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)	LOAD DET SW	Main tray load detection sensor (MTLDS)	FEED IN SW	Paper entry sensor (PES)	EJECT SW 1	Eject switch 1 (ESW1)	EJECT SW 2	Eject switch 2 (ESW2)	EJECT SW 3	Eject switch 3 (ESW3)	STAPLE HP SW 1	Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)	STAPLE HP SW 2	Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)	MIDDLE FEED SW1	Internal tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)	MIDDLE FEED SW2	Internal tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)	BUNDLE DET SW 1	Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)	BUNDLE DET SW 2	Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)	BUNDLE UP HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)	BNDL DOWN HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)	WIDTH HP SW 1	Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)	WIDTH HP SW 2	Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)	BUNDLE INTERF SW	Paper conveying belt position detection sensor (PCBDS)	VCARRY SW	Centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS)
Display	Description																																																																
FINISHER	Checking the switch of the 3000-sheet document finisher																																																																
MAIL BOX	Checking the switch of the mailbox																																																																
BOOKLET	Checking the switch of the centerfold unit																																																																
Display	Switches																																																																
FRONT COVER SW	Front cover switch (FCSW)																																																																
TOP COVER SW	Top cover switch (TCSW)																																																																
RIGHT COVER SW	Sub tray right switch (STRSW)																																																																
SET SW	Joint switch (JSW)																																																																
BOOKLET SW	Centerfold set switch (CSSW)																																																																
PUNCH TANK SW	Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)																																																																
TRAY L-LIMIT SW	Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)																																																																
TRAY U-LIMIT SW	Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)																																																																
TRAY MIDDLE SW	Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)																																																																
PAP HOLD DOWN SW	Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)																																																																
LOAD DET SW	Main tray load detection sensor (MTLDS)																																																																
FEED IN SW	Paper entry sensor (PES)																																																																
EJECT SW 1	Eject switch 1 (ESW1)																																																																
EJECT SW 2	Eject switch 2 (ESW2)																																																																
EJECT SW 3	Eject switch 3 (ESW3)																																																																
STAPLE HP SW 1	Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)																																																																
STAPLE HP SW 2	Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)																																																																
MIDDLE FEED SW1	Internal tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)																																																																
MIDDLE FEED SW2	Internal tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)																																																																
BUNDLE DET SW 1	Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)																																																																
BUNDLE DET SW 2	Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)																																																																
BUNDLE UP HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)																																																																
BNDL DOWN HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)																																																																
WIDTH HP SW 1	Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)																																																																
WIDTH HP SW 2	Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)																																																																
BUNDLE INTERF SW	Paper conveying belt position detection sensor (PCBDS)																																																																
VCARRY SW	Centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS)																																																																

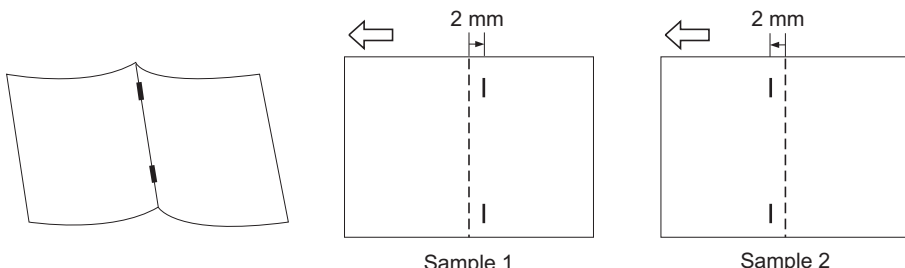
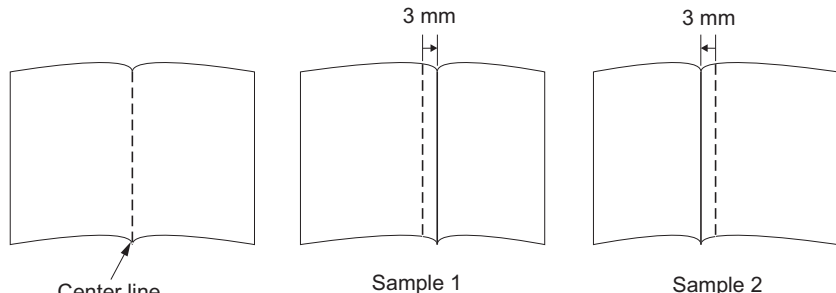
Maintenance item No.	Description																																												
U241	<p>Method: Checking the switch of the mailbox</p> <p>1. Turn the respective switches on and off manually to check the status. When a switch is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch will be highlighted.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED IN SW</td><td>Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW</td><td>Tray eject sensor (TEJS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>COVER SW</td><td>Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 1</td><td>Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 2</td><td>Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 3</td><td>Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 4</td><td>Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 5</td><td>Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 6</td><td>Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 7</td><td>Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: Checking the switch of the centerfold unit</p> <p>1. Turn the respective switches on and off manually to check the status. When a switch is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch will be highlighted.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BUNDLE UP HP SW</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BNDL DOWN HP SW</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BLADE HP SW</td><td>Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP SW U</td><td>Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP SW L</td><td>Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED IN SW</td><td>Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PAPER DET SW</td><td>Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY PAP DET SW</td><td>Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW</td><td>Centerfold eject switch (CESW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY DET SW</td><td>Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	FEED IN SW	Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)	EJECT SW	Tray eject sensor (TEJS)	COVER SW	Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)	OVER FLOW SW 1	Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)	OVER FLOW SW 2	Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)	OVER FLOW SW 3	Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)	OVER FLOW SW 4	Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)	OVER FLOW SW 5	Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)	OVER FLOW SW 6	Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)	OVER FLOW SW 7	Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)	Display	Switches	BUNDLE UP HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)	BNDL DOWN HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)	BLADE HP SW	Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)	WIDTH HP SW U	Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)	WIDTH HP SW L	Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)	FEED IN SW	Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)	PAPER DET SW	Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)	TRAY PAP DET SW	Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)	EJECT SW	Centerfold eject switch (CESW)	TRAY DET SW	Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)
Display	Switches																																												
FEED IN SW	Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)																																												
EJECT SW	Tray eject sensor (TEJS)																																												
COVER SW	Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 1	Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 2	Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 3	Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 4	Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 5	Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 6	Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 7	Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)																																												
Display	Switches																																												
BUNDLE UP HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)																																												
BNDL DOWN HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)																																												
BLADE HP SW	Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)																																												
WIDTH HP SW U	Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)																																												
WIDTH HP SW L	Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)																																												
FEED IN SW	Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)																																												
PAPER DET SW	Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)																																												
TRAY PAP DET SW	Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)																																												
EJECT SW	Centerfold eject switch (CESW)																																												
TRAY DET SW	Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)																																												
U243	<p>Checking the operation of the DP motors</p> <p>Description Turns the motors in the optional DP on.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of the DP motors.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be operated. 3. Press the start key. The operation starts. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Motors</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DP FEED MOTOR</td><td>Original feed motor (OFM) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP REG MOTOR</td><td>Original registration motor (ORM) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP CONV MOTOR</td><td>Original conveying motor (OCM) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP LIFT MOTOR</td><td>DP lift motor (DPLM) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>CIS FAN MOTOR</td><td>DP fan motor 1,2,3 (DPFM1,2,3) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP FEED MOT REV</td><td>Original feed motor (OFM) is turned on reversing.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>4. To stop operation, press the stop key.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key when operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Motors	DP FEED MOTOR	Original feed motor (OFM) is turned on.	DP REG MOTOR	Original registration motor (ORM) is turned on.	DP CONV MOTOR	Original conveying motor (OCM) is turned on.	DP LIFT MOTOR	DP lift motor (DPLM) is turned on.	CIS FAN MOTOR	DP fan motor 1,2,3 (DPFM1,2,3) is turned on.	DP FEED MOT REV	Original feed motor (OFM) is turned on reversing.																														
Display	Motors																																												
DP FEED MOTOR	Original feed motor (OFM) is turned on.																																												
DP REG MOTOR	Original registration motor (ORM) is turned on.																																												
DP CONV MOTOR	Original conveying motor (OCM) is turned on.																																												
DP LIFT MOTOR	DP lift motor (DPLM) is turned on.																																												
CIS FAN MOTOR	DP fan motor 1,2,3 (DPFM1,2,3) is turned on.																																												
DP FEED MOT REV	Original feed motor (OFM) is turned on reversing.																																												

Maintenance item No.	Description																						
U244	<p>Checking the DP switches</p> <p>Description Displays the status of the respective switches in the optional DP.</p> <p>Purpose To check if respective switches in the optional DP operate correctly.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Turn the respective switches on and off manually to check the status. <p>When a switch is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch will be highlighted.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LIFT LOW LIM SW</td><td>DP lift upper limit switch (DPLULSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>LIFT UP LIM SW</td><td>DP lift lower limit switch (DPLLLSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP SET SW</td><td>Original set switch (OSSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP PSD SW</td><td>Original size length switch (OLSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP FEED SW</td><td>Original feed switch (OFSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP REG SW</td><td>Original registration switch (ORSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CCD TMING SW</td><td>DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CIS TMING SW</td><td>DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP COVER SW</td><td>DP safety switch 2 (DPSSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP OPEN SW</td><td>DP safety switch 1 (DPSSW1)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	LIFT LOW LIM SW	DP lift upper limit switch (DPLULSW)	LIFT UP LIM SW	DP lift lower limit switch (DPLLLSW)	DP SET SW	Original set switch (OSSW)	DP PSD SW	Original size length switch (OLSW)	DP FEED SW	Original feed switch (OFSW)	DP REG SW	Original registration switch (ORSW)	CCD TMING SW	DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1)	CIS TMING SW	DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2)	DP COVER SW	DP safety switch 2 (DPSSW2)	DP OPEN SW	DP safety switch 1 (DPSSW1)
Display	Switches																						
LIFT LOW LIM SW	DP lift upper limit switch (DPLULSW)																						
LIFT UP LIM SW	DP lift lower limit switch (DPLLLSW)																						
DP SET SW	Original set switch (OSSW)																						
DP PSD SW	Original size length switch (OLSW)																						
DP FEED SW	Original feed switch (OFSW)																						
DP REG SW	Original registration switch (ORSW)																						
CCD TMING SW	DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1)																						
CIS TMING SW	DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2)																						
DP COVER SW	DP safety switch 2 (DPSSW2)																						
DP OPEN SW	DP safety switch 1 (DPSSW1)																						
U245	<p>Checking messages</p> <p>Description Displays a list of messages on the touch panel of the operation panel.</p> <p>Purpose To check the messages to be displayed.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be displayed. 3. Displays the message one by one using cursor up/down keys. Switches the language on the touch panel using the cursor left/right keys. <p>When a message number is entered with the numeric keys and then the start key is pressed, the message corresponding the specified number is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																														
U246	<p>Setting the finisher</p> <p>Description Provides various settings for the optional finisher, if furnished.</p> <p>Purpose</p> <p>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode Adjust if skewed paper conveying occurs or if the copy paper is Z-folded in punch mode.</p> <p>Adjustment of paper stop timing in the punch mode To adjust this item when the position of a punch hole is different from the specified one.</p> <p>Adjustment of front/rear side registration home position of internal tray Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the internal tray adjuster guides to paper.</p> <p>Adjusting of front and back/slanted stapling home position Adjusts the stapling position in the staple mode if the position is not proper. Provides adjustment of slanted stapling.</p> <p>Adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position of centerfold unit Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the centerfold adjuster guides to paper.</p> <p>Adjustment of booklet stapling position Adjusts the booklet stapling position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper.</p> <p>Adjustment of center folding position Adjusts the center folding position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper.</p> <p>Start</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set. The screen for setting each item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>FINISHER 3000</td><td>Adjustment of the 3000-sheet document finisher</td></tr><tr><td>BOOKLET FOLDER</td><td>Adjustment of the centerfold unit</td></tr><tr><td>FINISHER B-IN</td><td>Adjustment of the built-in finisher</td></tr></table> <p>Setting: 3000-sheet document finisher</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be set. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>PUNCH REG ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode</td></tr><tr><td>PUNCH POS ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH F HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of front side registration home position</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH R HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of rear side registration home position</td></tr><tr><td>STAPLE HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of front and back stapling home position</td></tr><tr><td>T-STAPLE HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of slanted stapling home position</td></tr></table> <p>Setting: adjustment of registration stop timing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [PUNCH REG ADJ].2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of registration stop timing</td><td>-20 to 20</td><td>0</td><td>1 ms</td></tr></table> <p>If skewed paper conveying occurs (sample 1), increase the preset value. If the copy paper is Z-folded (sample 2), decrease the preset value.</p> <div><div><p>Sample 1</p></div><div><p>Sample 2</p></div></div> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-18</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.	Display	Description	FINISHER 3000	Adjustment of the 3000-sheet document finisher	BOOKLET FOLDER	Adjustment of the centerfold unit	FINISHER B-IN	Adjustment of the built-in finisher	Display	Description	PUNCH REG ADJ	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode	PUNCH POS ADJ	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode	WIDTH F HP ADJ	Adjustment of front side registration home position	WIDTH R HP ADJ	Adjustment of rear side registration home position	STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	T-STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of registration stop timing	-20 to 20	0	1 ms
Display	Description																														
FINISHER 3000	Adjustment of the 3000-sheet document finisher																														
BOOKLET FOLDER	Adjustment of the centerfold unit																														
FINISHER B-IN	Adjustment of the built-in finisher																														
Display	Description																														
PUNCH REG ADJ	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode																														
PUNCH POS ADJ	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode																														
WIDTH F HP ADJ	Adjustment of front side registration home position																														
WIDTH R HP ADJ	Adjustment of rear side registration home position																														
STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position																														
T-STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position																														
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																												
Adjustment of registration stop timing	-20 to 20	0	1 ms																												

Maintenance item No.	Description																												
U246	<p>Setting: adjustment of the paper stop timing</p> <p>1. Select PUNCH POS ADJ. 2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of the paper stop timing</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.49 mm</td></tr></table> <p>If the distance of the position of a punch hole is smaller than the specified value A, increase the preset value. If the distance is larger than the value A, decrease the preset value.</p> <div><p>Preset value A: 5.5 ± 2 mm (inch) 9.5 ± 2 mm (metric)</p></div> <p>Figure 1-3-19</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set. 4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.</p> <p>Setting: adjustment of front/rear side registration home position</p> <p>1. Select [WIDTH F HP ADJ] or [WIDTH R HP ADJ]. 2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of front side registration home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.314 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of rear side registration home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.314 mm</td></tr></table> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set. 4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. 5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [FINISHER MOTOR], then [WIDTH TEST(A3)]. The width guides of the internal tray will move to A3-size position. 6. Pull the internal tray, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is about the guides. 7. Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.</p> <p>Setting: adjustment of front and back stapling home position</p> <p>1. Select [STAPLE HP ADJ]. 2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of front and back stapling home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.32 mm</td></tr></table> <p>When staple positions are off toward the front side of the machine (sample 1), increase the preset value. When staple positions are off toward the rear side of the machine (sample 2), decrease the preset value.</p> <div><div><p>Sample 1</p></div><div><p>Sample 2</p></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-20</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set. 4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of the paper stop timing	-10 to 10	0	0.49 mm	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of front side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.314 mm	Adjustment of rear side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.314 mm	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.32 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of the paper stop timing	-10 to 10	0	0.49 mm																										
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of front side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.314 mm																										
Adjustment of rear side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.314 mm																										
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.32 mm																										

Maintenance item No.	Description																																						
U246	<p>Setting: adjustment of slanted stapling home position</p> <p>1. Select T-STAPLE HP ADJ.</p> <p>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of slanted stapling home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.99°</td></tr></table> <p>To increase the angle for slanted stapling (sample 1), decrease the preset value. To decrease the angle for slanted stapling (sample 2), increase the preset value.</p> <div></div> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-21</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.</p> <p>Setting: centerfold unit</p> <p>1. Select the item to be set.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>WIDTH U HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of upper side registration home position</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH L HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of lower side registration home position</td></tr><tr><td>STAPLE POS ADJ1</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/letter size</td></tr><tr><td>STAPLE POS ADJ2</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/legal size</td></tr><tr><td>STAPLE POS ADJ3</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/ledger size</td></tr><tr><td>BOOKLET POS ADJ1</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A4/letter size</td></tr><tr><td>BOOKLET POS ADJ2</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for B4/legal size</td></tr><tr><td>BOOKLET POS ADJ3</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A3/ledger size</td></tr></table> <p>Setting: adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position</p> <p>1. Select [WIDTH U HP ADJ] or [WIDTH L HP ADJ].</p> <p>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of upper side registration home position</td><td>-20 to 20</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of lower side registration home position</td><td>-46 to 46</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr></table> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [BOOKLET], then [WIDTH TEST(A3)]. The width guides of the centerfold unit will move to A3-size position.</p> <p>6. Pull the centerfold unit, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is abut the guides.</p> <p>7. Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.99°	Display	Description	WIDTH U HP ADJ	Adjustment of upper side registration home position	WIDTH L HP ADJ	Adjustment of lower side registration home position	STAPLE POS ADJ1	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/letter size	STAPLE POS ADJ2	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/legal size	STAPLE POS ADJ3	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/ledger size	BOOKLET POS ADJ1	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/letter size	BOOKLET POS ADJ2	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/legal size	BOOKLET POS ADJ3	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/ledger size	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of upper side registration home position	-20 to 20	0	0.1 mm	Adjustment of lower side registration home position	-46 to 46	0	0.1 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																				
Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.99°																																				
Display	Description																																						
WIDTH U HP ADJ	Adjustment of upper side registration home position																																						
WIDTH L HP ADJ	Adjustment of lower side registration home position																																						
STAPLE POS ADJ1	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/letter size																																						
STAPLE POS ADJ2	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/legal size																																						
STAPLE POS ADJ3	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/ledger size																																						
BOOKLET POS ADJ1	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/letter size																																						
BOOKLET POS ADJ2	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/legal size																																						
BOOKLET POS ADJ3	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/ledger size																																						
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																				
Adjustment of upper side registration home position	-20 to 20	0	0.1 mm																																				
Adjustment of lower side registration home position	-46 to 46	0	0.1 mm																																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U246	<p>Setting: adjustment of booklet stapling position</p> <p>Make sure that the center folding position is correct after adjustment. If the position is not correct, execute the adjustment of center folding position.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the [STAPLE POS ADJ 1], [STAPLE POS ADJ 2] or [STAPLE POS ADJ 3].2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/letter size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/legal size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/ledger size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr></table> <p>When staples are placed too far right (sample 1), decrease the preset value. When staples are placed too far left (sample 2), increase the preset value. Reference value: within ± 2 mm</p> <div></div> <p style="text-align: center;">Sample 1 Sample 2</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-22</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Setting: adjustment of center folding position</p> <p>Check the booklet stapling position is correct before adjusting the center folding position.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the [BOOKLET POS ADJ1], [BOOKLET POS ADJ2] or [BOOKLET POS ADJ3].2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A4/letter size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of center folding position for B4R/legal size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A3R/ledger size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr></table> <p>When the centerfold position too far right (sample 1), increase the preset value. When the centerfold position too far left (sample 2), decrease the setting value. Reference value: within ± 3 mm</p> <div></div> <p style="text-align: center;">Center line Sample 1 Sample 2</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-23</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of center folding position for B4R/legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of center folding position for A3R/ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																														
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																														
Adjustment of center folding position for A4/letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Adjustment of center folding position for B4R/legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Adjustment of center folding position for A3R/ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U246	<p>Setting the side registration cursor stop position</p> <p>1. Select the desired cursor position.</p> <p>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>FRONT</td><td>Front side registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>REAR</td><td>Rear side registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>END</td><td>Trailing edge registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.</p> <p>Completion</p> <p>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	FRONT	Front side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	REAR	Rear side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	END	Trailing edge registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0				
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																		
FRONT	Front side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0																		
REAR	Rear side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0																		
END	Trailing edge registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0																		
U247	<p>Setting the paper feed device</p> <p>Description</p> <p>Turns on motors and clutches of optional 3000-sheet paper feeder or paper feeder.</p> <p>Purpose</p> <p>To check the operation of motors and clutches of paper feed device.</p> <p>Method</p> <p>1. Press the start key. The value varies depending to the option furnished.</p> <p>3000-sheet paper feeder</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Motor and clutches</th></tr><tr><td>LCF FEED</td><td>Paper feeder conveying motor (PFCM)</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH B</td><td>Paper feeder conveying clutch (PFCCL)</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH P1</td><td>Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH P2</td><td>Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)</td></tr></table> <p>Paper feeder</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Motor and clutches</th></tr><tr><td>DESK FEED</td><td>Paper feeder drive motor (PFDM)</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH FEED</td><td>Paper feeder feed clutch (PFFCL)</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH U</td><td>Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH L</td><td>Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)</td></tr></table> <p>2. Select the item to be operated.</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The operation starts.</p> <p>4. To stop operation, press the stop key.</p> <p>Completion</p> <p>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Motor and clutches	LCF FEED	Paper feeder conveying motor (PFCM)	CLUTCH B	Paper feeder conveying clutch (PFCCL)	CLUTCH P1	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)	CLUTCH P2	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)	Display	Motor and clutches	DESK FEED	Paper feeder drive motor (PFDM)	CLUTCH FEED	Paper feeder feed clutch (PFFCL)	CLUTCH U	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)	CLUTCH L	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)
Display	Motor and clutches																				
LCF FEED	Paper feeder conveying motor (PFCM)																				
CLUTCH B	Paper feeder conveying clutch (PFCCL)																				
CLUTCH P1	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)																				
CLUTCH P2	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)																				
Display	Motor and clutches																				
DESK FEED	Paper feeder drive motor (PFDM)																				
CLUTCH FEED	Paper feeder feed clutch (PFFCL)																				
CLUTCH U	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)																				
CLUTCH L	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)																				

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U250	<p>Setting the maintenance cycle</p> <p>Description Displays and changes the maintenance cycle.</p> <p>Purpose To check and change the maintenance cycle.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The currently set maintenance cycle is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <p>1. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Maintenance cycle</td><td>0 to 9999999</td><td>400000 (30 ppm), 500000 (40/50 ppm)</td></tr></table> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Maintenance cycle	0 to 9999999	400000 (30 ppm), 500000 (40/50 ppm)
Description	Setting range	Initial setting					
Maintenance cycle	0 to 9999999	400000 (30 ppm), 500000 (40/50 ppm)					
U251	<p>Checking/clearing the maintenance count</p> <p>Description Displays, clears and changes the maintenance count.</p> <p>Purpose To check the maintenance count. Also to clear the count during maintenance service.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The maintenance count is displayed.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <p>1. Press the clear key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.</p> <p>Setting</p> <p>1. Enter a count using the +/- or numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The count is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description																							
U252	<p>Setting the destination</p> <p>Description Switches the operations and screens of the machine according to the destination.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed after initializing the backup RAM by running maintenance item U020, in order to return the setting to the value before replacement or initialization.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the destination. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr><tr><td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr><tr><td>ASIA PACIFIC</td><td>Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set.4. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Supplement The specified initial settings are provided according to the destinations in the maintenance items below. To change the initial settings in those items, be sure to run maintenance item U021 after changing the destination.</p> <p>Initial setting according to the destinations</p> <table><tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Title</th><th>Japan</th><th>Inch</th><th>Europe Metric, Asia Pacific</th></tr><tr><td>208</td><td>Setting the paper size for the paper feeder</td><td>A4</td><td>Letter</td><td>A4</td></tr><tr><td>253</td><td>Switching between double and single counts</td><td>Single</td><td>Double</td><td>Double</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications	ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications	Maintenance item No.	Title	Japan	Inch	Europe Metric, Asia Pacific	208	Setting the paper size for the paper feeder	A4	Letter	A4	253	Switching between double and single counts	Single	Double	Double
Display	Description																							
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications																							
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications																							
ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications																							
Maintenance item No.	Title	Japan	Inch	Europe Metric, Asia Pacific																				
208	Setting the paper size for the paper feeder	A4	Letter	A4																				
253	Switching between double and single counts	Single	Double	Double																				
U253	<p>Switching between double and single counts</p> <p>Description Switches the count system for the total counter and other counters.</p> <p>Purpose Used to select, according to the preference of the user (copy service provider), if A3/Ledger paper is to be counted as one sheet (single count) or two sheets (double count).</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select double or single count. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>SINGLE COUNT</td><td>Single count for all size paper</td></tr><tr><td>DBL CNT(A3/LGR)</td><td>Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger</td></tr><tr><td>DBL COUNT(B4)</td><td>Double count for B4 size or larger</td></tr><tr><td>DBL CNT(FOL/LGL)</td><td>Double count for Folio/Legal size or larger</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: DBL CNT(A3/LGR)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	SINGLE COUNT	Single count for all size paper	DBL CNT(A3/LGR)	Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger	DBL COUNT(B4)	Double count for B4 size or larger	DBL CNT(FOL/LGL)	Double count for Folio/Legal size or larger													
Display	Description																							
SINGLE COUNT	Single count for all size paper																							
DBL CNT(A3/LGR)	Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger																							
DBL COUNT(B4)	Double count for B4 size or larger																							
DBL CNT(FOL/LGL)	Double count for Folio/Legal size or larger																							

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U260	<p>Selecting the timing for copy counting</p> <p>Description Changes the copy count timing for the total counter and other counters.</p> <p>Purpose To be set according to user (copy service provider) request. If a paper jam occurs frequently in the optional document finisher when the number of copies is counted at the time of paper ejection, copies are provided without copy counts. The copy service provider cannot charge for such copying. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made earlier. If a paper jam occurs frequently in the paper conveying or fuser sections when the number of copies is counted before the paper reaches those sections, copying is charged without a copy being made. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made later.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the copy count timing. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED</td><td>When secondary paper feed starts</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT</td><td>When the paper is ejected</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: EJECT</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FEED	When secondary paper feed starts	EJECT	When the paper is ejected
Display	Description						
FEED	When secondary paper feed starts						
EJECT	When the paper is ejected						
U265	<p>Setting OEM purchaser code</p> <p>Description Sets the OEM purchaser code.</p> <p>Purpose Sets the code when replacing the main PWB and the like.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Change the preset value using the +/- or numeric keys. 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U285	<p>Setting service status page</p> <p>Description Determines displaying the toner coverage report on reporting.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [COVERAGE]. Highlighted: ON, Non-highlighted: OFF Initial setting: ON 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U326	<p>Setting the black line cleaning indication</p> <p>Description Sets whether to display the cleaning guidance when detecting the black line.</p> <p>Purpose Displays the cleaning guidance in order to make the call for service with the black line decrease by the rubbish on the platen when scanning from the DP.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Displays the cleaning guidance</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Not to display the cleaning guidance</td></tr> <tr> <td>COUNT</td><td>Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Setting the count value</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter a count using the +/- or numeric keys. Setting range: 0 to 999 Initial setting: 8 When setting is 0, the black line cleaning indication is displayed only if the black line is detected. 2. Press the start key. The count is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Displays the cleaning guidance	OFF	Not to display the cleaning guidance	COUNT	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication
Display	Description								
ON	Displays the cleaning guidance								
OFF	Not to display the cleaning guidance								
COUNT	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication								
U328	<p>Side ejection setting</p> <p>Description Sets whether to eject to the side of the machine when an optional curl eliminator is installed.</p> <p>Purpose Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>To eject to the side of the machine</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Not to eject to the side of the machine</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. 	Display	Description	ON	To eject to the side of the machine	OFF	Not to eject to the side of the machine		
Display	Description								
ON	To eject to the side of the machine								
OFF	Not to eject to the side of the machine								




Maintenance item No.	Description						
U332	<p>Setting the size conversion factor</p> <p>Description Sets the coefficient of nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size. The coefficient set here is used to convert the black ratio in relation to the A4/Letter size and to display the result in user simulation.</p> <p>Purpose To set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Change the setting using the +/- keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Size parameter</td><td>0.1 to 3.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Size parameter	0.1 to 3.0	1.0
Description	Setting range	Initial setting					
Size parameter	0.1 to 3.0	1.0					
U341	<p>Specific paper feed location setting for printing function</p> <p>Description Sets a paper feed location specified for printer output.</p> <p>Purpose To use a paper feed location only for printer output. A paper feed location specified for printer output cannot be used for copy output.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the paper feed location for the printer. Two or more cassette can be selected.3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U342	<p>Setting the ejection restriction</p> <p>Description Sets or cancels the restriction on the number of sheets to be ejected continuously when the internal eject tray is selected as the eject location.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, sets or cancels restriction on the number of sheets.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Sets restriction on the number of sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Cancels restriction on the number of sheets</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON Details of restriction (number of sheets to be ejected continuously after the start key is pressed)</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Condition</th><th>Number of sheets</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>When no optional ejection device is installed</td><td>250</td></tr> <tr> <td>When the job separator is installed</td><td>150</td></tr> <tr> <td>When the finisher is installed</td><td>100</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Sets restriction on the number of sheets	OFF	Cancels restriction on the number of sheets	Condition	Number of sheets	When no optional ejection device is installed	250	When the job separator is installed	150	When the finisher is installed	100
Display	Description														
ON	Sets restriction on the number of sheets														
OFF	Cancels restriction on the number of sheets														
Condition	Number of sheets														
When no optional ejection device is installed	250														
When the job separator is installed	150														
When the finisher is installed	100														
U343	<p>Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode</p> <p>Description Switches the initial setting between duplex and simplex copy.</p> <p>Purpose To be set according to frequency of use: set to the more frequently used mode.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Duplex copy</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Simplex copy</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. 	Display	Description	ON	Duplex copy	OFF	Simplex copy								
Display	Description														
ON	Duplex copy														
OFF	Simplex copy														
U345	<p>Setting the value for maintenance due indication</p> <p>Description Sets when to display a message notifying that the time for maintenance is about to be reached, by setting the number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends. When the difference between the number of copies of the maintenance cycle and that of the maintenance count reaches the set value, the message is displayed. This maintenance mode is effective for only Japanese specification.</p>														

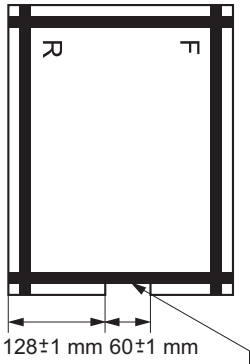
Maintenance item No.	Description																																			
U402	<p>Adjusting margins of image printing</p> <p>Description Adjusts margins for image printing.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</div></div><table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>LEAD</td><td>Printer leading edge margin</td><td>0 to 236</td><td>74</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>A</td><td>Printer left margin</td><td>-80 to 236</td><td>70</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C</td><td>Printer right margin</td><td>-118 to 236</td><td>68</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TRAIL</td><td>Printer trailing edge margin</td><td>-118 to 236</td><td>85</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TRAIL(DUP)</td><td>Printer trailing edge margin in duplex mode (second side)</td><td>-118 to 236</td><td>140</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TRAIL(MP)</td><td>Printer trailing edge margin (MP tray)</td><td>-118 to 236</td><td>55</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr></tbody></table><div><div><div>3. Press the system menu key.</div><div>4. Press the start key to output a test pattern.</div><div>5. Press the system menu key.</div><div>6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</div></div><div>Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</div></div><div><div><div><div>Printer leading edge margin (3.0±2.5 mm)</div><div>Printer left margin (2.0±2.0 mm)</div><div>Printer right margin (2.0±2.0 mm)</div><div>Printer trailing edge margin (3.0±2.5 mm)</div></div></div></div><p>Figure 1-3-24</p><div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div><p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p><div><div><div>U402</div><div>U403 (P.1-3-69)</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-70)</div></div></div><p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	LEAD	Printer leading edge margin	0 to 236	74	0.042 mm	A	Printer left margin	-80 to 236	70	0.042 mm	C	Printer right margin	-118 to 236	68	0.042 mm	TRAIL	Printer trailing edge margin	-118 to 236	85	0.042 mm	TRAIL(DUP)	Printer trailing edge margin in duplex mode (second side)	-118 to 236	140	0.042 mm	TRAIL(MP)	Printer trailing edge margin (MP tray)	-118 to 236	55	0.042 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																
LEAD	Printer leading edge margin	0 to 236	74	0.042 mm																																
A	Printer left margin	-80 to 236	70	0.042 mm																																
C	Printer right margin	-118 to 236	68	0.042 mm																																
TRAIL	Printer trailing edge margin	-118 to 236	85	0.042 mm																																
TRAIL(DUP)	Printer trailing edge margin in duplex mode (second side)	-118 to 236	140	0.042 mm																																
TRAIL(MP)	Printer trailing edge margin (MP tray)	-118 to 236	55	0.042 mm																																

Maintenance item No.	Description																									
U403	<p>Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the platen</p> <p>Description Adjusts margins for scanning the original on the contact glass.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <div><div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</div></div></div> <table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>A MARGIN</td><td>Scanner left margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>B MARGIN</td><td>Scanner leading edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C MARGIN</td><td>Scanner right margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>D MARGIN</td><td>Scanner trailing edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr></tbody></table> <div><div>3. Press the system menu key.</div><div>4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</div><div>5. Press the system menu key.</div><div>6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.</div><div>Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</div></div> <div><div><div><div>Scanner leading edge margin (3±1.5 mm)</div><div>Scanner left margin (2±1.0 mm)</div><div>Scanner right margin (2±1.0 mm)</div><div>Scanner trailing edge margin (2±1.0 mm)</div></div></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-25</p> <div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div> <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U403</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-70)</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	A MARGIN	Scanner left margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	B MARGIN	Scanner leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	C MARGIN	Scanner right margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	D MARGIN	Scanner trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																						
A MARGIN	Scanner left margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
B MARGIN	Scanner leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
C MARGIN	Scanner right margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
D MARGIN	Scanner trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																													
U404	<p>Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP</p> <p>Description Adjusts margins for scanning the original from the DP.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Caution Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U402 (P.1-3-68)</div>→<div>U403 (P.1-3-69)</div>→<div>U404</div></div> <p>Adjustment</p> <div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</div></div> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>A MARGIN</td><td>Left margin (first page)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>B MARGIN</td><td>Leading edge margin (first page)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.5</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C MARGIN</td><td>Right margin (first page)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>D MARGIN</td><td>Trailing edge margin (first page)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>4.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>A MARGIN(BACK)</td><td>Left margin (second page)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>B MARGIN(BACK)</td><td>Leading edge margin (second page)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.5</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C MARGIN(BACK)</td><td>Right margin (second page)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>D MARGIN(BACK)</td><td>Trailing edge margin (second page)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>4.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr></table> <div><div>3. Press the system menu key.</div><div>4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</div><div>5. Press the system menu key.</div><div>6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.</div><div>Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</div></div> <div><div>Leading edge margin (3±1.5 mm)</div><div>Left margin (2±1.0 mm)</div><div>Right margin (2±1.0 mm)</div><div>Trailing edge margin (2±1.0 mm)</div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-26</p> <div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	A MARGIN	Left margin (first page)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	B MARGIN	Leading edge margin (first page)	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm	C MARGIN	Right margin (first page)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	D MARGIN	Trailing edge margin (first page)	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm	A MARGIN(BACK)	Left margin (second page)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	B MARGIN(BACK)	Leading edge margin (second page)	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm	C MARGIN(BACK)	Right margin (second page)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	D MARGIN(BACK)	Trailing edge margin (second page)	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																										
A MARGIN	Left margin (first page)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																																										
B MARGIN	Leading edge margin (first page)	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm																																										
C MARGIN	Right margin (first page)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																																										
D MARGIN	Trailing edge margin (first page)	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm																																										
A MARGIN(BACK)	Left margin (second page)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																																										
B MARGIN(BACK)	Leading edge margin (second page)	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm																																										
C MARGIN(BACK)	Right margin (second page)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																																										
D MARGIN(BACK)	Trailing edge margin (second page)	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm																																										

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U407	<p>Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing</p> <p>Description Adjusts the leading edge registration during memory copying.</p> <p>Purpose Make the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edge of the copy image on the front face and that on the reverse face during duplex switchback copying.</p> <p>Caution Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U034 (P.1-3-21)</div>→<div>U402 (P.1-3-68)</div>→<div>U066 (P.1-3-27)</div>→<div>U403 (P.1-3-69)</div>→<div>U071 (P.1-3-31)</div>→</div> <div><div>U404 (P.1-3-70)</div>→<div>U407</div></div> <p>Adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Leading edge registration for memory image printing</td><td>-47 to 47</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the system menu key.Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.Press the system menu key.Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, decrease the value. For copy example 2, increase the value. <div><div> Original</div><div> Copy example 1</div><div> Copy example 2</div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-27</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Leading edge registration for memory image printing	-47 to 47	0	0.042 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step						
Leading edge registration for memory image printing	-47 to 47	0	0.042 mm						

Maintenance item No.	Description																										
U411	<p>Adjusting the scanner automatically</p> <p>Description Uses a specified original and automatically adjusts the following items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections.</p> <p>Purpose To perform automatic adjustment of various items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections. To adjust scanner automatically when initializing the machine using the maintenance item U020 or U022.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item. The screen for executing is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)</th></tr><tr><td>SCANNER</td><td>Automatic adjustment in the scanner section</td><td>302FZ56990</td></tr><tr><td>DP(FACE UP)</td><td>Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (first page)</td><td>2AC68241</td></tr><tr><td>DP(FACE DOWN)</td><td>Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (second page)</td><td>2AC68241/303JX57010/ 303JX57020</td></tr></table> <p>Method: SCANNER</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [SCANNER].2. Enter the target values which are shown on the specified original (P/N: 302FZ56990) executing maintenance item U425.3. Set a specified original (P/N: 302FZ56990) on the platen.4. Select the item. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ALL</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.</td></tr><tr><td>INPUT</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.</td></tr><tr><td>GAMMA</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma.</td></tr><tr><td>C.A.</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: chromatic aberration filter.</td></tr><tr><td>MTF</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter.</td></tr><tr><td>MATRIX</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: matrix.</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [RESULT OK 00] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.6. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.	Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)	SCANNER	Automatic adjustment in the scanner section	302FZ56990	DP(FACE UP)	Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (first page)	2AC68241	DP(FACE DOWN)	Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (second page)	2AC68241/303JX57010/ 303JX57020	Display	Description	ALL	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.	INPUT	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.	GAMMA	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma.	C.A.	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: chromatic aberration filter.	MTF	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter.	MATRIX	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: matrix.
Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)																									
SCANNER	Automatic adjustment in the scanner section	302FZ56990																									
DP(FACE UP)	Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (first page)	2AC68241																									
DP(FACE DOWN)	Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (second page)	2AC68241/303JX57010/ 303JX57020																									
Display	Description																										
ALL	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.																										
INPUT	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.																										
GAMMA	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma.																										
C.A.	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: chromatic aberration filter.																										
MTF	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter.																										
MATRIX	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: matrix.																										

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U411	<p>Method: DP(FACE UP)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [DP(FACE UP)]. 2. Set a specified original (P/N: 2AC68241) in the DP. Cut the trailing edge of the original.  <p style="text-align: center;">128±1 mm 60±1 mm Cut with the edge of black belt.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-28</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press [INPUT]. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INPUT</td><td>Automatic adjustment of first page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [RESULT OK 00] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items. 5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Method: DP(FACE DOWN)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [DP(FACE DOWN)]. 2. Select [ORIGINAL TARGET] and press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NORMAL TARGET</td><td>Execution is not required.</td></tr> <tr> <td>ORIGINAL TARGET</td><td>Uses the specified original for acquiring data as the target data.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Place the specified original for acquiring gamma target data (P/N: 303JX57010) on the platen, and press the start key. 4. Place the specified original for acquiring matrix target data (P/N: 303JX57020) on the platen, and press the start key. When normally completed, [RESULT OK 00] is displayed. 	Display	Description	INPUT	Automatic adjustment of first page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.	Display	Description	NORMAL TARGET	Execution is not required.	ORIGINAL TARGET	Uses the specified original for acquiring data as the target data.
Display	Description										
INPUT	Automatic adjustment of first page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.										
Display	Description										
NORMAL TARGET	Execution is not required.										
ORIGINAL TARGET	Uses the specified original for acquiring data as the target data.										

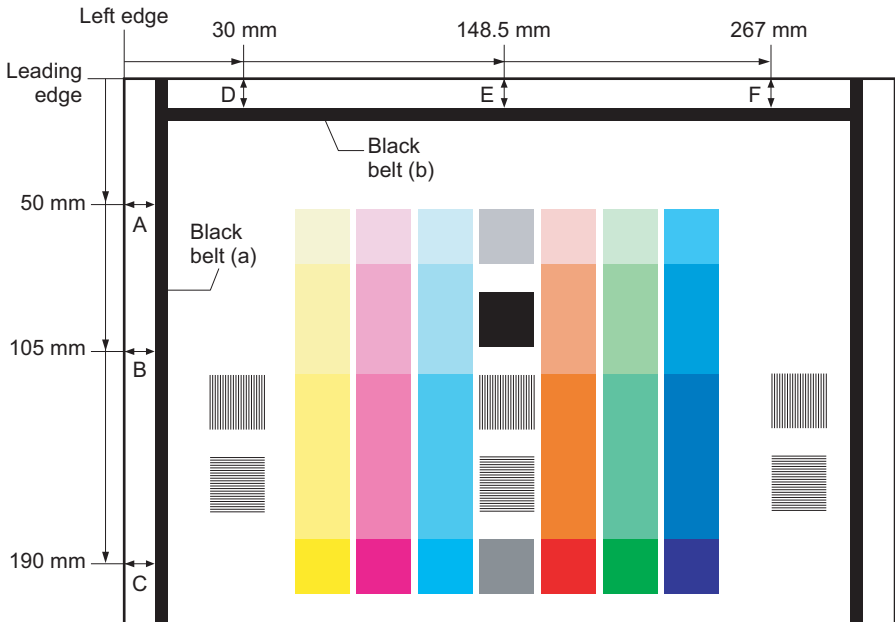
Maintenance item No.	Description															
U411	5. Select the item (place all originals face down).															
	<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)</th></tr><tr><td>ALL</td><td>Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/ center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.</td><td>2AC68241/303JX57010/ 303JX57020</td></tr><tr><td>INPUT</td><td>Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/ center line.</td><td>2AC68241</td></tr><tr><td>GAMMA</td><td>Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: input gamma.</td><td>303JX57010</td></tr><tr><td>MTF/MATRIX</td><td>Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: MTF filter and matrix.</td><td>303JX57020</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)	ALL	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/ center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.	2AC68241/303JX57010/ 303JX57020	INPUT	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/ center line.	2AC68241	GAMMA	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: input gamma.	303JX57010	MTF/MATRIX	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: MTF filter and matrix.	303JX57020
	Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)													
	ALL	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/ center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.	2AC68241/303JX57010/ 303JX57020													
	INPUT	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/ center line.	2AC68241													
	GAMMA	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: input gamma.	303JX57010													
	MTF/MATRIX	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: MTF filter and matrix.	303JX57020													
	[INPUT]															
	1. Select [INPUT].															
	2. Place a specified original (P/N: 2AC68241).															
3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.																
4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.																
[GAMMA]																
1. Select [GAMMA].																
2. Place a specified original (P/N: 303JX57010).																
3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.																
4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.																
[MTF/MATRIX]																
1. Select [MTF/MATRIX].																
2. Place a specified original (P/N: 303JX57020).																
3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.																
4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.																
When [ALL] is selected, the adjustment of [INPUT], [GAMMA] and [MTF/MATRIX] can be executed at once. When adjusting, place the three specified originals, and then press the start key. Set the original 303JX57020, and then place 303JX57010 and 2AC68241 in order on the top of the original.																
When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [RESULT OK 00] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.																
Completion																
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.																

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																																						
U411	Error Codes <table> <tr> <th>Codes</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 01</td><td>Black band detection error (scanner leading edge registration)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 02</td><td>Black band detection error (scanner center line)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 03</td><td>Black band detection error (scanner main scanning direction magnification)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 04</td><td>Black band is not detected (scanner leading edge registration)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 05</td><td>Black band is not detected (scanner center line)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 06</td><td>Black band is not detected (scanner main scanning direction magnification)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 07</td><td>Black band is not detected (scanner auxiliary scanning direction magnification)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 08</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification far end)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 09</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification near end)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0a</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0b</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge original check)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0c</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0d</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge 2)</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0e</td><td>DMA time out</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0f</td><td>Auxiliary scanning direction magnification error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 10</td><td>Auxiliary scanning direction leading edge detection error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 11</td><td>Auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge detection error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 12</td><td>Auxiliary scanning direction skew 1.5 error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 13</td><td>Maintenance request error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 14</td><td>Main scanning direction center line error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 15</td><td>Main scanning direction skew 1.5 error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 16</td><td>Main scanning direction magnification error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 17</td><td>Carriage error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 18</td><td>Service call error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 19</td><td>DP status error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 1a</td><td>DP open error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 1b</td><td>Original is not detected</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 2X</td><td>N950 patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 3X</td><td>N850 patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 4X</td><td>N770 patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 5X</td><td>N650 patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 6X</td><td>N500 patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 7X</td><td>N300 patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 8X</td><td>N300 patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 9X</td><td>N950 patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR aX</td><td>Cyan patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR bX</td><td>Magenta patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR cX</td><td>Yellow patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR dX</td><td>Red patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR eX</td><td>Green patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR fX</td><td>Blue patch for the original error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR ff</td><td>Other error</td></tr> </table>	Codes	Description	ERROR 01	Black band detection error (scanner leading edge registration)	ERROR 02	Black band detection error (scanner center line)	ERROR 03	Black band detection error (scanner main scanning direction magnification)	ERROR 04	Black band is not detected (scanner leading edge registration)	ERROR 05	Black band is not detected (scanner center line)	ERROR 06	Black band is not detected (scanner main scanning direction magnification)	ERROR 07	Black band is not detected (scanner auxiliary scanning direction magnification)	ERROR 08	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification far end)	ERROR 09	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification near end)	ERROR 0a	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge)	ERROR 0b	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge original check)	ERROR 0c	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)	ERROR 0d	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge 2)	ERROR 0e	DMA time out	ERROR 0f	Auxiliary scanning direction magnification error	ERROR 10	Auxiliary scanning direction leading edge detection error	ERROR 11	Auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge detection error	ERROR 12	Auxiliary scanning direction skew 1.5 error	ERROR 13	Maintenance request error	ERROR 14	Main scanning direction center line error	ERROR 15	Main scanning direction skew 1.5 error	ERROR 16	Main scanning direction magnification error	ERROR 17	Carriage error	ERROR 18	Service call error	ERROR 19	DP status error	ERROR 1a	DP open error	ERROR 1b	Original is not detected	ERROR 2X	N950 patch for the original error	ERROR 3X	N850 patch for the original error	ERROR 4X	N770 patch for the original error	ERROR 5X	N650 patch for the original error	ERROR 6X	N500 patch for the original error	ERROR 7X	N300 patch for the original error	ERROR 8X	N300 patch for the original error	ERROR 9X	N950 patch for the original error	ERROR aX	Cyan patch for the original error	ERROR bX	Magenta patch for the original error	ERROR cX	Yellow patch for the original error	ERROR dX	Red patch for the original error	ERROR eX	Green patch for the original error	ERROR fX	Blue patch for the original error	ERROR ff	Other error
Codes	Description																																																																																						
ERROR 01	Black band detection error (scanner leading edge registration)																																																																																						
ERROR 02	Black band detection error (scanner center line)																																																																																						
ERROR 03	Black band detection error (scanner main scanning direction magnification)																																																																																						
ERROR 04	Black band is not detected (scanner leading edge registration)																																																																																						
ERROR 05	Black band is not detected (scanner center line)																																																																																						
ERROR 06	Black band is not detected (scanner main scanning direction magnification)																																																																																						
ERROR 07	Black band is not detected (scanner auxiliary scanning direction magnification)																																																																																						
ERROR 08	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification far end)																																																																																						
ERROR 09	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification near end)																																																																																						
ERROR 0a	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge)																																																																																						
ERROR 0b	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge original check)																																																																																						
ERROR 0c	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)																																																																																						
ERROR 0d	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge 2)																																																																																						
ERROR 0e	DMA time out																																																																																						
ERROR 0f	Auxiliary scanning direction magnification error																																																																																						
ERROR 10	Auxiliary scanning direction leading edge detection error																																																																																						
ERROR 11	Auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge detection error																																																																																						
ERROR 12	Auxiliary scanning direction skew 1.5 error																																																																																						
ERROR 13	Maintenance request error																																																																																						
ERROR 14	Main scanning direction center line error																																																																																						
ERROR 15	Main scanning direction skew 1.5 error																																																																																						
ERROR 16	Main scanning direction magnification error																																																																																						
ERROR 17	Carriage error																																																																																						
ERROR 18	Service call error																																																																																						
ERROR 19	DP status error																																																																																						
ERROR 1a	DP open error																																																																																						
ERROR 1b	Original is not detected																																																																																						
ERROR 2X	N950 patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR 3X	N850 patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR 4X	N770 patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR 5X	N650 patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR 6X	N500 patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR 7X	N300 patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR 8X	N300 patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR 9X	N950 patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR aX	Cyan patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR bX	Magenta patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR cX	Yellow patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR dX	Red patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR eX	Green patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR fX	Blue patch for the original error																																																																																						
ERROR ff	Other error																																																																																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																											
U425	<p>Setting the target</p> <p>Description Enters the lab values that is indicated on the back of the chart (P/N: 302FZ56990) used for adjustment.</p> <p>Purpose Performs data input in order to correct for differences in originals during automatic adjustment.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select [CCD]. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)</th></tr><tr><td>CCD</td><td>Entering the target values for scanner automatic adjustment</td><td>302FZ56990</td></tr><tr><td>CIS</td><td>Execution is not required</td><td></td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Select the item to be set. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>N875</td><td>Setting the N875 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>N475</td><td>Setting the N475 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>N125</td><td>Setting the N125 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>CYAN</td><td>Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>MAGENTA</td><td>Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>YELLOW</td><td>Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>RED</td><td>Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>GREEN</td><td>Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>BLUE</td><td>Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST ORIGINAL</td><td>Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Select the item to be set. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>L</td><td>Setting the L value</td><td>0.0 to 100.0</td></tr><tr><td>a</td><td>Setting the a value</td><td>-200.0 to 200.0</td></tr><tr><td>b</td><td>Setting the b value</td><td>-200.0 to 200.0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Enters the value that is indicated on the back of the chart using the +/- keys or numeric keys.6. Press the start key. The value is set.7. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Measure the distance from the left edge to the black belt (a) of the original at A, B and C. Measurement procedure<ol style="list-style-type: none">1) Measure the distance from the edge to the black belt (a) of the original at A (50 mm from the leading edge), B (105 mm from the leading edge) and C (190 mm from the leading edge), respectively.2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: $((A + C) / 2 + B) / 2$2. Enter the values solved using the +/- keys in [MAIN ADJ].3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. Measure the distance from the leading edge to the black belt (b) of the original at D, E and F. Measurement procedure<ol style="list-style-type: none">1) Measure the length from the edge to the black belt (b) of the original at D (30 mm from the left edge), E (148.5 mm from the left edge) and F (267 mm from the left edge), respectively.2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: $((D + F) / 2 + E) / 2$5. Enter the values solved using the +/- keys in [SUB ADJ].6. Press the start key. The value is set.7. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.	Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)	CCD	Entering the target values for scanner automatic adjustment	302FZ56990	CIS	Execution is not required		Display	Description	N875	Setting the N875 patch for the original for adjustment	N475	Setting the N475 patch for the original for adjustment	N125	Setting the N125 patch for the original for adjustment	CYAN	Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment	MAGENTA	Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment	YELLOW	Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment	RED	Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment	GREEN	Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment	BLUE	Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment	ADJUST ORIGINAL	Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions	Display	Description	Setting range	L	Setting the L value	0.0 to 100.0	a	Setting the a value	-200.0 to 200.0	b	Setting the b value	-200.0 to 200.0
Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)																																										
CCD	Entering the target values for scanner automatic adjustment	302FZ56990																																										
CIS	Execution is not required																																											
Display	Description																																											
N875	Setting the N875 patch for the original for adjustment																																											
N475	Setting the N475 patch for the original for adjustment																																											
N125	Setting the N125 patch for the original for adjustment																																											
CYAN	Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment																																											
MAGENTA	Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment																																											
YELLOW	Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment																																											
RED	Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment																																											
GREEN	Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment																																											
BLUE	Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment																																											
ADJUST ORIGINAL	Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions																																											
Display	Description	Setting range																																										
L	Setting the L value	0.0 to 100.0																																										
a	Setting the a value	-200.0 to 200.0																																										
b	Setting the b value	-200.0 to 200.0																																										

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U425	 <p style="text-align: center;">Original for adjustment</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-29</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U510	<p>Setting the enterprise mode</p> <p>Description Sets whether or not the enterprise mode setting is enabled.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Enterprise mode setting is enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Enterprise mode setting is disabled.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON (Inch specifications)/OFF (Metric specifications)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Enterprise mode setting is enabled.	OFF	Enterprise mode setting is disabled.
Display	Description						
ON	Enterprise mode setting is enabled.						
OFF	Enterprise mode setting is disabled.						

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U901	<p>Checking/clearing copy counts by paper feed locations</p> <p>Description Displays or clears copy counts by paper feed locations.</p> <p>Purpose To check the time to replace consumable parts. Also to clear the counts after replacing the consumable parts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The counts by paper feed locations are displayed.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Paper feed locations</th></tr><tr><td>MP TRAY</td><td>MP tray</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 1</td><td>Cassette 1</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 2</td><td>Cassette 2</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 3</td><td>Optional cassette 3</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 4</td><td>Optional cassette 4</td></tr><tr><td>LCF</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder</td></tr><tr><td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex section</td></tr></table> <p>When an optional paper feed device is not installed, the corresponding count is not displayed.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the count to be cleared. To clear all counts, press the clear key.2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Paper feed locations	MP TRAY	MP tray	CASSETTE 1	Cassette 1	CASSETTE 2	Cassette 2	CASSETTE 3	Optional cassette 3	CASSETTE 4	Optional cassette 4	LCF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder	DUPLEX	Duplex section
Display	Paper feed locations																
MP TRAY	MP tray																
CASSETTE 1	Cassette 1																
CASSETTE 2	Cassette 2																
CASSETTE 3	Optional cassette 3																
CASSETTE 4	Optional cassette 4																
LCF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder																
DUPLEX	Duplex section																
U902	<p>Checking/clearing the punch-hole scrap counter</p> <p>Description To set the punch limit, display and clear the punch counter of optional 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To set the maximum number of punches possible in order to instruct the user of the time to replace punch waste. Also, used to manually clear the punch-hole scrap count if a message requiring collection of punch-hole scrap is shown on the touch panel after collection. If punch-hole scrap is collected with the machine power turned off, the punch-hole scrap count is not cleared and consequently this problem occurs.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>PUNCH LIMIT</td><td>The maximum number of punches (maximum number of punching times)</td><td>0 to 999000</td><td>35000</td></tr><tr><td>PUNCH COUNT</td><td>Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)</td><td>0 to 999999</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Change the setting using the numeric keys or clear key.4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	PUNCH LIMIT	The maximum number of punches (maximum number of punching times)	0 to 999000	35000	PUNCH COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 999999	0				
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting														
PUNCH LIMIT	The maximum number of punches (maximum number of punching times)	0 to 999000	35000														
PUNCH COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 999999	0														

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U903	<p>Checking/clearing the paper jam counts</p> <p>Description Displays or clears the jam counts by jam locations.</p> <p>Purpose To check the paper jam status. Also to clear the jam counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item. The screen for executing is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COUNT</td><td>Displays/clears the jam counts</td></tr> <tr> <td>TOTAL COUNT</td><td>Displays the total jam counts</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: Displays/clears the jam counts</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [COUNT]. The count for jam detection by type is displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. 3. Select the counts for all jam codes and press the clear key. 4. Press the start key. The count is cleared. The individual counter cannot be cleared. 5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Method: Displays the total jam counts</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [TOTAL COUNT]. The total number of jam counts by type is displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. The total number of jam count cannot be cleared. 3. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COUNT	Displays/clears the jam counts	TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total jam counts
Display	Description						
COUNT	Displays/clears the jam counts						
TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total jam counts						
U904	<p>Checking/clearing the service call counts</p> <p>Description Displays or clears the service call code counts by types.</p> <p>Purpose To check the service call code status by types. Also to clear the service call code counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item. The screen for executing is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COUNT</td><td>Displays/clears the service call counts</td></tr> <tr> <td>TOTAL COUNT</td><td>Displays the total service call counts</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: Displays/clears the service call counts</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [COUNT]. The count for service call detection by type is displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. 3. Select the counts for all service call codes and press the clear key. 4. Press the start key. The count is cleared. The individual counter cannot be cleared. 5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Method: Displays the total service call counts</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [TOTAL COUNT]. The total number of service call counts by type is displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. The total number of service call count cannot be cleared. 3. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COUNT	Displays/clears the service call counts	TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total service call counts
Display	Description						
COUNT	Displays/clears the service call counts						
TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total service call counts						

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U905	<p>Checking/clearing counts by optional devices</p> <p>Description Displays or clears the counts of optional DP or finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To check the use of optional DP and finisher. Also to clear the counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the device, the count of which is to be checked. The count of the selected device is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DP</td><td>Counts of optional DP</td></tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td><td>Counts of optional finisher</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>DP</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADP</td><td>No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr> <tr> <td>RADP</td><td>No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Finisher</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CP CNT</td><td>No. of copies that has passed</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE</td><td>Frequency the stapler has been activated</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH</td><td>Frequency the punch has been activated</td></tr> <tr> <td>STACK</td><td>Frequency the stacker has been activated</td></tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE</td><td>Frequency the center holding has been activated</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the item to be cleared. To clear the counts for all, press the clear key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	DP	Counts of optional DP	FINISHER	Counts of optional finisher	Display	Description	ADP	No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP	RADP	No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP	Display	Description	CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed	STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated	PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated	STACK	Frequency the stacker has been activated	SADDLE	Frequency the center holding has been activated
Display	Description																								
DP	Counts of optional DP																								
FINISHER	Counts of optional finisher																								
Display	Description																								
ADP	No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP																								
RADP	No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP																								
Display	Description																								
CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed																								
STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated																								
PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated																								
STACK	Frequency the stacker has been activated																								
SADDLE	Frequency the center holding has been activated																								
U906	<p>Resetting partial operation control</p> <p>Description Resets the service call code for partial operation control.</p> <p>Purpose To be reset after partial operation is performed due to problems in the cassettes or other sections, and the related parts are serviced.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key to reset partial operation control. The maintenance mode is exited, and the machine returns to the same status as when the main power switch is turned on. 																								
U908	<p>Checking the total counter value</p> <p>Description Displays the total counter value.</p> <p>Purpose To check the total counter value.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for total count value is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																								

Maintenance item No.	Description
U910	<p>Clearing the black ratio data</p> <p>Description Clears the accumulated black ratio data for A4 sheet.</p> <p>Purpose To clear data as required at times such as during maintenance service.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXCUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. The accumulated black ratio data is cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U911	<p>Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes</p> <p>Description Displays and clears the paper feed counts by paper sizes.</p> <p>Purpose To check or clear the counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for the paper feed counts by paper size is displayed.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the paper size. To clear all counts, press the clear key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																																	
U917	<p>Setting backup data reading/writing</p> <p>Description Retrieves the backup data to a USB memory from the machine; or writes the data from the USB memory to the machine.</p> <p>Purpose To store and write data when replacing the HDD.</p> <p>Supplement This maintenance item is supported with the firmware version later than below. MAIN: Ver. 008.027 MMI: Ver. 014.025 ENGINE: Ver. 009.001</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.2. Enter the maintenance item.3. Press the start key.4. Select [Export] or [Import]. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Export</td><td>Retrieving from the machine to a USB memory</td></tr><tr><td>Import</td><td>Writing data from the USB memory to the machine</td></tr></table> <p>5. Select the item.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Address Book</td><td>Address book</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>Job Acct.</td><td>Job accounting</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>FAX Forward</td><td>FAX transfer information</td><td>Job accounting, user management and document box information</td></tr><tr><td>One Touch</td><td>Information on one-touch</td><td>Address book</td></tr><tr><td>User</td><td>User managements</td><td>Job accounting</td></tr><tr><td>Shortcut</td><td>Shortcut information</td><td>Job accountings, user managements and document box information</td></tr><tr><td>Document Box</td><td>Document box information</td><td>Job accountings and user managements</td></tr><tr><td>Program</td><td>Program information</td><td>Job accountings, user managements and document box information</td></tr></table> <p>*: Since data are dependent with each other, data other than those assigned are also retrieved or written in.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">6. Press the start key. Starts reading or writing. Pulls USB memory out after the progress ratio is displayed [100]. An error code is displayed in case of an error.7. Press the stop key.8. Turn the main power switch off and on when selecting [Import].	Display	Description	Export	Retrieving from the machine to a USB memory	Import	Writing data from the USB memory to the machine	Display	Description	Description	Address Book	Address book	-	Job Acct.	Job accounting	-	FAX Forward	FAX transfer information	Job accounting, user management and document box information	One Touch	Information on one-touch	Address book	User	User managements	Job accounting	Shortcut	Shortcut information	Job accountings, user managements and document box information	Document Box	Document box information	Job accountings and user managements	Program	Program information	Job accountings, user managements and document box information
Display	Description																																	
Export	Retrieving from the machine to a USB memory																																	
Import	Writing data from the USB memory to the machine																																	
Display	Description	Description																																
Address Book	Address book	-																																
Job Acct.	Job accounting	-																																
FAX Forward	FAX transfer information	Job accounting, user management and document box information																																
One Touch	Information on one-touch	Address book																																
User	User managements	Job accounting																																
Shortcut	Shortcut information	Job accountings, user managements and document box information																																
Document Box	Document box information	Job accountings and user managements																																
Program	Program information	Job accountings, user managements and document box information																																

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description			
U917	Error Codes			
	Codes	Description	Codes	Description
	321d0001	Parameter error	321d1012	File retrieving error
	321d0002	Unsupported configuration name	321d1013	One-touch file open error
	321d0003	Process generation error	321d1014	User managements file open error
	321d0004	PIPE generation error	321d1015	Log file copy error to the USB memory
	321d0005	Command error	321d1016	FAX transfer file open error
	321d0006	Not used	321d1017	Box directory file open error
	321d0007	HDD unavailable	321d1018	Box directory retrieving error
	321d0008	Unsupported configuration name	321d1019	Box management file open error
	321d0009	Unsupported configuration name	321d101a	File copy error
	321d000f	Authentication error	321d101b	HDD mount error
	321d1001	File for writing is not found in the USB memory	321d101c	File write error
	321d1002	Error: USB memory is not inserted or USB memory is not mounted	321d101d	File write error
	321d1003	USB memory unavailable	321d101e	File write error
	321d1004	Directory creation error	321d101f	File write error
	321d1005	Writing error from the USB memory	321d2000	File initialization error in writing
	321d1006	Retrieving error to the USB memory	321d2001	File open error
	321d1007	Directory creation error	321d2002	File deletion error
	321d1008	Address book file open error	321d2003	File open error
	321d1009	Address book file open error	321d2004	File open error
	321d1001	Job accounting file open error	321d2005	File initialization error in writing
	321d100b	Job accounting file open error	321d2006	File open error
	321d100c	File deletion error	321d2007	File open error
	321d100d	File copy error	321d2008	File deletion error in writing
	321d100e	File copy error	321d2009	File deletion error in writing
	321d100f	File write error	321d200a	Check error in writing
	321d1010	File write error	321d200b	File deletion error in writing
	321d1011	Unable-to-write error	321d200c	File deletion error in writing
			ERROR	USB mount error
	Completion			
	Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.			

Maintenance item No.	Description
U920	<p>Checking the copy counts</p> <p>Description Checks the copy counts.</p> <p>Purpose To check the copy counts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current counts of copy counter, printer counter and fax counter are displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U927	<p>Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)</p> <p>Description Resets all of the counts back to 0.</p> <p>Purpose To start the counters with value 0 when installing the machine.</p> <p>Supplement The total account counter and the machine life counter can be cleared only once if all count values are 1000 or less.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. All copy counts and machine life counts are cleared. [CANNOT EXECUTE] is displayed if the count cannot be cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U928	<p>Checking machine life counts</p> <p>Description Displays the machine life counts.</p> <p>Purpose To check the machine life counts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current machine life counts is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																						
U933	<p>Setting the fax backup kit</p> <p>Description Initializes optional fax backup kit (CF) and restore the backup data.</p> <p>Purpose To initialize the CF when call for service (C0700) occurs. Also, to restore data when the hard disk has been damaged.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INITIALIZE CF</td><td>Initializes the fax backup kit (CF) and backs up the job accounting data in the hard disk into the fax backup kit (CF).</td></tr> <tr> <td>FAX IMAGE</td><td>Prints the fax reception data backed up in the fax backup kit (CF).</td></tr> <tr> <td>JOB ACCOUNTING</td><td>Restores the job accounting data stored in the fax backup kit (CF) to the hard disk.</td></tr> <tr> <td>RECOVERY CF</td><td>Rewrites the serial number of CF to put it in active when the call for service C0700 occurs.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: Restoring the backup data when replacing the HDD</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [FAX IMAGE]. 2. Press [EXECUTE]. 3. Press the start key. The fax reception data is printed out. 4. Select [JOB ACCOUNTING]. 5. Press the start key. The job accounting data is restored. 6. Select [INITIALIZE CF]. 7. Press the start key. CF is initialized. 8. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Method: When call for service C0700 occurred</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [RECOVERY CF]. 2. Press the start key. 3. Turn the main power switch off and on. 4. Select [FAX IMAGE]. 5. Press [EXECUTE]. 6. Press the start key. Prints the fax images if the images remain in the CF. 7. Select [INITIALIZE CF]. 8. Press the start key. CF is initialized. 9. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Caution For the firmware which have a version earlier than below, perform only steps 7 through 9 since RECOVERY CF is unsupported.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Software</th><th>Version</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN</td><td>2GR_2000.006.100</td></tr> <tr> <td>MMI</td><td>2GR_7000.005.009</td></tr> <tr> <td>Engine</td><td>2GR_1000.003.001</td></tr> <tr> <td>Engine Boot</td><td>2GR_1100.001.007</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCANNER</td><td>2GR_1200.003.001</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	INITIALIZE CF	Initializes the fax backup kit (CF) and backs up the job accounting data in the hard disk into the fax backup kit (CF).	FAX IMAGE	Prints the fax reception data backed up in the fax backup kit (CF).	JOB ACCOUNTING	Restores the job accounting data stored in the fax backup kit (CF) to the hard disk.	RECOVERY CF	Rewrites the serial number of CF to put it in active when the call for service C0700 occurs.	Software	Version	MAIN	2GR_2000.006.100	MMI	2GR_7000.005.009	Engine	2GR_1000.003.001	Engine Boot	2GR_1100.001.007	SCANNER	2GR_1200.003.001
Display	Description																						
INITIALIZE CF	Initializes the fax backup kit (CF) and backs up the job accounting data in the hard disk into the fax backup kit (CF).																						
FAX IMAGE	Prints the fax reception data backed up in the fax backup kit (CF).																						
JOB ACCOUNTING	Restores the job accounting data stored in the fax backup kit (CF) to the hard disk.																						
RECOVERY CF	Rewrites the serial number of CF to put it in active when the call for service C0700 occurs.																						
Software	Version																						
MAIN	2GR_2000.006.100																						
MMI	2GR_7000.005.009																						
Engine	2GR_1000.003.001																						
Engine Boot	2GR_1100.001.007																						
SCANNER	2GR_1200.003.001																						

Maintenance item No.	Description															
U935	<p>Relay board maintenance</p> <p>Description Sets the machine status temporarily when call for service (C0060) occurs. However, after the setting, call for service (C0060) occurs again when progress of period.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MODE 0</td><td>Setting mode: OFF</td></tr><tr><td>MODE 1</td><td>Setting mode: ON (Usable up to three times of use)</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: MODE 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set.4. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Supplement After removing the cause of the problem, be sure to change the setting in OFF.</p>	Display	Description	MODE 0	Setting mode: OFF	MODE 1	Setting mode: ON (Usable up to three times of use)									
Display	Description															
MODE 0	Setting mode: OFF															
MODE 1	Setting mode: ON (Usable up to three times of use)															
U942	<p>Setting of deflection for feeding from DP</p> <p>Description Adjusts the deflection generated when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Purpose Use this mode if an original non-feed jam, oblique feed or wrinkling of original occurs when the DP is used.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>REGIST</td><td>Deflection in the reading original from the DP</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr><tr><td>REGIST MIX</td><td>Deflection in the reading original from the DP in the auto selection mode</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.5. Press the system menu key.6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection. If an original non-feed jam or oblique feed occurs, increase the setting value. If wrinkling of original occurs, decrease the value.7. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	REGIST	Deflection in the reading original from the DP	-31 to 31	0	0.17 mm	REGIST MIX	Deflection in the reading original from the DP in the auto selection mode	-31 to 31	0	0.17 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
REGIST	Deflection in the reading original from the DP	-31 to 31	0	0.17 mm												
REGIST MIX	Deflection in the reading original from the DP in the auto selection mode	-31 to 31	0	0.17 mm												

TONER

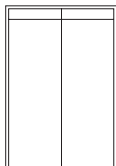
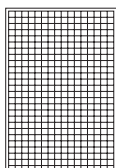
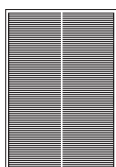
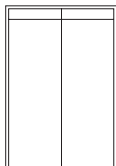
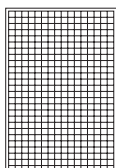
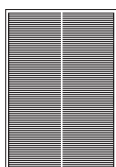
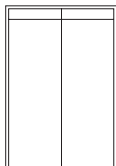
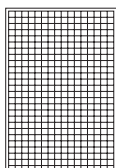
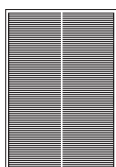
www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U943	<p>Adjusting the prevent appearance of back side image</p> <p>Description Adjust the gamma background for CIS.</p> <p>Purpose The back side image are adjusted when scanning the back side through the DP and then the image are interpose itself between CIS chips.</p> <p>Setting</p> <p>1. Press the start key.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>GAMMA</td><td>Adjusting the gamma background</td><td>-0 to 255</td><td>50</td></tr></table> <p>2. Press the system menu key.</p> <p>3. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</p> <p>4. Press the system menu key.</p> <p>5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. A large setting value makes an appearance of back side image worse, and a small setting value makes the appearance better. However, increase the setting value, decrease the gradation reproducibility.</p> <p>6. Press the start key. The setting is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	GAMMA	Adjusting the gamma background	-0 to 255	50
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting						
GAMMA	Adjusting the gamma background	-0 to 255	50						
U984	<p>Checking the developing unit number</p> <p>Description Displays the developing unit number.</p> <p>Purpose To check the developing unit number.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The number is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
U985	<p>Displaying the developing unit history</p> <p>Description Displays the past record of machine number and the developing counter.</p> <p>Purpose To check the count value machine number and the developing counter.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. Past record of 5 cases is displayed.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MACHINE No.1 to 5</td><td>Past record of machine number</td></tr><tr><td>COUNT 1 to 5</td><td>Past record of developing counter</td></tr></table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MACHINE No.1 to 5	Past record of machine number	COUNT 1 to 5	Past record of developing counter		
Display	Description								
MACHINE No.1 to 5	Past record of machine number								
COUNT 1 to 5	Past record of developing counter								

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

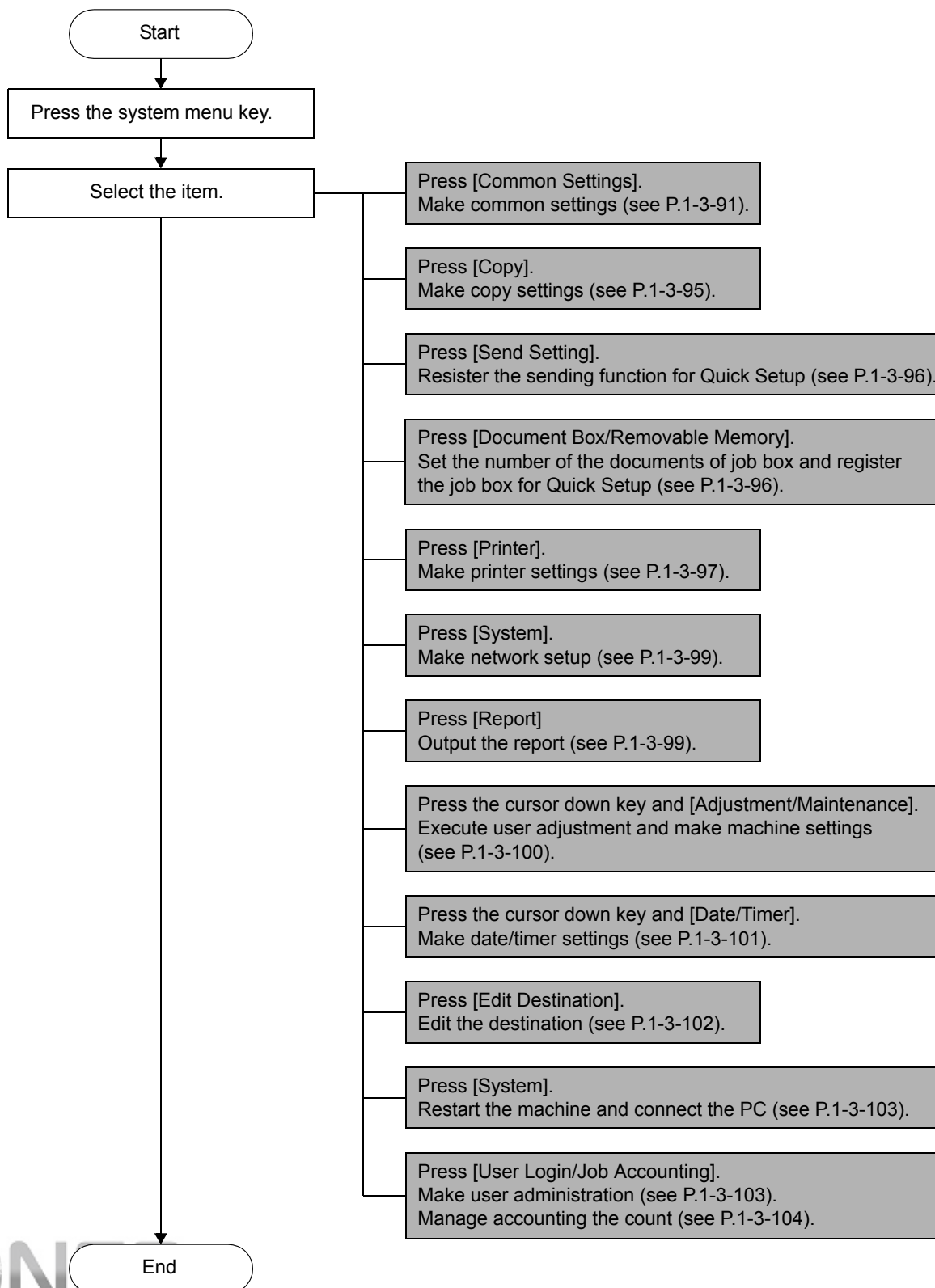
Maintenance item No.	Description						
U989	<p>HDD scandisk</p> <p>Description Restores data in the hard disk by scanning the disk.</p> <p>Purpose If power is turned off while accessing to the hard disk is performed, the control information in the hard disk drive may be damaged. Use this mode to restore the data.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. The hard disk is scanned. 5. When the memory indicator is turned off, turn the main power switch off and on. 						
U990	<p>Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light</p> <p>Description Displays, clears or changes the accumulated time for the exposure lamp to light.</p> <p>Purpose To check duration of use of the exposure lamp. Also to clear the accumulated time for the lamp after replacement.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The accumulated time of illumination for the exposure lamp is displayed in minutes.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CCD</td><td>Accumulated time for the exposure lamp</td></tr> <tr> <td>CIS</td><td>Accumulated time for CIS</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the item to be cleared. 2. Press the start key. The accumulated time is cleared. <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter a accumulated time using the +/- or numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The time is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	CCD	Accumulated time for the exposure lamp	CIS	Accumulated time for CIS
Display	Description						
CCD	Accumulated time for the exposure lamp						
CIS	Accumulated time for CIS						
U991	<p>Checking the scanner count</p> <p>Description Displays the scanner operation count.</p> <p>Purpose To check the status of use of the scanner.</p> <p>Method Press the start key.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COPY SCAN CNT</td><td>Scanner operation count for copying</td></tr> <tr> <td>OTHERS SCAN CNT</td><td>Scanner operation count except for copying</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COPY SCAN CNT	Scanner operation count for copying	OTHERS SCAN CNT	Scanner operation count except for copying
Display	Description						
COPY SCAN CNT	Scanner operation count for copying						
OTHERS SCAN CNT	Scanner operation count except for copying						

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U993	<p>Outputting a VTC-PG pattern</p> <p>Description Selects and outputs a VTC-PG pattern created in the machine.</p> <p>Purpose When performing respective image printing adjustments, used to check the machine status apart from that of the scanner with a non-scanned output VTC-PG pattern.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the VTC-PG pattern to be output and press the start key. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>PG pattern to be output</th><th>Purpose</th></tr><tr><td>PG1</td><td></td><td>Leading edge registration adjustment Center line adjustment Margin adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>PG2</td><td></td><td>Lateral squareness adjustment Magnification adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>PG3</td><td></td><td>Driving unevenness of drum</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. Press the start key. A VTC-PG pattern is output.5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the system menu key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose	PG1		Leading edge registration adjustment Center line adjustment Margin adjustment	PG2		Lateral squareness adjustment Magnification adjustment	PG3		Driving unevenness of drum
Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose											
PG1		Leading edge registration adjustment Center line adjustment Margin adjustment											
PG2		Lateral squareness adjustment Magnification adjustment											
PG3		Driving unevenness of drum											

1-3-2 User management

In addition to a maintenance function for service, the machine is equipped with a management function which can be operated by users. In this user management mode, settings such as default settings can be changed.

(1) Using the user management mode



(2) Common settings

Switching the language for display

Select the language displayed on the touch panel.

1. Press [Change] of Language.
2. Press the key for the language to use.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press the power button, check that the power key/indicator and memory indicator are OFF, and turn the main power switch off.
5. Turn the main power switch on. Touch panel will be displayed in the selected language.

Default screen

Select the screen appearing right after start-up (default screen).

1. Press [Change] of Default Screen.
2. Select the screen to show.
Copy/Send/Status/Document Box/Program
3. Press [OK].

Buzzer

Set options for buzzer sound during the machine operations.

1. Press [Next] of Sound and then [Next] of Buzzer.
2. Press [Change] of Volume, Key Confirmation, Job Finish, Ready, or Warning.
3. Select the buzzer volume level, or other sound options.
Volume: 0 (Mute), 1 (Minimum) to 5 (Maximum)
Key Confirmation: Off/On
Job Finish: Off/On
Ready: Off/On
Warning: Off/On
4. Press [OK].

Keyboard

Select the character-entry keyboard layout suitable for the selected language.

1. Press [Change] of Keyboard.
2. Select the keyboard layout.
QWERTY: QWERTY layout keyboard, mainly used for English
QWERTZ: QWERTZ layout keyboard, mainly used for German and Czech
AZERTY: AZERTY layout keyboard, mainly used for French
3. Press [OK].

Original/Paper setup

Add type and size of original and paper.

Custom original size setup

Set up frequently-used custom original sizes at maximum. The custom size options are displayed on the screen to select original size.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Next] of Custom Original Size.
2. Press [Change] of Custom 1 to Custom 4 to register the size.
3. Press [On], and enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions using the [+]/[-] or numeric keys.

Setting range

120 V specifications

X: 2 to 17" (in 0.01" increments),

Y: 2 to 11.69" (in 0.01" increments)

220-240 V specifications

X: 50 to 432 mm (in 1 mm increments),

Y: 50 to 297 mm (in 1 mm increments)

4. Press [OK].

Adding a custom size and type for paper to print

Set up four frequently-used custom paper sizes at maximum. The custom size options are displayed on the screen to select paper set in the MP tray.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Next] of Custom Paper Size.
2. Press [Change] of Custom 1 to Custom 4 to register the size.
3. Press [On], and enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions using the [+]/[-] or numeric keys.

Setting range

120 V specifications

H: 5.83 to 17" (in 0.01" increments),

V: 5.86 to 11.69" (in 0.01" increments)

220-240 V specifications

H: 148 to 432 mm (in 1 mm increments),

V: 98 to 297 mm (in 1 mm increments)

4. Press [Media Type] to select the type of paper and press [OK] if necessary.
Type of paper: Plain, Transparencies, Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprint, Bond, Cardstock, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Envelope, High Quality, Custom 1-8
5. Press [OK].

Paper size and type setup for cassettes

Select paper size and type of paper for Cassette 1, 2 and optional paper feeders (Cassette 3 and 4). Select type of paper only for the optional 3000-sheet paper feeder (Cassette 3).

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup, [Next] of Cassette Setting, [Next] of Cassette 1 to Cassette 4 to register the size, and then [Change] of Paper Size.
2. To detect paper size automatically, press [Auto] and select Metric or Inch for Paper Size.
To select paper size, press [Standard Sizes 1] or [Standard Sizes 2] for Paper Size.

Setting range

Standard Sizes 1

120 V specifications: Ledger, Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement-R, 8.5 x 13.5", Oficio II

220-240 V specifications: A3, B4, A4, A4-R, B5, B5-R, A5-R, Folio

Standard Sizes 2

Select a standard size except that selected in Standard Sizes 1.

120 V specifications: A3, B4, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B5, B5-R, Folio, 8K, 16K, 16K-R

220-240 V specifications: Ledger, Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement-R, 8.5 x 13.5", Oficio II, 8K, 16K, 16KR

3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Change] of Media Type to select type of paper and press [OK].
Type of paper: Plain, Rough, Vellum, Recycled, Preprint, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, High Quality, Custom

Paper size and media type setup for MP tray

Select size and type of paper for MP Tray. Set up frequently used size and type of paper before use.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup, [Next] of MP Tray Setting and then [Change] of Paper Size.
2. To detect paper size automatically, press [Auto] and select Metric or Inch for Paper Size.
To select paper size, press [Standard Sizes 1], [Standard Sizes 2], [Others] or [Size Entry] for Paper Size.
Setting range
Standard Sizes 1
120 V specifications: Ledger, Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement-R, 8.5 x 13.5", Oficio II, Executive
220-240 V specifications: A3, B4, A4, A4-R, B5, B5-R, A5-R, B6-R, A6-R, Folio
Standard Sizes 2
Select a standard size except that selected in Standard Sizes 1.
120 V specifications: A3, B4, A4, A4-R, B5, B5-R, A5-R, B6-R, A6-R, Folio, 8K, 16K, 16K-R
220-240 V specifications: Ledger, Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement-R, 8.5 x 13.5", Oficio II, Executive, 8K, 16K, 16K-R
Others
Select special standard sizes or custom sizes.
ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Hagaki, Ofufuku Hagaki, Youkei 4, Youkei 2
If you select [Size Entry], enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions using the [+] [-].
Setting range
120 V specifications:
H: 5.83 to 17" (in 0.01" increments),
V: 3.86 to 11.69" (in 0.01" increments)
220-240 V specifications:
V: 98 to 297 mm (in 1 mm increments),
H: 148 to 432 mm (in 1 mm increments)
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Change] of Media Type to select the type of paper and press [OK].
Type of paper: Plain, Transparencies, Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprint, Bond, Cardstock, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Envelope, High Quality, Custom 1-8

Paper type

Select weight for each type of paper.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Next] of Media Type Setting.
2. Press [Next] for the type to change weight.
3. Press [Change] of Media Weight.

4. Select the weight and press [OK].
Light/Normal 1/Normal 2/Normal 3/Heavy 1/Heavy 2/Heavy 3/Extra Heavy
5. To change the duplex printing settings for Custom 1 (-8), press [Change] of Duplex, select [Prohibit] or [Permit] and press [OK].
6. To change the name for Custom 1(-8), press [Change] of Name to enter the name and press [OK].
Names should be not more than 15 characters.

Default paper source

Select the default paper source from Cassette 1-4 and MP tray.

NOTE: [Cassette 3] and [Cassette 4] are displayed when the optional paper feeders or optional 3000-sheet paper feeder is installed.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Change] of Default Paper Source.
2. Select default setting for paper cassette.
Cassette 1/ Cassette 2/Cassette 3/Cassette 4/Multi Purpose Tray.
3. Press [OK].

Automatic detection of originals

Automatically detect originals of special or non-standard size.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Next] of Original Auto Detect.
2. Press [A6] or [Hagaki] of A6/Hagaki.
Press [Off] or [On] of Folio.
Press [Off] or [On] of 11 x 15"
3. Press [OK].

Media for auto selection

Select default type of paper for auto paper selection.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Change] of Media for Auto Selection.
2. Select media type for paper selection.
All Media Type/Plain/Transparency/Rough/Vellum/Labels/Recycled/Preprinted/Bond/Cardstock/Color/Prepunched/Letterhead/Envelope/Thick/High Quality/Custom 1/Custom 2/Custom 3/Custom 4/Custom 5/Custom 6/Custom 7/Custom 8
3. Press [OK].

Paper source for cover

Select paper source for cover from Cassette 1-4 or MP tray.

NOTE: [Cassette 3] and [Cassette 4] are displayed when the optional paper feeders or optional 3000-sheet paper feeder is installed.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Change] of Paper Source for Cover.
2. Select the paper source to load cover paper.
Cassette 1/ Cassette 2/Cassette 3/Cassette 4/Multi Purpose Tray.
3. Press [OK].

Special paper action

To print on Prepunched, Preprint, and Letterhead, punch-holes might fail to be aligned or print direction might be upside down depending on how to set the originals and combination of copying functions. In such a case, select [Adjust Print Direction] to adjust the print direction. When paper orientation is not important, select [Speed Priority].

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Change] of Special Paper Action.
2. Press [Adjust Print Direction] or [Speed Priority].
3. Press [OK].

Switching measurement

Select inch or metric for the unit for paper dimensions.

1. Press [Change] of Measurement.
2. Press [mm] for metric or [Inch] for inch.
3. Press [OK].

Error handling

Select whether cancelling or continuing the job when error has occurred.

1. Press [Next] of Error Handling.
2. Press [Change] at the error to change what to do about it.

Duplexing Paper Error: 1-sided/Display Error

Finishing Paper Error: Ignore/Display Error

No Staple Error: Not Stapling/Error Display

NOTE: The messages are displayed when the optional document finisher, built-in finisher or 3000-sheet document finisher is installed.

Stapling Limit Error: No Stapling/Error Display

NOTE: The messages are displayed when the optional document finisher, built-in finisher or 3000-sheet document finisher is installed.

Punch Waste Full Error: No punching/Error Display

NOTE: The messages are displayed when the optional 3000-sheet document finisher and punch unit are installed.

3. Select what to do about errors and press [OK].

Output tray

Select output tray respectively for copy jobs, print jobs from Custom Box, computers, and FAX RX data.

NOTE: Optional job separator, document finisher, 3000-sheet document finisher, and mailbox are required.

FAX RX data output can be specified when the optional fax kit.

1. Press [Next] of Output Tray.
2. Press [Change] of Copy/Custom Box, Printer, or FAX.
3. Select Output Tray.
Top Tray/Finisher Tray/Tray A/Tray B/Tray C/Job Separator/Tray 1-7
For [Finisher Tray], [Tray B], [Tray C] or [Tray 1-7], select [Face Up] (print surface up) or [Face Down] (print surface down) for paper orientation at output.
4. Press [OK].

Function defaults

Set the defaults for available settings such as copying and sending. Setting the frequently-used values as defaults makes subsequent jobs easier.

Original orientation

Set the original orientation defaults.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Original Orientation.
2. Press [Top Edge Top] or [Top Edge Left].
3. Press [OK].

Continuous scan

Set the continuous scan defaults.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Continuous Scan.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Original image

Set the default original document type.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Original Image.
2. Select [Text+Photo], [Text] or [Photo].
3. Press [OK].

Resolution

Select the default scanning resolution.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Scan Resolution.
2. Select the default resolution.
600 x 600 dpi/400 x 400 dpi Ultra Fine/300 x 300 dpi/200 x 400 dpi Super Fine/200 x 200 dpi Fine/200 x 100 dpi Normal.
3. Press [OK].

Color selection

Select the default scanning color setting.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Color Selection.
2. Select the default color setting.
Full color/Grayscale/Monochrome
3. Press [OK].

File format

Select the default file type to send the scanned originals.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of File Format.
2. Select the default file format.
TIFF/PDF/JPEG/High Comp. PDF*
*Only when the optional PDF upgrade kit is installed.
3. Press [OK].

File separation

Select the default file separation setting.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of File Separation.
2. Press [Off] or [Each Page].
3. Press [OK].

Density

Set the default density.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Density.
2. Press [Manual (Normal 0)] or [Auto].
3. Press [OK].

Zoom

Select the enlarged/reduced default when paper size/sending size changed after the originals set.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Zoom.
2. Press [100%] or [Auto].
3. Press [OK].

File name entry

Set an automatically entered name (default) for jobs. Additional information such as Date and Time and Job No. can also be set.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of File Name Entry.
2. Press [File Name] to enter the file name in not more than 30 characters.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Date and Time] to add the date/time to the job, or press [Job No.] to add the job number to the job. The added information will be displayed in Additional Info.
5. Press [OK].

E-mail subject/body

Set the subject and body automatically entered (default subject and body) when sending the scanned originals by E-mail.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key, and then [Change] of E-mail Subject/Body.
2. Press [Subject] to enter the E-mail subject in not more than 60 characters.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Body] to enter the E-mail body in not more than 500 characters.
5. Press [OK].
6. Check if the entries are correct and press [OK].

Border erase default

Set the default border width to be erased.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Border Erase Default.
2. Press [+] or [-] for the Border and Gutter width to erase.
Setting range
120 V specifications: 0 to 2" (in 0.01" increments)
220-240 V specifications: 0 mm to 50 mm (in 1 mm increments)
3. Press [OK].

Margin default

Set the default margin.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Margin Default.
2. Press cursor left/right keys for the Left/Right and press cursor up/down keys for Top/Bottom width margin.

Setting range

120 V specifications: -0.75 to 0.75"

(in 0.01" increments)

220-240 V specifications: -18 mm to 18 mm

(in 1 mm increments)

3. Press [OK].

Collate/Offset

Set the defaults for Collate/Offset.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Collate/Offset.
2. Select the defaults.
Collate: Off/On
Offset: Off/Each Set/Each Page
If [Off] is selected of Collate, it is performed [Each Page].
3. Press [OK].

Auto image rotation

Select the default Auto Image Rotation setting.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Auto Image Rotation.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Form overlay (copy)

Select the default form and form density from Form Box for form overlay for copy jobs.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Form Overlay (Copy).
2. Press [Select Stored Form].
3. Press [+] or [-] to enter the form density.
4. Press [Select Form].
5. Select the form and press [OK].
NOTE: Press [Detail] to check File Name, Storing Size (Document size), Data Size, and Date Stored for the Form.
6. Press [OK].

Form overlay (box)

Select the default form and form density from Custom Box for form overlay for box print jobs.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and [Change] at Form Overlay (Box).
2. Press [Select Stored Form].
3. Press [+] or [-] to enter the form density.
4. Press [Select Form].
5. Select the Box where the Form is stored and press [Open].
NOTE: Press [Detail] to check Box No., Box Name, Usage Restriction, Owner, Permission and Auto File Deletion.
6. Select the form and press [OK].
NOTE: Press [Detail] to check File Name, Storing Size (Document size), Data Size, Pages, Resolution, Color/Monochrome, Data Size, and Date Stored in the Form.
7. Press [OK].

EcoPrint

Select the EcoPrint default.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of EcoPrint.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

PDF/TIFF/JPEG image

Select the default PDF/TIFF/JPEG file quality.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults.
Press cursor down key twice and then [Change] of PDF/TIFF/JPEG Image.
2. Select the default image quality from [1 Low Quality (High Comp.)] to [5 High Quality (Low Comp.)].
3. Press [OK].

High Comp. PDF image

Select the default High Comp.

NOTE: Only when the option upgrading PDF kit is installed.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults.
Press cursor down key twice and [Change] of High Comp. PDF Image.
2. Select the default for [Compression Ratio Priority], [Standard], or [Quality Priority].
3. Press [OK].

Repeat copying

Select the repeat copy default.

NOTE: This setting is not displayed when the optional security kit is installed or the repeat copy job is set to 0.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults.
Press cursor down key twice and [Change] of Repeat Copy.
2. Select [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

(3) Copy settings**Border erase to back page**

Select the border erase method for back of page.

1. Press [Change] of Border Erase to Back Page.
2. Press [Same as Front Page] or [Do not Erase].
3. Press [OK].

Paper selection

Set the default paper selection.

1. Press [Change] of Paper Selection.
2. Press [Auto] or [Default Paper Source].
3. Press [OK].

Auto paper selection

When [Auto] is selected for Paper Selection, set the paper size selection method when the zoom changed.

1. Press [Change] of Auto Paper Selection.
2. Press [Most Suitable Size] or [Same as Original Size].
3. Press [OK].

Auto % priority

When a paper source of different size from the original is selected, select whether automatic zoom (reduce/zoom) is performed.

1. Press [Change] of Auto % Priority.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Preset limit

Restrict the number of copies that can be made at one time.

1. Press [Change] of Preset Limit.
2. Enter the number of copies using [+]/[-] or numeric keys.
Setting range: 1 to 999
3. Press [OK].

Quick setup registration

Select the copying functions to be registered for Quick Setup.

Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.

Six items in the following options are available.

Paper Selection

Zoom

Staple/Punch

Density

Duplex

Combine

Collate/Offset

Original Image

Original Size

1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
3. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup Registration screen.
Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
4. Press [OK].

(4) Sending settings**Quick setup registration**

Select the sending functions to be registered for Quick Setup.

Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.

Six items in the following options are available.

Original Size

2-sided/Book Original

Sending Size

Original Orientation

File Format

Density

Original Image

Resolution

Color Selection

Zoom

1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
3. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup Registration screen. Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
4. Press [OK].

(5) Document box/Removable memory settings**Job box****Quick copy/Proof and hold print box**

To preserve the free space on the hard disk, the maximum number of documents to be stored in the Quick Copy/Proof and Hold Print Box can be configured.

1. Press [Next] of Job Box, then [Change] of Quick Copy Job Retention.
2. Enter a number of document(s) using the [+]/[-].
Setting range: 0 to 50
NOTE: When entering 0, Quick Copy/Proof and Hold Print feature is not available.
3. Press [OK].

Quick setup registration

Select the Storing in Box, Sending from Box, Printing from Box functions to be registered for Quick Setup. Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.

Store File Quick Setup

Color

Storing Size

Density

2-sided/Book Original

Resolution

Zoom

Original Orientation

Original Size

Original Image

Printing from Box Quick Setup

Paper Selection

Collate/Offset

Staple/Punch

Duplex

Delete After Printed

Sending from Box Quick Setup

File Format

Delete after Transmitted

1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Next] of Store File, Send, or Print.
3. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
4. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup screen. Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
5. Press [OK].

Quick copy/Proof and hold print box

Quick Copy/Proof and Hold Box stores the print data which is printed by using the printer driver as a Quick Copy or Hold after Proof Print job.

1. Press [Next] of Job Box, then [Change] of Quick Copy Job Retention.
2. Enter a number using the [+]/[-].
Setting range: 0 to 50
3. Press [OK].

Maximum number of repeat copy jobs

Change the maximum number of Repeat Copy jobs to retain in the document box.

1. Press [Next] of Job Box.
2. Press [Change] of Repeat Copy Job Retention.
3. Enter the number using the [+] / [-].
Setting range: 0 to 50
4. Press [OK].

(6) Printer settings**Emulation****Selection of emulation**

Select the emulation for operating this machine by the command for other printers.

1. Press [Change] of Emulation and then the key of emulation.
Line Printer/IBM Proprinter/DIABLO 630/
EPSON LQ-850/PCL 6/KPDL/KPDL (Auto)/KC-GL
2. Press [OK].
3. Press the power key, and after confirming that the power key/indicator and memory indicator have turned off, turn the main power switch off and on.

Setting of alternative emulation

When you have selected [KPDL (Auto)] as emulation mode, you can switch KPDL and another emulation mode (alternative emulation) automatically according to the data to print.

1. Press [Change] of Emulation, [KPDL (Auto)], [Alt Emulation] and then the key of alternative emulation.
Line Printer/IBM Proprinter/DIABLO 630/EPSON LQ-850/PCL 6/KC-GL
Initial setting: PCL 6
2. Press [OK].
3. Press the power key, and after confirming that the power key/indicator and memory indicator have turned off, turn the main power switch off and on.

Setting of KPDL error report

When an error has occurred during printing in KPDL emulation mode, set whether or not the error report is output.

1. Press [Change] of Emulation, [KPDL] or [KPDL (Auto)], [KPDL Error Report] and then [On] or [Off].
Initial setting: Off
2. Press [OK].
3. Press the power key, and after confirming that the power key/indicator and memory indicator have turned off, turn the main power switch off and on.

Setting of page size and pen

When you have selected KC-GL as emulation mode, you can set the page size, eight kinds of pens, and thickness of each pen.

1. Press [Change] of Emulation, [KC-GL], [Page Set] and then the key of print size.
B0/B1/B2/B3/A0/A1/A2/Special Size
Initial setting: Special Size
2. Press [OK].
3. Press [Pen Adjust], [Change] of the pen to change its thickness (1 to 8), and then [+] / [-] to set the thickness of pen (dots).
Setting range: 1 to 99
4. Press [OK].
5. Press the power key, and after confirming that the power key/indicator and memory indicator have turned off, turn the main power switch off and on.

Resolution

Select default resolution.

1. Press [Change] of Resolution.
2. Select default resolution.
300 dpi/600 dpi/Fast1200
3. Press [OK].

EcoPrint

EcoPrint conserves toner when printing.

1. Press [Change] of EcoPrint.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

KIR

The machine is equipped with the smoothing KIR functions, which realizes exquisite output resolution of about 2400 dpi x 600 dpi.

1. Press [Change] of KIR.
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press [OK].

Override A4/Letter

Select whether treating A4 size and Letter, which are similar in size, as the same size when printing.

1. Press [Change] of Override A4/Letter.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Duplex

Select binding orientation for duplex mode.

1. Press [Change] of Duplex.
2. Select [1-sided], [2-sided Bind ShortEdge], or [2-sided Bind LongEdge].
3. Press [OK].

Copies

Set the default number of copies.

1. Press [Change] of Copies.
2. Set the default number of copies using the [+]/[-] or numeric keys.
Setting range: 1 to 999
3. Press [OK].

Orientation

Set the default orientation.

1. Press [Change] of Orientation.
2. Press [Portrait] or [Landscape].
3. Press [OK].

Wide A4

Increase the number of characters per line for A4 paper.

1. Press [Change] of Wide A4.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Form feed timeout

Receiving print data from the computer, the machine may sometimes have to wait if there is no information identifying the last page has no data any more to be printed. When the preset timeout passes, the machine automatically prints paper.

1. Press cursor down key and [Change] of Form Feed Timeout.
2. Press [+] or [-] to set the form feed timeout.
Setting range: 5 to 495
3. Press [OK].

LF action

Set the line feed action when the machine receives the line feed code.

1. Press the cursor down key and [Change] of LF Action.
2. Select [LF Only], [LF and CR] or [Ignore LF].
3. Press [OK].

CR action

Set the character return action when the machine receives the character return code.

1. Press the cursor down key and [Change] of CR Action.
2. Select [CR Only], [LF and CR] or [Ignore CR].
3. Press [OK].

(7) Network setup**TCP/IP setup by entering IP addresses**

Set up TCP/IP to connect to the Windows network. Set the IP addresses, subnet masks, and gateway addresses.

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of TCP/IP.
2. Press [On] on the left side of the touch panel.
3. Press [Off] of DHCP.
4. Press [IP Address] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
5. Press [Subnet Mask] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
6. Press [Default Gateway] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
7. Check if all the address entries are correct and press [OK].
8. Press the power key and confirm that the power key/indicator and the memory indicator are off. After that, turn the main power switch off and on.

TCP/IP setup (Equipped with DHCP server)

Set up TCP/IP when the network is equipped with the DHCP server.

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of TCP/IP.
2. Press [On] on the left side of the touch panel.
3. Press [On] of DHCP.
4. Press [OK].
5. Press the power key and confirm that the power key/indicator and the memory indicator are off. After that, turn the main power switch off and on.

Netware setup

Select the NetWare network connection.

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of NetWare.
2. Press [On].
3. Select the frame type.
Auto/Ethernet-II/802.3/802.2/SNAP
4. Press [OK].
5. Press the power key and confirm that the power key/indicator and the memory indicator are off. After that, turn the main power switch off and on.

AppleTalk setup

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of Apple Talk.
2. Press [On].
3. Press [OK].
4. Press the power key and confirm that the power key/indicator and the memory indicator are off. After that, turn the main power switch off and on.

(8) Printing reports/Sending notice**Printing reports**

Print reports to check the machine settings and status.

Default settings for printing the result reports can also be configured.

1. Press [Next] of Report Print.
2. Press [Print] to print.
Status Page/Font List/Network Status Page/Service Status Page
3. Printing starts.

Transmission result reports

Automatically print a report of transmission results when the transmission is complete.

1. Press [Next] of Result Report Setting and then [Change] of Send Result Report.
2. Select [Off], [On], or [Error Only].
3. Press [OK].

(9) Adjustment/Maintenance

Copy density adjustment

Adjust copy density.

1. Press [Next] of Copy Density Adjustment.
2. Press [Change] of Auto for auto density mode or of Manual for manual density mode.
3. Press the key to adjust density.
-3/-2/-1/0/+1/+2/+3
4. Press [OK].

Print density

Adjust print density.

1. Press [Change] of Print Density.
2. Press the key to adjust density.
1/2/3/4/5
3. Press [OK].

Send/Box density adjust

Adjust scan density when sending or storing the data in document box.

1. Press [Next] of Send/Box Density Adjust.
2. Press [Change] of Auto for auto density mode or of Manual for manual density mode.
3. Press the key to adjust density.
-3/-2/-1/0/+1/+2/+3
4. Press [OK].

Drum refresh

Execute drum refresh when print is blurred.

NOTE: Place A4-R on the MP tray before pressing the System Menu key.

1. Press [Execute] of Drum Refresh.
2. Press [Yes].

Drum Refresh starts and ends in about 6 minutes.

Correcting fine black line

Correct fine black lines (black streaks caused by contamination), which may appear on the copies, when the optional document processor used.

1. Press [Change] of Correcting Black Line.
2. Select [Off], [On (Low)] or [On (High)].
3. Press [OK].

Charger auto cleaning

If black streaks appear on the printouts or scanned data, perform automatic cleaning of the main chargers.

1. Press [Execute] of Charger Auto Cleaning.
2. Press [Yes].
Automatic cleaning of the main charger starts and ends in about 45 seconds.

Display brightness

Set the brightness of the touch panel.

1. Press [Change] of Display Brightness.
2. Press the key to adjust brightness.
1/2/3/4
3. Press [OK].

Silent mode

Make the machine run more quietly. Select the mode when the running noise is annoying.

1. Press [Change] of Silent Mode.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

System initialization

Initialize the hard disk mounted on the machine to return to the default mode.

CAUTION: System initialization will erase Custom Document Boxes, data stored in Document Box, addresses in the Address Book, user property, account information, and settings.

NOTE: This item will not be displayed if the optional security kit is installed.

1. Press [Execute] of System Initialization.
2. Press [Yes].
3. Once the initialization ends, the message indicating [Task is completed. Turn the main power switch off and on.] appears.

Turn the main power switch off.

(10) Date/Timer

Date/Time

Set the date and time for the location where you use the machine.

CAUTION: Be sure to set Time Zone before the Date/Time setup.

1. Press [Change] of Date/Time.
2. Enter the date and time respectively using the [+]/[-].
NOTE: Set year (Y), month (M), date (D), hour (H), minute (M), and second (S).
3. Press [Off] or [On] of Summer Time and press [OK].

Time zone

Set the time difference in the location you are from GMT.

1. Press [Change] of Time Zone.
2. Select the location using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press [OK].

Date format

Select the display format of year, month, and date.

1. Press [Change] of Date Format.
2. Select [MM/DD/YYYY], [DD/MM/YYYY], or [YYYY/MM/DD].
3. Press [OK].

Auto panel reset

If no job runs for a certain period of time, automatically reset settings and return to the default setting.

Auto panel reset ON/OFF

Select to use auto panel reset or not.

1. Press [Change] of Auto Panel Reset.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Reset timer

If you select [On] for auto panel reset, set the amount of time to wait before auto panel reset.

1. Press [Change] of Reset Timer.
2. Enter the time using the [+]/[-].
Setting range: 5 to 495 (every five seconds)
3. Press [OK].

Auto sleep

If no job runs for a certain period of time, automatically enter sleep mode.

Auto sleep ON/OFF

Select whether to use auto sleep or not.

1. Press [Change] of Auto Sleep.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Sleep timer

If you select [On] for auto sleep, set the amount of time to wait before auto sleep.

1. Press [Change] of Sleep Timer.
2. Enter the time using the [+]/[-] or numeric keys.
Setting range: 1 to 240 <minute(s)>
3. Press [OK].

Auto error clear

If an error occurs during printing, the print job stops to wait for the next step to be taken by the user. In the auto error clear mode, automatically clear the error after a set amount of time elapses.

Clearing item: Print overrun/Memory is full

Auto error clear ON/OFF

Select whether to use auto error clear or not.

1. Press [Change] of Auto Error Clear.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Error clear timer

If you select [On] for auto error clear, set the amount of time to wait before automatically clearing errors.

1. Press [Change] of Error Clear Timer.
2. Enter the time using the [+]/[-].
Setting range: 5 to 495 (every five seconds)
3. Press [OK].

(11) Editing Destination (Address Book/Adding One-Touch Keys)

Save frequently used destinations to Address Book or One-touch Keys and the saved destinations can be changed. The destinations are available for Send as E-mail, Send to Folder, and Fax Transmission (optional).

Adding a destination

Add a new destination to the Address Book.

Adding an individual

1. Press [Register/Edit] of Address Book, [Add], [Contact] and then [Next].
2. Press [Change] of Address Number.
3. Enter a particular address number using the [+]/[-] or numeric keys.
Setting range: 1 to 2500
NOTE: Address Number is an ID for a destination. You can select any available number out of 2,500 numbers for individuals and 500 numbers for groups.
4. Press [OK].
5. Press [Change] of Name.
6. Enter the destination name (up to 32 characters) displayed on the Address Book and press [OK].
7. Press [Address].
8. Select transmission method from E-mail, Folder (FTP), FAX or Folder (SMB) using cursor up/down keys.
9. Press [Change Dest.].

E-mail Address

1. Press [E-mail Address] to enter the Email address and press [OK].
2. Check if the entries are correct and press [OK].

The Folder (FTP) Address

1. Press [Host Name], [Path], [Login User Name], and [Login Password] to enter relevant information respectively and press [OK].
2. Check if the entries are correct and press [OK].

The Folder (SMB) Address

1. Press [Host Name], [Path], [Login User Name], and [Login Password] to enter relevant information respectively and press [OK].
2. Check if the entries are correct and press [OK].

10. Check if the destination entry is correct and press [Register].

Adding a Group

1. Press [Register/Edit] of Address Book, [Add], [Group] and then [Next].
2. Press [Change] of Address Number.
3. Enter a particular Address Number using the [+]/[-].
Setting range: 1 to 2500
NOTE: Address Number is an ID for a group. You can select any available number out of 2,000 numbers for individuals and 500 numbers for groups.
4. Press [OK].
5. Press [Change] of Name.
6. Enter the group name displayed on the Address Book in not more than 32 characters.
7. Press [Group Member].

8. Press [Add].
9. Select a destination (individual) to add to the group.
10. Press [OK].
11. Check if the selected destination was added to the group and press [Register].

Adding a destination on One-touch Key

Add a new destination (individual or group).

1. Press [Register/Edit] of One-touch Key.
2. Select a One-touch Key number (001 to 100) for the destination. Pressing [No.] enables direct entry of a One-touch Key number.
3. Press [Register/Edit]. The address book appears.
4. Select a destination (individual or group) to add to the One-touch Key number.
Pressing [Detail] enables to show the detailed information of the selected destination.
5. Press [OK].

(12) Restarting the system/Connecting the PC

Restarting the system

Restart the CPU without turning the main power switch off.

It works to deal with the machine's unstable operation. (Same as the computer restart.)

1. Press [Execute] of Restart.
2. Press [Yes] to restart the machine.

Setting for using printer functions by connecting to the computer using parallel interface

1. Press [Change] of Parallel and then the key of the item.
Auto/Normal/High Speed/Nibble (High Speed)
Initial setting: Auto
2. Press [OK].
3. Press the Power key, and after confirming that the Power key/indicator and memory indicator have turned off, turn the main power switch off and on.

(13) User login administration

User login administration specifies how the user access is administered on this machine.

Enabling/Disabling User Login Administration

Enable user login administration.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
Initial setting: 5050 respectively
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting and then [Change] of User Login.
3. Select [Off], [Local Authentic.] or [Network Authentic.].
When selecting [Network Authentic.], enter the host name (62 characters or less) and domain name (254 characters or less) for the Authentication Server.
Select [NTLM(WinNT)] or [Kerberos(Win2000/2003)] as the authentication method.
4. Press [OK].

Adding a user

Add a new user.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting, [Register/Edit] of Local User List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] of User Name.
4. Enter the user name and press [OK].
5. Enter the login user name and E-mail address.
6. Press [Change] of Password and then [Password].
7. Enter the password and press [OK].
8. Press [Confirm Password].
9. Enter the same password to confirm and press [OK].
10. Press [Change] of Access Level.
11. Select the user access privilege and press [OK].
12. Press [Change] of Account Name.
13. Select the account and press [OK].
14. Press [Register].

Unknown login user name job

This specifies the behavior for handling the jobs sent with unknown login user names.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Change] of Unknown ID Job.
3. Press [Reject] or [Permit].
4. Press [OK].

(14) Job accounting

Job accounting Manages the copy/print count incurred by individual accounts by assigning an ID to each account.

Enabling/Disabling job accounting

Enable job accounting.

1. If user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
Initial setting: 5050 respectively
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, and then [Change] of Job Accounting.
3. Press [On] or [Off].
4. Press [OK].
5. When the display returns to the System Menu default screen, logout is automatically executed and the screen to enter the Account ID appears. To continue the operation, enter the Account ID.

Adding an account

Add a new account.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Register/Edit] of Accounting List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] of Account Name.
4. Enter the account name and press [OK].
5. Enter the Account ID.
6. Activate or deactivate restriction.
7. Press [Register].

Managing the copy/print counts

Select how the copying and printing page counts are shown -either the total of both or each of copying and printing individually.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting and then [Change] of Copy/Print Count.
3. Press [Total] or [Split].
4. Press [OK].

Restricting the use of the machine

Restrict the use of the machine by account or the number of sheets available.

Restricted items

Print Restriction Copier

Print Restriction Printer

Scan Restriction Others

Fax TX Restriction (This is displayed when the optional fax kit is installed.)

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Register/Edit] of Accounting List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] of Print Restriction Copier, Print Restriction Printer, Scan Restriction Others, or Fax TX Restriction.

4. Select [Off], [Counter Limit], or [Reject Usage].
When selecting [Counter Limit], enter the number of pages using the [+] / [-] or numeric keys.
Setting range: 1 to 999999
5. Press [OK].
6. Repeat steps 4 to 5 for other accounts to be restricted.
7. Press [Register].

Applying limit of restriction

Specify how the machine behaves when the counter has reached the limit of restriction.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting and then [Change] of Apply Limit.
3. Select [Immediately], [Subsequently], or [Alert Only].
4. Press [OK].

Counting the number of pages printed

Counts the number of pages printed. Counts are classified into Total Job Accounting and Each Job Accounting. A new count can also be started after resetting the count data which was stored for a certain period of time.

Total job accounting/Resetting the counter

Count the number of pages for all accounts and resets the counts for those accounts at one time.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and then [Next] of Total Job Accounting.
3. Press [Check] at the function to check the count.
The results will be displayed.
4. Confirm the count and press [Close].
5. Press [Execute] of Counter Reset to reset the counter.
6. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the reset. The counter is reset.

Each job accounting/Resetting the counter

Count the number of pages for each account and resets the counts by account.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and [Check] of Each Job Accounting.
3. Select the account to check the count.
4. Press [Detail].
5. Press [Check] at the function to check the count.
The results will be displayed.
6. Confirm the count and press [Close].
7. Press [Execute] of Counter Reset to reset the counter.
8. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the reset. The counter will be reset.

Counting by paper size

Count the number of pages by paper size (e.g. Letter).

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting, [Change] of Count by Paper Size, [Change] of Paper Size 1 to 5 and then [On].
3. Select the paper size.
4. Press [Media Type] to specify paper type.
5. Select the media type and press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

Printing an accounting report

Print out the total pages counted at all relevant accounts as an accounting report.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and then [Print] of Print Accounting Report.
3. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the printing.

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine immediately stops copying and displays the jam location on the operation panel.

Paper misfeed counts sorted by the detection condition can be checked in maintenance item U903.

To remove paper jammed in the machine, open the front cover, left cover or pull the cassette out.

To remove original jammed in the optional DP, open the document processor top cover or document processor reverse unit.

To remove the jammed paper in optional document finisher, detach the finisher from the machine.

Paper misfeed detection can be reset by opening and closing the respective covers to turn safety switch off and on.

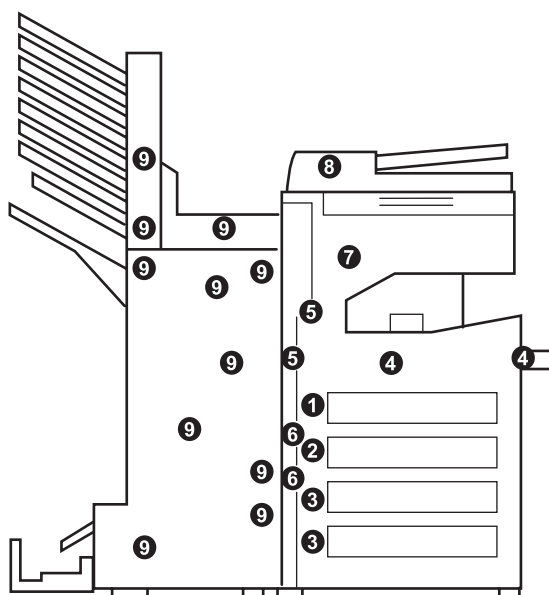


Figure 1-4-1

- (1) Misfeed in cassette 1
- (2) Misfeed in cassette 2
- (3) Misfeed in optional cassette 3 or 4
- (4) Misfeed in MP tray
- (5) Misfeed in duplex unit or left cover 1
- (6) Misfeed in left cover 2 or 3
- (7) Misfeed in optional job separator
- (8) Misfeed in optional DP
- (9) Misfeed in optional document finisher

(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions

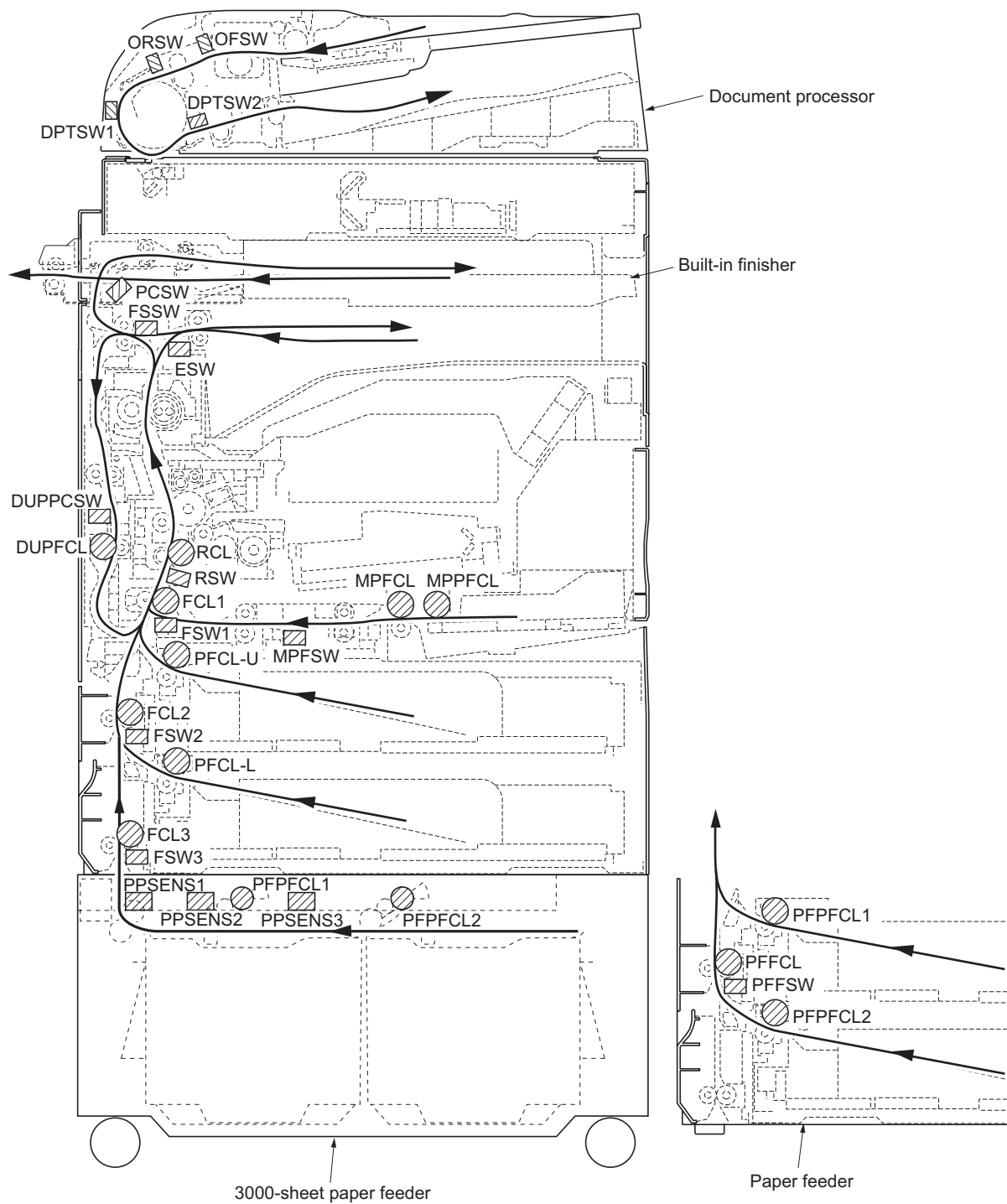


Figure 1-4-2

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
System	04 Cover open	Cover is open during copying.	-
	05 Secondary paper feed does not start	Secondary paper feed does not start within specified time of arrival of paper at the registration section.	30 s
	09 3000-sheet paper feeder sequence error jam	A communication sequence error occurs between the machine and the 3000-sheet paper feeder.	-
Paper feed section	10 No paper feed from cassette 1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within the specified time of upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	1489 ms (30 ppm)/ 1152 ms (40/50 ppm)
	11 No paper feed from cassette 2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within the specified time of lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	1562 ms (30 ppm)/ 1209 ms (40/50 ppm)
	12 No paper feed from optional cassette 3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time (paper feed from optional paper feeder).	1562 ms (30 ppm)/ 1209 ms (40/50 ppm)
		Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	2044 ms (30 ppm)/ 1582 ms (40/50 ppm)
	13 No paper feed from optional cassette 4	The paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time (paper feed from optional paper feeder).	1562 ms (30 ppm)/ 1209 ms (40/50 ppm)
	14 No paper feed from MP tray	The MP feed switch (MPFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of the MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	5056 ms (30 ppm)/ 3913 ms (40/50 ppm)
	15 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 1	Paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) does not turn on within specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	823 ms (30 ppm)/ 637 ms (40/50 ppm)
	16 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 2	Paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) does not turn on within specified time of the paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	879 ms (30 ppm)/ 681 ms (40/50 ppm)
	17 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 3	Paper path sensor 1 (PPSENS1) does not turn on within specified time of the paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	539 ms (30 ppm)/ 417 ms (40/50 ppm)

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Paper feed section	18 Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.	1657 ms (30 ppm)/ 1283 ms (40/50 ppm)
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on.	1910 ms (30 ppm)/ 1478 ms (40/50 ppm)
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.	1904 ms (30 ppm)/ 1474 ms (40/50 ppm)
	19 Misfeed in paper feeder vertical paper conveying section	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within specified time of the paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) turning on.	1573 ms (30 ppm)/ 1217 ms (40/50 ppm)
	20 Misfeed in MP tray vertical paper conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning on.	3933 ms (30 ppm)/ 3043 ms (40/50 ppm)
	21 Multiple sheets in paper feed section	The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	Paper length + 4337 ms (30 ppm)/ Paper length + 3357 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	Paper length + 4337 ms (30 ppm)/ Paper length + 3357 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional paper feeder).	3382 ms (30 ppm)/ 2617 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	Paper length + 1595 ms (30 ppm)/ Paper length + 1234 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	3382 ms (30 ppm)/ 2617 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The MP feed switch (MPFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	Paper length + 4337 ms (30 ppm)/ Paper length + 3357 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) turning on.	1489 ms (30 ppm)/ 1152 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L) turning on.	1562 ms (30 ppm)/ 1209 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of the paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on.	3416 ms (30 ppm)/ 2643 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn off within specified time of the paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on.	5056 ms (30 ppm)/ 3913 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The MP feed switch (MPFSW) does not turn off within specified time of the MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) turning on.	5056 ms (30 ppm)/ 3913 ms (40/50 ppm)

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Paper feed section	22 Multiple sheets in vertical conveying section	The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning off.	1910 ms (30 ppm)/ 1478 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning off.	1989 ms (30 ppm)/ 1539 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on	1910 ms (30 ppm)/ 1478 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.	1904 ms (30 ppm)/ 1474 ms (40/50 ppm)
	23 Multiple sheets in MP tray conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning off.	3539 ms (30 ppm)/ 2739 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning on.	3933 ms (30 ppm)/ 3043 ms (40/50 ppm)
Paper conveying section	30 Misfeed in registration/transfer section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning off.	1511 ms (30 ppm)/ 1170 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.	1652 ms (30 ppm)/ 1278 ms (40/50 ppm)
Fuser section	40 Misfeed in fuser section (MP tray) 41 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 1) 42 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 2) 43 Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 3) 44 Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 4) 46 Misfeed in fuser section (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder) 47 Misfeed in fuser section (duplex section)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2899 ms (30 ppm)/ 2243 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2899 ms (30 ppm)/ 2243 ms (40/50 ppm)
Eject section	50 Misfeed in eject section	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration switch (RSW) turning off.	2899 ms (30 ppm)/ 2243 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2899 ms (30 ppm)/ 2243 ms (40/50 ppm)
	51 Misfeed in job separator eject section	The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2051 ms (30 ppm)/ 1587 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.	2051 ms (30 ppm)/ 1587 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2051 ms (30 ppm)/ 1587 ms (40/50 ppm)

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Feedshift section	52 Misfeed in feedshift section	The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the start of eject motor (EM) reverse rotation.	1545 ms (30 ppm)/ 1196 ms (40/50 ppm)
		During paper switchback operation, the feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on.	2989 ms (30 ppm)/ 2313 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration switch (RSW) turning off.	2899 ms (30 ppm)/ 2243 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2899 ms (30 ppm)/ 2243 ms (40/50 ppm)
Duplex section	60 Duplex paper conveying section 1	The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2837 ms (30 ppm)/ 2196 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.	2837 ms (30 ppm)/ 2196 ms (40/50 ppm)
	61 Duplex paper conveying section 2	The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within specified time of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning on.	1994 ms (30 ppm)/ 1543 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning off.	1994 ms (30 ppm)/ 1543 ms (40/50 ppm)
Optional DP	70 No original feed	The original feed switch (OFSW) does not turn on within specified time during the first sheet feeding.	2436 pulses
		The original feed switch (OFSW) does not turn on within specified time during the second sheet feeding.	4430 pulses
	71 An original jam in the original feed/conveying section 1	DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2) does not turn off within specified time.	2500 pulses
	72 An original jam in the original feed/conveying section 2	The original feed switch (OFSW) and original registration switch (ORSW) does not turn off within specified time.	16675 pulses
	73 An original jam in the original conveying section	DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) does not turn off within specified time.	4979 pulses
	74 An original jam in the original registration section	The original registration switch (ORSW) does not turn on within specified time and after 5 retries.	4979 pulses
Optional DP	75 An original jam in the original registration section	The original registration switch (ORSW) does not turn off within specified time.	19533 pulses
		DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) does not turn on within specified time.	4979 pulses
	76 An original jam in the original feed/conveying section	DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2) does not turn on within specified time.	2500 pulses

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Optional DP	78 Document processor top cover open	The document processor top cover is opened during original feeding. The following switches turns on when starting the original paper feed. Original feed switch (OFSW) Original registration switch (ORSW) DP timing switch 1/2 (DPTSW1/2)	-
Optional finisher	80 Jam between the finisher and machine (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Paper ejection is not output from the machine to the document finisher within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	15 s
	81 Paper entry sensor nonarrival jam	(3000-sheet document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1360 ms (30 ppm)/ 1052 ms (40/50 ppm)
		(3000-sheet document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1360 ms (30 ppm)/ 1052 ms (40/50 ppm)
		(3000-sheet document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	2989 ms (30 ppm)/ 2313 ms (40/50 ppm)
		(Document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	2627 ms
		(Built-in finisher) The paper conveying switch (PCSW) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1573 ms (30 ppm) 1217 ms (40/50 ppm)
		(Built-in finisher) The paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on when paper is conveyed to the intermediate tray from the paper conveying unit.	Paper length + 1123 ms (30 ppm) Paper length + 869 ms (40/50 ppm)
	82 Jam in stapler	(3000-sheet document finisher) The home position is not detected within the specified time when driving the staple motor.	600 ms
		(Document finisher) The staple home position sensor (STSPS) is not turned on within the specified time when driving the staple motor (STM).	1000 ms
		(Built-in finisher) The staple home position sensor (STHPS) is not turned on within the specified time when driving the staple motor (STM).	600 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Optional finisher	83 Exit sensor stay jam	(3000-sheet document finisher) Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	1182 ms
		(Document finisher) In the straight mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	1680 ms
		(Document finisher) In the offset or staple mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	5375 ms
		(Built-in finisher) The paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on when paper is ejected to the finisher tray from the intermediate tray.	Paper length + 1123 ms (30 ppm) Paper length + 869 ms (40/50 ppm)
	84 Jam in eject section of right sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1562 ms (30 ppm)/ 1209 ms (40/50 ppm)
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1562 ms (30 ppm)/ 1209 ms (40/50 ppm)
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2989 ms (30 ppm)/ 2313 ms (40/50 ppm)
	85 Jam in eject section of left sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn off within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	1843 ms (30 ppm)/ 1426 ms (40/50 ppm)
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	1843 ms (30 ppm)/ 1426 ms (40/50 ppm)
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2989 ms (30 ppm)/ 2313 ms (40/50 ppm)
	86 Jam in eject section of internal tray 1 (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Internal tray entry sensor 1 (ITPES1) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the eject signal was received.	2674 ms (30 ppm)/ 2070 ms (40/50 ppm)
	87 Jam in eject section of internal tray 2 (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Internal tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn on within specified time of internal tray entry sensor 1 (ITPES1) turning on.	1708 ms (30 ppm)/ 1322 ms (40/50 ppm)
		Internal tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn off within specified time of internal tray entry sensor 1 (ITPES1) turning off.	676 ms
	88 Jam in eject section of main tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned on within specified time.	1324 ms
		Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	500 ms
		Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	500 ms
		The paper conveying belt detection sensor (PCBDS) is not turned off within specified time.	2000 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Optional finisher	89 Jam in centerfold unit (3000-sheet document finisher only)	The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn off within specified time of centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS) turning on.	1770 ms (30 ppm)/ 1370 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn on within specified time of centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS) turning on.	1770 ms (30 ppm)/ 1370 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2989 ms (30 ppm)/ 2313 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned on within specified time.	3040 ms
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	4213 ms
		Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms
		Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms
	89 Jam in centerfold unit (3000-sheet document finisher only)	The home position is not detected within the specified time after driving the centerfold staple motor (CSTM).	1000 ms
		The centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS) is not turned off within specified time.	4528 ms (30 ppm)/ 3504 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS) is not turned on within specified time.	4528 ms (30 ppm)/ 3504 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2989 ms (30 ppm)/ 2313 ms (40/50 ppm)
	90 Jam in mailbox (3000-sheet document finisher only)	The mail paper entry switch (MPESW) is not turned on within specified time.	1315 ms (30 ppm)/ 1017 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The mail paper entry switch (MPESW) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2989 ms (30 ppm)/ 2313 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time of mail paper entry switch (MPESW) turning on.	Tray 1 to 4 2618 ms (30 ppm)/ 2026 ms (40/50 ppm) Tray 5 to 7 1483 ms (30 ppm)/ 1148 ms (40/50 ppm)
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2989 ms (30 ppm)/ 2313 ms (40/50 ppm)
	91 Finisher cover open	(3000-sheet document finisher) The front cover, top cover or right sub tray is opened when starting the finisher operation. The centerfold unit top cover is opened when starting the centerfold operation. The mailbox cover is opened when starting the operation.	-
		(Document finisher) The finisher cover becomes open during paper is running. Paper is remaining in paths at power on.	-
	92 Exit sensor non-arrival jam (document finisher only)	In the straight mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the paper entry sensor (PES) was turned on.	1770 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Optional finisher	93 Reverse sensor jam (document finisher only)	The reverse sensor (REVS) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	1071 ms
		The reverse sensor (REVS) is not turned on within specified time.	435 ms
		The reverse sensor (REVS) does not turn off within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning off.	622 ms
		The reverse sensor (REVS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on.	Depends on paper size
	94 Paper entry sensor stay/remaining jam (document finisher only)	The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off within specified time its turning on.	Depends on paper size
	95 Paper conveying sensor jam (document finisher only)	The paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn on within specified time of reverse sensor (REVS) turning on.	735 ms
		The paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn off within specified time of reverse sensor (REVS) turning off.	1004 ms
	96 Jam between the built-in finisher and machine (built-in finisher only)	Paper ejection is not output from the machine to the document finisher within specified time of the intermediate tray sensor (ITS) turning on.	1573 ms (30 ppm) 1217 ms (40/50 ppm)

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) A paper jam in the paper feed, conveying or eject section is indicated as soon as the main power switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, eject switch or feedshift switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, eject switch, feedshift switch
(2) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 1). Jam code 10	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the cassette 1 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the upper paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the upper paper feed clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(3) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 2). Jam code 11	Electrical problem with the upper paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-51).
	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the cassette 2 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 2 if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the lower paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the lower paper feed clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the lower paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-51).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(4) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from optional cassette 3). Jam code 12	Optional paper feeder	
	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of optional cassette 3 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder	
	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select following clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1/2, paper feeder paper conveying clutch
	Electrical problem with clutch.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(5) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from optional cassette 4). Jam code 13	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of optional cassette 4 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken paper feeder feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-8 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if YC2-7 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when the paper feeder feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper feeder feed switch.
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(6) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from MP tray). Jam code 14	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the MP paper feed pulley, MP forwarding pulley and MP separation pulley are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective MP feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn MP feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the MP paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select MP paper feed clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the MP paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-51).
(7) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 15	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 3.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-12 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN6-11 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when paper path sensor 3 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 3.
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(8) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 16	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 2.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-9 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN6-8 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when paper path sensor 2 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 2.
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(9) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 17	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 1.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-6 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN6-5 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when paper path sensor 1 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 1.
	Check if paper feeder paper conveying clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper conveying clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper conveying clutch.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(10) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 18	Broken feed switch 1/2/3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
(11) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in optional paper feeder vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 19	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken paper feeder feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-8 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if YC2-7 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when the paper feeder feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper feeder feed switch.
(12) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in MP tray vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 20	Broken MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. MP feed switch, registration switch

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(13) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in paper feed section). Jam code 21	Broken feed switch 1/2/3 or MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, MP feed switch
	Broken paper feeder feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-8 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if YC2-7 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when the paper feeder feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper feeder feed switch.
	Check if the clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select following clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Upper paper feed clutch, lower paper feed clutch, MP paper conveying clutch
	Electrical problem with clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-51).
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 1/2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 1/2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 1/2.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(14) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in vertical conveying section). Jam code 22	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
	Broken feed switch 1/2/3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3
(15) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in MP tray conveying section). Jam code 23	Broken MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. MP feed switch, registration switch
(16) A paper jam in the paper conveying section is indicated during copying (jam in registration/transfer section). Jam code 30	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1, registration switch
	The contact between the right and left registration rollers is not correct.	Check visually and replace.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(17) A paper jam in the fuser section is indicated during copying (jam in fuser section). Jam codes 40 to 44, 46 and 47	Broken eject switch or feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Eject switch, feedshift switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-51).
(18) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (jam in eject section). Jam code 50	Broken eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Registration switch, eject switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-51).
(19) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (jam in optional job separator eject section). Jam code 51	Broken feedshift switch or job separator eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, job separator eject switch
(20) A paper jam in the feedshift section is indicated during copying (jam in feedshift section). Jam code 52	Check if the feedshift solenoid malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U033 and select the feedshift solenoid on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the feedshift solenoid.	Check (see page 1-4-51).
	Broken feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, registration switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-51).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(21) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 1). Jam code 60	Broken feedshift switch or duplex paper conveying switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, duplex paper conveying switch
(22) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 2). Jam code 61	Broken duplex paper conveying switch or feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Duplex paper conveying switch, feed switch 1
(23) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (no original feed). Jam code 70	Defective original feed switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the original feed motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original feed motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(24) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original feed/conveying section). Jam code 71	Defective DP timing switch 2.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(25) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original feed/conveying section). Jam code 72	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Original feed switch, original registration switch
(26) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original conveying section). Jam code 73	Defective DP timing switch 1.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(27) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original registration section). Jam code 74	Defective original registration switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(28) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original registration section). Jam code 75	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Original registration switch, DP timing switch 1
(29) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original feed/conveying section). Jam code 76	Defective DP timing switch 2.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(30) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (jam between finisher and machine). Jam code 80	Defective paper entry sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the original switchback switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(31) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper jam during paper insertion to the finisher). Jam code 81	3000-sheet document finisher/document finisher	
	Extremely curled paper.	Replace the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	(3000-sheet document finisher) Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the original switchback switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
		(Document finisher) With 5 V DC present at CN14-1 and CN14-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-2 and CN14-4 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Built-in finisher	
	Extremely curled paper.	Replace the paper.
	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-23 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-21 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the feedshift roller or feedshift pulley is deformed.	Check and remedy.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(32) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (finisher stapler jam). Jam code 82	3000-sheet document finisher/document finisher	
	Defective staple home position sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the staple home position sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Built-in finisher	
	The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler. Remove the staple if any.
	Defective stapler section.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-24 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-19 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high. If it does, replace the stapler section.
(33) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (eject sensor stay jam). Jam code 83	3000-sheet document finisher	
	Defective eject switch 1.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the original switchback switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Document finisher	
	Defective eject sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN5-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject roller and eject pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Built-in finisher	
	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-23 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-21 on the finisher control PWB remains low when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the feedshift roller or feedshift pulley is deformed.	Check and remedy.
(34) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (sub tray eject jam). Jam code 84	Defective eject switch 2.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the original switchback switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(35) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (sub tray eject jam). Jam code 85	Defective eject switch 3.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the original switchback switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(36) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (internal tray paper entry sensor 1 jam). Jam code 86	Defective internal tray paper entry sensor 1.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn internal tray paper entry sensor 1 on and off manually. Replace the original switchback switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(37) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (internal tray paper entry sensor 2 jam). Jam code 87	Defective internal tray paper entry sensor 2.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn internal tray paper entry sensor 2 on and off manually. Replace the original switchback switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(38) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (main tray eject jam). Jam code 88	Defective sensor/switch.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the original switchback switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Eject switch 1, side registration home position sensor 1/2, paper conveying belt position detection sensor
(39) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (centerfold unit jam). Jam code 89	Defective sensor/switch.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the original switchback switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Centerfold paper entry sensor, centerfold eject switch, centerfold paper detection switch
(40) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (mailbox jam). Jam code 90	Defective sensor/switch.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the original switchback switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Mail paper entry switch, tray eject sensor
(41) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (eject sensor non-arrival jam). Jam code 92	Defective eject sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN5-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the eject roller and eject pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(42) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (reverse sensor jam). Jam code 93	Defective reverse sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN14-5 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-7 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the reverse sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the reverse sensor.
	Check if the reverse motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the reverse roller and reverse pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the reverse guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(43) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper entry sensor stay jam). Jam code 94	Extremely curled paper.	Replace the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN14-1 and CN14-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-2 and CN14-4 on the main PCB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Check if the paper entry guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(44) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper conveying sensor jam). Jam code 95	Defective paper conveying sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN4-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN4-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the paper conveying roller and paper conveying pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the paper conveying guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(45) A paper jam in optional built-in finisher is indicated during copying (jam between finisher and machine). Jam code 96	Defective intermediate tray sensor.	With 5 V DC present at YC3-1 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC3-2 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high when the intermediate tray sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the intermediate tray sensor.

1-4-2 Self-diagnosis

(1) Self-diagnostic function

This unit is equipped with a self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, copying is disabled and the problem displayed as a code consisting of C followed by a number, indicating the nature of the problem.

A message is also displayed requesting the user to call for service.

After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning safety switches off and back on.

List of system errors

When an unexpected error is detected for some reason, a system error will be indicated. After a system error is indicated, the error can be cleared by turning the main power switch off and then on. If the error is detected continuously, however, perform the operation shown in Table 1-4-1. If a system error occurs frequently, a fault may have occurred. Check the details of the C call to take proper measures.

System error	Contents	Operation
0800	Image processing problem	System error → Normal service call processing
1800	Paper feeder unit communication problem	System error → service call → partial operation
4200	BD steady-state problem	System error → Normal service call processing
6420	Fuser unit fuse cut problem	System error → Normal service call processing
8800	Document finisher communication problem	System error → service call → partial operation
9000	DP communication problem	System error → service call → partial operation

Table 1-4-1

In addition, it is a system error if the following error code is displayed. When an error has occurred, clear the error by turning the main power switch off then on.

CF1XX, CF2XX, CF3XX, CF4XX, CF5XX, CF6XX, CF7XX, CFAXX, CFBXX, 0xFBXX

Partial operation control

If any of the following calls for service is detected, partial operation control will be activated. After taking measures against the cause of trouble, run maintenance item U906 to reset partial operation control.

Code	Contents	Code	Contents
C1010	Upper lift motor error	C8190	Finisher trailing edge registration motor problem ^{*5}
C1020	Lower lift motor error	C8210	Stapler moving motor 1 error ^{*3} /Stapler problem ^{*4} /Finisher stapler problem ^{*5}
C1030	Paper feeder lift motor 1 error ^{*1}	C8220	Stapler moving motor 2 error ^{*3}
C1040	Paper feeder lift motor 2 error ^{*1}	C8230	Stapler motor problem ^{*3}
C1100	Paper feeder lift motor 1 error ^{*2}	C8300	Centerfold unit communication error ^{*6}
C1110	Paper feeder lift motor 2 error ^{*2}	C8310	Centerfold side registration motor 1 problem ^{*6}
C1120	Paper feeder left lift position problem ^{*2}	C8320	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor problem ^{*6}
C1130	Paper feeder right lift position problem ^{*2}	C8330	Blade motor problem ^{*6}
C1800	Paper feeder unit communication problem ^{*1,*2}	C8340	Centerfold staple motor problem ^{*6}
C2600	Paper feeder paper conveying motor error ^{*2}	C8350	Centerfold side registration motor 2 problem ^{*6}
C3210	CIS lamp problem	C8360	Centerfold main motor problem ^{*6}
C3310	CIS AGC problem	C8440	Sensor adjusting problem ^{*4}
C8020	Punch motor problem ^{*3}	C8460	EEPROM problem ^{*4}
C8030	Tray upper limit detection problem ^{*4}	C8500	Mailbox communication error ^{*7}
C8050	Paper conveying belt motor 1 problem ^{*3}	C8510	Mailbox drive motor problem ^{*7}
C8060	Paper conveying belt motor 2 problem ^{*3}	C8800	Document finisher communication problem ^{*3}
C8070	Internal tray communication error ^{*3}	C9000	DP communication problem ^{*8}
C8140	Main tray problem ^{*3} /Tray elevation motor problem ^{*4}	C9040	DP lift motor going up error ^{*8}
C8170	Side registration motor 1 problem ^{*3} /Adjustment motor problem ^{*4} /Finisher front side registration motor problem ^{*5}	C9050	DP lift motor going down error ^{*8}
C8180	Side registration motor 2 problem ^{*3} /Finisher rear side registration motor problem ^{*5}	C9060	DP EEPROM error ^{*8}
		C9070	Communication problem between DP and SHD ^{*8}
		C9080	Communication problem between DP and CIS ^{*8}

*1: Paper feeder/*2: 3000 sheet paper feeder/*3: 3000-sheet document finisher/

*4: Document finisher/*5: Built-in finisher/*6: Centerhold unit/*7: Mailbox/*8: DP

Measures against the service codes detecting fuser problems

If one of the following service codes is detected, take actions to clear the cause of the trouble and perform maintenance item U163 to reset the service code.

Code	Contents	Code	Contents
C6000	Fuser heater break	C6050	Abnormally low fuser unit thermistor temper-
C6020	Abnormally high fuser unit thermistor tem-	C6400	Zero-cross signal error
C6030	Fuser unit thermistor break error		

(2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0030	Fax control PWB system problem (optional fax) Processing with the fax software was disabled due to a hardware or software problem.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0060	Main PWB type mismatch error	Defective PWB.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0070	Fax control PWB incompatibility detection problem (optional fax) Fax software is not compatible with main software.	FAX and the machine are not compatible.	Use the FAX control PWB that is designed for use with the machine.
C0130	Backup memory (EEPROM) device problem (Main PWB) Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0140	Backup memory (EEPROM) data problem (Main PWB) Reading data from EEPROM is abnormal.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0150	Backup memory device problem (Engine PWB) Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0160	Backup memory data problem (Engine PWB) Reading data from EEPROM is abnormal. Read and write data does not match five times continuously.	Problem with the backup memory data.	Run maintenance item U022 to initialize the backup memory data.
		Defective engine PWB.	If the C0160 is displayed after initializing the backup memory, replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C0170	Copy counts problem A checksum error is detected in the main and engine backup memories for the copy counters.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C0180	Machine number mismatch error Machine number of main PWB and engine PWB does not match.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0600	DIMM installed incorrectly DIMM is not installed correctly.	DIMM installed incorrectly.	Check if the DIMM is inserted into the socket on the main PWB correctly.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0610	DIMM problem The DIMM on the main PWB does not operate correctly.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective DIMM.	Replace the DIMM and check for correct operation.
C0630	DMA problem DMA transmission of compressed, decompressed, rotated, relocated or blanked-out image data does not complete within the specified period of time.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0640	Hard disk drive problem The hard disk cannot be accessed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC49 on the main PWB and the connector on the hard disk. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective hard disk.	Run U024 (HDD formatting) without turning the power off to initialize the hard disk. Replace the hard disk drive and check for correct operation if the problem is still detected after initialization.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0700	CF error for backup Optional fax backup kit (CF) is not suitable as backup.	CF installed incorrectly.	Install CF correctly.
		Defective CF.	Run the maintenance item U933 to initialize the CF (see page 1-3-85).
C0800	Image processing problem JAM05 is detected twice.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0830	Flash ROM program area checksum error (optional fax) A checksum error occurred with the program in the Flash ROM on the fax control PWB.	Defective fax control PWB.	Upgrade the fax control PWB software (see the service manual for the fax). If the problem still remains, replace the fax control PWB and check for correct operation.
C0870	Fax control PWB to main PWB high capacity data transfer problem (optional fax) High-capacity data transfer between the fax control PWB and the main PWB was not normally performed even if the data transfer was retried the specified times.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC1 on the fax control PWB and YC4 on the interface PWB, connection of connector YC30 on the main PWB and YC6 on the interface PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective fax control PWB or main PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB or main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0880	Fax control PWB program archive problem (optional fax) When power is turned on, the compressed program in the flash ROM on the fax control PWB was not successfully decompressed.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and check for correct operation.
C0920	Fax file system error (optional fax) The backup data is not retained for file system abnormality of flash memory of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax control PWB.	Turn the main power switch off and then back on again. If the problem still remains, replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1010	Upper lift motor error When cassette 1 is inserted, upper lift limit switch does not turn on within 12 s of upper lift motor turning on. A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 500 ms or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of upper lift motor and the connector YC13 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of upper lift motor.	Replace upper lift motor.
		Defective upper lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace upper lift motor.
		Defective upper lift limit switch.	Check if YC13-B9 on the engine PWB goes low when upper lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace upper lift limit switch.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of upper lift limit switch and the connector YC13 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C1020	Lower lift motor error When cassette 2 is inserted, lower lift limit switch does not turn on within 12 s of lower lift motor turning on. A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 500 ms or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lower lift motor and the connector YC13 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of lower lift motor.	Replace lower lift motor.
		Defective lower lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace lower lift motor.
		Defective lower lift limit switch.	Check if YC13-B15 on the engine PWB goes low when lower lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace lower lift limit switch.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lower lift limit switch and the connector YC13 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1030	Paper feeder lift motor 1 error (optional paper feeder) When optional cassette 3 is inserted, paper feeder lift switch 1 does not turn on within 12 s of paper feeder lift motor 1 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of paper feeder lift motor 1.	Replace paper feeder lift motor 1.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 1.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 1.	Check if YC1-5 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 1.
C1040	Paper feeder lift motor 2 error (optional paper feeder) When optional cassette 4 is inserted, paper feeder lift switch 2 does not turn on within 12 s of paper feeder lift motor 2 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of paper feeder lift motor 2.	Replace paper feeder lift motor 2.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 2.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 2.	Check if YC1-7 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 2.
C1100	Paper feeder lift motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder) A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Paper feeder lift motor 1 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
C1110	Paper feeder lift motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder) A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Paper feeder lift motor 2 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1120	Paper feeder left lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder) Paper feeder switch 2 does not turn on within 30 s of paper feeder lift motor 1 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 2.	Check if YC5-7 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 2.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 1.
		The paper feeder left lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.
C1130	Paper feeder right lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder) Paper feeder switch 1 does not turn on within 30 s of paper feeder lift motor 2 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 1.	Check if YC5-4 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 1.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 2.
		The paper feeder right lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.
C1800	Paper feeder unit communication problem (optional paper feeder/3000-sheet paper feeder) No communication: there is no reply after 5 retries. Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective paper feeder main PWB.	Replace the paper feeder main PWB and check for correct operation.
C1900	Paper feeder EEPROM error (optional paper feeder) When writing the data, the write data and the read data is not continuously in agreement three times.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective paper feeder.	Replace the paper feeder with another unit and check the operation. If the operation is normal, replace or repair optional paper feeder.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2000	Drive motor problem Stable OFF is detected for 1 s continuously after drive motor stability. The drive motor is not stabilized in 6 s since the motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC11 on the engine PWB and the connector on the drive motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective drive motor.	Replace the drive motor.
C2250	Main charger cleaning motor error A locking error has been detected three times in a row during a reciprocating cleaning motion.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the engine PWB and the connector on the main charger cleaning motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective main charger cleaning motor.	Replace the main charger cleaning motor.
C2500	Paper feed motor error Stable OFF is detected for 1 s continuously after paper feed motor stability. The paper feed motor is not stabilized in 6 s since the motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC11 on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feed motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective paper feed motor.	Replace the paper feed motor.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2600	Paper feeder paper conveying motor error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder) The lock signal of the motor is detected above 450 ms. Paper feeder drive motor error (optional paper feeder) The lock signal of the motor is detected above 500 ms.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Paper feeder paper conveying motor / paper feeder drive motor does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the paper feeder main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective motor.	Replace the paper feeder paper conveying motor / paper feeder drive motor.
C3100	Scanner carriage problem The home position is not correct when the power is turned on or at the start of copying using the table.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC4 on the scanner PWB and the connector on the scanner home position switch, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective scanner PWB.	Replace the scanner PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective scanner home position switch.	Replace the scanner home position switch.
		Defective scanner motor.	Replace the scanner motor.
		The mirror frame, exposure lamp, or scanner wire is defective.	Check if the mirror frames and exposure lamp are on the rail. And check the scanner wire winds correctly.
C3200	Exposure lamp problem After the reading starting, when input value at the time of exposure lamp illumination does not exceed the threshold value between 5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the scanner PWB and the connector on the inverter PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective scanner PWB.	Replace the scanner PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective CCD PWB.	Replace the CCD PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective exposure lamp or inverter PWB.	Replace the exposure lamp or inverter PWB.
		Incorrect shading position.	Adjust the position of the contact glass (shading plate). If the problem still occurs, replace the scanner home position switch.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C3210	CIS lamp problem After the reading starting, when input value at the time of CIS illumination does not exceed the threshold value between 5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the main PWB and the connector on the DP main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective DP main PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective DP inverter PWB.	Replace the DP inverter PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective CIS.	Replace the CIS and check for correct operation.
C3300	CCD AGC problem After AGC, correct input is not obtained at CCD.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the SHD PWB and the connector on the CCD PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective exposure lamp.	Replace the exposure lamp or inverter PWB.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the SHD PWB or CCD PWB and check for correct operation.
C3310	CIS AGC problem After AGC, correct input is not obtained at CIS.	Defective DP main PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
		CIS output problem.	Replace the CIS and check for correct operation.
		Defective DP inverter PWB.	Replace the DP inverter PWB and check for correct operation.
C3500	Communication error between scanner and SHD An error code is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the scanner PWB and the connector YC4 on the SHD PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the scanner PWB or SHD PWB and check for correct operation.
C3900	Backup memory read/write problem (scanner PWB) Read and write data does not match.	Defective backup RAM or scanner PWB.	Replace the scanner PWB and check for correct operation.
C3910	Backup memory data problem (scanner PWB) Data in the specified area of the backup memory does not match the specified values.	Problem with the backup memory data.	Run maintenance item U022 to initialize the backup memory data.
		Defective scanner PWB.	If the C3910 is displayed after initializing the backup memory, replace the scanner PWB and check for correct operation.
C4000	Polygon motor synchronization problem The polygon motor does not reach the stable speed within 20 s of the START signal turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C4010	Polygon motor steady-state problem Stable OFF is detected for 20 s continuously after polygon motor stability.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C4200	BD steady-state problem ASIC detects a BD error A for 2 s after the polygon motor rotation has been stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C5300	Broken cleaning lamp wire While the cleaning lamp is on, the broken cleaning lamp wire detection signal is detected for 2 s continuously.	Defective cleaning lamp.	Replace the cleaning lamp.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6000	Fuser heater break Fuser unit thermistor 1 detected less than 70°C/158°F for 10 s during warm-up and ready in. During warm-up, the temperature at the fuser unit thermistor 1 does not rise by 1°C/1.8°F continuously for 5 s. Fuser unit thermistor 2 detected less than 40°C/104°F for 10 s during warm-up and ready in. During warm-up, the temperature at the fuser unit thermistor 2 does not rise by 1°C/1.8°F continuously for 5 s.	Defective fuser heater M or S.	Replace the fuser heater M or S.
		Installation defectiveness on fuser unit thermistor 1.	Check the mounting state of the fuser unit thermistor 1. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser unit thermostat.	Replace the fuser unit thermostat.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6020	Abnormally high fuser unit thermistor temperature Fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2 is detected 250°C/482°F or more for 40 ms.	Installation defectiveness on fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2.	Check the mounting state of the fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser thermistor unit 1 or 2.	Replace the fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6030	Fuser unit thermistor break error The fuser unit thermistor break signal is detected continuously for 1 s.	Installation defectiveness on fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2.	Check the mounting state of the fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2.	Replace the fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C6050	Abnormally low fuser unit thermistor temperature Fuser unit thermistor 1 is detected 80°C/176°F less than 1 s continuously during copying.	Defective fuser heater M or S.	Replace the fuser heater M or S.
		Installation defectiveness on fuser unit thermistor 1.	Check the mounting state of the fuser unit thermistor 1. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6400	Zero-cross signal error While fuser heater ON/OFF control is performed, the zero-cross signal is not input within 3 s.	Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or power source PWB and check for correct operation.
C6410	Fuser unit connector insertion problem Absence of the fuser unit is detected.	Fuser unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the fuser unit connector if necessary.
		Defective fuser unit connector.	Replace the fuser unit.
C6420	Fuser unit fuse cut problem The fuse cannot be cut, When replacing the fuser unit, the fuse cannot be cut in 33 s after the fuse cut signal is turned on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Fuser unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the fuser unit connector if necessary.
C7300	Toner container problem Toner level is not detected when toner empty is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective toner container sensor.	Replace the toner container sensor.
C7400	Developing unit connector insertion problem Absence of the developing unit is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Defective developing unit connector.	Replace the developing unit.
C7410	Drum unit connector insertion problem Absence of the drum unit is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Defective drum unit connector.	Replace the drum unit.
C7800	Broken external thermistor wire The thermistor output value is 4.5 V or more.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC14 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective humidity sensor.	Replace the humidity sensor.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7810	Short-circuited external thermistor The thermistor input value is 0.5 V or less.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC14 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective humidity sensor.	Replace the humidity sensor.
C7900	Drum EEPROM error Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum unit.	Replace the drum unit.
C7910	Developing unit EEPROM error Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing unit.	Replace the developing unit.
C8020	Punch motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) The LOCK signal of the punch motor is detected for more than 500 ms while the punch motor is operating.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch motor.	Replace the punch motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the punch PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8030	Tray upper limit detection problem (optional document finisher) When the tray elevation motor raises a tray, the ON status of the tray upper limit sensor is detected.	The tray upper limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray upper limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8050	Paper conveying belt motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn on within 2.5 s. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the internal tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8060	Paper conveying belt motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn on within 2.5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the internal tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8070	Internal tray communication error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Communication with the internal tray is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the finisher main PWB and the connector YC1 on the internal tray PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8140	Main tray problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) The main tray is not detected by the main tray top limit detection sensor or the main tray capacity detection sensor within 20 s since the tray has started ascending. The main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray load detection sensor is not detected to be turned off in 20 s after the main tray has descended. The main tray low limit detection sensor is not detected to be turned on in 20 s after the main tray has descended. During main tray ascent, the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray load detection sensor stays on for more than 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the finisher main PWB and the connector on the main tray motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main tray motor.	Replace the main tray motor.
		Defective main tray upper limit detection sensor/main tray load detection sensor/main tray lower limit detection sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Tray elevation motor problem (optional document finisher) When the tray elevation motor is driving, the ON status of the tray lower limit sensor or surface view sensor cannot be detected even if a specified time has elapsed.	The tray elevation motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The tray elevation motor malfunctions.	Replace the tray elevation motor.
		The tray lower limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray lower limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8170	Side registration motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the internal tray PWB and the connector on side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective side registration motor 1.	Replace side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Adjustment motor problem (optional document finisher) When the adjustment motor is driving, the ON status of the adjustment home position sensor cannot be detected even if a specified time has elapsed. When adjustment operation starts, the ON status of the adjustment home position sensor is not detected.	The adjustment motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective adjustment motor.	Replace adjustment motor.
		The adjustment home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective adjustment home position sensor.	Replace the adjustment home position sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Finisher front side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher) When the front-side registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the front-side registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The front side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective front side registration motor.	Replace front side registration motor.
		The front side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective front side registration home position sensor.	Replace the front side registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8180	Side registration motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the internal tray PWB and the connector of side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective side registration motor 2.	Replace side registration motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Finisher rear side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher) When the rear-side registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the rear-side registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The rear side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective rear side registration motor.	Replace rear side registration motor.
		The rear side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective rear side registration home position sensor.	Replace the rear side registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.
C8190	Finisher trailing edge registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher) When the trailing edge registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the trailing edge registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The trailing edge registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective trailing edge registration motor.	Replace trailing edge registration motor.
		The trailing edge registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective trailing edge registration home position sensor.	Replace the trailing edge registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8210	Stapler moving motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 1.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler moving motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler moving motor 1.	Replace stapler moving motor 1.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Stapler problem (optional document finisher) When the stapler motor is driving, the ON status of the stapler home position sensor cannot be detected even if a specified time has elapsed.	The stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler.
		The stapler is broken.	Replace the stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Finisher stapler problem (optional built-in finisher) The stapler home position sensor does not change state from nondetection to detection within 200 ms of the start of stapler motor counterclockwise (forward) rotation. During initialization, the stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 600 ms of the start of stapler motor clockwise (reverse) rotation.	The stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler.
		The stapler is broken.	Replace the front stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.
C8220	Stapler moving motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler moving motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler moving motor 2.	Replace stapler moving motor 2.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8230	Stapler motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Jam 82 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler motor.	Replace the stapler motor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8300	Centerfold unit communication error (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Communication with the centerfold unit is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC22 on the finisher main PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold unit set switch.	Replace the centerfold unit set switch.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8310	Centerfold side registration motor 1 problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1000 ms passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold side registration motor 1.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8320	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 2500 ms passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6/ YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.	Replace centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8330	Blade motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1500 ms passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the blade motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective blade motor.	Replace the blade motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8340	Centerfold staple motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Jam 89 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold staple motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold staple motor.	Replace the centerfold staple motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8350	Centerfold side registration motor 2 problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1000 ms passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold side registration motor 2.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8360	Centerfold main motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) The motor lock signal is detected above 1000 ms during driving the centerfold main motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC12 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold main motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold main motor.	Replace the centerfold main motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8440	Sensor adjusting problem (optional document finisher) The sensor cannot be adjusted within the specified range.	The paper entry sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective paper entry sensor.	Replace the paper entry sensor and check for correct operation.
		The optical path of the paper entry sensor is blocked by foreign matter.	Remove the foreign matter.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8460	EEPROM problem (optional document finisher) Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective EEPROM or finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8500	Mailbox communication error (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher) Communication with the mailbox is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of the connector of the mailbox and the connector YC7 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8510	Mailbox drive motor problem (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher) The motor lock signal is detected above 500 ms during driving the mailbox drive motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the mailbox main PWB and the connector of the mailbox drive motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective mailbox drive motor.	Replace the mailbox drive motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8800	Document finisher communication problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) No communication: there is no reply after 5 retries. Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the finisher main PWB and the connector on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C8900	Backup memory data problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Read and write data does not match.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the finisher main PWB and the connector on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8910	Backup memory data problem (optional punch unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Read and write data does not match.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the connector YC4 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch PWB.	Replace the punch PWB and check for correct operation.
C8920	Backup memory data problem (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher) Read and write data does not match.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the mailbox main PWB and the connector YC7 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective mailbox main PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8930	Backup memory data problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Read and write data does not match.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the centerfold main PWB and the connector YC5 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold main PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C9000	DP communication problem (optional DP) A communication error is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the scanner PWB and the connector of the DP, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective DP main PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
C9040	DP lift motor going up error (optional DP) The pulse count raised to 10000 at lifting, however, the DP lift switch could not be turned on. After one time retry, the DP lift limit switch could not be turned on.	Loose connection of the DP lift motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the DP lift motor.	Replace the DP lift motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the DP lift upper limit switch.	Replace the DP lift upper limit switch and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the DP lift upper limit switch connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective DP main PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
C9050	DP lift motor going down error (optional DP) The pulse count lowered to 10000 at lifting down, however, the DP bottom limit switch could not be turned on. After one time retry, the DP bottom limit switch could not be turned on.	Loose connection of the DP lift motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the DP lift motor.	Replace the DP lift motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the DP lift lower limit switch.	Replace the DP lift lower limit switch and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the DP lift lower limit switch connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective DP main PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
C9060	DP EEPROM error (optional DP) Read and write data does not match. Data in the specified area of the backup memory does not match the specified values.	Defective DP main PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9070	Communication problem between DP and SHD (optional DP) A communication error is detected.	Loose connection of the SHD PWB.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective SHD PWB.	Replace the SHD PWB and check for correct operation.
C9080	Communication problem between DP and CIS (optional DP) Reading cannot be performed correctly.	Loose connection of CIS.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective CIS.	Replace CIS and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
F000	Operation panel PWB communication error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective operation panel PWB.	Replace the operation panel PWB and check for correct operation.
F010	Main PWB checksum error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
F020	Memory checksum error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective expansion memory.	Replace the expansion memory and check for correct operation.
F030	Main PWB system error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
F040	Engine PWB communication error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F041	Scanner PWB communication error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective scanner PWB.	Replace the scanner PWB and check for correct operation.
F050	Engine ROM checksum error	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F060	Engine RAM error	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F070	Flash ROM error	Defective flash ROM.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F080	Flash ROM error (during download)	Defective flash ROM.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F090	Fax control PWB communication error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
F14F	Power source PWB secondary side error	Defective power source PWB.	Replace the power source PWB and check for correct operation.

1-4-3 Image formation problems

(1) No image appears
(entirely white).



See page 1-4-45.

(2) No image appears
(entirely black).



See page 1-4-45.

(3) Image is too light.



See page 1-4-46.

(4) Background is visible.



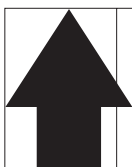
See page 1-4-46.

(5) A white line
appears longitudinally.



See page 1-4-46.

(6) A black line
appears longitudinally.



See page 1-4-47.

(7) A black line
appears laterally.



See page 1-4-47.

(8) One side of the
copy image is darker
than the other.



See page 1-4-47.

(9) Black dots appear
on the image.



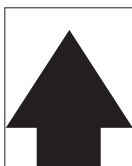
See page 1-4-47.

(10) Image is blurred.



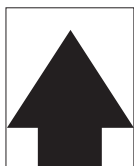
See page 1-4-48.

(11) The leading edge
of the image is con-
sistently misaligned
with the original.



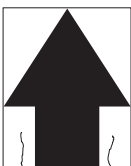
See page 1-4-48.

(12) The leading edge
of the image is spo-
radically misaligned
with the original.



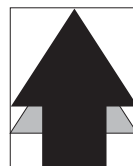
See page 1-4-48.

(13) Paper creases.



See page 1-4-48.

(14) Offset occurs.



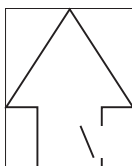
See page 1-4-49.

(15) Image is partly
missing.



See page 1-4-49.

(16) Fusing is poor.



See page 1-4-49.

(17) Image is out of
focus.



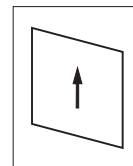
See page 1-4-49.

(18) Image center
does not align with
the original center.



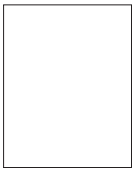
See page 1-4-50.

(19) Image is not
square.




See page 1-4-50.


(1) No image appears (entirely white).

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No transfer charging.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC7-10 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-5 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
	No LSU laser is output.	Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-22).
		Defective main PWB.	Check if YC21-A3 on the main PWB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the main PWB.
	No developing bias output.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC7-1 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if developing bias is output when CN1-14 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.

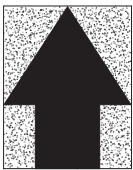
(2) No image appears (entirely black).

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No main charging.	Broken main charger wire.	Replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-26).
		Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
		The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC7-4 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if main charging takes place when CN1-11 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
	Exposure lamp fails to light.	Poor contact in the exposure lamp connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective inverter PWB.	Check if the exposure lamp lights when YC1-3 on the inverter PWB goes low while maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the inverter PWB.
		Defective scanner PWB.	Check if YC6-3 on the scanner PWB goes low when maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the scanner PWB.


(3) Image is too light.

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Insufficient toner.		If the display shows the message requesting toner replenishment, replace the container.
	Deteriorated toner.		Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Defective transfer charging output.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC7-10 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
	Defective high voltage PWB.		Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-5 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.

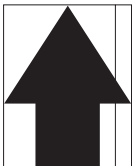
(4) Background is visible.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Deteriorated toner.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-26).


(5) A white line appears longitudinally.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Foreign matter in the developing unit.	Check if the magnetic brush is formed uniformly. Replace the developing unit if any foreign matter (see page 1-5-28).
	Dirty shading plate.	Clean the shading plate.


(6) A black line appears longitudinally.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Dirty scanner mirror.	Clean the scanner mirror.
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-26).


(7) A black line appears laterally.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Flawed drum.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Dirty developing section.	Clean any part contaminated with toner in the developing section.
	Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
	Leaking separation electrode.	Clean the separation electrode.

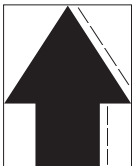
(8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-26).
	Defective exposure lamp.	Check if the exposure lamp light is distributed evenly. If not, replace the exposure lamp (see page 1-5-12).

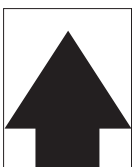
(9) Black dots appear on the image.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Dirty drum separation claws.	Clean the drum separation claws.
	Dirty the heat roller separation claws.	Clean the heat roller separation claws.

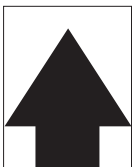
(10) Image is blurred.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Scanner moves erratically.	Check if there is any foreign matter on the front and rear scanner rails. If any, remove it.
	Deformed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-5-32).
	Paper conveying section drive problem.	Check the gears and belts and, if necessary, grease them.

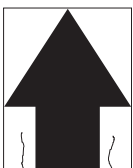
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U034 to readjust the leading edge registration (see page 1-3-21).
	Misadjusted scanner leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U066 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-27).

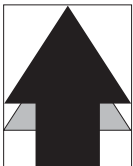
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Feed clutch, paper feed clutch, MP paper feed clutch or registration clutch installed or operating incorrectly.	Check the installation position and operation of each clutch. If any of them operates incorrectly, replace it.


(13) Paper creases.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper curled.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
	Defective separation.	Check the drum separation claws and heat roller separation claws.

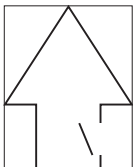
(14) Offset occurs.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Defective fuser unit.	Check the heat roller and press roller.
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.


(15) Image is partly missing.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper creased.	Replace the paper.
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).

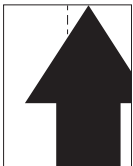
(16) Fusing is poor.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.
	Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
	Flawed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-5-32).
	Flawed fuser heater.	Replace the fuser heaters (see page 1-5-33).

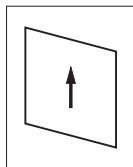
(17) Image is out of focus.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective image scanning unit.	Replace the image scanning unit (see page 1-5-19).
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.

(18) Image center does not align with the original center.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted image center line.	Run maintenance item U034 to readjust the center line of image printing (see page 1-3-22).
	Misadjusted scanner center line.	Run maintenance item U067 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-28).
	Original is not placed correctly.	Place the original correctly.

(19) Image is not square.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Laser scanner unit positioned incorrectly.	Adjust the installation position of the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-24).

1-4-4 Electric problems

Troubleshooting to each failure must be in the order of the numbered symptoms.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The machine does not operate when the main power switch is turned on.	1. The power cord is not plugged in properly.	Check the contact between the power plug and the outlet.
	2. No electricity at the power outlet.	Measure the input voltage.
	3. Broken power cord.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cord.
	4. Defective main power switch.	Check for continuity across the contacts. If none, replace the main power switch.
	5. Defective power source PWB.	With AC present, check for 24 V DC at YC1-7 on the power source PWB, 5 V DC at YC1-6 and 3.3 V DC at YC1-5. If none, replace the power source PWB.
(2) The eject motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective eject motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates. If not, replace the eject motor.
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(3) The scanner motor or cooling fan motor 1 to 14 does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the motor.
(4) The upper/lower paper feed clutch, feed clutch 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch, MP feed clutch, registration clutch or duplex feed clutch does not operate.	1. Broken clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the clutch.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. Upper paper feed clutch: YC14-B1 on the engine PWB Lower paper feed clutch: YC14-B4 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 1: YC11-14 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 2: YC13-A12 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 3: YC13-A5 on the engine PWB MP paper feed clutch: YC6-A9 on the engine PWB MP feed clutch: YC6-A11 on the engine PWB Registration clutch: YC14-B6 on the engine PWB Duplex feed clutch: YC10-B2 on the engine PWB
(5) The feedshift solenoid or toner feed solenoid does not operate.	1. Broken solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the solenoid.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U033 and check if the solenoid operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(6) The exposure lamp does not turn on or off.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective scanner PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if YC6-3 on the scanner PWB goes low. If not, replace the scanner PWB.
		If YC6-3 on the scanner PWB is always low, replace the scanner PWB.
	3. Defective inverter PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if the exposure lamp turns on with YC1-3 on the inverter PWB go low. If not, replace the inverter PWB.
		If the exposure lamp does not turn off with YC1-3 on the inverter PWB high, replace the inverter PWB.
	4. Defective exposure lamp.	Replace the exposure lamp even if checking or correcting other measures.
(7) Main charging is not performed.	1. Broken main charger wire.	(See page 1-4-45.)
	2. Leaking main charger housing.	
	3. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	
	4. Defective engine PWB.	
	5. Defective high voltage PWB.	
(8) No developing bias is output.	1. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	(See page 1-4-45.)
	2. Defective engine PWB.	
	3. Defective high voltage PWB.	
(9) Transfer charging is not performed.	1. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	(See page 1-4-45.)
	2. Defective engine PWB.	
	3. Defective high voltage PWB.	
(10) The original size is not detected correctly.	1. Original is not placed correctly.	Check the original and correct if necessary.
	2. Poor contact in the original detection switch or original size detection sensor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective original detection switch.	If the level of YC4-5 on the scanner PWB does not go low when the original detection switch is turned on and off, replace the original detection switch.
	4. Defective original size detection sensor.	Check if sensor operates correctly. If not, replace it.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(11) The touch panel keys do not work.	1. Poor contact in the touch panel connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective touch panel or main operation PWB.	If any keys do not work after running the maintenance item U201 to initialize the touch panel, replace the touch panel or main operation PWB.
(12) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the cassette 1/2 or MP tray.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of upper/lower paper switch or MP paper switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective upper/lower paper switch or MP paper switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not go low when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Upper paper switch: YC13-B12 on the engine PWB Lower paper switch: YC13-B18 on the engine PWB MP paper switch: YC6-A6 on the engine PWB
(13) The size of paper on the cassette 1/2 or MP tray is not displayed correctly.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of upper/lower paper size length switch, upper/lower paper size width switch, MP paper size length switch or MP paper size width switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective upper/lower paper size length switch or MP paper size length switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not go low when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Upper paper size length switch: YC13-B2 on the engine PWB Lower paper size length switch: YC13-A19 on the engine PWB MP paper size length switch: YC6-B11 on the engine PWB
	3. Defective upper/lower paper size width switch or MP paper size width switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not change when the width guide in the cassette 1/2 or insert guide on the MP tray is moved, replace the switch. Upper paper size width switch: YC12-3, 4, 5 on the engine PWB Lower paper size width switch: YC12-9, 10, 11 on the engine PWB MP paper size width switch: YC6-A1, A2, A3 on the engine PWB
(14) A paper jam in the paper feed, paper conveying, fuser, eject or duplex section is indicated when the main power switch is turned on.	1. A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, feedshift switch, eject switch or duplex paper conveying switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	2. Defective feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, feedshift switch, eject switch or duplex paper conveying switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn each switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(15) The message requesting cover to be closed is displayed when the front cover or left cover 1/2 is closed.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of front cover switch, left cover 1 switch or left cover 2 switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective front cover switch, left cover 1 switch or left cover 2 switch.	Check for continuity across each switch. If there is no continuity when the switch is on, replace it.
(16) Others.	1. Wiring is broken, shorted or makes poor contact.	Check for continuity. If none, repair.

1-4-5 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) No primary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following rollers or pulleys are dirty with paper powder: upper/lower forwarding pulleys, upper/lower paper feed pulleys, upper/lower separation pulleys, feed rollers, registration rollers, MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pulley.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the upper/lower forwarding pulleys, upper/lower paper feed pulleys or upper/lower separation pulleys is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or MP separation pulley is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-5).
	Electrical problem with the following clutches: upper/lower paper feed clutches, feed clutches 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch and MP feed clutch.	See page 1-4-51.
(2) No secondary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the right and left registration rollers are dirty with paper powder.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	See page 1-4-51.
(3) Skewed paper feed.	Width guide in a cassette installed incorrectly.	Check the width guide visually and correct or replace if necessary.
	Deformed width guide in a cassette.	Check visually and replace any deformed guide.
	Check if a pressure spring along the paper conveying path is deformed or out of place.	Repair or replace.
(4) The scanner does not travel.	Check if the scanner wire is loose.	Reinstall the scanner wire (see page 1-5-14).
	The scanner motor malfunctions.	See page 1-4-51.
(5) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the upper or lower separation pulley is worn.	Replace the upper or lower separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP separation pulley is worn.	Replace the MP separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-5).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(6) Paper jams.	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace any deformed guides.
	Check if the contact between the right and left registration rollers is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the feed roller and feed pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the press roller is extremely dirty or deformed.	Clean or replace the press roller.
	Check if the contact between the heat roller and its separation claws is correct.	Repair if any springs are off the separation claws.
	Check if the contact between the eject roller and pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	The feedshift solenoid malfunctions.	See page 1-4-51.
	Check if the duplex feed pulley, upper duplex feed roller or lower duplex feed roller is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.
(7) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.	Check if the developing unit is extremely dirty.	Clean the developing unit.
(8) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.
	Check if the following clutches are installed correctly: upper/lower paper feed clutches, feed clutches 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch and MP feed clutch.	Correct.

1-4-6 Send error code

(1) Scan to SMB error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1102	Error: User/Password or Shared Name/Folder Name	Domain name is not entered.	Enter the user name with the form of either [Domain¥User], [Domain/User] or [Domain@User].
		Assign disable user/pass-word.	Enter the correct user name/password.
		Assign the user who is not allowed to access to folder.	Enter correct user name/password. Check the access limit of destination folder.
		Assign disable shared name.	Enter the correct shared name. Check if the prohibited letters below are used to shared name. @ () ! & # \$ % ^ ~ [] `
		Host name error.	Check if the prohibited letters are used to shared name. " & ' () ` ; < >
1103	Error: Pathname or File Name	Domain name is not enter	Enter the user name with the form of either [Domain¥User], [Domain/User] or [Domain@User].
		Connect to the folder which is not permitted for reference/ writing.	Enter correct user name/password. Check the access limit of destination folder.
		Assign disable folder path.	Enter correct folder path.
1105	Error: Not support protocol	SMB Protocol is set to OFF.	Check ON in the [Scanner]-[SMB] screen in COMMAND CENTER.
2101	Error: Can not connect	Enter the disable host name/ IP address.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
		Assign the wrong port number.	Enter the correct port number.
		Network is not connected.	Check if the server is operating properly. Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2103	Error: Response wait with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2201	Error: Network transfer	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2203	Error: Response wait with timeout	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
9181	Error: Page max count over	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

(2) Scan to FTP error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	Error: Host name	Enter the disable host name/ IP address.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
1102	Error: User/Password	Domain name is not entered.	Enter the user name with the form of either [Domain¥User] or [Domain/User].
		Assign disable user/pass-word.	Enter the correct user name/password.
1103	Error: Pathname or File Name	Connect to the folder which is not permitted for reference/ writing.	Enter correct user name/password. Check the access limit of destination folder.
		Assign disable folder path.	Enter correct folder path.
1105	Error: Not support protocol	FTP Protocol is set to OFF.	Check ON in the [Scanner]-[FTP] screen in COMMAND CENTER.
2101	Error: Can not connect	Enter the disable host name/ IP address.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
		Assign the wrong port number.	Enter the correct port number.
		Network is not connected.	Check if the server is operating properly. Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2102	Error: Can not connect with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
		Send the server which does not support FTP server.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
2103	Error: Response wait with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2201	Error: Network transfer	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2202	Error: Network transfer with timeout	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2203	Error: Response wait with timeout	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
3101	Error: Server response	The server is error status.	Check if the server is working properly.
9181	Error: Page max count over	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

(3) Scan to E-mail error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	Error: Host name	SMTP sever name is not set. Error SMTP server name.	Register [SMTP Server Name] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
1102	Error: User/Password	User ID for the authentication is not entered or entered wrongly. Wrong authentication password is entered.	Enter the correct user ID/password for authentication at [Advance] in COMMAND CENTER. Enter the password of [Login User Name] of the [POP3] page or the [SMTP] page correctly.
1104	Error: No Recipient address	The destination address is not specified.	Specify the destination address.
1105	Error: Not support protocol	SMTP Protocol is set to OFF.	Check ON [SMTP] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
1106	Error: No Sender Info	Sender address is not enter	Enter the correct [Sender Address] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
2101	Error: Can not connect	Select [Other authenticate] when authenticating POP before SMTP.	Select valid POP3 user other than [Other].
		The specified server is not SMTP server.	Enter the correct [SMTP Server Name] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
		Network is not connected.	Check if the server is operating properly. Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2102	Error: Can not connect with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2103	Error: Response wait with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2201	Error: Network transfer	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2202	Error: Network transfer with timeout	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2203	Error: Response wait with timeout	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2204	Error: E-Mail Size limit	The size of E-mail exceeds its limit.	Change the [E-mail Size Limit] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General]-[E-mail Setting] in COMMAND CENTER.
3101	Error: Server response	The server is error status.	Check if the server is working properly.
		Server setting is not authenticated normally.	Check the settings for client/server authentication.
3201	Error: Not Found Authentication Mechanism	Unsupported SMTP Authentication Mechanism is found.	Check the settings for client/server Authentication Mechanism.
9181	Error: Page max count over	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

(4) Network Twain error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
2202	Error: Network transfer with timeout	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable, network condition within LAN, etc.).
9181	Error: Page max count over	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

(5) Software trouble error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
5101	Error: Not yet connected	Operation handle error. Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
5102	Error: Already connected	Operation handle error. Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
5103	Error: Not yet opened	Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
5104	Error: Already opened	Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
7101	Error: Memory Allocation	Insufficient memory space.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
7102	Error: Socket Create	Unable to create a communication socket.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
720f	Error: Unknown error	Unable to determine the cause.	Turn the main power switch off and on.

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

Before starting disassembly, press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the Memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

Turning off the main power switch before pressing the power key to off may cause damage to the equipped hard disk.

When optional fax kit is installed, be sure to disconnect the modular code before starting disassembly.

When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands.

The PWBs are susceptible to static charge. Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.

Use only the specified parts to replace the fuser unit thermostat. Never substitute electric wires, as the machine may be seriously damaged.

When replacing battery on a PWB, dispose properly according to laws and regulations.

When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.

Take care not to get the wire caught.

(2) Drum

Note the following when handling or storing the drum.

When removing the drum unit, never expose the drum surface to strong direct light.

Keep the drum at an ambient temperature between 0°C/32°F and 35°C/95°F and at a relative humidity not higher than 85% RH. Avoid abrupt changes in temperature and humidity.

Avoid exposure to any substance which is harmful to or may affect the quality of the drum.

Do not touch the drum surface with any object. Should it be touched by hands or stained with oil, clean it.

(3) Toner

Store the toner container in a cool, dark place.

Avoid direct light and high humidity.

(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container

As a means of brand protection, the Kyocera Mita toner container utilizes an optical security technology to enable visual validation. A validation viewer is required to accomplish this.

Hold the validation viewer over the left side part of the brand protection seal on the toner container. Through each window of the validation viewer, the left side part of the seal should be seen as follows:

A black-colored band when seen through the left side window

A shiny or gold-colored band when seen through the right side window

The above will reveal that the toner container is a genuine Kyocera Mita branded toner container, otherwise, it is a counterfeit.

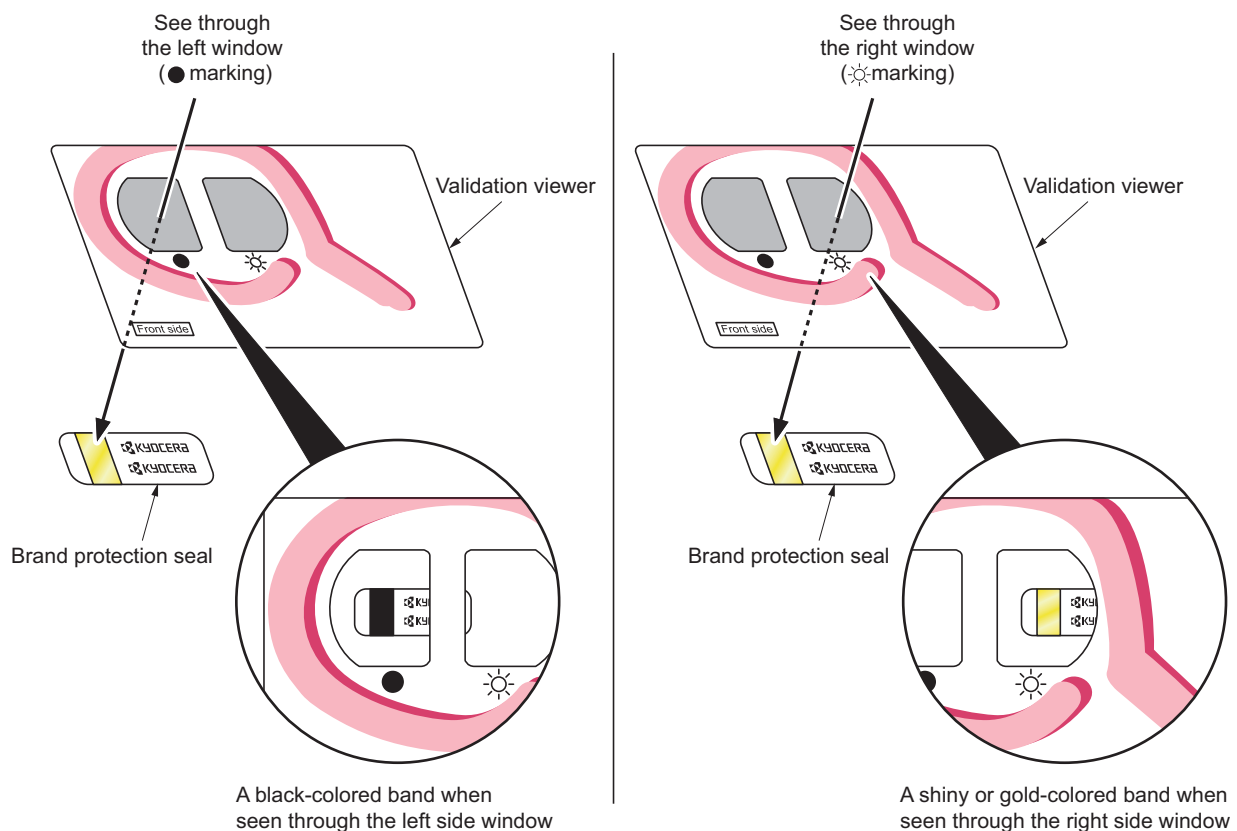


Figure 1-5-1

The brand protection seal has an incision as shown below to prohibit reuse.

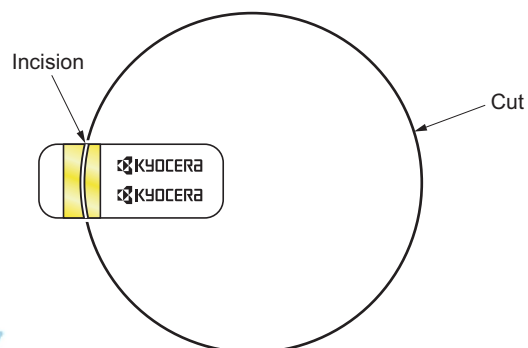


Figure 1-5-2

1-5-2 Paper feed section

(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys

Follow the procedure below to replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.

Procedure

Removing the primary paper feed units

1. Open the front cover and pull out the cassettes 1 and 2.
2. Remove the screw and remove the primary paper feed unit.

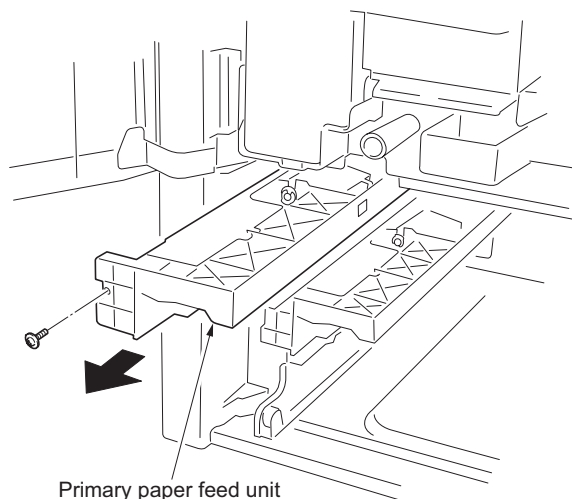


Figure 1-5-3

Removing the forwarding pulley

3. Remove the stopper from the primary paper feed unit.
4. Raise the forwarding pulley retainer in the direction the arrow, and remove from the primary paper feed unit.

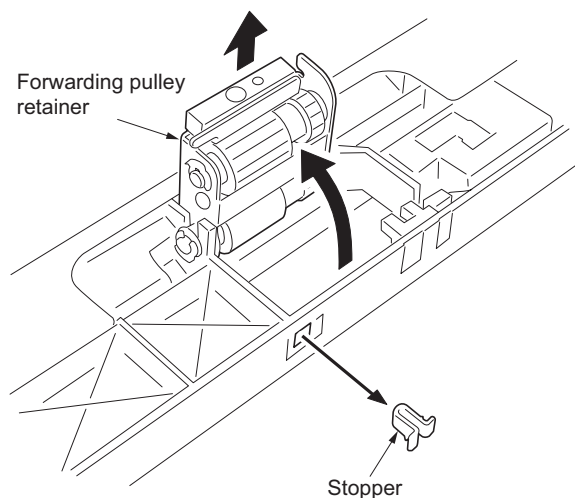


Figure 1-5-4

5. Remove the stop ring from the forwarding pulley retainer.
6. Remove the forwarding pulley from the forwarding pulley shaft.

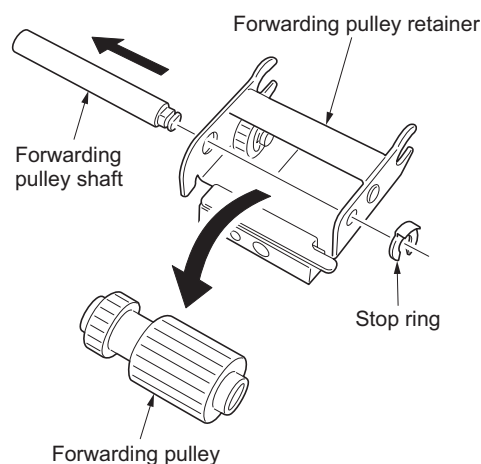


Figure 1-5-5

Removing the paper feed pulley

7. Remove two stop rings from the primary paper feed unit.
8. Pull the paper feed pulley shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the paper feed pulley.

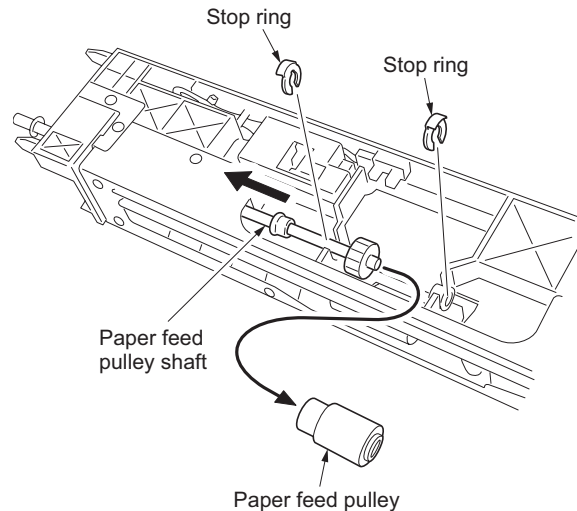


Figure 1-5-6

Removing the separation pulley

9. Remove the stop ring from the primary paper feed unit.
10. Pull the separation pulley shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the separation pulley.

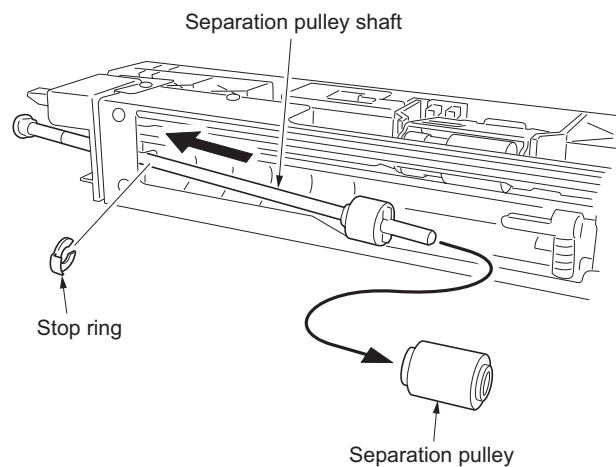


Figure 1-5-7

11. Replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.
12. Install the separation and paper feed pulleys to the primary paper feed unit.
13. Install the forwarding pulley to the forwarding pulley retainer.
When refitting the forwarding pulley, orient it correctly as shown in Figure 1-5-8.
14. Refit the forwarding pulley retainer to the primary paper feed unit.
15. Refit the primary paper feed unit.

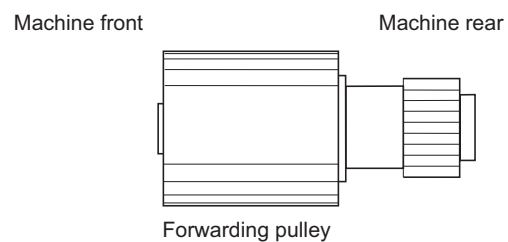


Figure 1-5-8

16. When the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley, separation pulley or the primary paper feed unit is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 to clear the jam counter (see page 1-3-79).

(2) Detaching and refitting the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys

Follow the procedure below to replace the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys.

Procedure

Removing the MP unit

1. Remove four screws and remove the right lower cover.

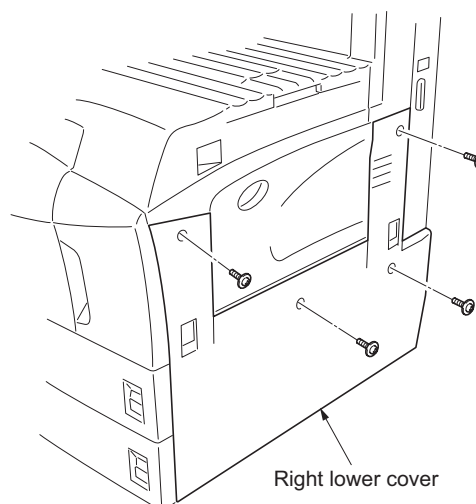


Figure 1-5-9

2. Remove two screws and two MP holder plates.
3. Remove two pins, two screws and two connectors, and then remove the MP unit.

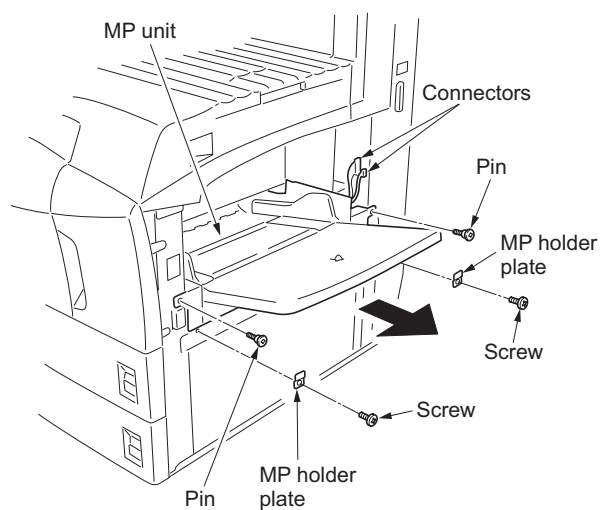


Figure 1-5-10

Removing the MP separation pulley

4. Reverse the MP unit and remove the spring and stop ring from the MP separation pulley shaft and move the bushing inside.

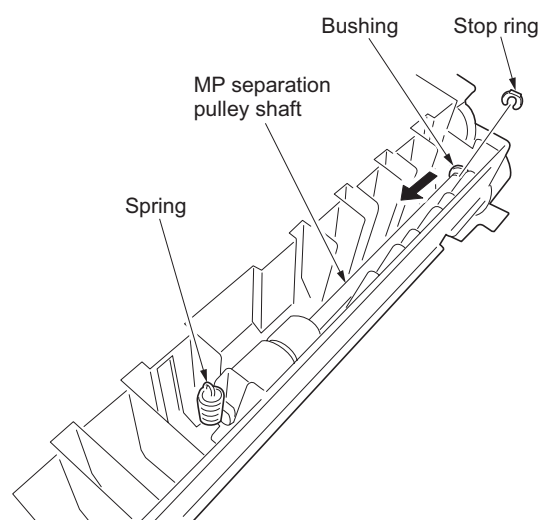


Figure 1-5-11

5. Raise the MP separation shaft as shown in the figure, remove the holder plate and the bushing, and then remove the MP separation pulley.

Take care not to remove the spring pin of the gear at the rear of the MP separation pulley shaft. If it is removed, refit it to its original position.

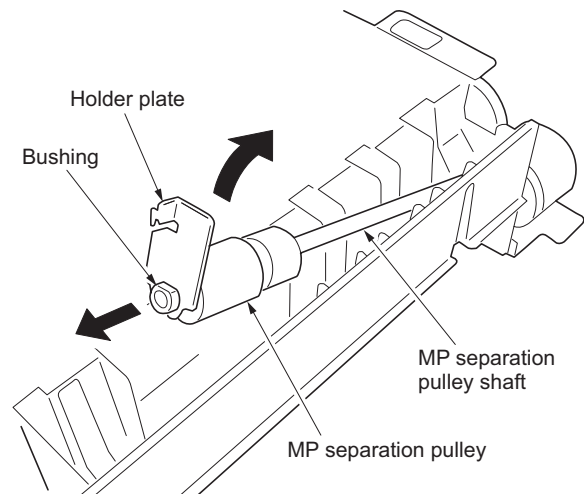


Figure 1-5-12

Removing the MP paper feed pulley

6. Remove the connector of the MP paper switch and remove the wire from the three clamps.
7. Remove the screw and remove the MP unit cover.

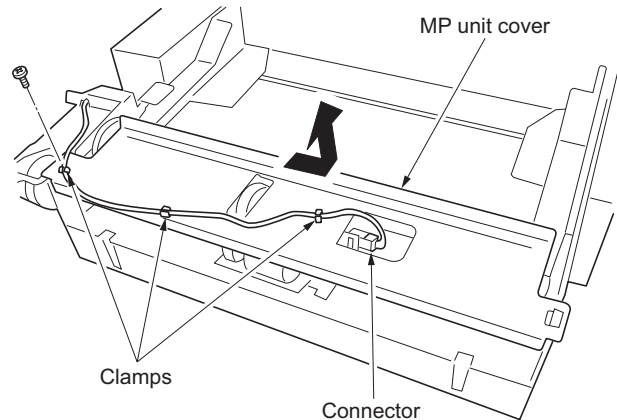


Figure 1-5-13

8. Remove the stop ring and bushing on the front of the MP paper feed pulley shaft.

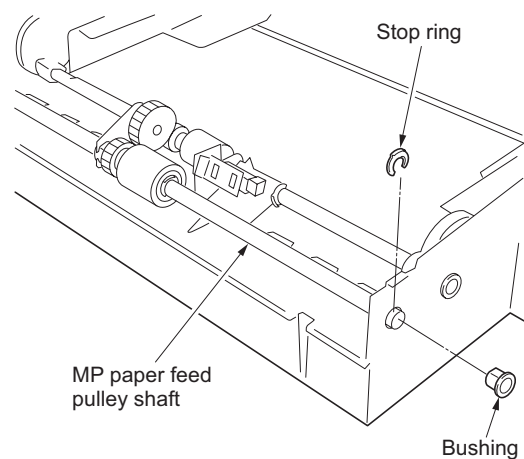


Figure 1-5-14

9. Raise the MP paper feed pulley shaft as shown in the figure, remove the stop ring, and then remove the MP paper feed pulley.

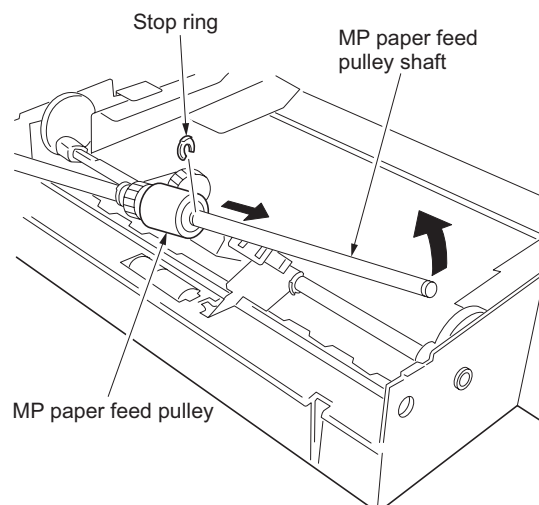


Figure 1-5-15

Removing the MP forwarding pulley

10. Remove the sponge.
11. Remove the stop ring and MP paper feed clutch.

When refitting, insert the cutout in the MP paper feed clutch over the stopper on the machine.

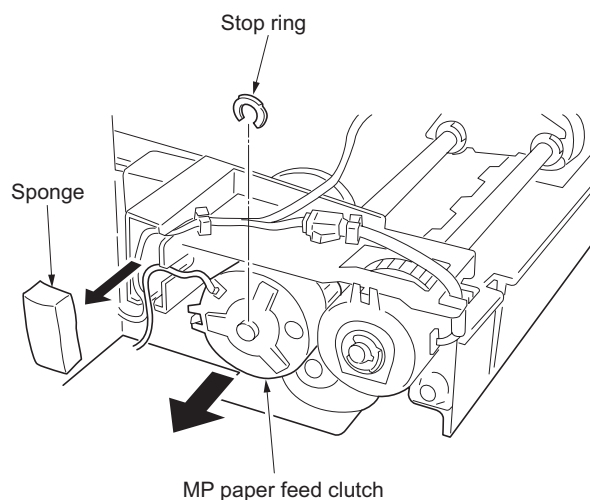


Figure 1-5-16

12. Remove the screw from the cam at the rear of the MP forwarding pulley shaft and move the cam and the bushing toward the inner side.

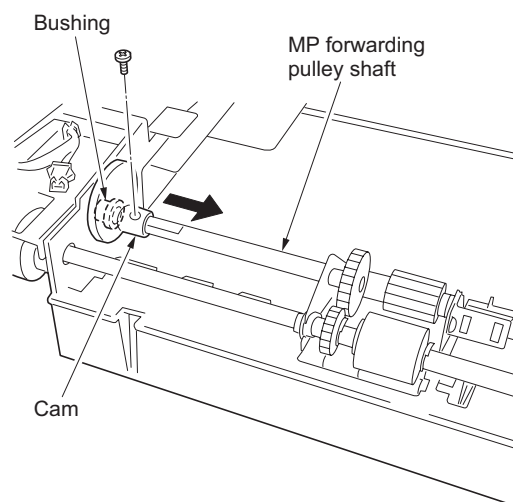


Figure 1-5-17

13. Remove the stop ring of the MP paper feed pulley shaft and slide the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

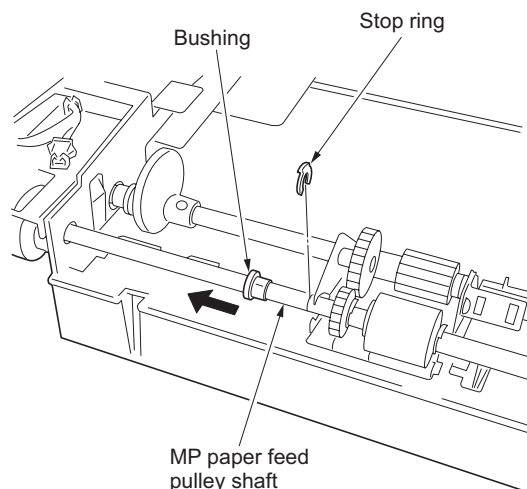


Figure 1-5-18

14. Slide the MP forwarding pulley shaft temporarily toward the rear side and then raise it to remove from the MP unit. Remove the shaft while raising the actuator of the MP paper switch.

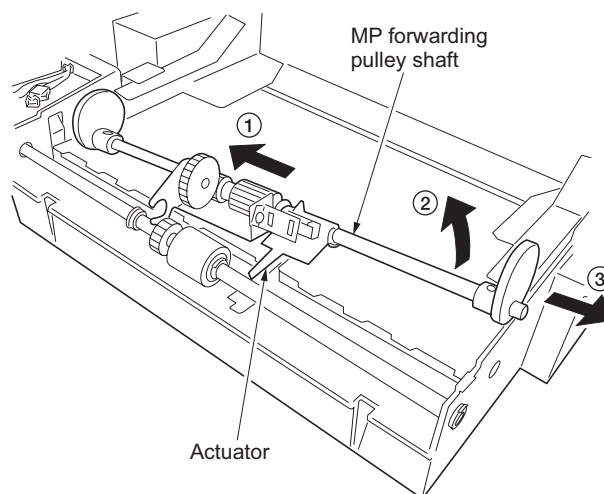


Figure 1-5-19

15. Remove the bushing and cam on the rear of the MP forwarding pulley shaft.

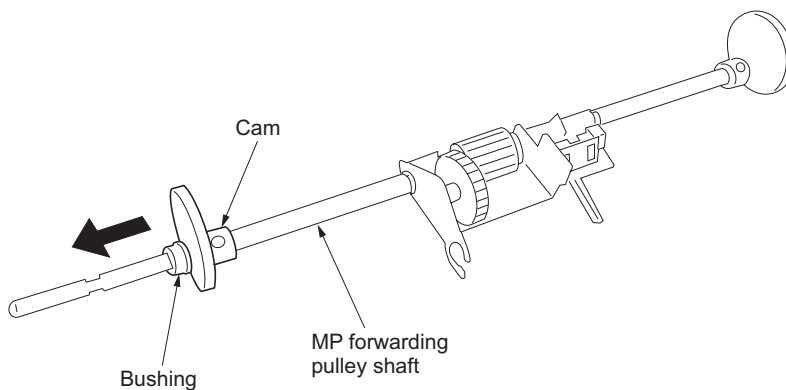


Figure 1-5-20

16. Remove the stop ring and slide the MP forwarding pulley with the forwarding pulley retainer from the shaft to remove it.
17. Replace the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys.

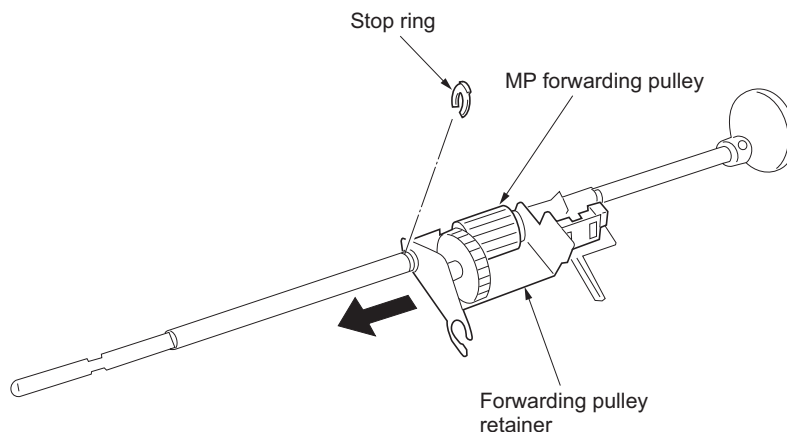


Figure 1-5-21

18. Install the MP forwarding pulley to the MP forwarding pulley shaft.
19. Refit the MP forwarding pulley shaft to the MP unit.
20. Install the MP paper feed pulley to the MP unit.
21. Refit the MP unit cover to the MP unit. When refitting the MP unit cover, the films on the cover are positioned under the MP paper feed pulley shaft.
22. Install the MP separation pulley to the MP unit.
23. Refit the MP unit.

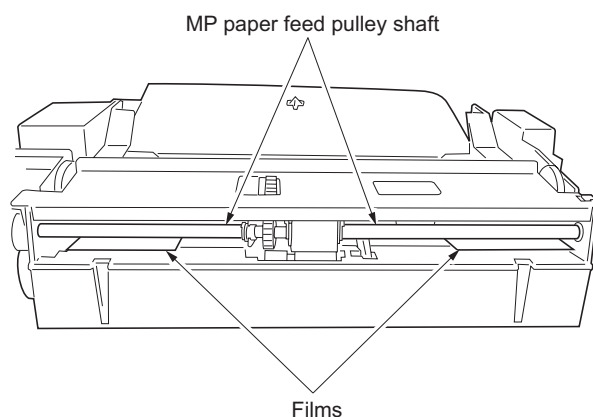


Figure 1-5-22

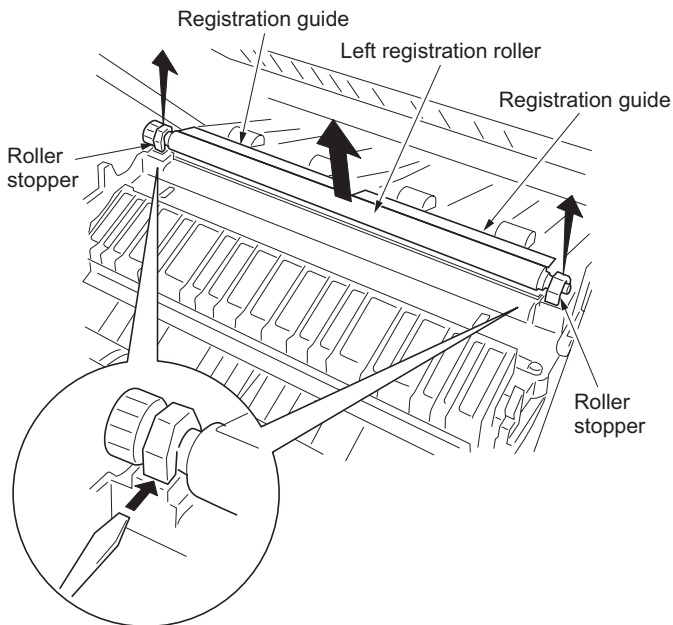
24. When the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or the MP separation pulley is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 to clear the jam counter (see page 1-3-79).

(3) Detaching and refitting the left and right registration cleaner

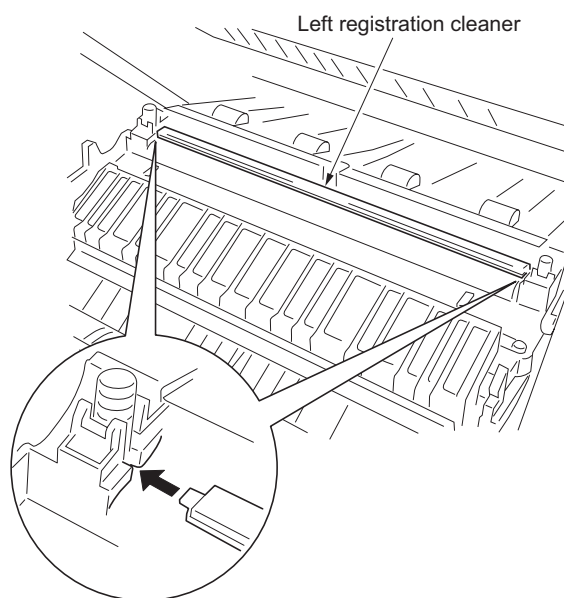
Take the following procedure when the left or right registration cleaner is to be replaced.

Procedure**Removing the left registration cleaner**

1. Open the left cover 1 and remove the transfer roller unit. (see page 1-5-29).
2. Remove two roller stoppers and remove the left registration roller.
3. Remove two registration guides.

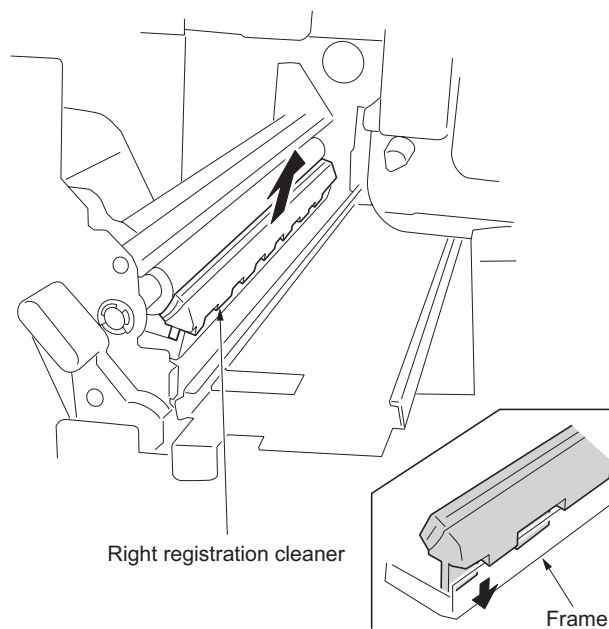
**Figure 1-5-23**

4. Remove the left registration cleaner.
5. Replace the left registration cleaner and registration guides.
Install the left registration cleaner and registration guides.
6. Refit the left registration roller, roller stoppers and transfer roller unit.

**Figure 1-5-24**

Removing the right registration cleaner

1. Remove the developing unit and drum unit.
(see pages 1-5-28 and 25).
2. Remove the right registration cleaner.
3. Replace the right registration cleaner and
Install the cleaner.
4. Refit the drum unit and developing unit.

**Figure 1-5-25**

1-5-3 Optical section

(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp

Replace the exposure lamp as follows.

Procedure

1. Remove the original cover or the DP.
2. Remove ten screws and remove the rear cover.

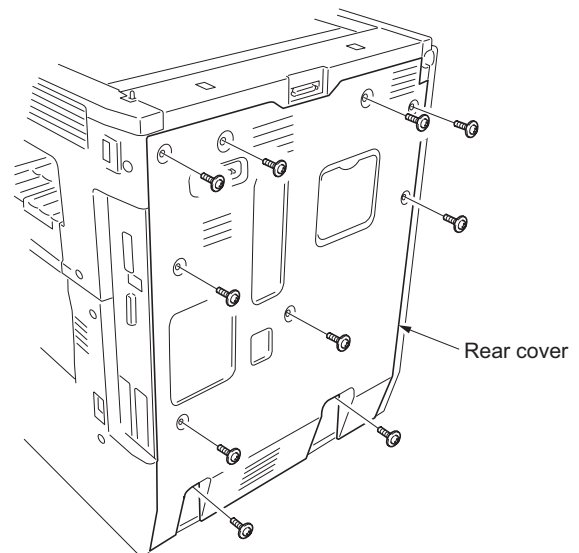


Figure 1-5-26

3. Remove two screws and remove the scanner right cover.
4. Remove the platen.

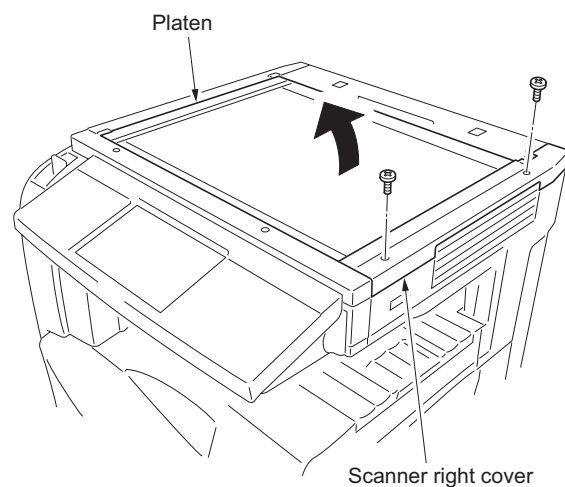


Figure 1-5-27

5. Remove the connector of the inverter PWB.
6. Release the wire from the wire saddles and pull the connector out from the opening on the rear of the scanner unit.

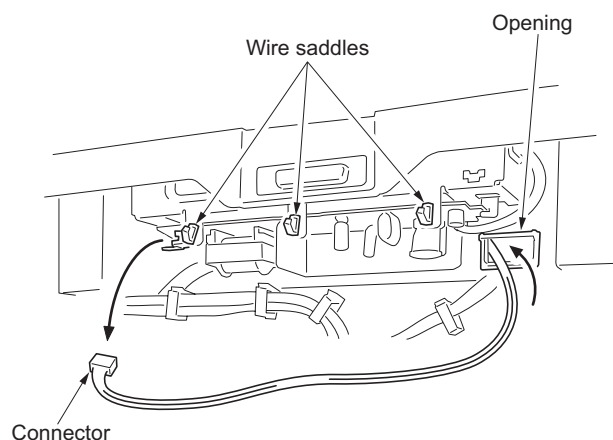
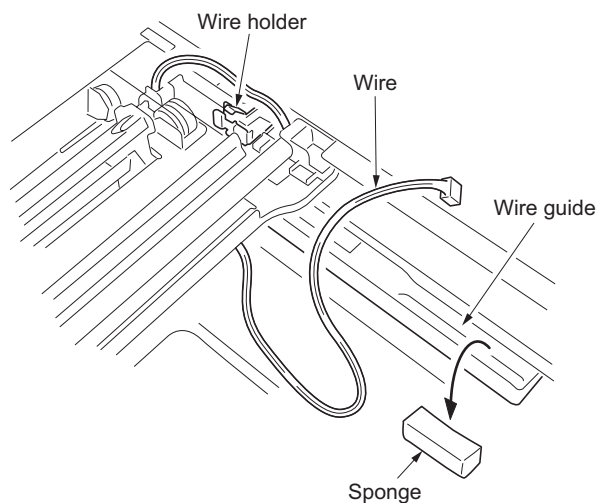
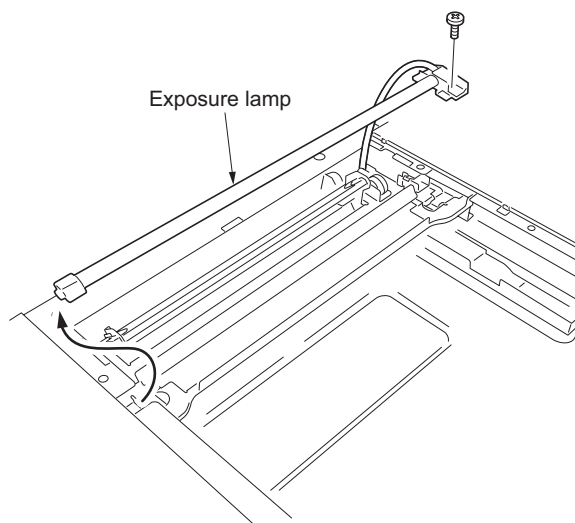


Figure 1-5-28

7. Remove the sponge from the wire guide and release the wire.
8. Move the mirror 1 frame to notch position and release the wire from the wire holder.

**Figure 1-5-29**

9. Remove the screw and remove the exposure lamp.
10. Replace the exposure lamp and install the lamp.
11. Refit the platen, scanner right cover and rear cover.

**Figure 1-5-30**

(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires

Take the following procedure when the scanner wires are broken or to be replaced.

NOTE

When fitting the wires, be sure to use those specified below.

Machine front: (P/N: 302GR17110), gray

Machine rear: (P/N: 302GR17100), black

Fitting requires the following tools

Two frame securing tools

Two scanner wire stoppers (P/N 3596811)

Procedure

Detaching the scanner wires

1. Remove the exposure lamp (see page 1-5-12).
2. Remove the clip holder.
3. Open the front cover and left cover 1.
4. Remove four screws and remove front left cover.

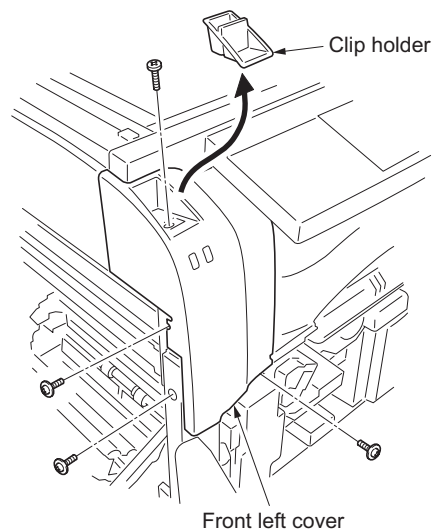


Figure 1-5-31

5. Remove the screw and pin and then remove the left upper cover.

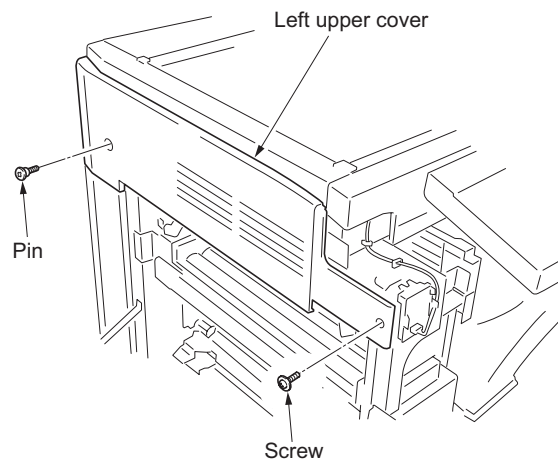


Figure 1-5-32

6. Remove two screws and remove the scanner left cover.

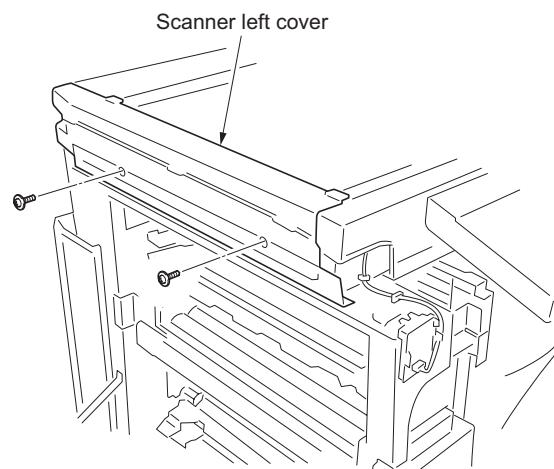


Figure 1-5-33

7. Remove each screw and then remove front and rear wire holder plates from mirror 1 frame.
8. Remove the mirror 1 frame.

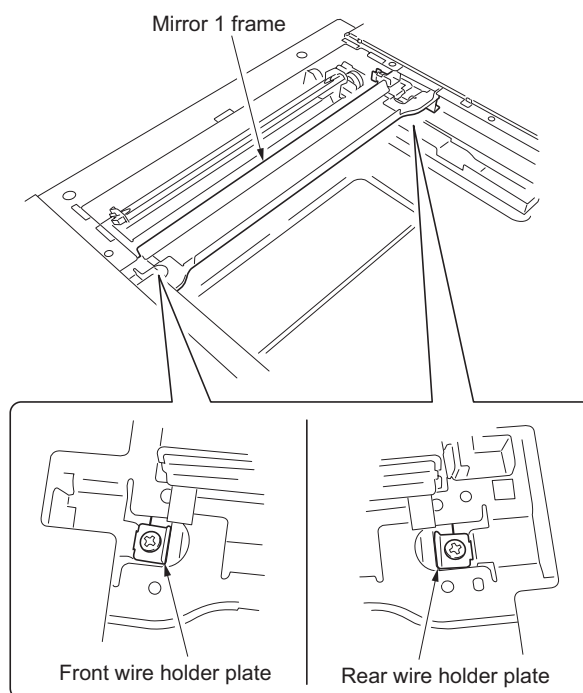


Figure 1-5-34

9. Remove the round terminals from the scanner wire springs on scanner unit left side.
10. Remove the scanner wire.

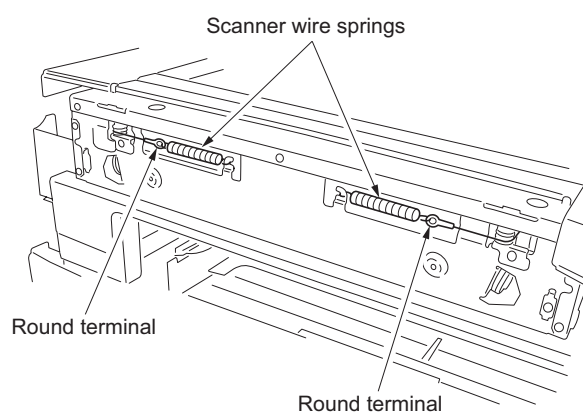


Figure 1-5-35

Fitting the scanner wires

11. Move the mirror 2 frame as shown in the figure and insert two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the machine center to fix the mirror 2 frame in position.

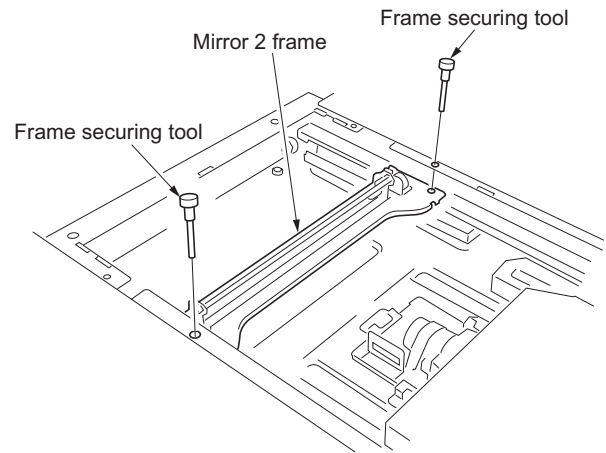


Figure 1-5-36

12. Hook the round terminals onto the catches inside of the scanner unit. (1)
13. Loop the scanner wires around the outer grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from below to above. (2)
14. Loop the scanner wires around the grooves in the scanner wire pulleys at the scanner unit right, winding from above to below. (3)
15. Wind the scanner wires around the scanner wire drum five turns from the rear toward the hole in the drum. (4)
16. Insert the locating balls on the scanner wires into the holes in the scanner wire drum. (5)
17. Wind the scanner wires three turns from the inner toward the hole in the drum. (6)
18. Install the scanner wire stoppers to the scanner wire drum to fix the wires. (7)
19. Loop the scanner wires around the grooves in the scanner wire pulleys at the scanner unit left, winding from below to above. (8)
20. Loop the scanner wires around the inner grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from below to above. (9)
21. Hook the scanner wires around the scanner wire guides at the machine left. (10)
22. Hook the round terminal onto the scanner wire springs. (11)

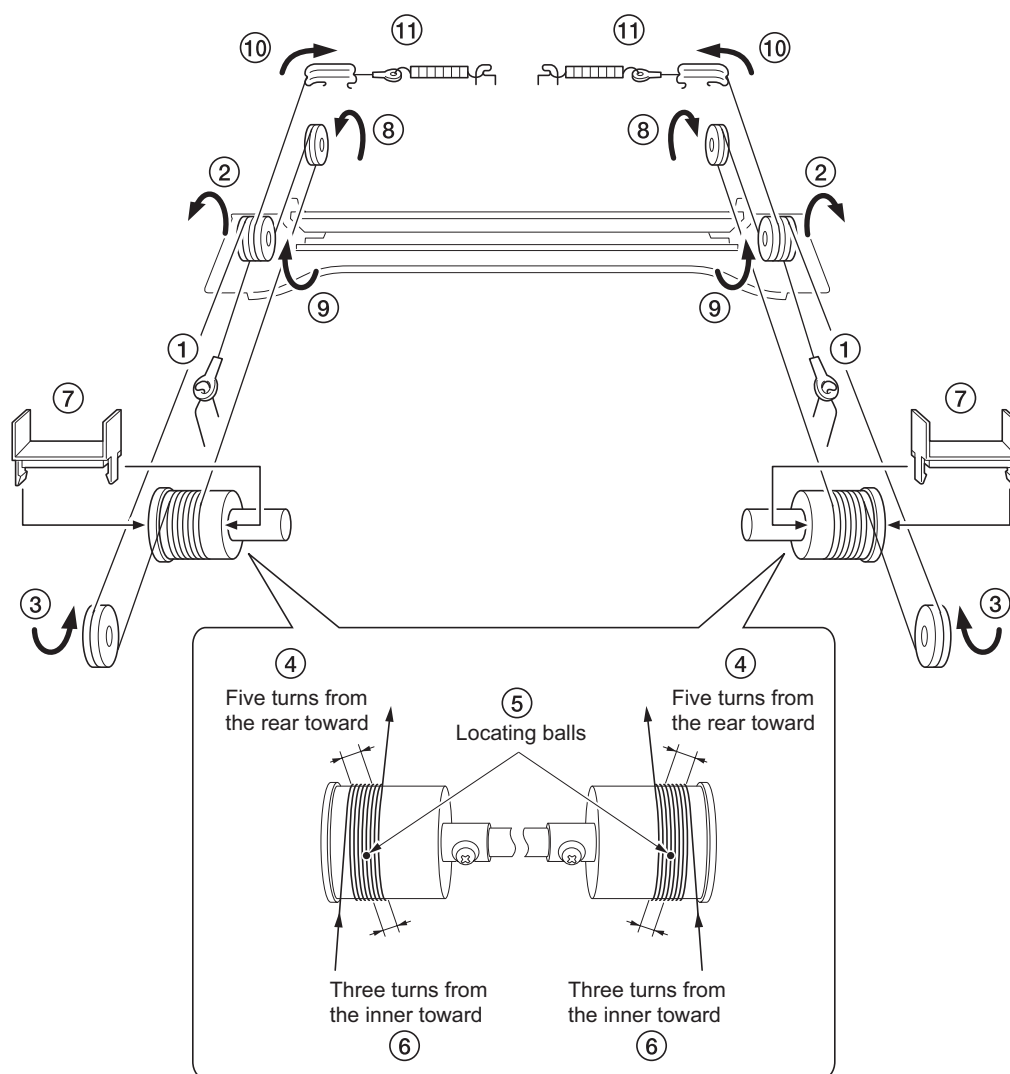


Figure 1-5-37

23. Remove the two scanner wire stoppers and frame securing tools.
24. Focusing on the locating ball of the wire drum, move aside the wires to inside.
25. Move the mirror 2 frame from side to side to correctly locate the wires in position.
26. Refit the mirror 1 frame.
27. Move the mirror 1 and 2 frames to the machine left, and insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to secure the frames in position.
28. Hold the wires and fix each front and rear wire holder plate to mirror 1 frame with the screw.
29. Remove the two frame securing tools.
30. Refit the exposure lamp.

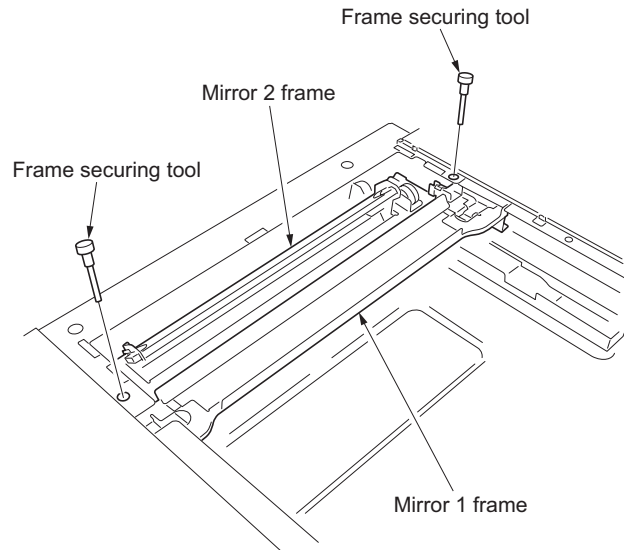


Figure 1-5-38

(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference)

Follow the procedure below to replace the ISU.

Fitting requires the following tools

Two positions pins (P/N 1856812)

Procedure**Detaching the ISU**

1. Remove the platen (see page 1-5-12).
2. Remove seven screws and then remove the ISU cover.

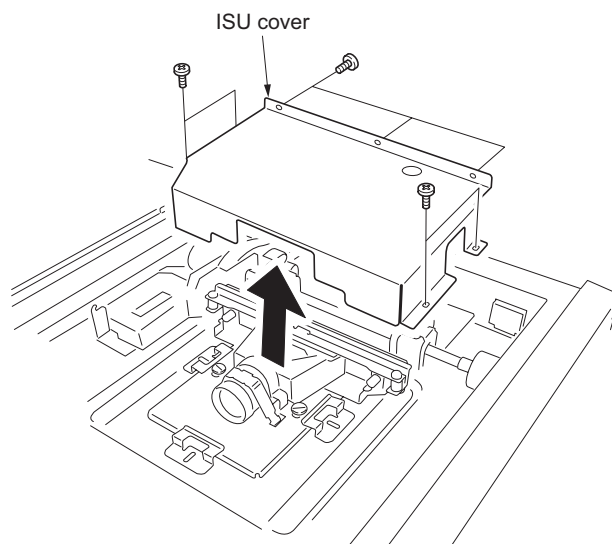


Figure 1-5-39

3. Remove three screws and two connectors, and then remove the ISU.
4. Replace the ISU.

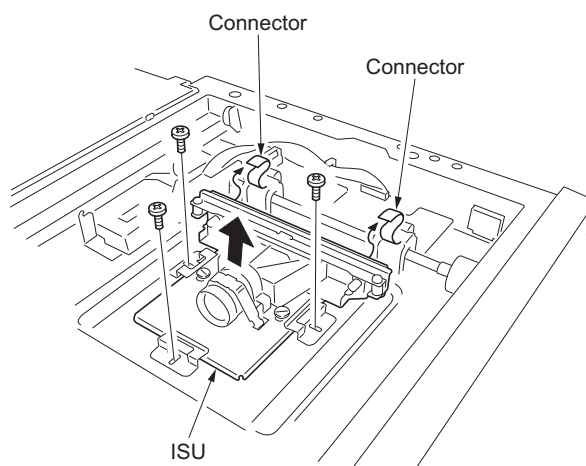
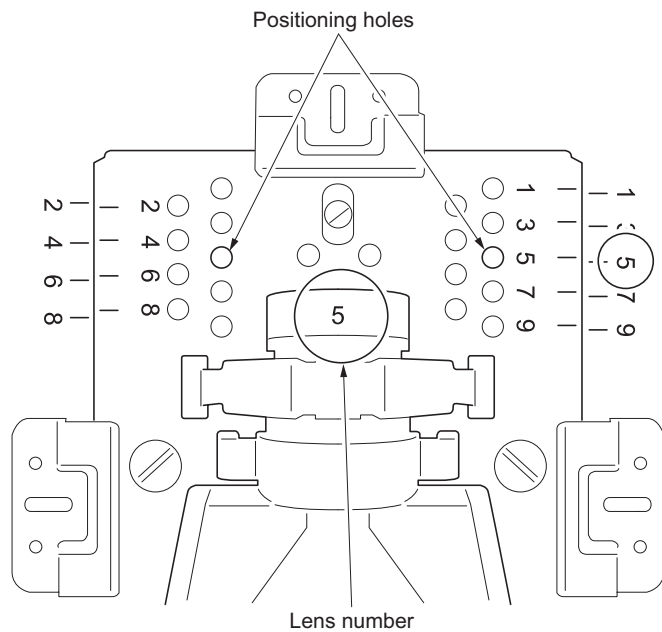
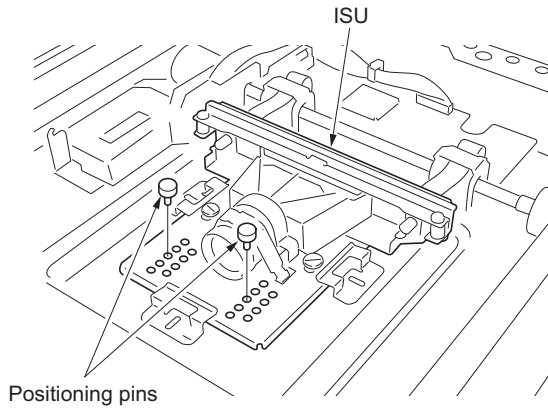


Figure 1-5-40

Fitting the ISU

5. Adjust the position of ISU to the frame hole of number and the same number which are recorded in the lens of ISU and then insert two positioning pins.
Example: When a lens number is 5, move ISU so that the positioning holes of 5 of the number stamped in the scanner unit suit and insert two pins.
6. Remove two positioning pins after fixing ISU with three screws.
7. Refit two connectors and ISU cover.
8. Refit the platen.

**Figure 1-5-41**

(4) Adjusting the position of the ISU (reference)

Perform the following adjustment if the leading and trailing edges of the copy image are laterally skewed (lateral squareness not obtained).

Caution:

Adjust the deflection in the paper at the registration roller first (see page 1-3-23). Check for the longitudinal squareness of the copy image, and if it is not obtained, perform the longitudinal squareness adjustment.

Before making the following adjustment, output a VTC-PG2 pattern in maintenance item U993 to use as the original for the adjustment.

Procedure

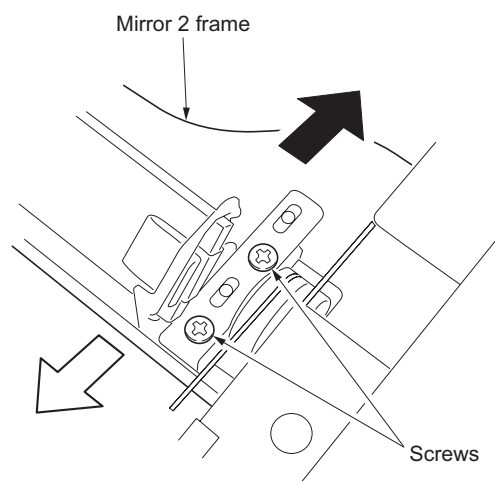
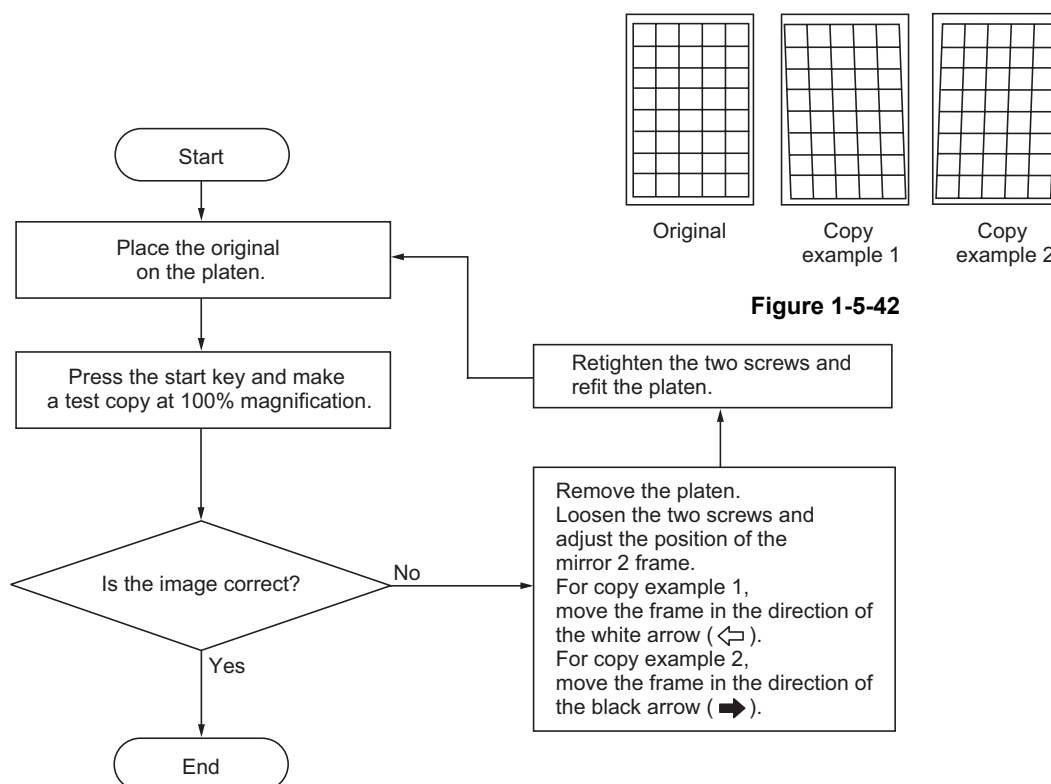


Figure 1-5-43

(5) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit

Take the following procedure when the laser scanner unit is to be replaced.

Procedure

1. Remove the developing unit and drum unit (see pages 1-5-25 and 28).
2. Remove the right lower cover and front left cover (see pages 1-5-5 and 14).
3. Remove four screws and remove the front right cover.

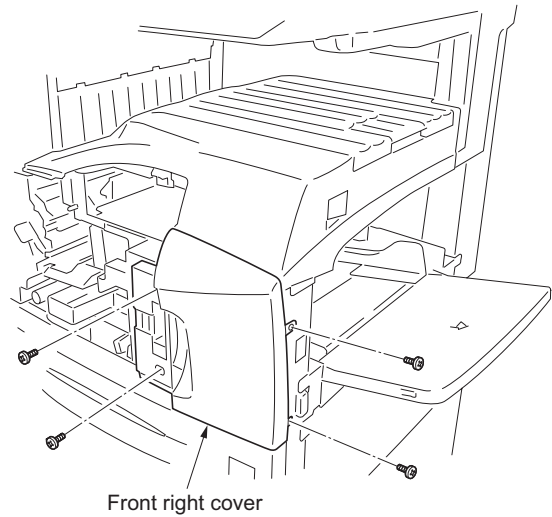


Figure 1-5-44

4. Remove three screws and remove the top tray.

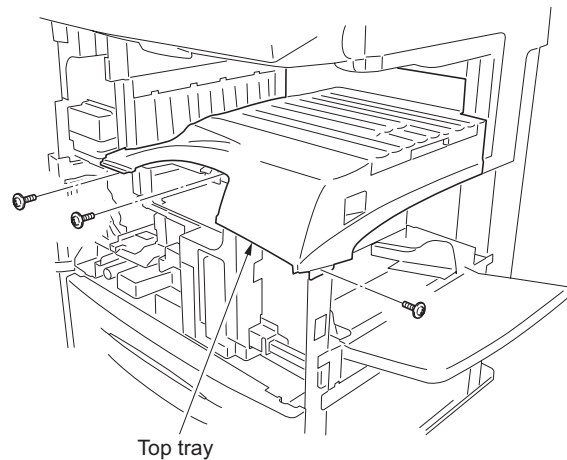


Figure 1-5-45

5. Remove five screws and remove the inner cover.

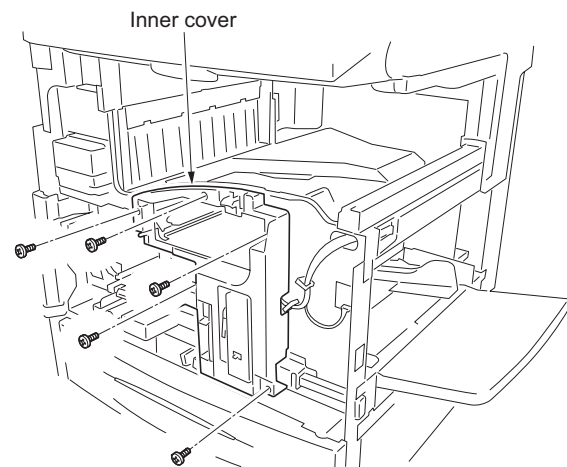


Figure 1-5-46

6. Remove two screws and two connectors, and then remove the fan duct.

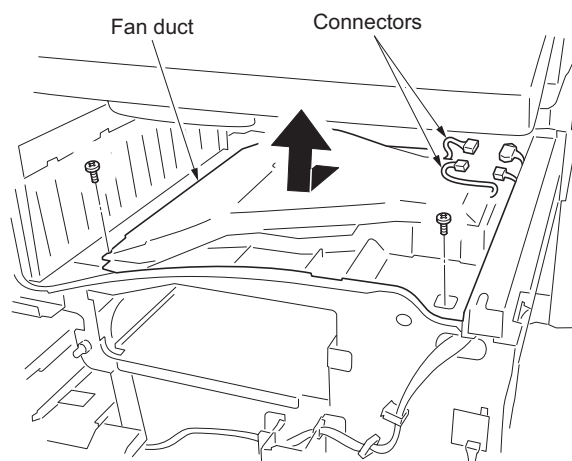


Figure 1-5-47

7. Remove six screws and remove the toner container retainer.

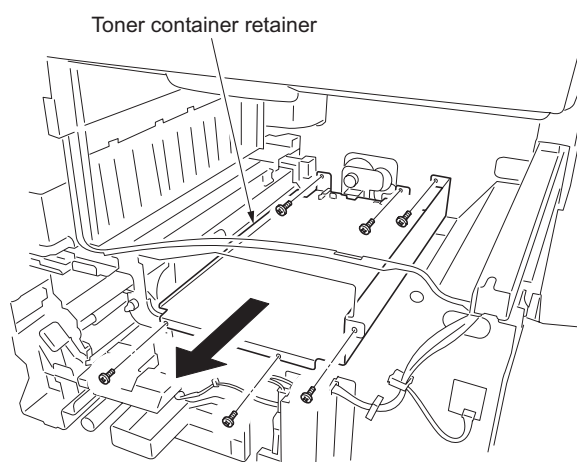


Figure 1-5-48

8. Remove two pins and two spring. Remove the screw and the connector, and then remove the laser scanner unit.
9. Replace the laser scanner unit and install the unit.
10. Refit the toner container retainer, fan duct and inner cover.
11. Refit the top tray, front right cover, right lower cover and front left cover.
12. Refit the drum unit and the developing unit.

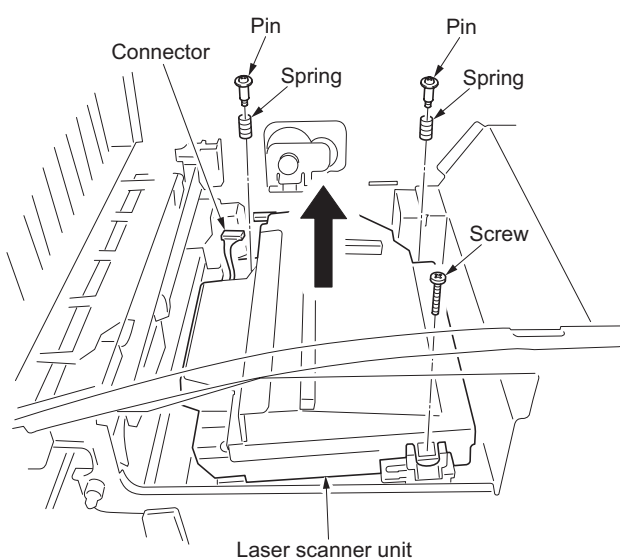


Figure 1-5-49

(6) Adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit (reference)

Perform the following adjustment if the leading and trailing edges of the copy image are laterally skewed (lateral square-ness not obtained).

Procedure

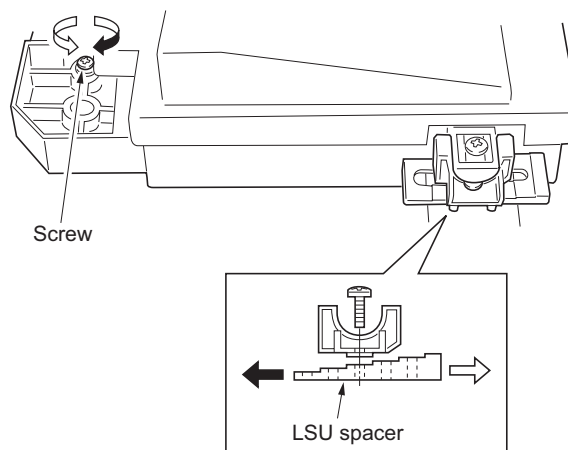
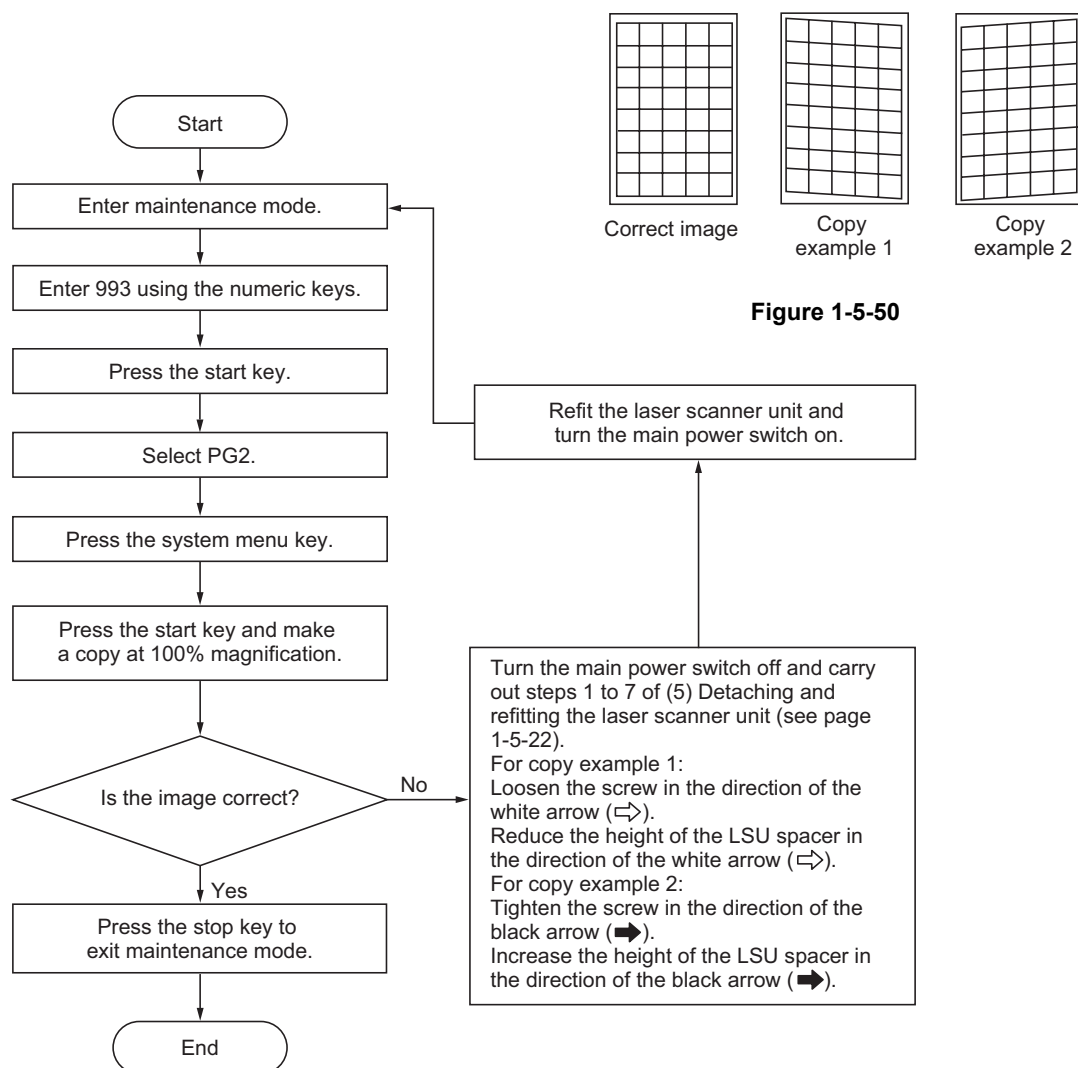


Figure 1-5-51

1-5-4 Drum section

(1) Detaching and refitting the drum unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the drum unit.

Cautions:

Avoid direct sunlight or strong light when detaching and refitting the drum unit.
Never touch the drum surface when holding the drum unit.

Procedure

1. Remove the developing unit (see page 1-5-28).
2. Remove the main charger unit (see page 1-5-26).
3. Remove the screw and the drum unit.
4. Replace the drum unit and install the unit.

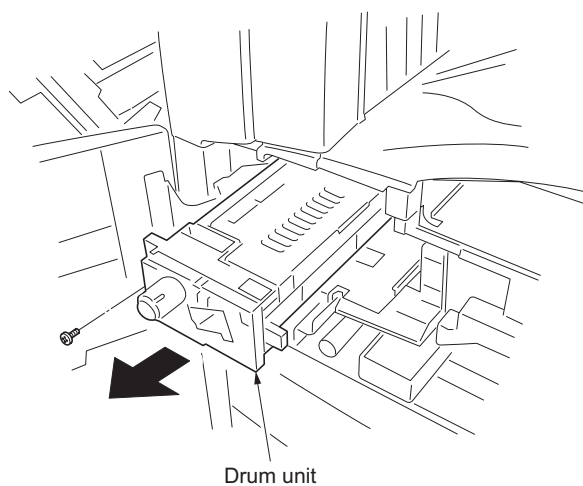


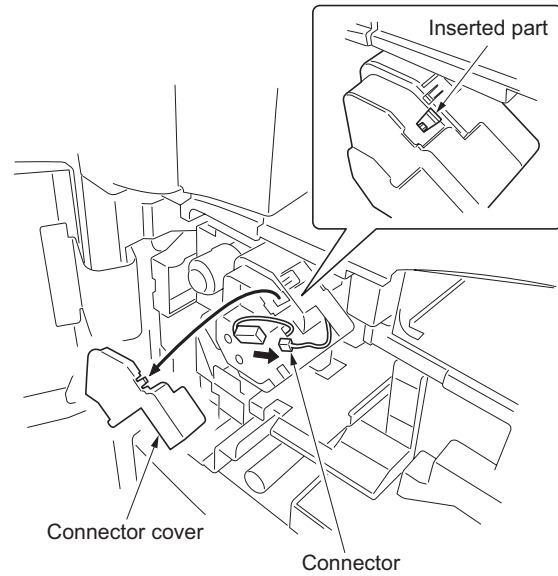
Figure 1-5-52

(2) Detaching and refitting the main charger unit

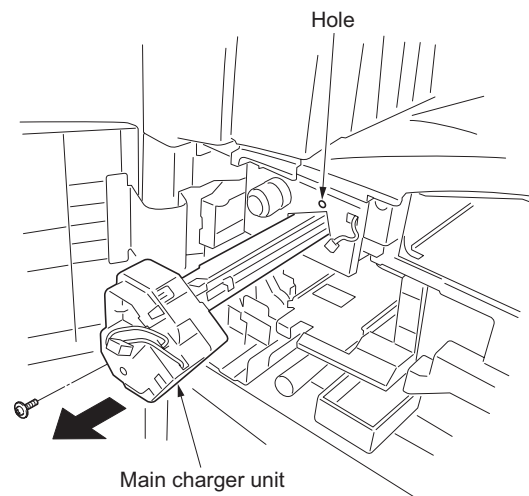
Follow the procedure below to replace the main charger unit.

Procedure

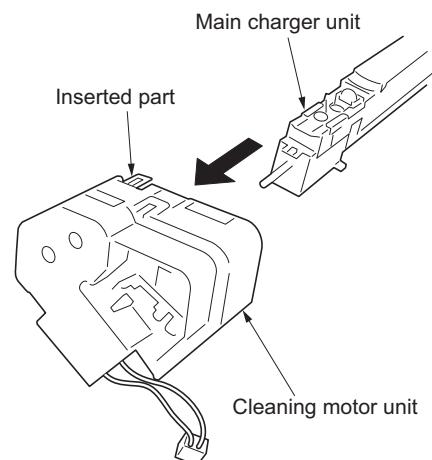
1. Remove the developing unit (see page 1-5-28).
2. Release the inserted part and remove the connector cover.
3. Remove the connector.

**Figure 1-5-53**

4. Remove the screw.
5. While pushing the hole with a sharp-pointed object, remove the main charger unit.

**Figure 1-5-54**

6. Release the inserted part and remove the cleaning motor unit from the main charger unit.
7. Replace the main charger unit.
8. Refit the cleaning motor unit to the main charger unit.
9. Install the main charger unit.

**Figure 1-5-55**

(3) Detaching and refitting the drum separation claws

Follow the procedure below to replace the drum separation claws.

Procedure

1. Remove the developing unit (see page 1-5-28).
2. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
3. Remove two screws and remove the lower cleaning seal.

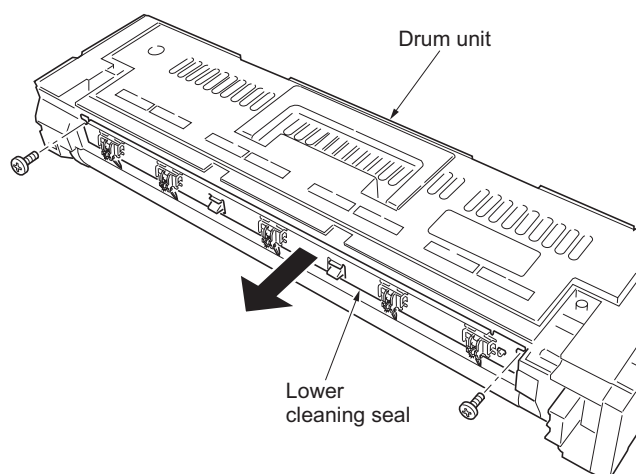


Figure 1-5-56

4. Release the inserted part and remove the drum separation claws from the lower cleaning seal.
5. Replace the drum separation claws and install the claws.
6. Refit the lower cleaning seal to the drum unit.
7. Refit the drum unit and developing unit.

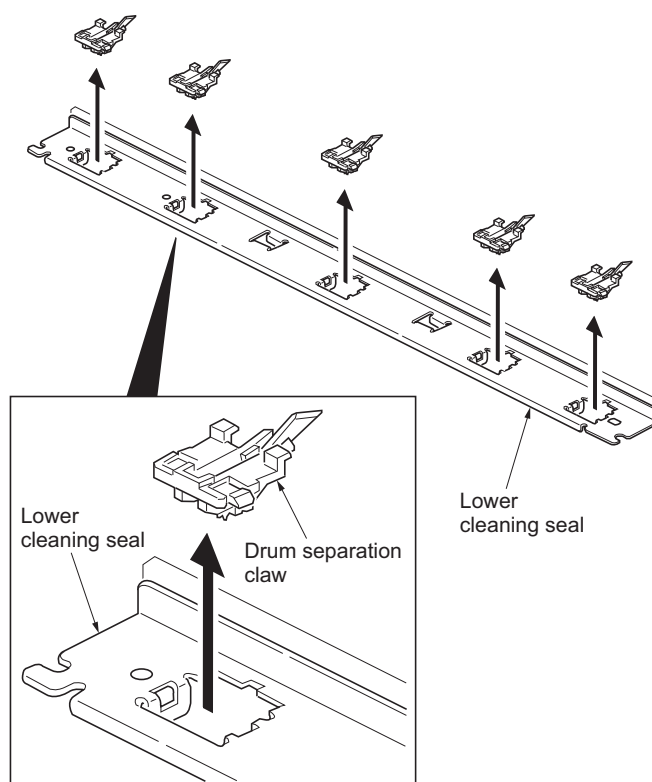


Figure 1-5-57

1-5-5 Developing section

(1) Detaching and refitting the developing unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the developing unit.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the toner container and waste toner box.
3. Remove the pin and turn the developing release lever in the direction of the arrow.

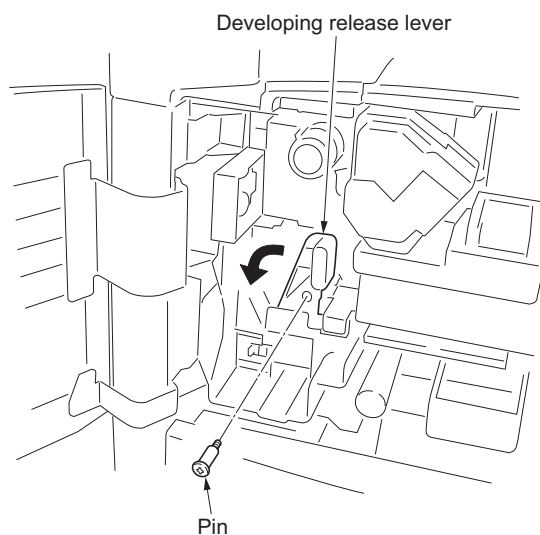


Figure 1-5-58

4. Remove the developing unit.
5. Replace the developing unit and install the unit.
6. Perform maintenance mode U157 to clear the counter value (see page 1-3-45).

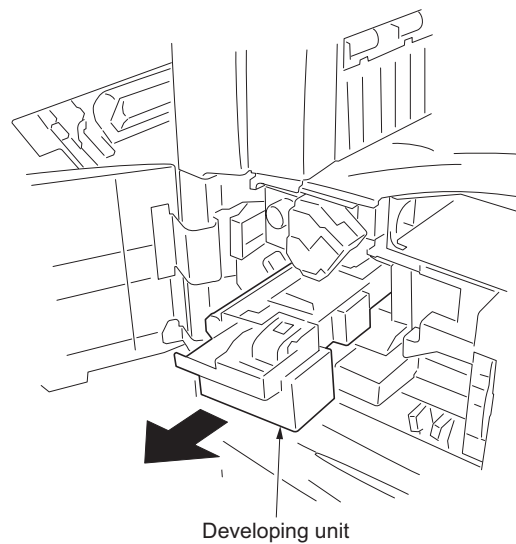


Figure 1-5-59

1-5-6 Transfer section

(1) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the transfer roller unit.

Procedure

1. Open the left cover 1.
2. While holding down the projection, slide the transfer roller unit toward the front to remove it.
3. Replace the transfer roller unit and install the unit.

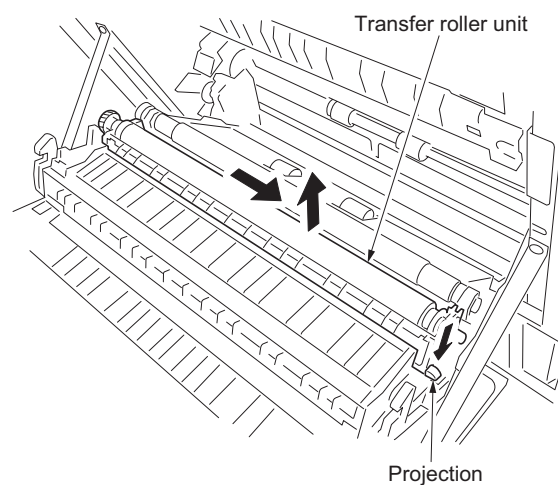


Figure 1-5-60

1-5-7 Fuser section

(1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit

Follow the procedure below to check or replace the fuser unit.

Procedure

1. Remove the clip holder.
2. Open the front cover and left cover 1.
3. Remove four screws and remove front left cover.

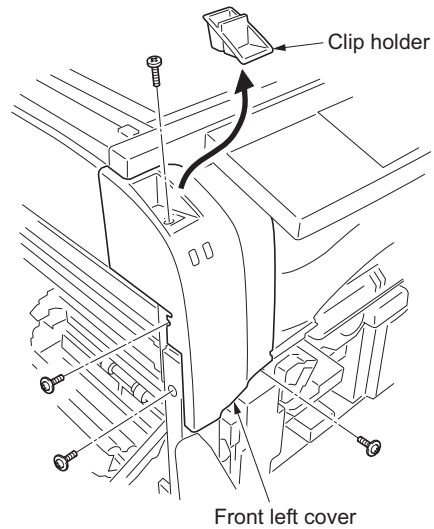


Figure 1-5-61

4. Remove the screw and remove the fuser unit.
5. Check or replace the fuser unit and install the unit.
6. Perform maintenance mode U167 to clear the counter value (see page 1-3-46).

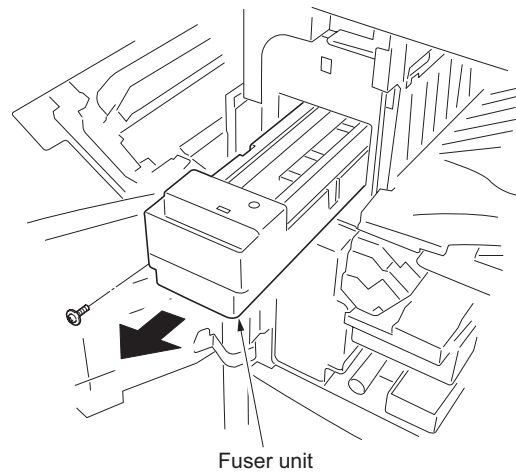


Figure 1-5-62

(2) Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws

Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller separation claws.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove the two pins and remove the upper fuser cover while holding the four claws.

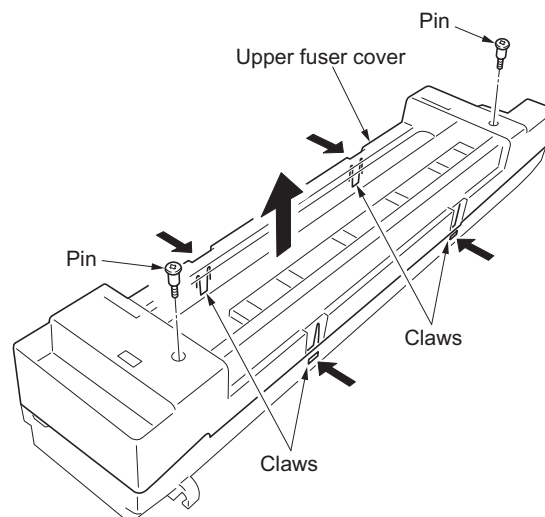


Figure 1-5-63

3. Remove the heat roller separation claws from the upper fuser cover.
4. Replace the heat roller separation claws and install the claws to upper fuser cover.
5. Refit the upper fuser cover.
6. Refit the fuser unit.

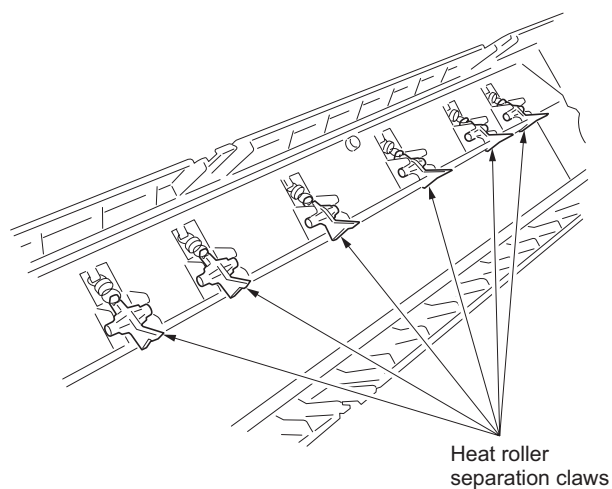


Figure 1-5-64

(3) Detaching and refitting the press roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the press roller.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-31).
3. Remove the front and rear press springs.

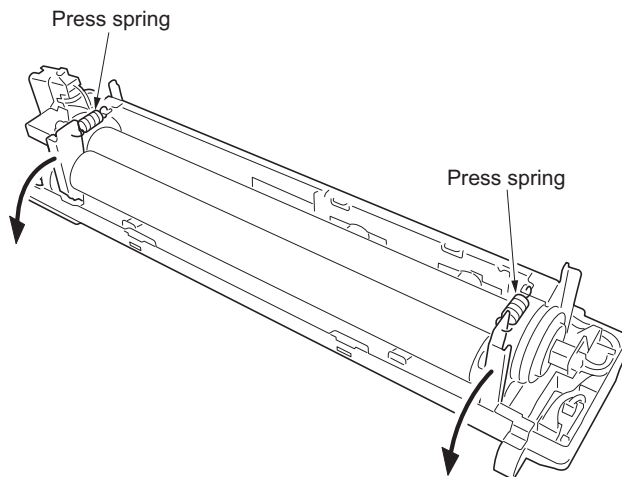


Figure 1-5-65

4. Remove the press roller from the fuser unit.
5. Replace the press roller and install the roller to fuser unit.
6. Refit the upper fuser cover.
7. Refit the fuser unit.

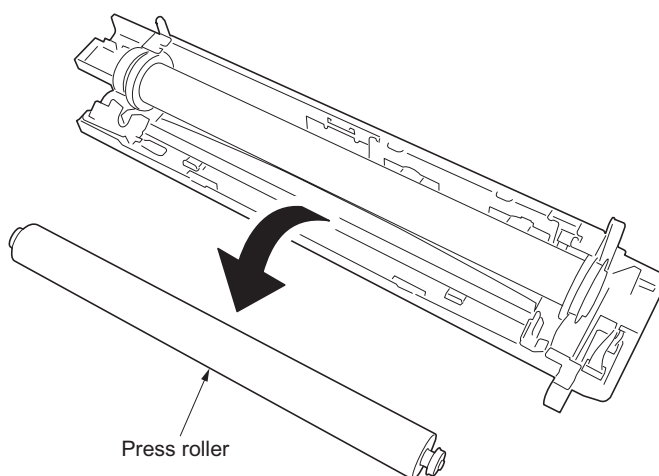


Figure 1-5-66

(4) Detaching and refitting the fuser heater

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser heater.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-31).
3. Remove two screws and the connector.

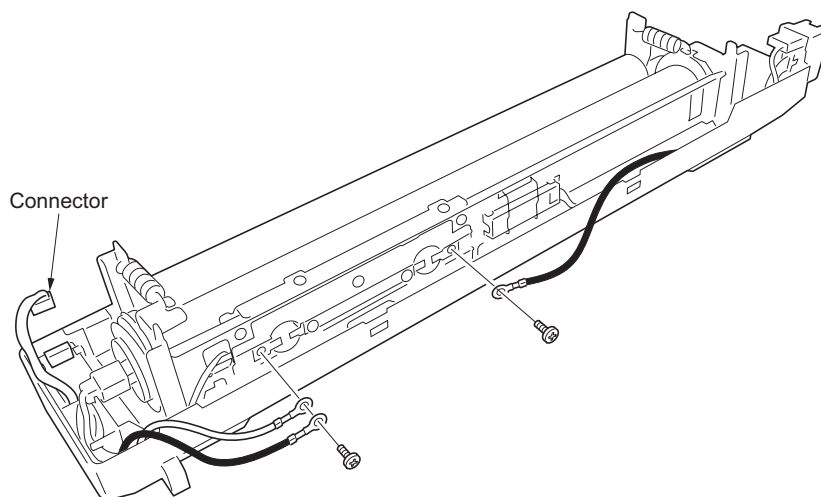


Figure 1-5-67

4. Pull out the fuser heater from the fuser unit.

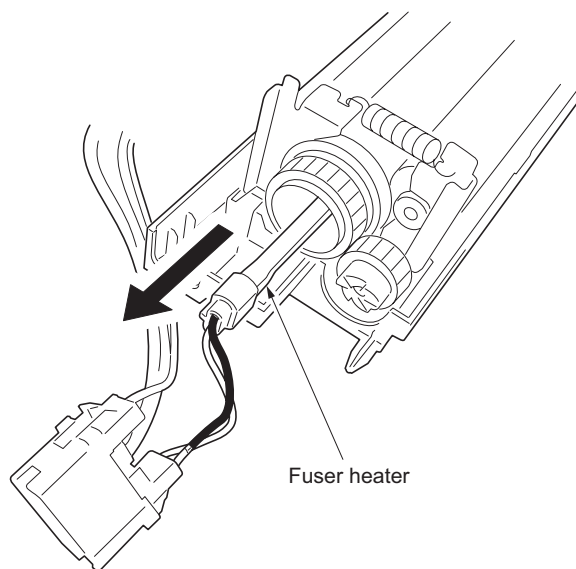


Figure 1-5-68

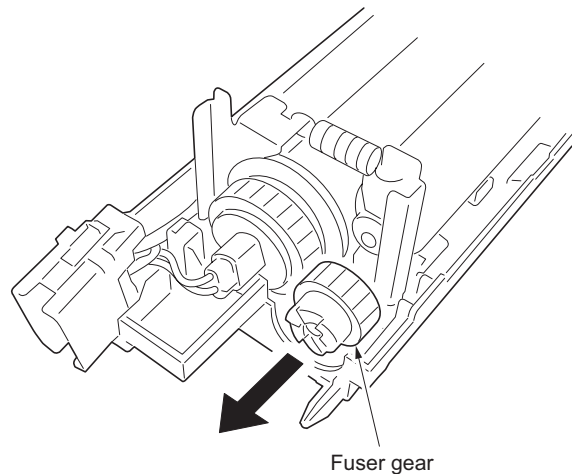
5. Replace the fuser heater and install the heater to fuser unit.
6. Refit the upper fuser cover.
7. Refit the fuser unit.

(5) Detaching and refitting the heat roller

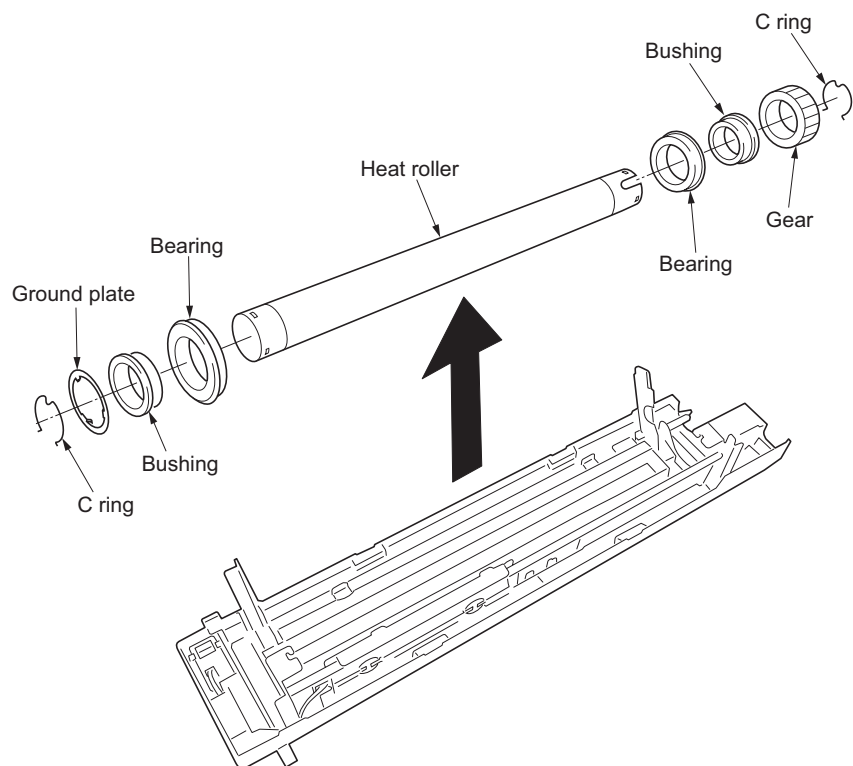
Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-31).
3. Remove the press roller and fuser heater (see page 1-5-32 and 33).
4. Remove the fuser gear.

**Figure 1-5-69**

5. Remove the heat roller from the fuser unit. Remove the C ring, gear, bearing and bushing on the rear side of the heat roller and remove the C ring, ground plate, bearing and bushing on the front side.
6. Replace the heat roller and install the roller to fuser unit.

**Figure 1-5-70**

7. Refit the fuser gear.
8. Refit the fuser heater, press roller and upper fuser cover.
9. Refit the fuser unit.

(6) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit thermistor 1 and 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser unit thermistor 1 and 2.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-31).
3. Release the stopper of the fuser unit thermistor 1.
4. Remove the connector and remove the fuser unit thermistor 1.
5. Replace the fuser unit thermistor 1 and install the thermistor to fuser unit.

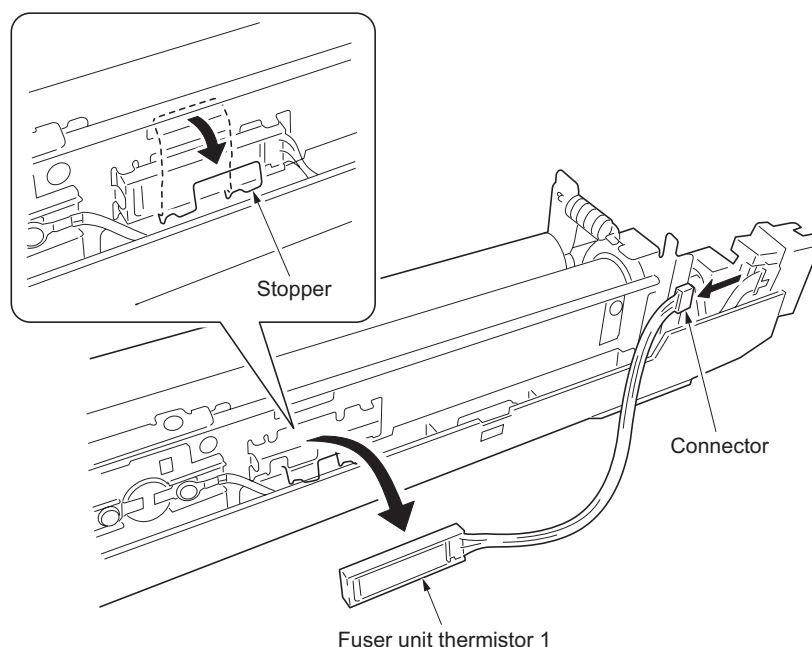


Figure 1-5-71

6. Remove the press roller and fuser heater (see page 1-5-32 and 33).
7. Remove the heat roller (see page 1-5-34).
8. Remove the screw and the connector, and then remove the fuser unit thermistor 2.
9. Replace the fuser unit thermistor 2 and install the thermistor to fuser unit.
10. Refit the heat roller, fuser heater, press roller and upper fuser cover.
11. Refit the fuser unit.

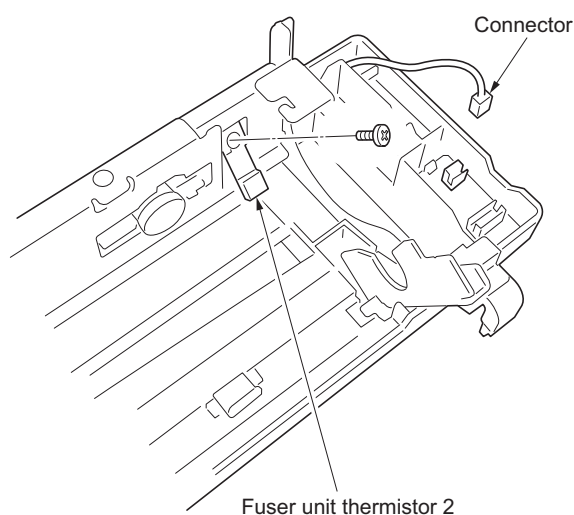
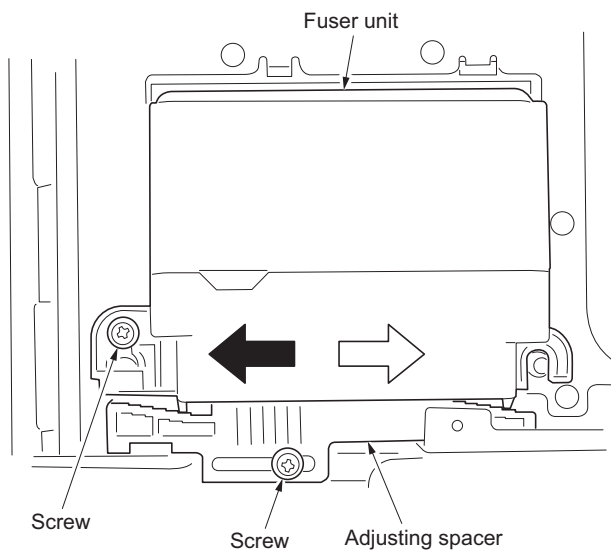
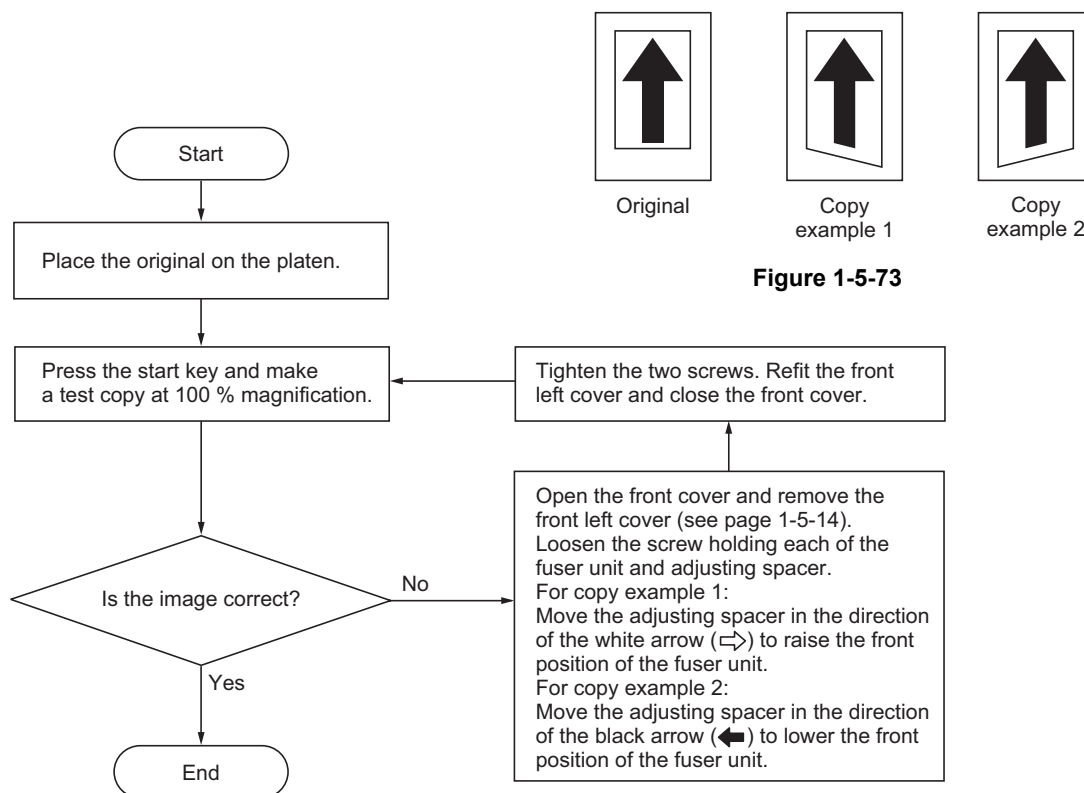


Figure 1-5-72

(7) Adjusting front position of the fuser unit (adjusting lateral squareness)

Follow the procedure below if the drum is not parallel to the fuser unit and therefore paper is not fed straight to the fuser section and the trailing edge of image on either the front or rear side becomes longer.

Procedure

1-5-8 Others

(1) Detaching and refitting the ozone filter 1 and 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the ozone filter 1 and 2.

Procedure

1. Remove the ozone filter 1 from the machine left side.

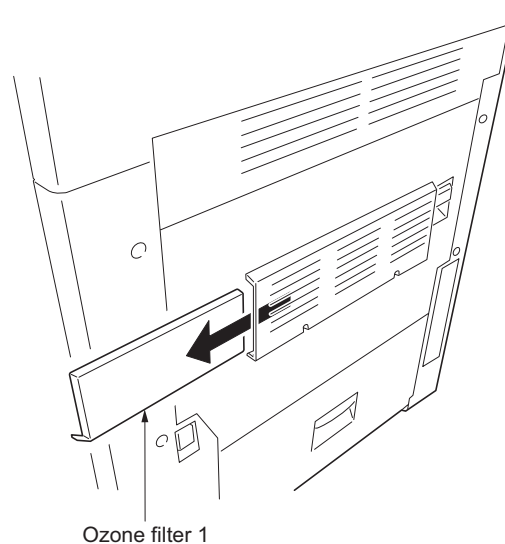


Figure 1-5-75

2. Open the filter cover of the machine rear side and remove the ozone filter 2.
3. Replace the ozone filter 1 and 2 and install the filters.

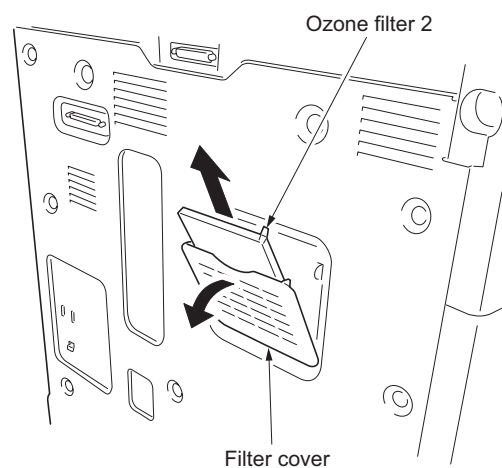


Figure 1-5-76

(2) Detaching and refitting the dust filter 1 and 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the dust filter 1 and 2.

Procedure

1. Open the MP tray.
2. Remove the dust filter 1 and 2 from the machine.
3. Replace the dust filter 1 and 2 and install the filters.

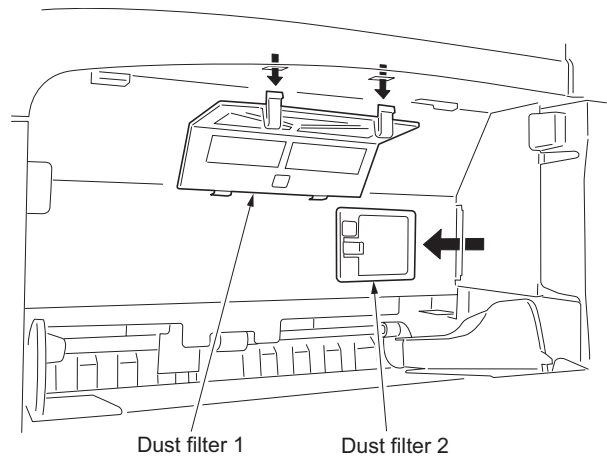


Figure 1-5-77

(3) Detaching and refitting the hard disk

Follow the procedure below to replace the hard disk.

Procedure

1. Remove the rear cover (see page1-5-12).
2. Remove fourteen screws and then remove the inner cover.
3. Remove the one connector.

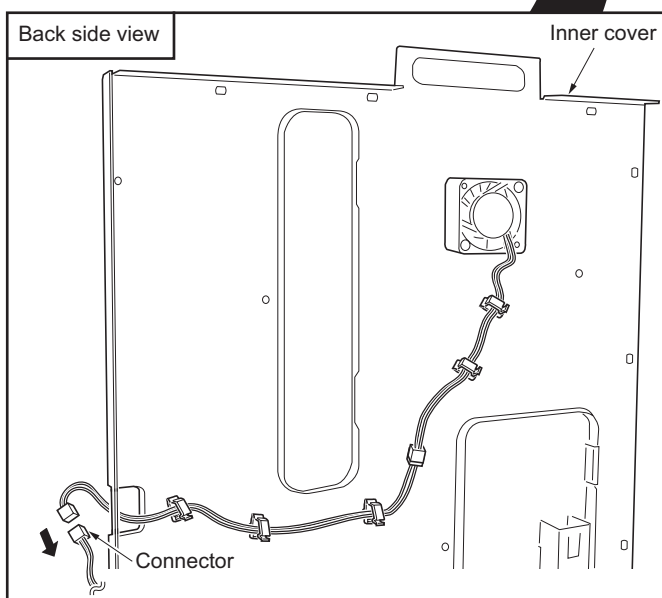
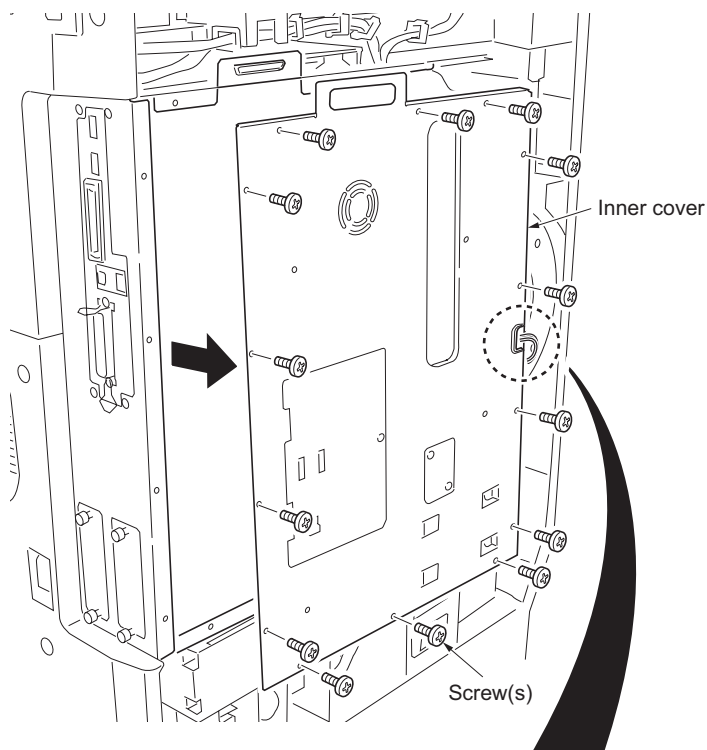


Figure 1-5-78

4. Remove all connectors from the main PWB.
5. Release the one wire saddle.
6. Remove six screws.
7. Remove the one connector from the hard disk.
8. Remove the main PWB/HDD mount (with main PWB and hard disk).

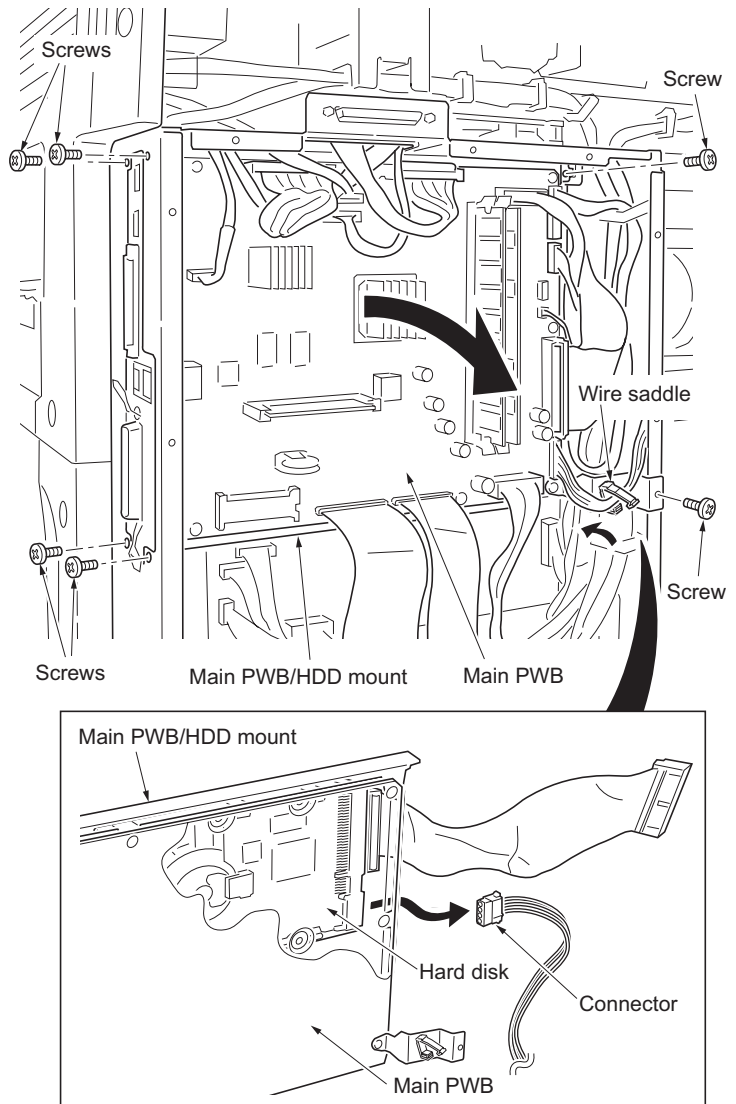


Figure 1-5-79

9. Remove eight screws and PWB holder.
10. Remove the main PWB from the main PWB/HDD mount.

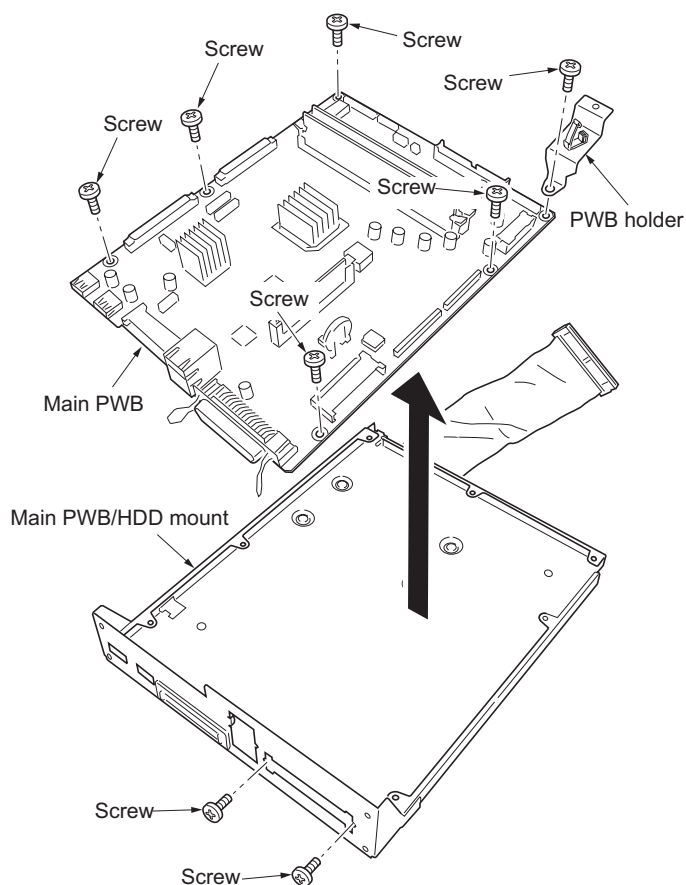


Figure 1-5-80

11. Remove four screws and then remove the main PWB/HDD mount from the hard disk.
12. Remove the cable from the hard disk.
13. Replace the hard disk. Install the hard disk to the main PWB/HDD mount.
14. Refit the main PWB to the main PWB/HDD mount.
15. Refit the main PWB/HDD mount.
16. Refit the inner cover and rear cover.
17. Run maintenance item U024 to initialize the hard disk.

When the optional fax backup kit is installed, perform the following procedures.

18. Run maintenance item U933 and press [FAX IMAGE] to print out the FAX image.
19. Run maintenance item U933 and press [JOB ACCOUNTING] to restore the job accounting data to the hard disk.
20. Run maintenance item U933 and press [INITIALIZE CF] to initialize the fax backup kit.

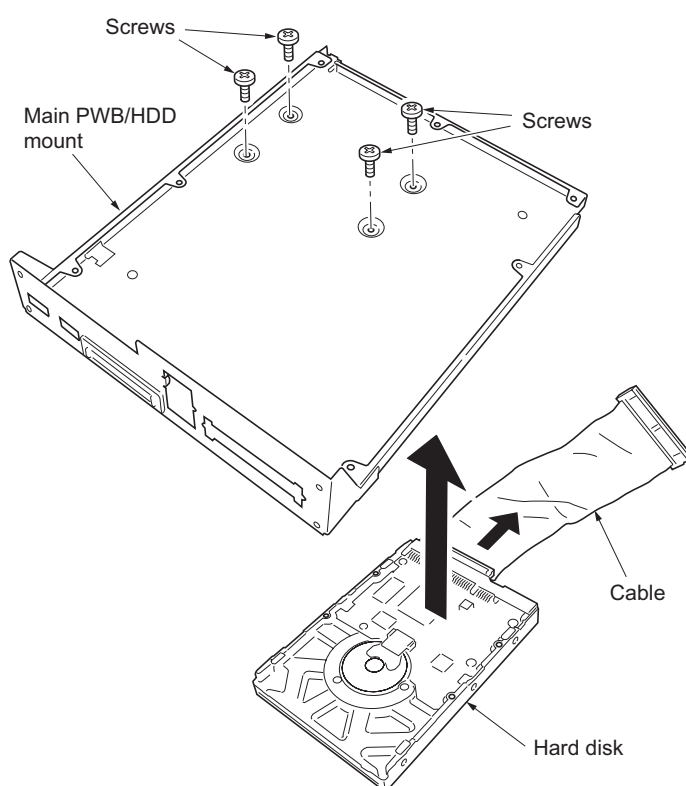


Figure 1-5-81

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware

Follow the procedure below to upgrade the firmware of main PWB, engine PWB, scanner PWB and MMI.

Firmware upgrading requires the following tools:

Compact Flash (Products manufactured by SANDISK are recommended.) or USB memory

NOTE

When writing data to a new Compact Flash from a computer, be sure to format it in advance.

A Compact Flash is recognized when turning the main power switch on.

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Insert Compact Flash or USB memory in a notch hole of the machine.
The Compact Flash must be inserted into the machine with its rear side facing up.
3. Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on. Upgrading firmware starts for 9 minutes.

Caution:

Never turn the main power switch off during upgrading.

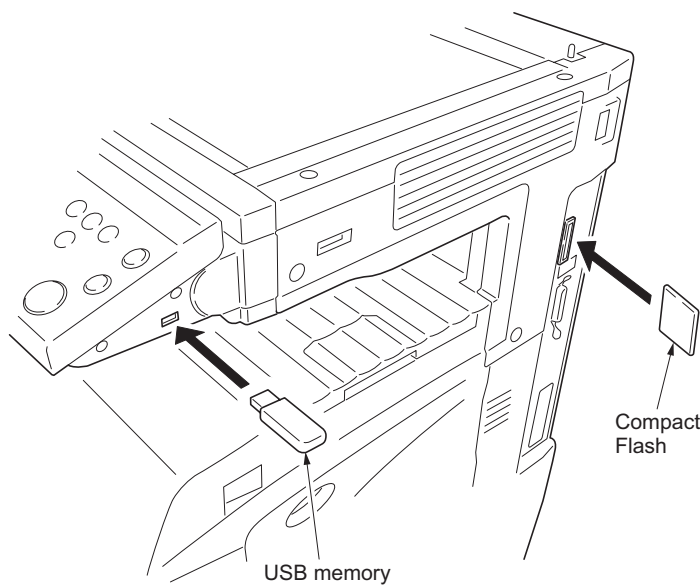


Figure 1-6-1

4. [Completed] is displayed on the touch panel when upgrading is complete.
5. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
6. Remove Compact Flash or USB memory from the machine.
7. Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on.

1-6-2 Adjustment-free variable resistors (VR)

The variable resistors listed below are set at the factory prior to shipping and cannot be adjusted in the field.

High voltage PWB: VR2, VR42, VR201, VR204

1-6-3 Remarks on main PWB replacement

When replacing the main PWB, remove EEPROM from the main PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new main PWB.

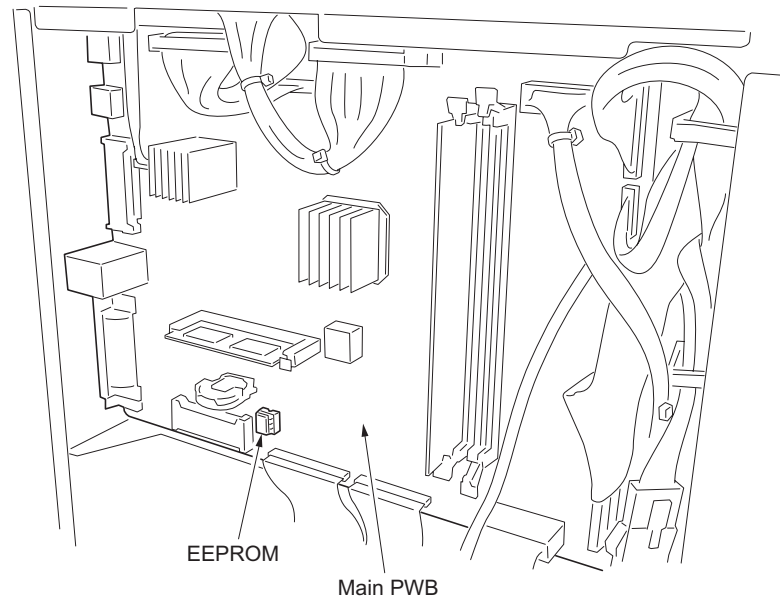


Figure 1-6-2

1-6-4 Remarks on engine PWB replacement

When replacing the engine PWB, remove the EEPROM from the engine PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new engine PWB.

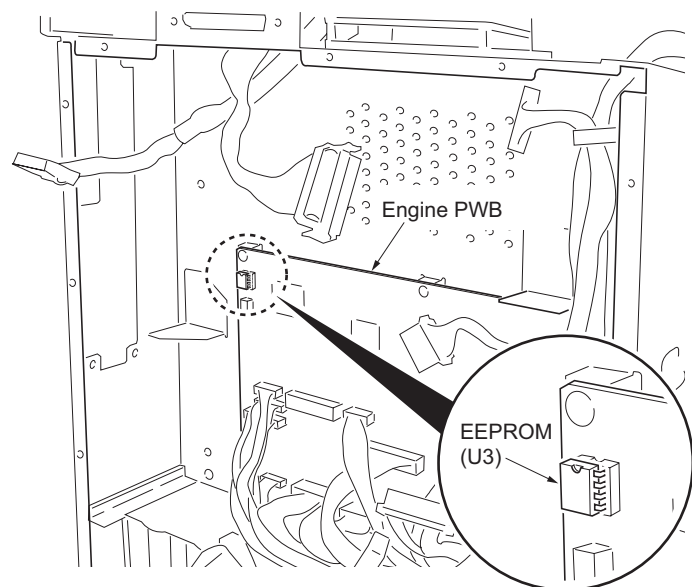


Figure 1-6-3

1-6-5 Remarks on scanner PWB replacement

When replacing the scanner PWB, remove the EEPROM from the scanner PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new scanner PWB.

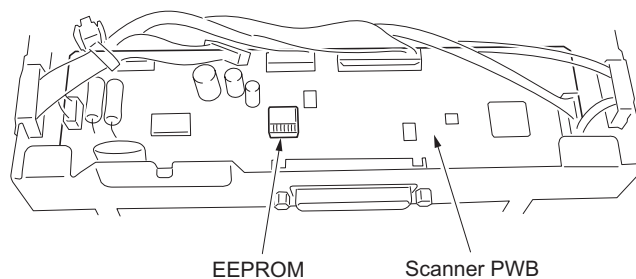


Figure 1-6-4

This page is intentionally left blank.

2-1-1 Paper feed section

The paper feed section consists of the primary feed and secondary feed subsections. Primary feed conveys paper from the cassettes 1, 2 or MP tray to the left and right registration rollers, at which point secondary feed takes place and the paper travels to the transfer section in sync with the printing timing.

Each cassette consists of a lift driven by the lift motor and other components. Each cassette can hold up to 500 sheets of paper. Paper is fed from the cassette by the rotation of the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley. The separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time, via the torque limiter.

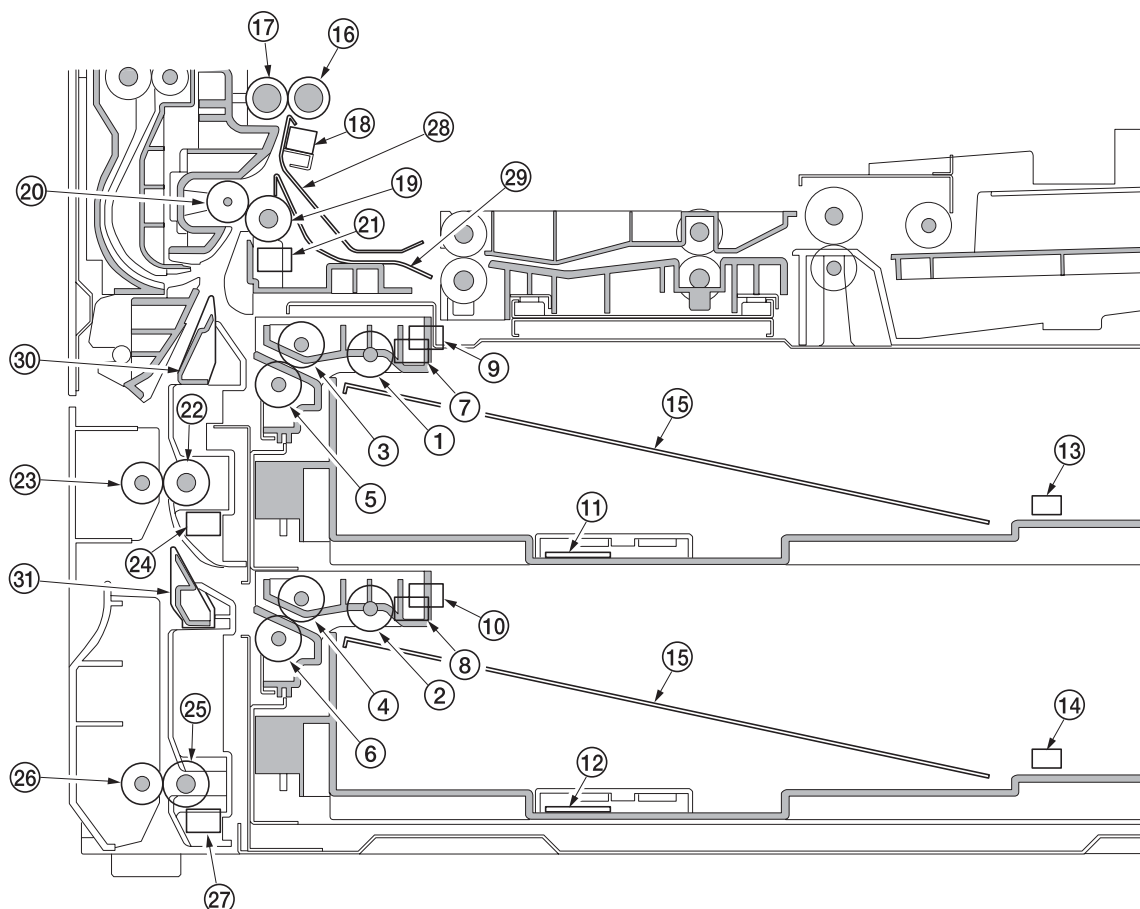


Figure 2-1-1 Paper feed from the cassettes 1 and 2

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| (1) Upper forwarding pulley | (17) Left registration roller |
| (2) Lower forwarding pulley | (18) Registration switch (RSW) |
| (3) Upper paper feed pulley | (19) Feed roller 1 |
| (4) Lower paper feed pulley | (20) Feed pulley |
| (5) Upper separation pulley | (21) Feed switch 1 (FSW1) |
| (6) Lower separation pulley | (22) Feed roller 2 |
| (7) Upper paper switch (PSW-U) | (23) Feed pulley |
| (8) Lower paper switch (PSW-L) | (24) Feed switch 2 (FSW2) |
| (9) Upper lift limit switch (LICSW-U) | (25) Feed roller 3 |
| (10) Lower lift limit switch (LICSW-L) | (26) Feed pulley |
| (11) Upper paper width switch (PWSW-U) | (27) Feed switch 3 (FSW3) |
| (12) Lower paper width switch (PWSW-L) | (28) Front registration guide |
| (13) Upper paper length switch (PLSW-U) | (29) Paper conveying guide |
| (14) Lower paper length switch (PLSW-L) | (30) Vertical paper conveying guide 1 |
| (15) Cassette lifts | (31) Vertical paper conveying guide 2 |
| (16) Right registration roller | |

The MP tray can hold up to 200 sheets of paper at one time. Paper is fed from the MP tray by the rotation of the MP forwarding pulley and MP paper feed pulley. Also during paper feed, the MP separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time by the torque limiter.

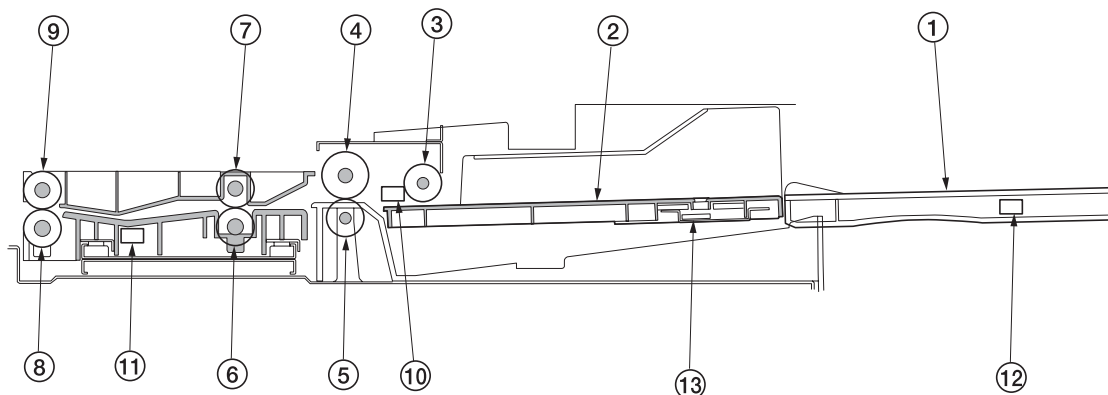


Figure 2-1-2 Paper feed from the MP tray

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (1) MP tray | (9) MP feed roller 2 |
| (2) MP lift guide | (10) MP paper switch (MPPSW) |
| (3) MP forwarding pulley | (11) MP feed switch (MPFSW) |
| (4) MP paper feed pulley | (12) MP paper length switch (MPPLSW) |
| (5) MP separation pulley | (13) MP paper width switch (MPPWSW) |
| (6) MP feed pulley | |
| (7) MP feed roller 1 | |
| (8) MP feed pulley | |

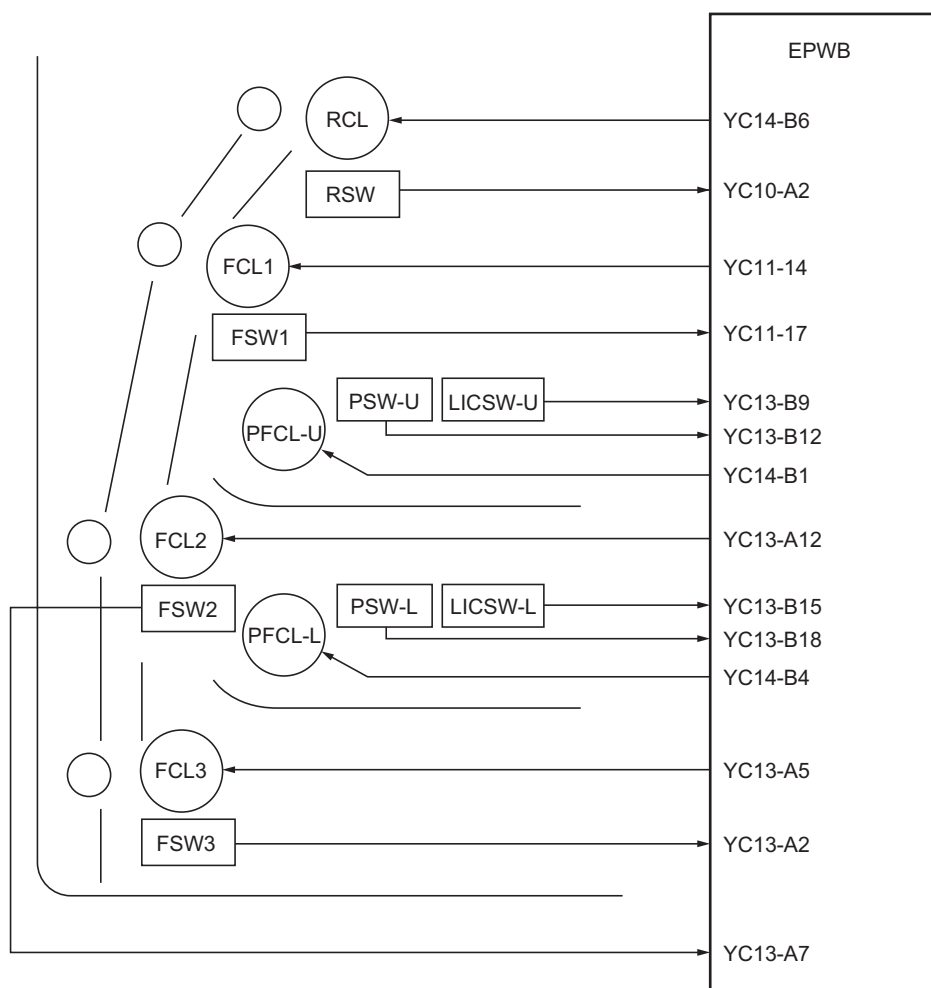


Figure 2-1-3 Paper feed section block diagram (cassettes 1 and 2)

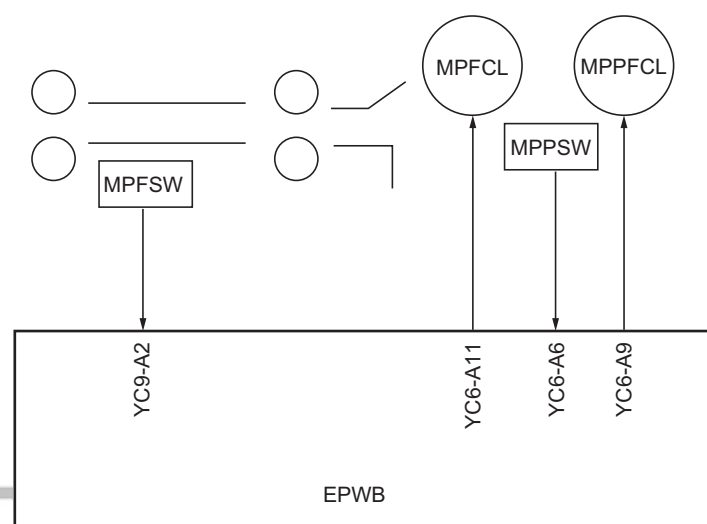


Figure 2-1-4 Paper feed section block diagram (MP tray)

2-1-2 Main charging section

The main charging section consists of the main charger assembly, drum and so on. The drum is electrically charged uniformly by means of a grid to form a latent image on the surface.

The main charger unit charges the drum so that a latent image is formed on the surface, the shield grid ensuring the charge is applied uniformly.

In addition, the main charger unit is equipped with the main charger cleaning motor, and it is cleaning automatically.

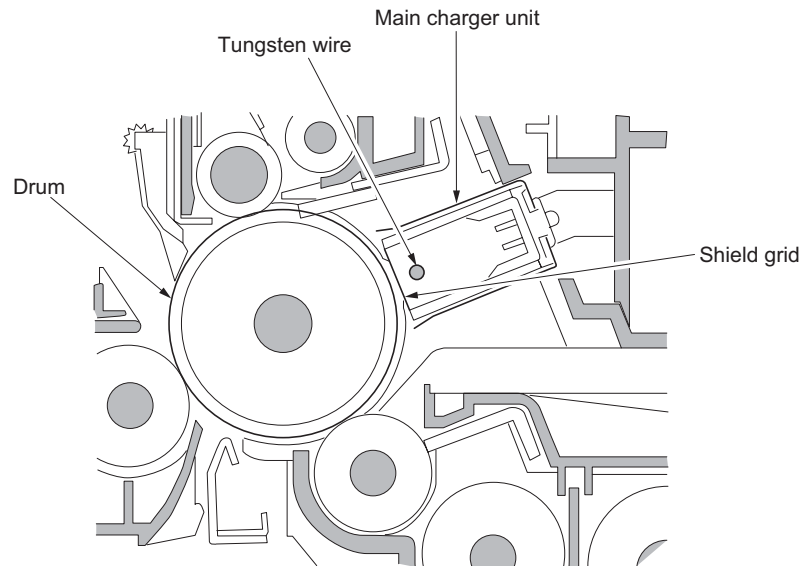


Figure 2-1-5 Main charging section

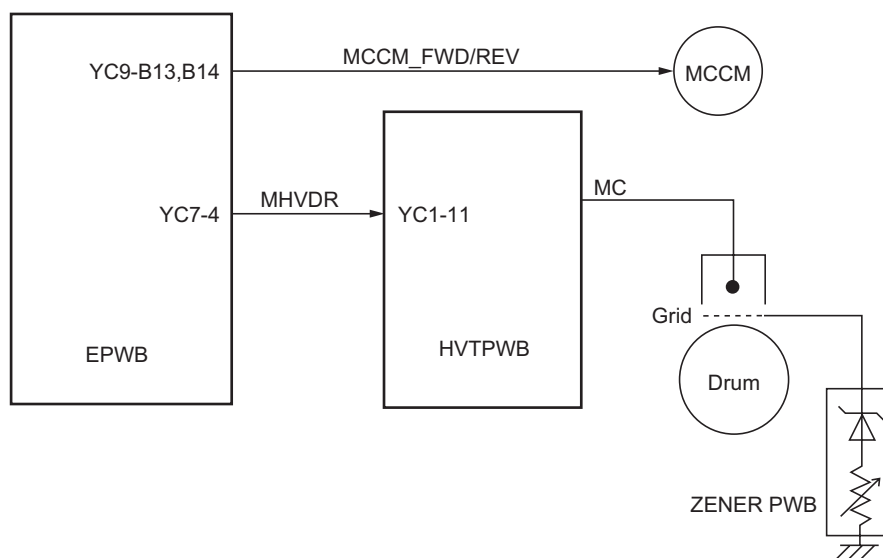


Figure 2-1-6 Main charging section block diagram

2-1-3 Optical section

The optical section consists of the scanner, mirror frame and image scanning unit for scanning and the laser scanner unit for printing.

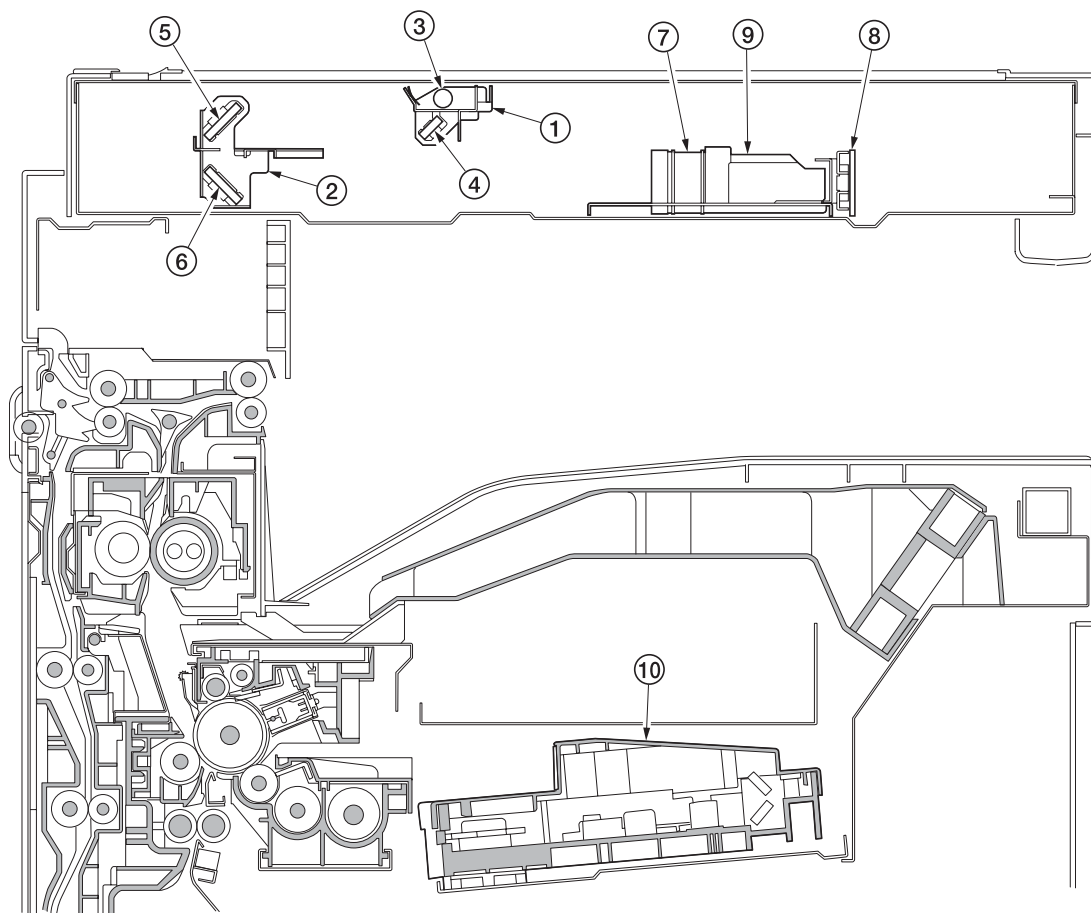


Figure 2-1-7 Optical section

- (1) Mirror 1 frame
- (2) Mirror 2 frame
- (3) Exposure lamp (EL)
- (4) Mirror 1
- (5) Mirror 2
- (6) Mirror 3
- (7) Lens
- (8) CCD PWB (CCDPWB)
- (9) Image scanning unit
- (10) Laser scanner unit (LSU)

(1) Original scanning

The original image is illuminated by the exposure lamp (EL) and scanned by the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) in the image scanning unit via the three mirrors, the reflected light being converted to an electrical signal.

The scanner and mirror frames travel to scan on the optical rails on the front and rear of the machine to scan from side to side. The speed of the mirror frames is half the speed of the scanner.

When the DP is used, the scanner and mirror frames stop at the DP original scanning position to start scanning.

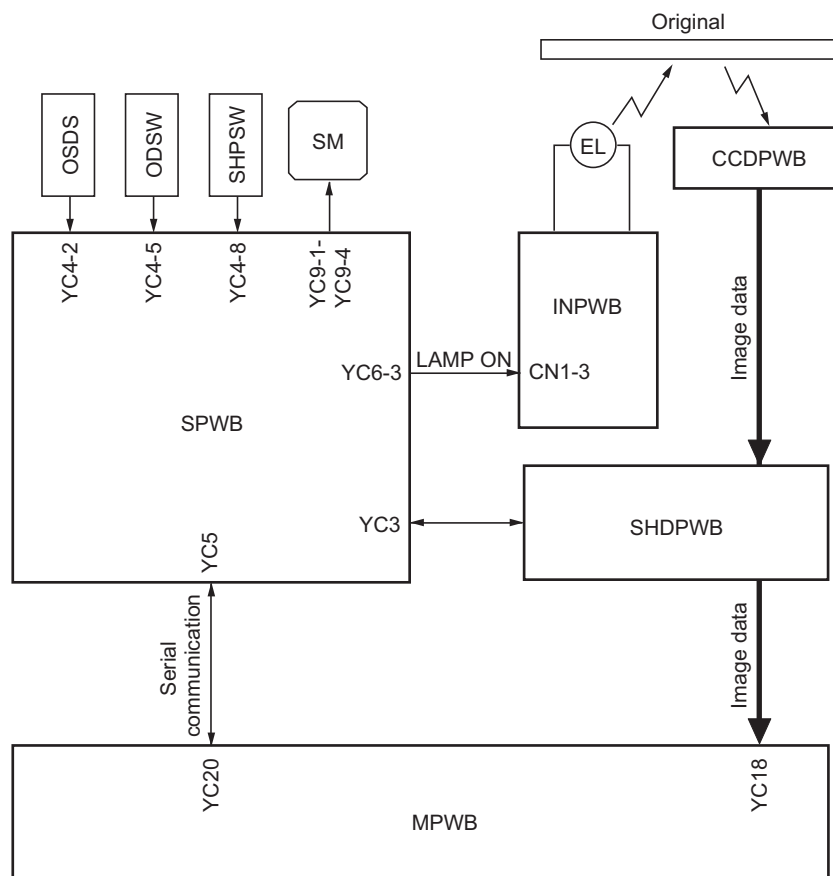


Figure 2-1-8 Optional section block diagram

(2) Image printing

The image data scanned by the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) is processed on the main PWB (MPWB) and transmitted as image printing data to the laser scanner unit (LSU). By repeatedly turning the laser on and off, the laser scanner unit forms a latent image on the drum surface.

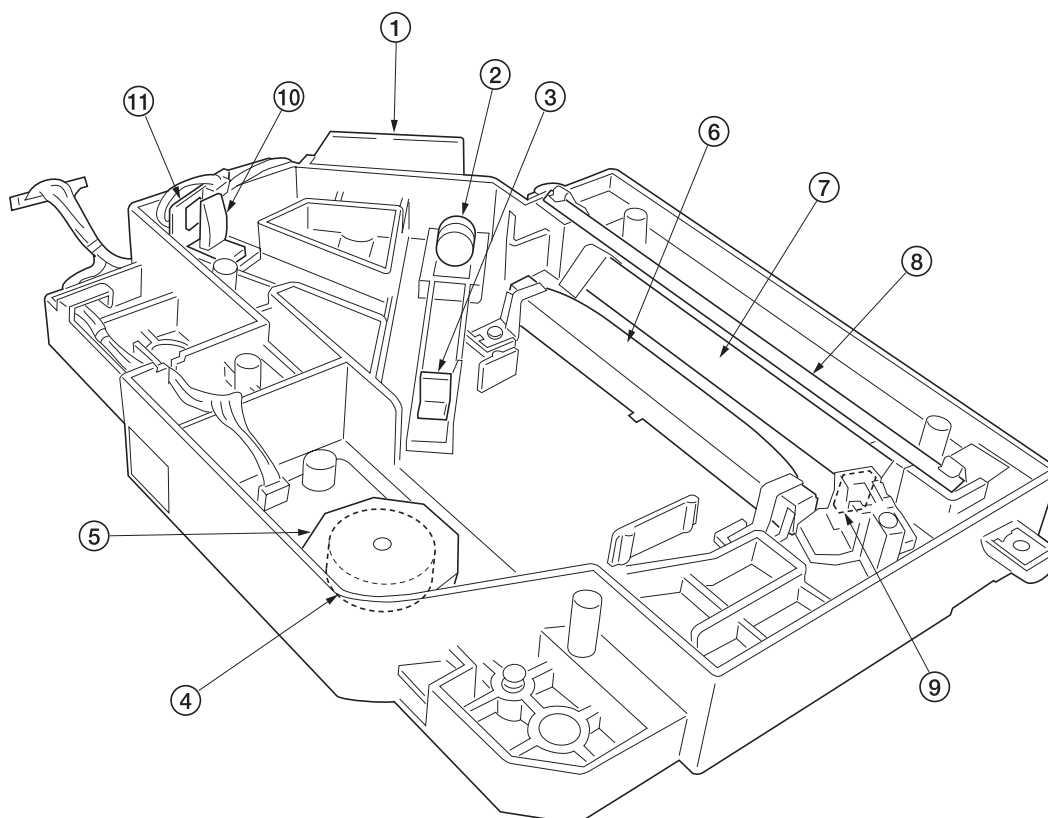


Figure 2-1-9 Laser scanner unit (1)

- (1) Laser diode PWB (LDPWB)
- (2) Collimator lens
- (3) Cylindrical lens
- (4) Polygon motor (PM)
- (5) Polygon mirror
- (6) f θ lens
- (7) Mirror
- (8) Mirror
- (9) BD sensor mirror
- (10) Cylindrical correcting lens
- (11) BD sensor

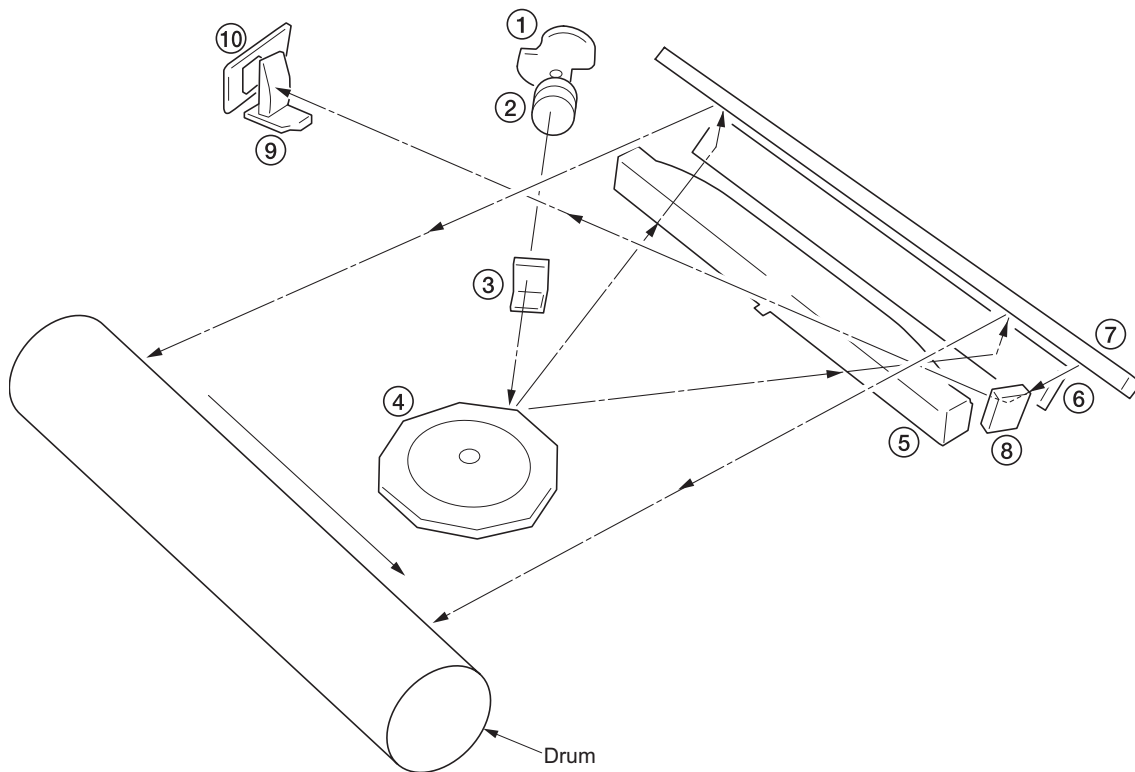


Figure 2-1-10 Laser scanner unit (2)

1. Laser diode: Generates the laser beam which forms a latent image on the drum.
2. Collimator lens: Collimates the diffused laser beam emitted from the laser diode to convert it into a cylindrical beam.
3. Cylindrical lens: Shapes the collimated laser beam to suit the printing resolution.
4. Polygon mirror: Nine-facet mirror that rotates with each face reflecting the laser beam toward the drum for one main-direction scan.
5. $f\theta$ lens: Corrects for non-linearity of the laser beam scanning speed on the drum surface, keeps the beam diameter constant and corrects for the vertical alignment of the polygon mirror to ensure that the focal plane of the laser beam is on the drum surface.
6. Mirror: Reflects the laser beam and changes the irradiation direction.
7. Mirror: Reflects the laser beam and changes the irradiation direction.
8. BD sensor mirror: Reflects the laser beam to the BD sensor to generate the main-direction (horizontal) sync signal.
9. Cylindrical correcting lens: Corrects for the deviation of the laser beam reflected by the BD sensor mirror to the BD sensor.
10. BD sensor: Detects the beam reflected by the BD sensor mirror, outputting a signal to the main PWB (MPWB) to provide timing for the main-direction sync signal.

The dimensions of the laser beam are as shown in Figure 2-1-11.

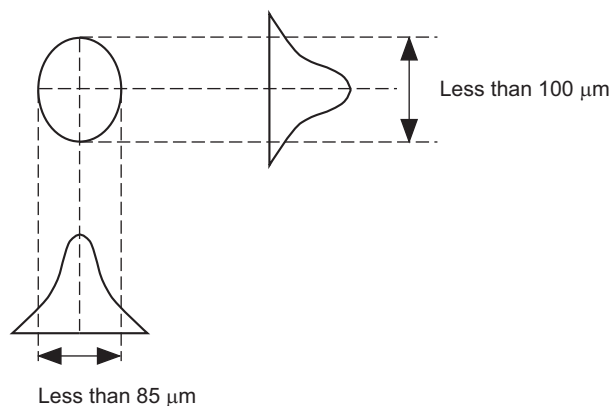


Figure 2-1-11

Scanning in the main direction is provided by the rotating polygon mirror, while scanning in the auxiliary direction is provided by the rotating drum, forming a static latent image on the drum.

The static latent image of the letter “A”, for example, is formed on the drum surface as shown in Figure 2-1-12. Electrical charge is dissipated on the area of the drum surface irradiated by the laser.

The focal point of the laser beam is moved line by line, and adjacent lines slightly overlap each other.

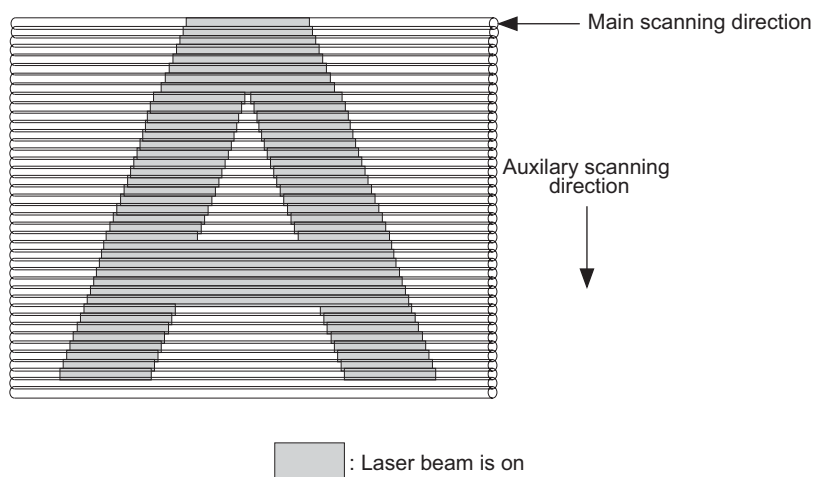


Figure 2-1-12

2-1-4 Developing section

The developing section consists of the developing unit and the toner container.

The developing unit consists of the developing roller where a magnetic brush is formed, the doctor blade and the developing spirals that agitate the toner.

When the toner sensor (TNS) detects a low toner level in the developing unit, the toner replenishment signal is output to the engine PWB (EPWB). The engine PWB (EPWB) that has received the signal turns on the toner replenishment solenoid (TNFSOL) and replenishes toner from the toner container to the developing unit.

Also, the toner container sensor (TCS) checks whether or not toner remains in the toner container.

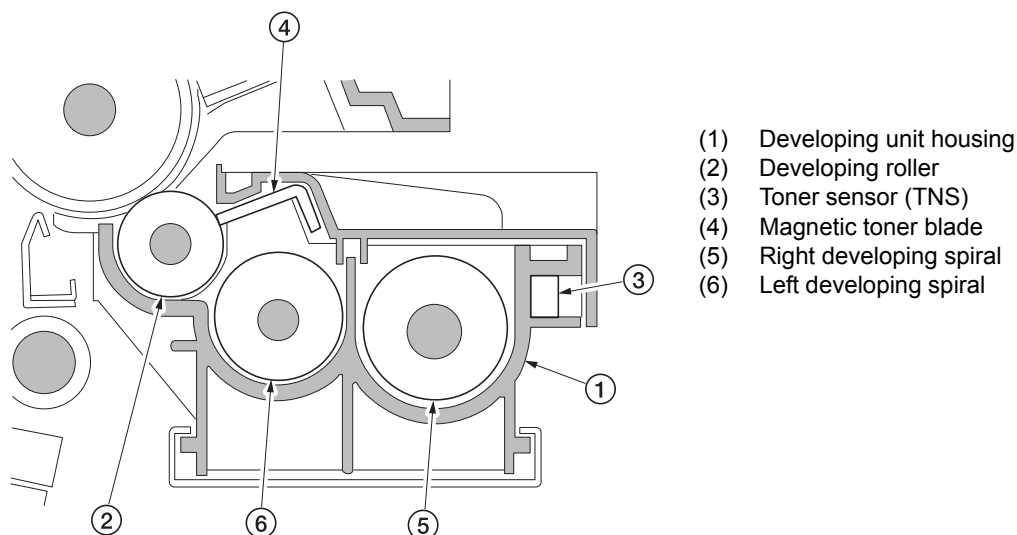


Figure 2-1-13 Developing section

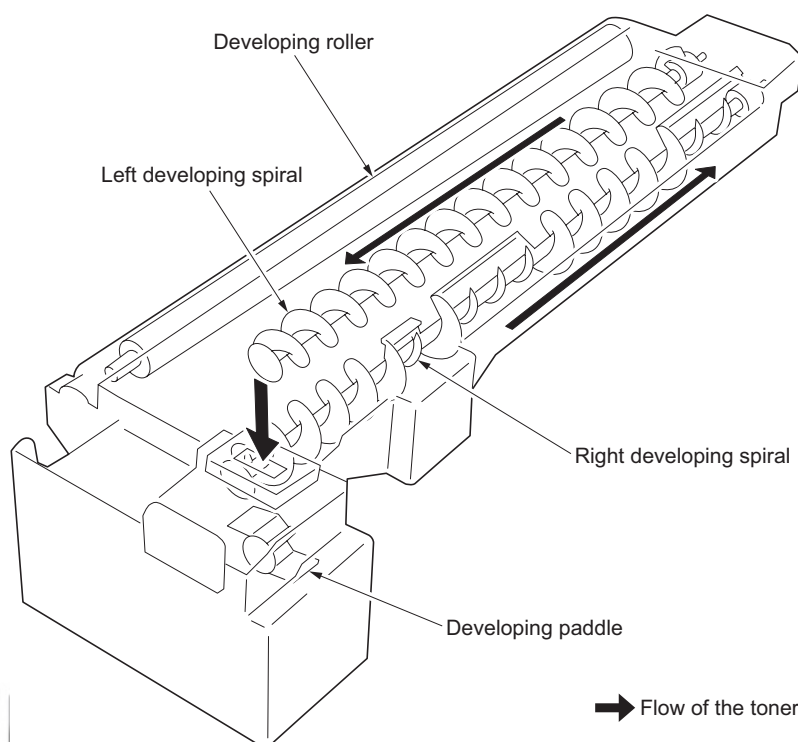


Figure 2-1-14 Flow of the toner

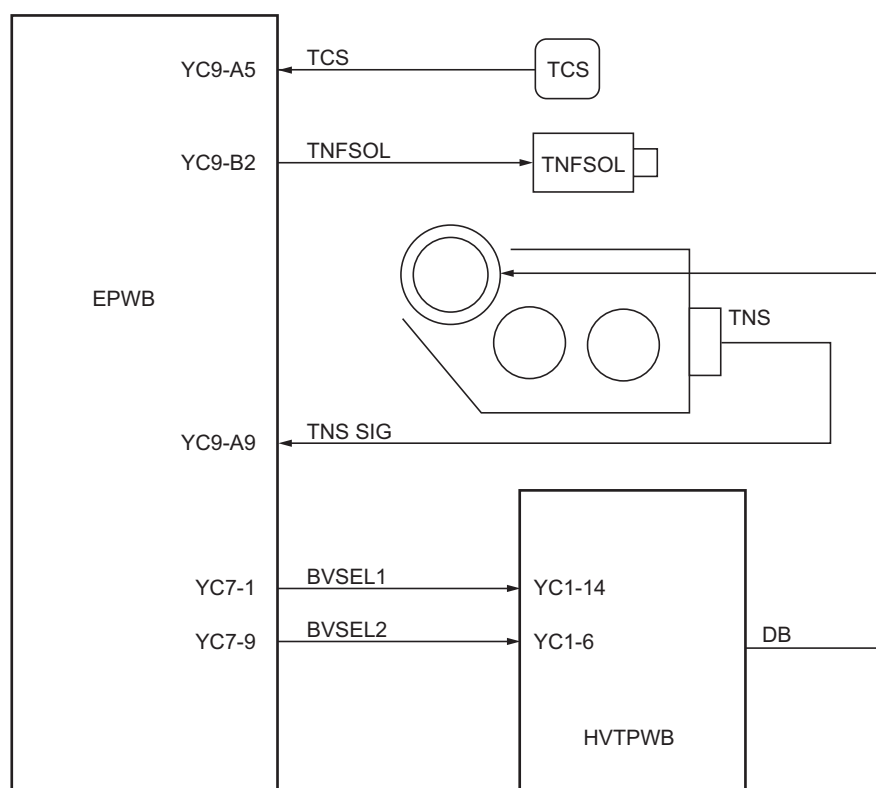


Figure 2-1-15 Developing section block diagram

(1) Single component developing system

This machine uses the single component developing system, and reversal processing is performed with a + charged drum (a-Si) and a + charged magnetic toner.

With the single component developing system, toner is electrically charged by friction with the developing sleeve and + charged when it passes through the magnetic toner blade. The toner that has passed through the magnetic toner blade forms a uniform layer on the developing sleeve. When the toner layer comes to the location where the developing sleeve is the nearest to the drum, toner moves between the drum and the developing sleeve by an electric field of the magnetic pole. Then, when the developing sleeve rotates and passes through the nearest location to the drum, on the portion of the drum that has been exposed to light, toner is attracted toward the drum by potential difference between the developing bias and the drum surface and development is performed. On the other hand, on the portion of the drum that has not been exposed to light, toner is attracted toward the sleeve and development is not performed. When toner comes to an area where the gap between the drum and the developing sleeve is large, an electric field disappears and toner does not leave the developing sleeve. Development is complete.

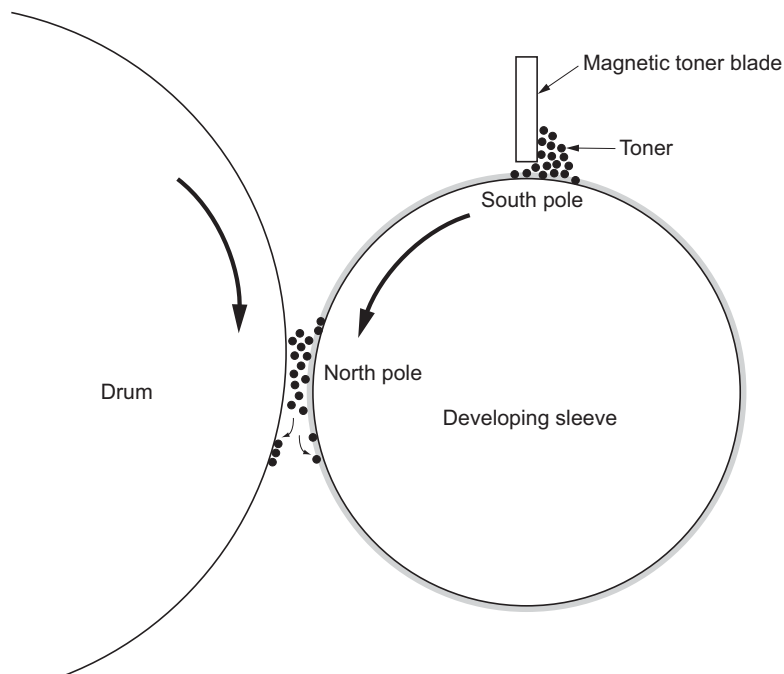


Figure 2-1-16 Single component developing system

2-1-5 Transfer and separation sections

The transfer and separation section consists mainly of the transfer roller, separation electrode and drum separation claws. A high voltage generated by the high-voltage transformer PWB (HVTPWB) is applied to the transfer roller for transfer charging.

Paper after transfer is separated from the drum by applying separation bias that is output from the high-voltage transformer PWB (HVTPWB) to the separation electrode.

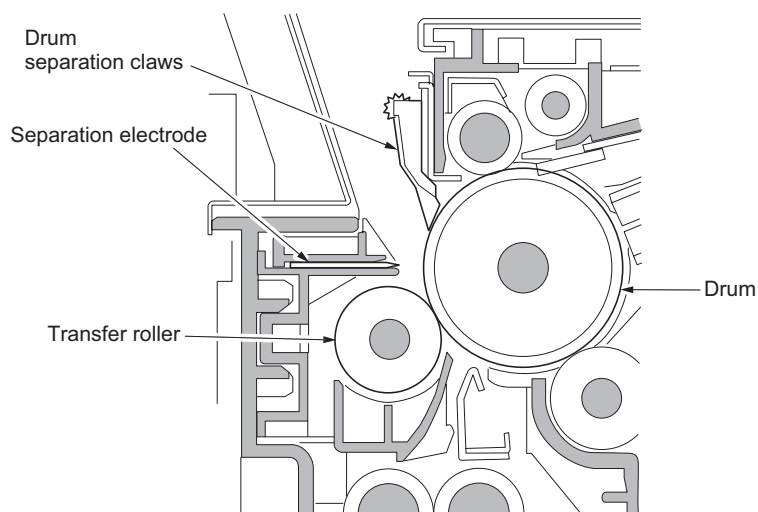


Figure 2-1-17 Transfer and separation sections

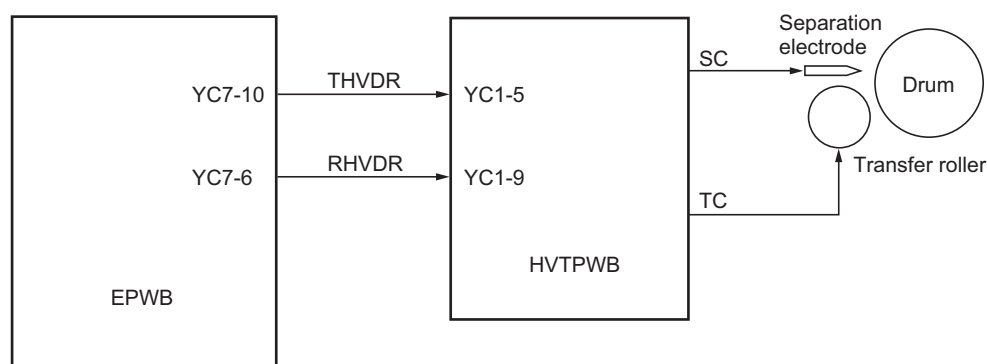


Figure 2-1-18 Transfer and separation sections block diagram

2-1-6 Cleaning and charge erasing sections

The cleaning section consists of the cleaning blade that removes residual toner from the drum surface after the transfer process, and the cleaning spiral that carries the residual toner back to the waste toner box. The cleaning lamp (CL) consists of LEDs and removes residual charge on the drum before main charging. Also the toner quantity in the waste toner box is sensed with the overflow sensor (OFS).

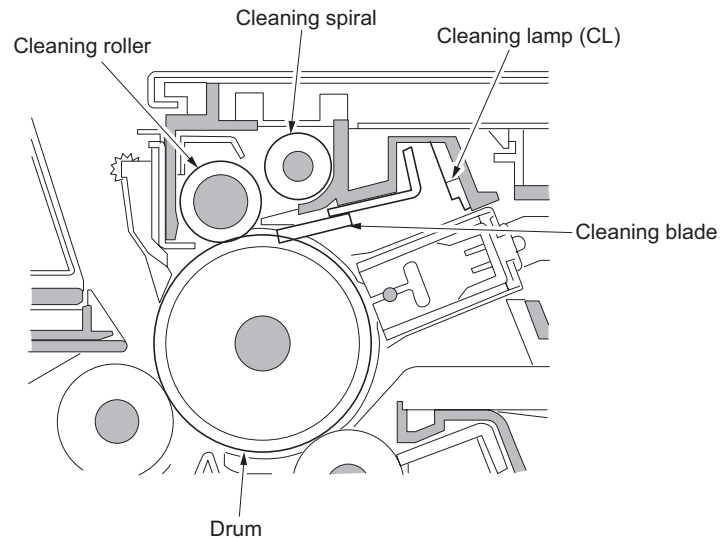


Figure 2-1-19 Cleaning and charge erasing sections

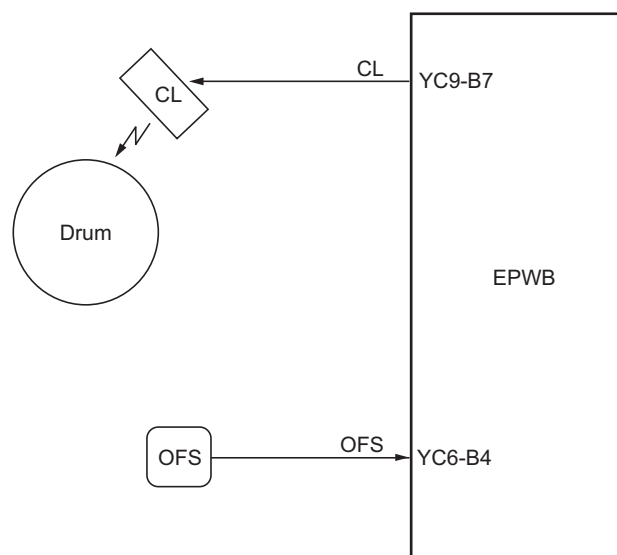


Figure 2-1-20 Cleaning and charge erasing sections block diagram

2-1-7 Fuser section

The fuser section consists of the parts shown in Figure 2-1-21. When paper reaches the fuser section after the transfer process, it passes between the press roller and heat roller, which is heated by fuser heaters M or S (FH-M or FH-S). Pressure is applied by the fuser unit pressure springs so that the toner on the paper is melted, fused and fixed onto the paper. The heat roller is heated by fuser heaters M or S (FH-M or FH-S) inside it; its surface temperature is detected by the fuser unit thermistor 1 and 2 (FTH1/2), and is regulated by the fuser heaters turning on and off.

If the fuser section becomes abnormally hot, fuser unit thermostat 1 and 2 (FTS1/2) operates shutting the power to the fuser heaters off. When the fusing process is completed, the paper is separated from the heat roller by its separation claws and is conveyed from the machine to eject and switchback section.

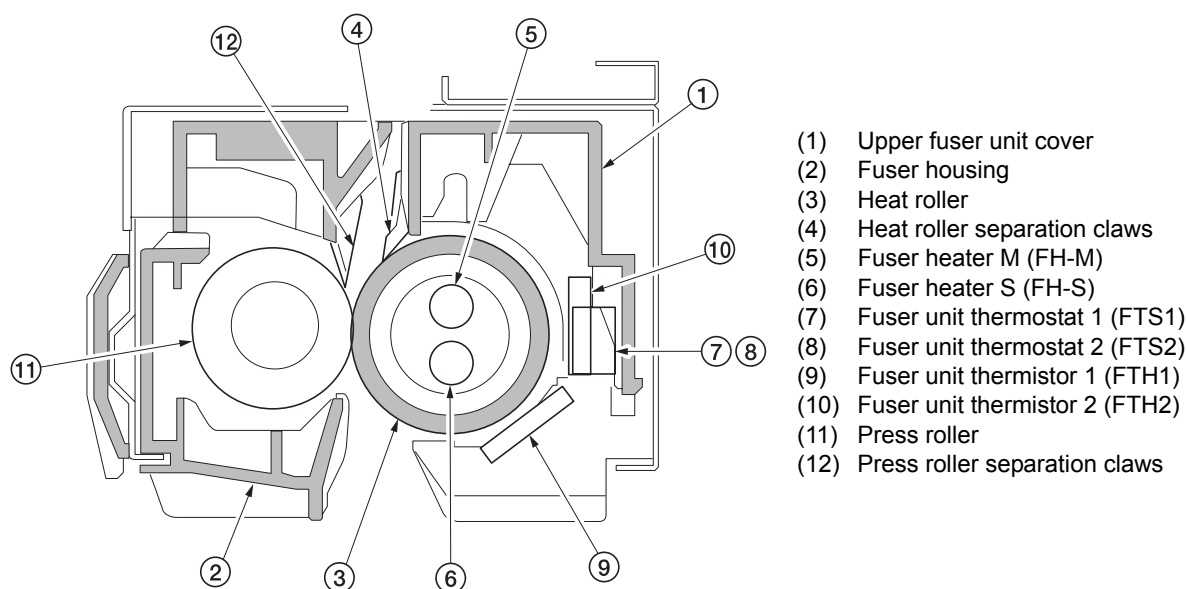


Figure 2-1-21 Fuser section

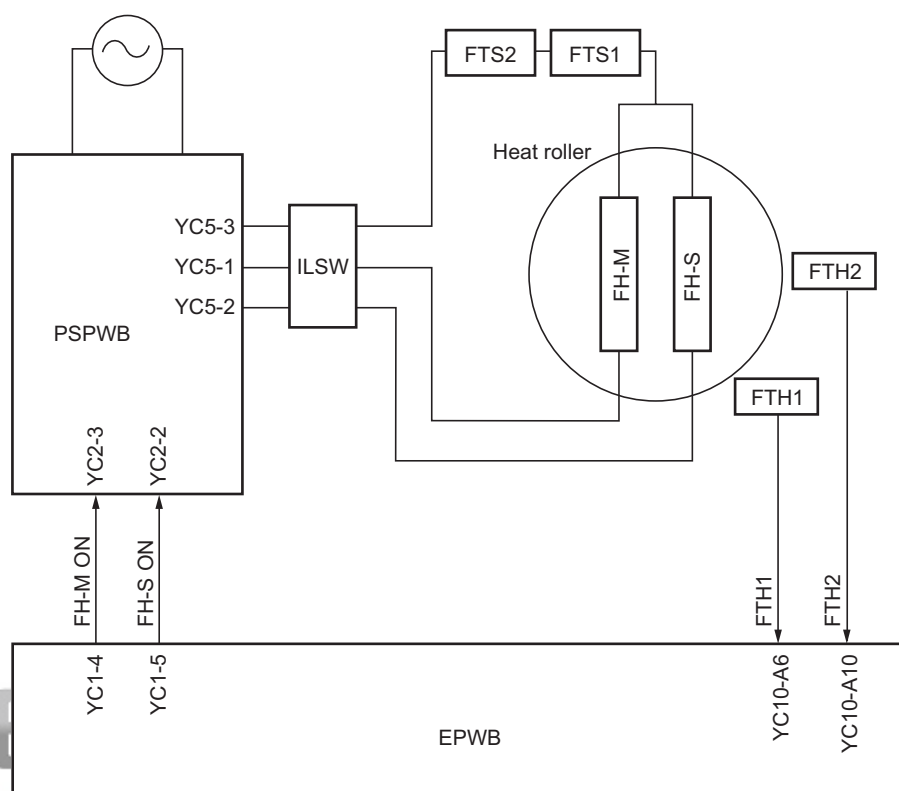


Figure 2-1-22 Fuser section block diagram

2-1-8 Eject and switchback sections

The eject and switchback sections eject paper on which fixing has ended with the eject roller that is rotated by forward rotation of the eject motor.

In duplex copying, paper is turned over by reverse rotation of the eject motor. When paper is transferred to the job separator or the internal finisher, the feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) is turned on to activate the feedshift guide to switch the paper transfer path.

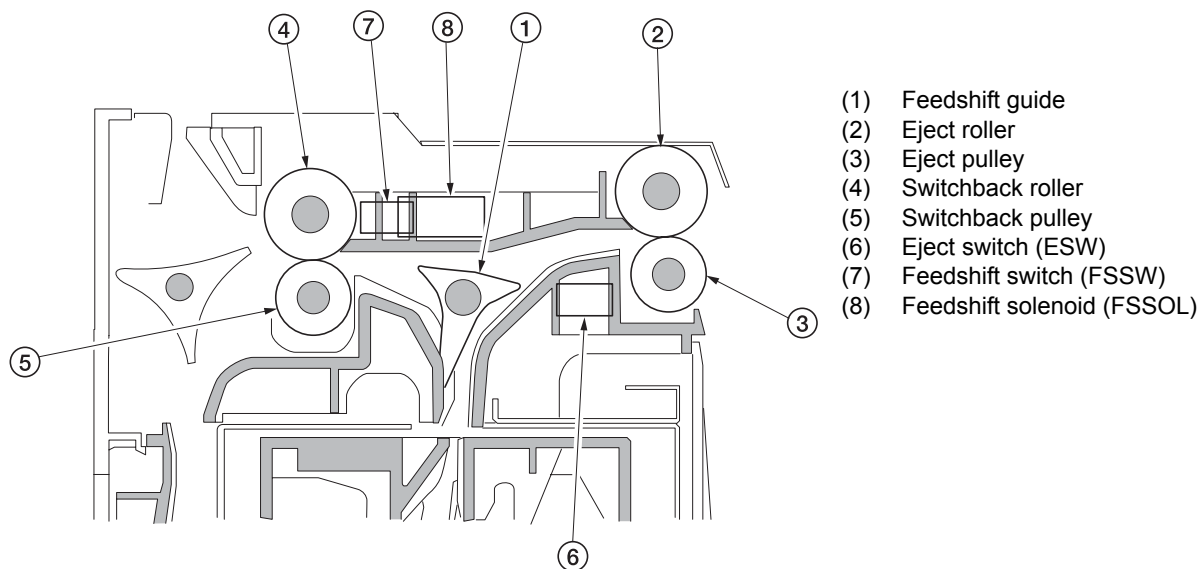


Figure 2-1-23 Eject and switchback sections

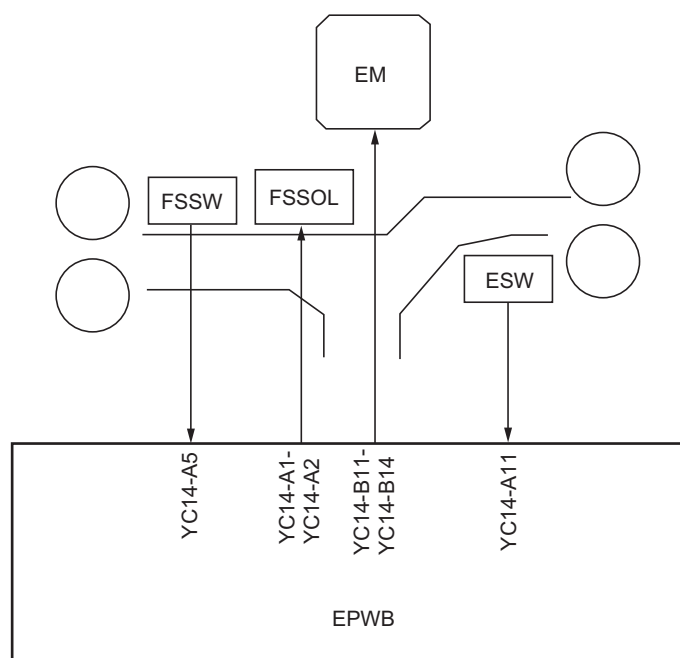


Figure 2-1-24 Eject and switchback sections block diagram

2-1-9 Duplex section

The duplex section consists of the components shown in figure. In duplex mode, after copying on to the reverse face of the paper, the paper is reversed in the switchback section and conveyed to the duplex section. The paper is then conveyed to the paper feed section by the upper and lower duplex feed rollers.

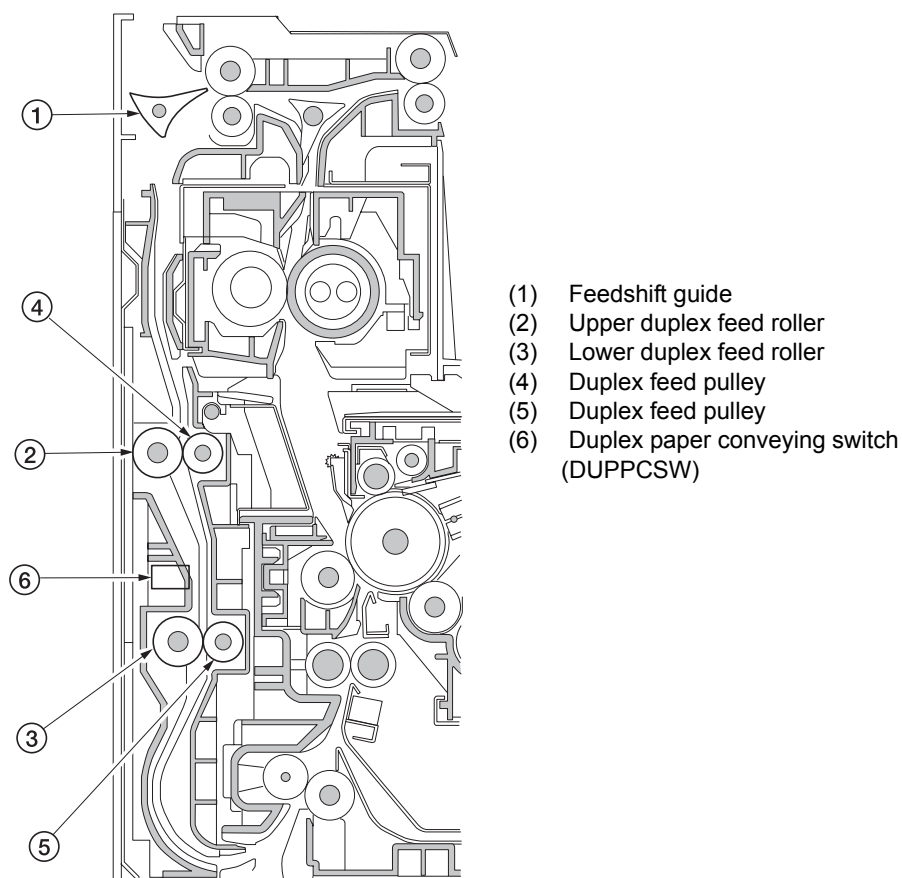


Figure 2-1-25 Duplex section

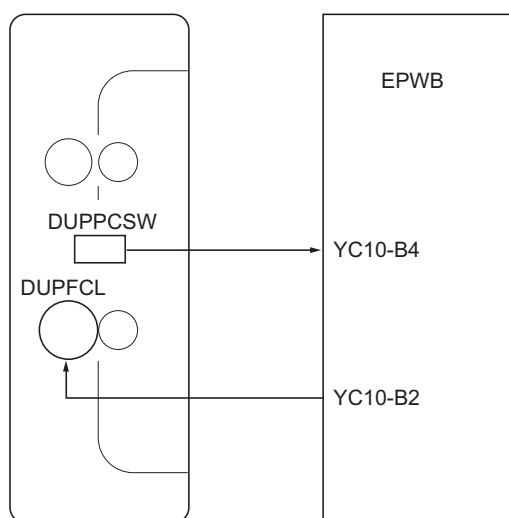


Figure 2-1-26 Duplex section block diagram

(1) Paper conveying operation in duplex copying

Paper of which copying onto the reverse side is complete is conveyed to the switchback section, the eject motor switches from normal rotation to reverse rotation to switch the eject roller to reverse rotation, and the paper conveying direction is reversed. Paper that has been switched back is conveyed to the duplex section via the eject roller and the switchback roller.

Paper that has been conveyed to the duplex section is conveyed to the paper feed section again by rotation of the upper duplex feed roller and the lower duplex feed roller and copying onto the front side is performed.

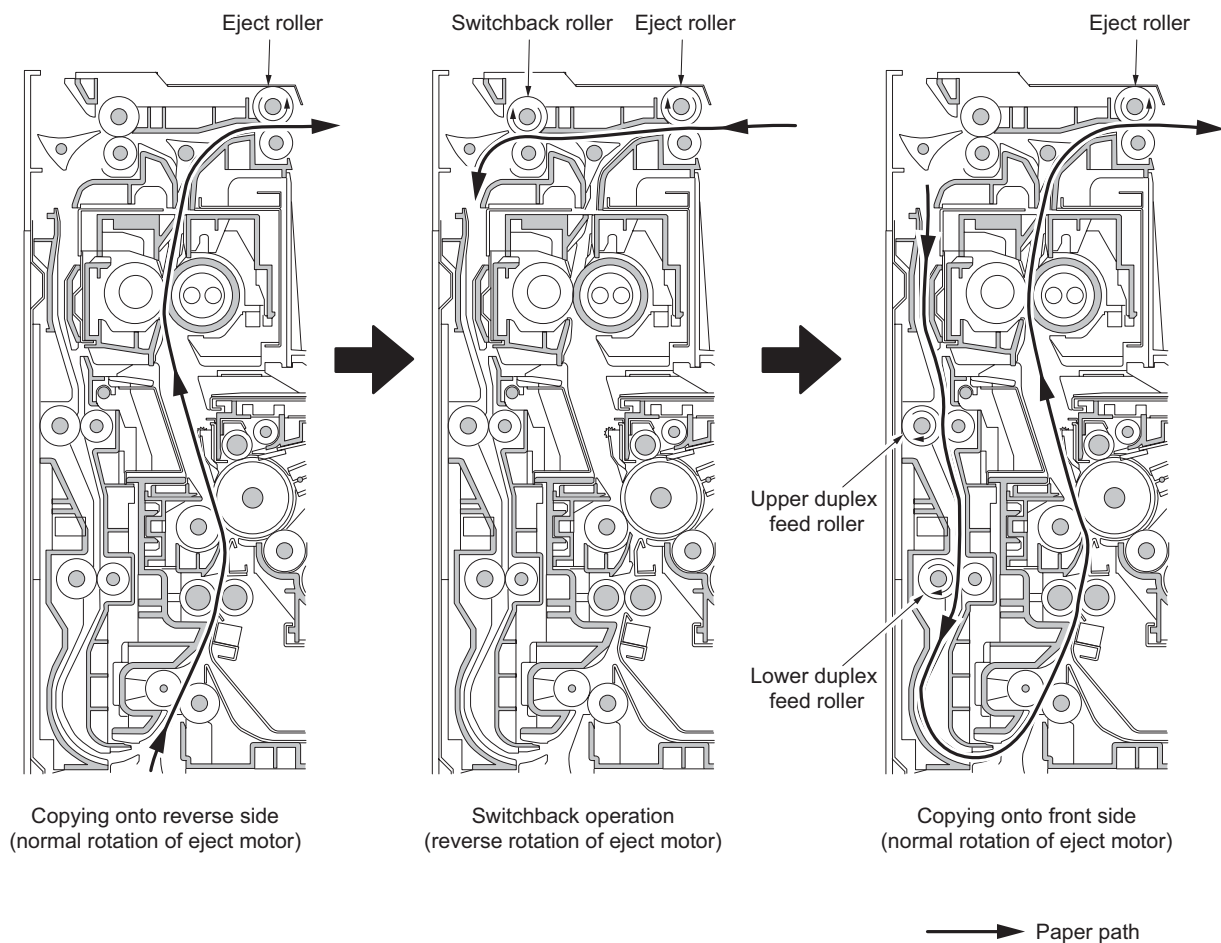


Figure 2-1-27

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

(1) PWBs

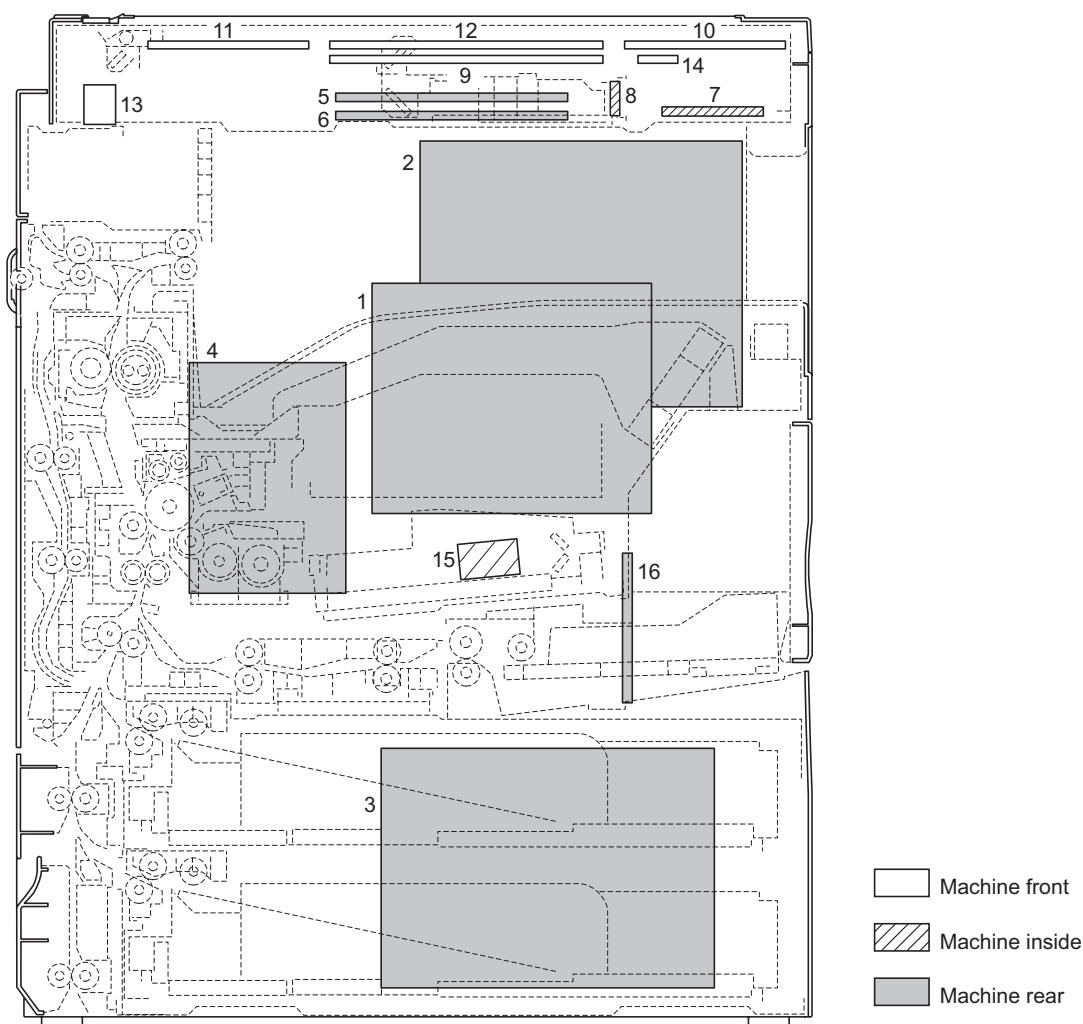
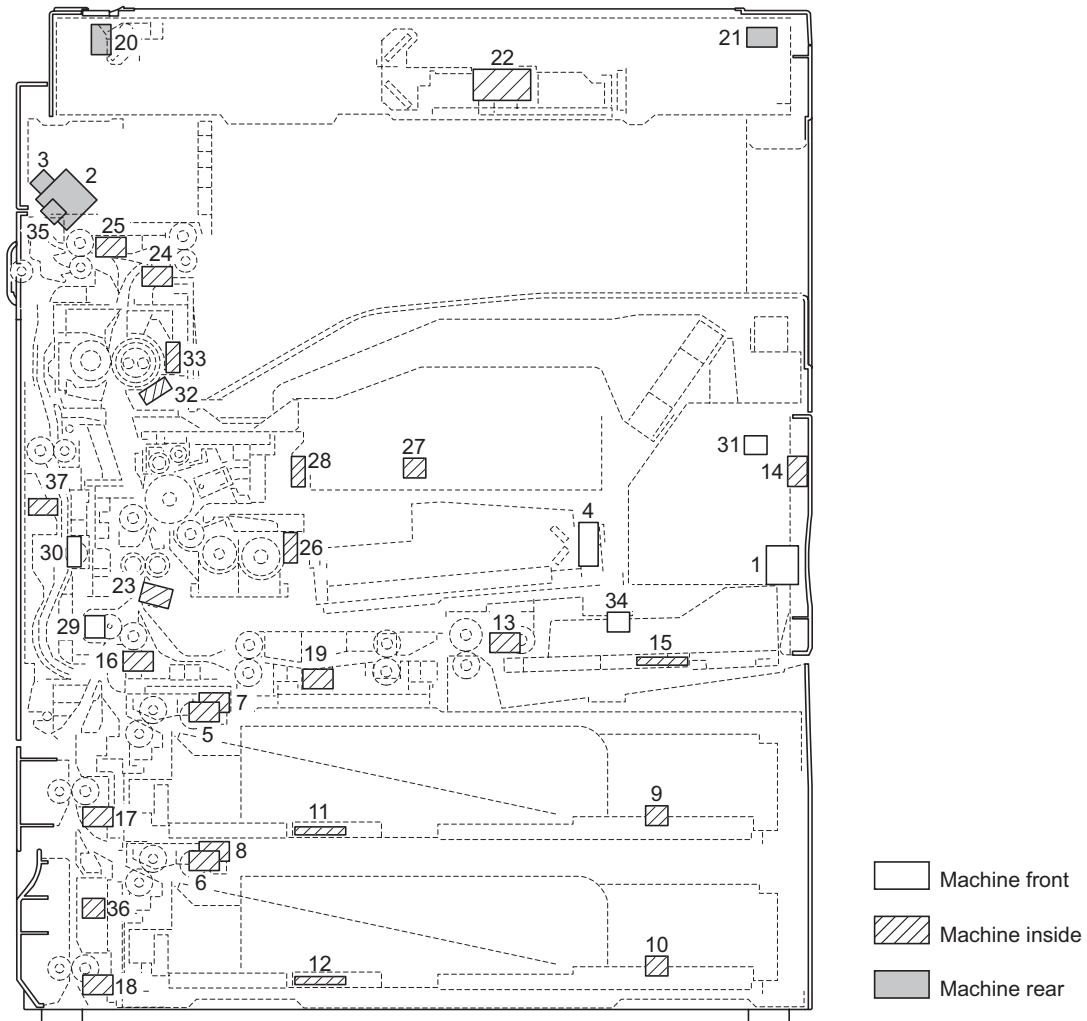


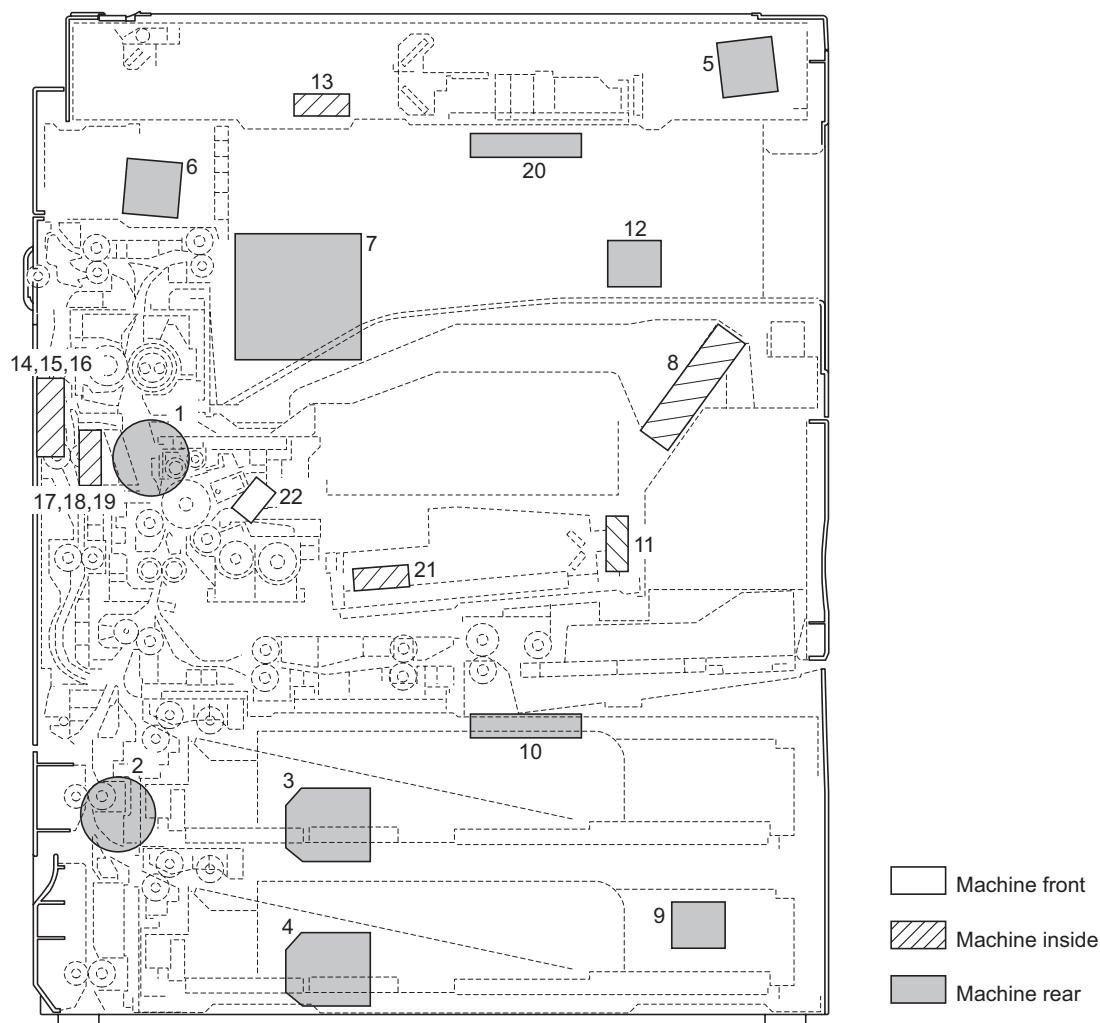
Figure 2-2-1 PWBs

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Engine PWB (EPWB)..... | Controls the other PWBs, electrical components and optional devices. |
| 2. Main PWB (MPWB) | Controls the image processing and operation panel. |
| 3. Power source PWB (PSPWB) | Generates +24 V DC, 5 V DC and 3.3 V DC; controls the fuser heaters. |
| 4. High voltage PWB (HVTPWB) | Main charging. Generates developing bias and high voltages for transfer. |
| 5. Scanner PWB (SPWB) | Controls the scanning section. |
| 6. Inverter PWB (INPWB) | Controls the exposure lamp. |
| 7. SHD PWB (SHDPWB) | Controls the shading correction and AGC of CCD. |
| 8. CCD PWB (CCDPWB)..... | Reads the image of originals. |
| 9. Main operation unit PWB (OPWB-M)..... | Controls touch panel and LCD indication. |
| 10. Right operation unit PWB (OPWB-R) | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs. |
| 11. Left operation unit PWB (OPWB-L) | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs. |
| 12. Upper operation unit PWB (OPWB-U) | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs. |
| 13. Front operation unit PWB (OPWB-F) | Consists of the display LEDs. |
| 14. LCD inverter PWB (LINPWB) | Controls LCD indication. |
| 15. Laser diode PWB (LDPWB)..... | Generates and controls the laser light. |
| 16. Interface PWB (INPWB)..... | Consists of wiring relay circuits. |

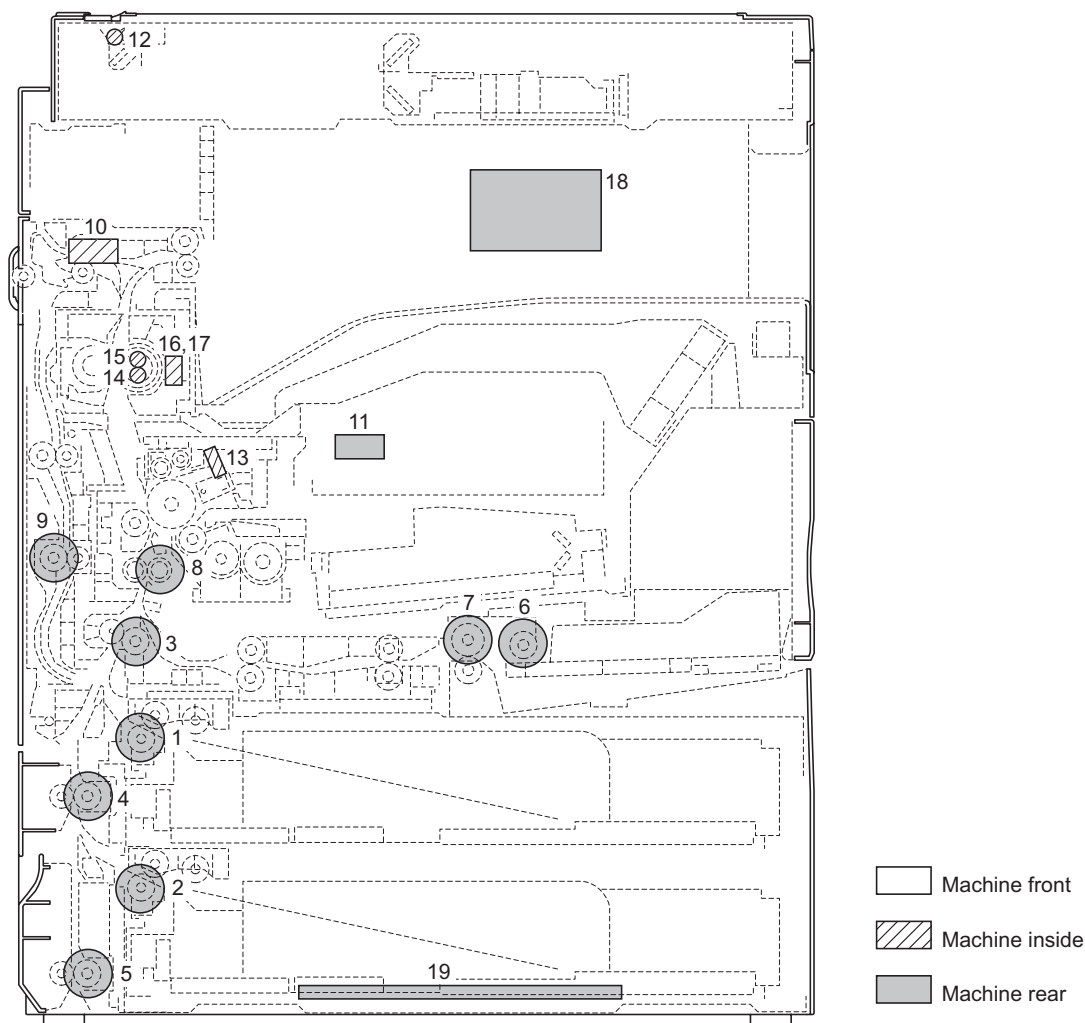
(2) Switches and sensors**Figure 2-2-2 Switches and sensors**

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Main power switch (MSW) | Turns the AC power on and off. |
| 2. Interlock switch (ILSW) | Turns the AC power for the fuser heaters on and off. |
| 3. Safety switch 1 (SSW1) | Breaks the safety circuit when the left cover 1 is opened. |
| 4. Safety switch 2 (SSW2) | Breaks the safety circuit when the front cover is opened. |
| 5. Upper paper switch (PSW-U) | Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 1. |
| 6. Lower paper switch (PSW-L) | Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 2. |
| 7. Upper lift limit switch (LICSW-U) | Detects the cassette 1 lift reaching the upper limit. |
| 8. Lower lift limit switch (LICSW-L) | Detects the cassette 2 lift reaching the upper limit. |
| 9. Upper paper size length switch (PLSW-U) | Detects the length of paper in the cassette 1. |
| 10. Lower paper size length switch (PLSW-L) | Detects the length of paper in the cassette 2. |
| 11. Upper paper size width switch (PWSW-U) | Detects the width of paper in the cassette 1. |
| 12. Lower paper size width switch (PWSW-L) | Detects the width of paper in the cassette 2. |
| 13. MP paper switch (MPPSW) | Detects the presence of paper on the MP tray. |
| 14. MP paper size length switch (MPPLSW) | Detects the length of paper on the MP tray. |
| 15. MP paper size width switch (MPPWSW) | Detects the width of paper on the MP tray. |

16. Feed switch 1 (FSW1) Controls feed clutch 1 drive timing.
17. Feed switch 2 (FSW2) Controls feed clutch 2 drive timing
18. Feed switch 3 (FSW3) Controls feed clutch 3 drive timing
19. MP feed switch (MPFSW) Controls MP feed clutch drive timing
20. Scanner home position switch (SHPSW) Detects the optical system in the home position.
21. Original detection switch (ODSW) Operates the original size detection sensor.
22. Original size detection sensor (OSDS) Detects the size of the original.
23. Registration switch (RSW) Controls the secondary paper feed start timing.
24. Eject switch (ESW) Detects a paper misfeed in the fuser section.
25. Feedshift switch (FSSW) Detects a paper misfeed in the switchback section in a duplex copy.
26. Toner sensor (TNS) Detects the toner density in the developing unit.
27. Toner container detection switch
(TCDSW) Detects the presence of the toner container.
28. Toner container sensor (TCS) Detects the quantity of toner in a toner container.
29. Waste toner box detection switch
(WTDSW) Detects the presence of the waste toner box.
30. Overflow sensor (OFS) Detects when the waste toner box is full.
31. Humidity sensor (HUMS) Detects absolute humidity.
32. Fuser unit thermistor 1 (FTH1) Detects the heat roller temperature.
33. Fuser unit thermistor 2 (FTH2) Detects the heat roller temperature.
34. Front cover switch (FRCSW) Detects the opening and closing of the front cover.
35. Left cover 1 switch (LC1SW) Detects the opening and closing of the left cover 1.
36. Left cover 2 switch (LC2SW) Detects the opening and closing of the left cover 2.
37. Duplex paper conveying switch
(DUPPCSW) Detects a paper jam in the duplex section.

(3) Motors**Figure 2-2-3 Motors**

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Drive motor (DM) | Drives the machine. |
| 2. Paper feed motor (PFM) | Drives paper feed section. |
| 3. Upper lift motor (LM-U) | Drives cassette 1 lift. |
| 4. Lower lift motor (LM-L) | Drives cassette 2 lift. |
| 5. Scanner motor (SM) | Drives the optical system. |
| 6. Eject motor (EM) | Drives the eject section. |
| 7. Cooling fan motor 1 (CFM1) | Cools the machine interior. |
| 8. Cooling fan motor 2 (CFM2) | Cools the machine interior. |
| 9. Cooling fan motor 3 (CFM3) | Cools the machine interior (around the power source PWB). |
| 10. Cooling fan motor 4 (CFM4) | Cools the machine interior (around the power source PWB). |
| 11. Cooling fan motor 5 (CFM5) | Cools the machine interior (around the LSU). |
| 12. Cooling fan motor 6 (CFM6) | Cools the machine interior (controller box). |
| 13. Cooling fan motor 7 (CFM7) | Cools the machine interior (operation panel). |
| 14. Cooling fan motor 8 (CFM8) | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex copying. |
| 15. Cooling fan motor 9 (CFM9) | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex copying. |
| 16. Cooling fan motor 10 (CFM10) | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex copying. |
| 17. Cooling fan motor 11 (CFM11) | Cools the machine interior (around the paper conveying). |
| 18. Cooling fan motor 12 (CFM12) | Cools the machine interior (around the paper conveying). |
| 19. Cooling fan motor 13 (CFM13) | Cools the machine interior (around the paper conveying). |
| 20. Cooling fan motor 14 (CFM14) | Cools the machine interior. |
| 21. Polygon motor (PM) | Drives the polygon mirror. |
| 22. Main charger cleaning motor (MCCM) | Drives the main charger auto cleaning. |

(4) Other electrical components**Figure 2-2-4 Other electrical components**

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Upper paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL-U) | Primary paper feed from the cassette 1. |
| 2. Lower paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL-L) | Primary paper feed from the cassette 2. |
| 3. Feed clutch 1 (FCL1) | Controls the drive of feed roller. |
| 4. Feed clutch 2 (FCL2) | Controls the drive of feed roller. |
| 5. Feed clutch 3 (FCL3) | Controls the drive of feed roller. |
| 6. MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) | Primary paper feed from the MP tray. |
| 7. MP feed clutch (MPFCL) | Controls the drive of MP feed roller. |
| 8. Registration clutch (RCL) | Secondary paper feed. |
| 9. Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL) | Controls the drive of the duplex feed roller. |
| 10. Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) | Operates the feedshift guide. |
| 11. Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL) | Replenishes toner. |
| 12. Exposure lamp (EL) | Exposes originals. |
| 13. Cleaning lamp (CL) | Removes residual charge from the drum surface. |
| 14. Fuser heater M (FH-M) | Heats the heat roller. |
| 15. Fuser heater S (FH-S) | Heats the heat roller. |
| 16. Fuser unit thermostat 1 (FTS1) | Prevents overheating in the fuser section. |
| 17. Fuser unit thermostat 2 (FTS2) | Prevents overheating in the fuser section. |
| 18. Hard disk unit (HDD) | Stores the image data and information of job accounting mode. |
| 19. Cassette heater (CH) | Dehumidifies the cassette section. |

This page is intentionally left blank.

2-3-1 Power source PWB

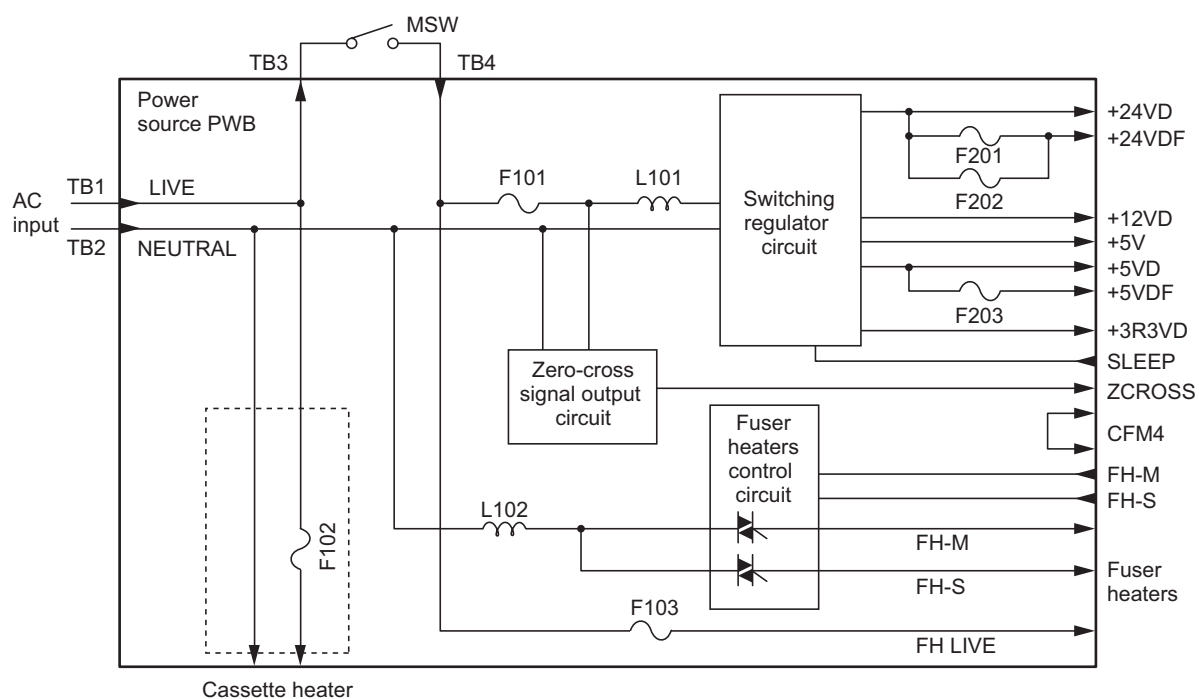


Figure 2-3-1 Power source PWB diagram

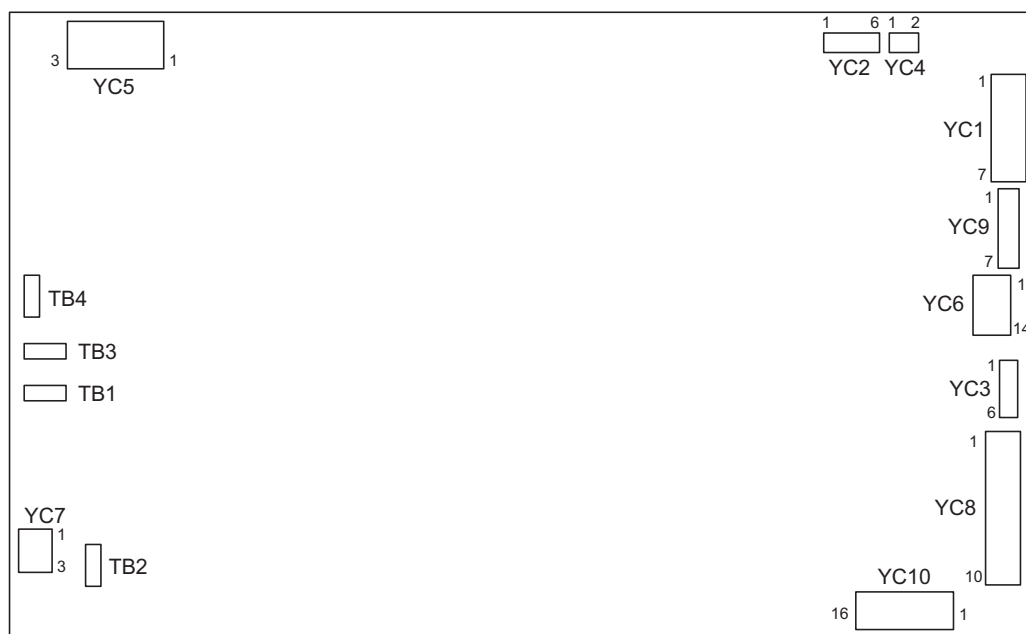


Figure 2-3-2 Power source PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
TB Connected to the main power switch	TB1	LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
	TB2	COM	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
	TB3	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output
	TB4	LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
YC1 Connected to the engine PWB	1	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+3.3VD	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	6	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	+24VD	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
YC2 Connected to the engine PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	FH-S ON	I	0/5 V DC	FH-S: On/Off
	3	FH-M ON	I	5 V DC	FH-M: On/Off
	4	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	5	ZCROSS	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	6	CFM3,4	I	0/24 V DC	CFM3,4 On/Off
YC3 Connected to the optional document finisher	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC4 Connected to the cooling fan motor 3/4	1	CFM3,4	O	DC0V/24V	CFM3,4: On/Off
	2	+24VD	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
YC5 Connected to the fuser heater M/S	1	FH-M ON	O	120/0 V AC 220-240/0 V AC	FH-M: On/Off
	2	FH-S ON	O	120/0 V AC 220-240/0 V AC	FH-S: On/Off
	3	FH LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6 Connected to the scanner PWB	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	PGND	-	-	Ground
	6	PGND	-	-	Ground
	7	SGND	-	-	Ground
	8	SGND	-	-	Ground
	9	SGND	-	-	Ground
	10	SGND	-	-	Ground
	11	12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output
	12	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	13	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	14	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
YC7 Connected to the optional cassette heater	1	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output
	3	NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output
YC8 Connected to the optional paper feeder, optional document finisher and hard disk	1	V24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	V24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	5.1V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	FGND	-	-	Ground
	6	PGND	-	-	Ground
	7	+12VD	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC9 Connected to the main operation PWB	1	+24VD	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	3	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	N.C	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10 Connected to the main PWB	1	SLEEP	I	0/5 V DC	SLEEP signal
	2	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	5	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	6	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	8	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	GND	-	-	Ground

2-3-2 Engine PWB

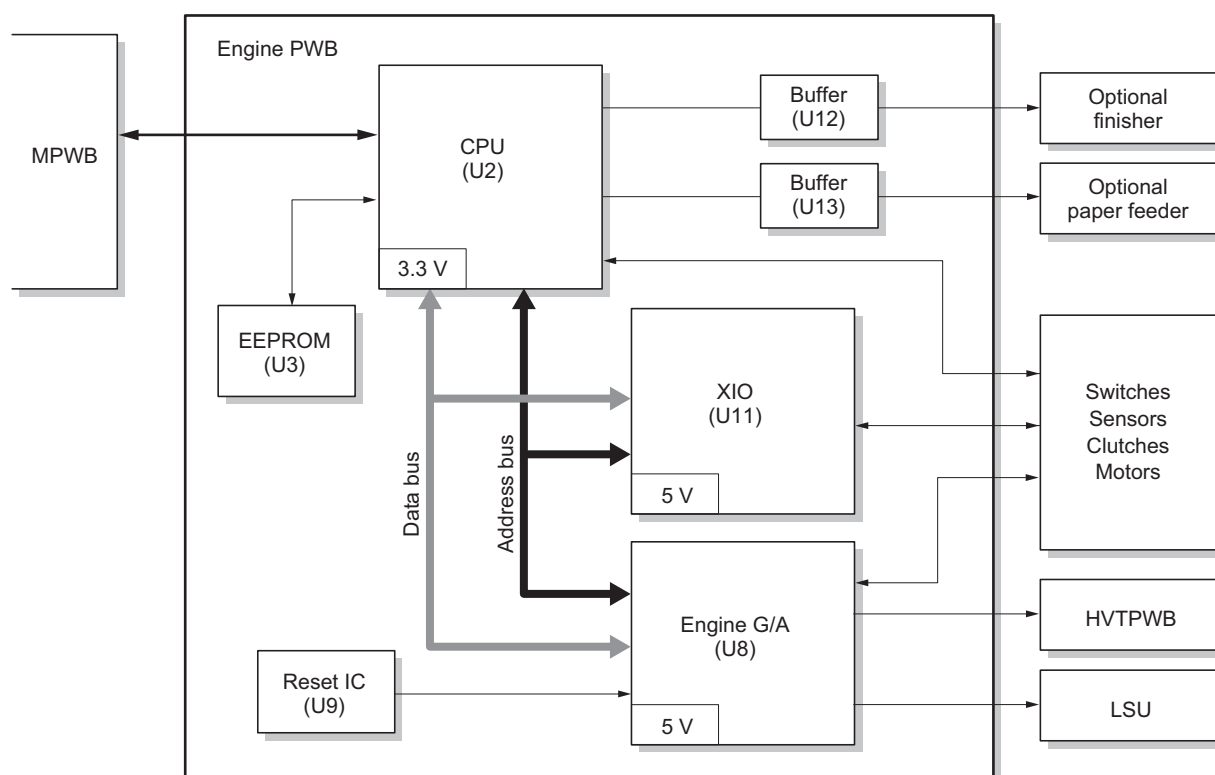


Figure 2-3-3 Engine PWB diagram

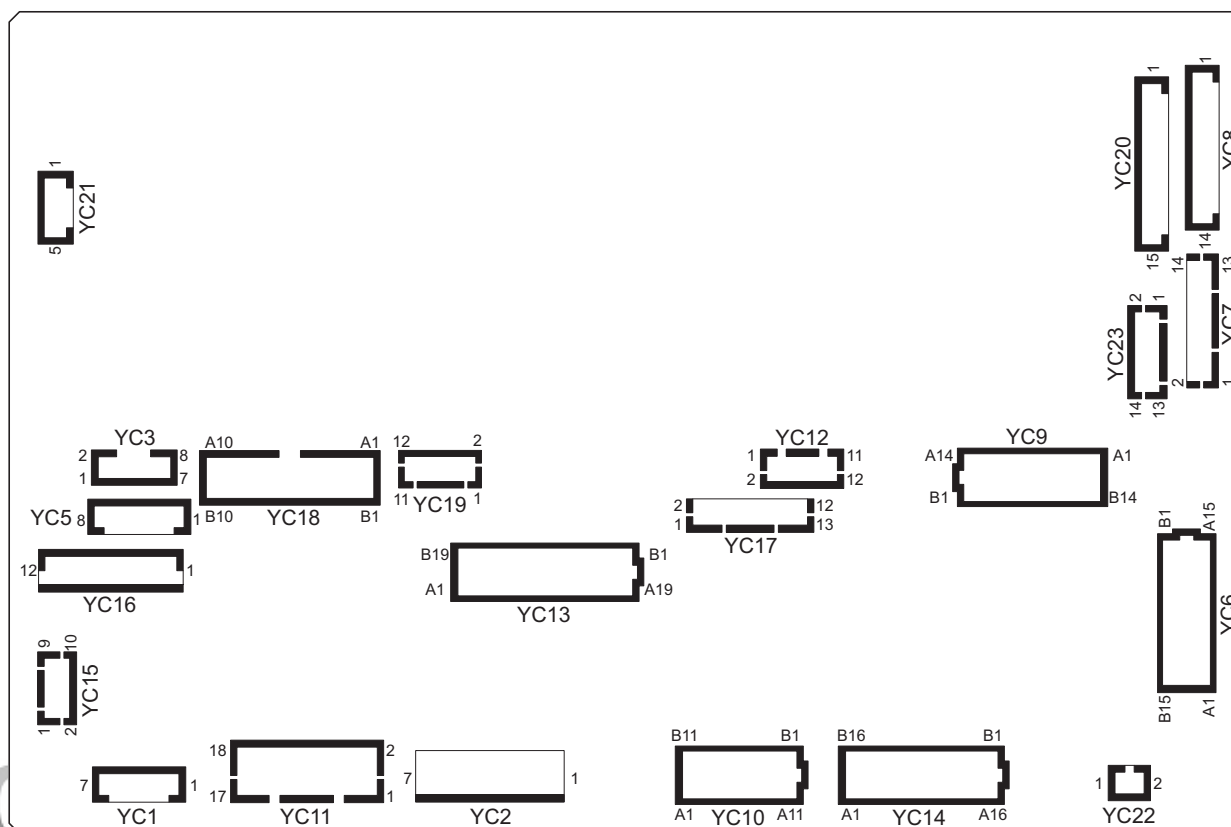


Figure 2-3-4 Engine PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1 Connected to the power source PWB	1	CFM3,4	O	0/24 V DC	CFM3,4: On/Off
	2	ZCROSS	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	3	+5VD	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	4	FH-M ON	O	0/5 V DC	FH-M: On/Off
	5	FH-S ON	O	0/5 V DC	FH-S: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC2 Connected to the power source PWB	1	+24VDR	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	3.3V	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power input
	6	+5VD	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	7	+24VDR	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
YC3 Connected to the optional document finisher	1	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	Document finisher connection signal
	2	DFSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher serial communication data signal
	3	DFSDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher serial communication data signal
	4	DFSCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher CLOCK signal
	5	DFSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Document finisher SELECT signal
	6	SISEL	-	-	Not used
	7	DFRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Document finisher READY signal
	8	SIRDY	-	-	Not used
YC5 Connected to the optional paper feeder	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	3	PFSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder SELECT signal
	4	PFSCCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder CLOCK signal
	5	PFSDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	6	PFSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	7	PFRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder READY signal
	8	PFFFEED	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder FEED signal
YC6 Connected to the MP unit, waste toner box detection switch, overflow sensor, front cover switch and cooling fan motor 1/2	A1	MPPWSW0	I	0/5 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	A2	MPPWSW1	I	0/5 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	A3	MPPWSW2	I	0/5 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A6	MPPSW	I	0/5 V DC	MPPSW: On/Off
	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
	A8	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A9	MPPFCL	O	0/24 V DC	MPPFCL: On/Off
	A10	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A11	MPFCL	O	0/24 V DC	MPFCL: On/Off
	B1	NC	-	-	Not used
	B2	GND	-	-	Ground
	B3	CFM2	O	0/24 V DC	CFM2: On/Off
	B4	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6 Connected to the MP unit, waste toner box detection switch, over-flow sensor, front cover switch and cooling fan motor 1/2	B5	WTDSW	I	0/5 V DC	WTDSW: On/Off
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	OFS	I	0/5 V DC	OFS: On/Off
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	FRCSW	I	0/5 V DC	FRCSW: On/Off
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	CFM1	O	0/24 V DC	CFM1: On/Off
	B12	GND	-	-	Ground
	B13	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B14	MPPLSW	I	0/5 V DC	MPPLSW: On/Off
	B15	GND	-	-	Ground
YC7 Connected to the high-voltage PWB	1	BVSEL1	O	0 to 5 V DC	Developing bias control voltage
	2	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	MHVDR	O	0/5 V DC	Main charging: On/Off
	5	HVCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Developing bias CLOCK signal
	6	RHVDR	O	0/5 V DC	Separation charging: On/Off
	7	RISEL	O	0 to 5 V DC	Separation charging control voltage
	8	TICTL	O	0 to 5 V DC	Transfer charging control voltage
	9	BVSEL2	O	0 to 5 V DC	Developing bias control voltage
	10	THVDR	O	0/5 V DC	Transfer charging: On/Off
	11	NC	-	-	Not used
	12	NC	-	-	Not used
	13	NC	-	-	Not used
	14	NC	-	-	Not used
YC8 Connected to the laser scanner unit	1	NC	-	-	Not used
	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	NC	-	-	Not used
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
	5	NC	-	-	Not used
	6	NC	-	-	Not used
	7	NC	-	-	Not used
	8	NC	-	-	Not used
	9	NC	-	-	Not used
	10	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	SCAN	O	0/24 V DC	PM: On/Off
	13	SCRDYN	I	0/5 V DC	PM READY signal
	14	SCCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	PM CLOCK signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC9 Connected to the MP feed switch, toner container sensor, developing unit, toner feed solenoid, toner container detection switch and drum unit	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	MPFSW	I	0/5 V DC	MPFSW: On/Off
	A3	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A4	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A5	TCS	I	0/5 V DC	TCS: On/Off
	A6	GND	-	-	Ground
	A7	DEVP0	I	0/5 V DC	Developing unit distinction signal
	A8	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A9	TNS	I	0/5 V DC	TNS: On/Off
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	DVUNITN	I	0/5 V DC	Developing unit detection signal
	A12	FUSE_CUT	O	0/5 V DC	Developing unit FUSE CUT signal
	A13	EEDATA	I/O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Developing unit EEPROM DATA signal
	A14	EESCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Developing unit EEPROM CLOCK signal
	B1	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B2	TNFSOL	O	0/24 V DC	TNFSOL: On/Off
	B3	TCDSW	I	0/5 V DC	TCDSW: On/Off
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	DRUMP0	I	0/5 V DC	Drum unit distinction signal
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	CL	O	0/5 V DC	CL: On/Off
	B8	EEDATA	I/O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Drum unit EEPROM DATA signal
	B9	EESCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Drum unit EEPROM CLOCK signal
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	DRUNITN	I	0/5 V DC	Drum unit detection signal
	B12	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B13	MCCM_FWD	O	0/24 V DC	MCCM: On/Off
	B14	MCCM_REV	O	0/24 V DC	MCCM: On/Off
YC10 Connected to the registration switch, fuser unit, duplex feed clutch, duplex paper conveying switch and cooling fan motor 8 to 13	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	RSW	O	0/5 V DC	RSW: On/Off
	A3	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A4	FUSER P0	I	0/5 V DC	Fuser unit distinction signal
	A5	3VD	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	A6	FTH1	I	Analog	FTH1 detection voltage signal
	A7	FUSE CUT	O	0/5 V DC	FTH1 FUSE CUT signal
	A8	GND	-	-	Ground
	A9	GND	-	-	Ground
	A10	FTH2 STD	I	Analog	FTH2 detection voltage signal
	A11	FTH2	I	Analog	FTH2 detection voltage signal
	B1	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B2	DUPFCL	O	0/24 V DC	DUPFCL: On/Off
	B3	GND	-	-	Ground
	B4	DUPPCSW	I	0/5 V DC	DUPPCSW: On/Off
	B5	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10 Connected to the registration switch, fuser unit, duplex feed clutch, duplex paper conveying switch and cooling fan motor 8 to 13	B7	CFM11,12,13	O	0/24 V DC	CFM11,12,13: On/Off
	B8	DUP P0	I	0/5 V DC	Duplex unit distinction signal
	B9	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B10	CFM8,9,10	O	0/24 V DC	CFM8,9,10: On/Off
	B11	NC	-	-	Not used
YC11 Connected to the drive motor, paper feed motor, feed clutch 1 and feed switch 1	1	R24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	R24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	6	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	DM_ON	O	0/24 V DC	DM: On/Off
	10	PFM_ON	O	0/24 V DC	PFM: On/Off
	11	DM_LOCK	I	0/5 V DC	DM LOCK signal
	12	PFM_LOCK	I	0/5 V DC	PFM LOCK signal
	13	DM_CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	DM CLOCK signal
	14	FCL1	O	0/24 V DC	FCL1: On/Off
	15	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	FSW1	I	0/5 V DC	FSW1: On/Off
	18	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC12 Connected to the upper and lower paper size width switches	1	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	+24VUP	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	3	PWSW-U0	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-U: On/Off
	4	PWSW-U1	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-U: On/Off
	5	PWSW-U2	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-U: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	8	+24VLO	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	9	PWSW-L0	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-L: On/Off
	10	PWSW-L1	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-L: On/Off
	11	PWSW-L2	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-L: On/Off
	12	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
Connected to the feed switch 2/3, feed clutch 2/3, left cover 2 switch, upper/lower lift motors, lower lift motor, upper/lower paper size length switches, upper/lower lift limit switches and upper/lower paper switches	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	FSW3	I	0/5 V DC	FSW3: On/Off
	A3	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A4	R24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A5	FCL3	O	0/24 V DC	FCL3: On/Off
	A6	GND	-	-	Ground
	A7	FSW2	I	0/5 V DC	FSW2: On/Off
	A8	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A9	GND	-	-	Ground
	A10	LC2SW	I	0/5 V DC	LC2SW: On/Off
	A11	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A12	FCL2	O	0/24 V DC	FCL2: On/Off
	A13	LM-U SW2	I	0/5 V DC	LM-U paper gauge signal
	A14	GND	-	-	Ground
	A15	LM-U SW1	I	0/5 V DC	LM-U paper gauge signal
	A16	GND	-	-	Ground
	A17	LM-U REM	O	0/24 V DC	LM-U: On/Off
	A18	GND	-	-	Ground
	A19	PLSW-L	I	0/5 V DC	PLSW-L: On/Off
	B1	GND	-	-	Ground
	B2	PLSW-U	I	0/5 V DC	PLSW-U: On/Off
	B3	LM-L SW2	I	0/5 V DC	LM-L paper gauge signal
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	LM-L SW1	I	0/5 V DC	LM-L paper gauge signal
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	LM-L REM	O	0/24 V DC	LM-L: On/Off
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	LICSW-U	I	0/5 V DC	LICSW-U: On/Off
	B10	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B11	GND	-	-	Ground
	B12	PSW-U	I	0/5 V DC	PSW-U: On/Off
	B13	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B14	GND	-	-	Ground
	B15	LICSW-L	I	0/5 V DC	LICSW-L: On/Off
	B16	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B17	GND	-	-	Ground
	B18	PSW-L	I	0/5 V DC	PSW-L: On/Off
	B19	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC14 Connected to the feed-shift solenoid, feedshift switch, eject switch, cooling fan motor 5, left cover 1 switch, upper/lower paper feed clutches, humidity sensor and eject motor	A1	FSSOL2	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (return)
	A2	FSSOL1	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (activate)
	A3	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	FSSW	I	0/5 V DC	FSSW: On/Off
	A6	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
	A8	NC	-	-	Not used
	A9	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	ESW	I	0/5 V DC	ESW: On/Off
	A12	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A13	CFM5	O	0/24 V DC	CFM5: On/Off
	A14	GND	-	-	Ground
	A15	GND	-	-	Ground
	A16	LC1SW	I	0/5 V DC	LC1SW: On/Off
	B1	PFCL-U	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL-U: On/Off
	B2	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B3	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B4	PFCL-L	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL-L: On/Off
	B5	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B6	RCL	O	0/24 V DC	RCL: On/Off
	B7	+3VD	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	B8	HUMS	I	Analog	HUMS detection voltage signal
	B9	GND	-	-	Ground
	B10	THOUT	I	Analog	Thermistor detection voltage signal
	B11	EM_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B12	EM B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B13	EM_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B14	EM A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B15	NC	-	-	Not used
	B16	NC	-	-	Not used
YC15 Connected to the total counter, optional key card and optional key counter	1	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	T_COUNT	O	0/5 V DC	Total counter signal
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	Connection signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	Key counter connection signal
	7	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	8	K_COUNT	O	0/5 V DC	Key counter signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	Connection signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC16 Connected to the optional built-in finisher	1	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	SELECT	O	0/5 V DC	Built-in finisher SELECT signal
	8	READY	I	0/5 V DC	Built-in finisher READY signal
	9	SDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Built-in finisher serial communication data signal
	10	SDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Built-in finisher serial communication data signal
	11	SCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Built-in finisher CLOCK signal
	12	NC	-	-	Not used
YC17 Connected to the optional job separator	1	JBESW	I	0/5 V DC	JBESW: On/Off
	2	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	Job separator connection signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	EPDSW	I	0/5 V DC	EPDSW: On/Off
	8	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	9	LED REM	O	0/5 V DC	LED: On/Off
	10	+5VD LED	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	11	FSSOL2	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (return)
	12	FSSOL1	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (activate)
	13	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
YC20 Connected to the main PWB	1	SCKN	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CLOCK signal
	2	EGSI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	3	EGSO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	4	SBSY	O	0/5 V DC	SBSY signal
	5	SDIR	O	0/5 V DC	SDIR signal
	6	EGIRN	O	0/5 V DC	EGIRN signal
	7	OUTPEN	O	0/5 V DC	OUTPEN signal
	8	PVSYNC	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	PVSYNC signal
	9	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	10	SGND	-	-	Ground
	11	SGND	-	-	Ground
	12	LDON	O	0/5 V DC	LDON signal
	13	PRST	I	0/5 V DC	PRST signal
	14	PMD	I	0/5 V DC	PMD signal
	15	HLDENG	I	0/5 V DC	HLDENG signal
YC22 Connected to the cooling fan motor 14	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	CFM14	O	0/24 V DC	CFM14: On/Off

2-3-3 Main operation unit PWB

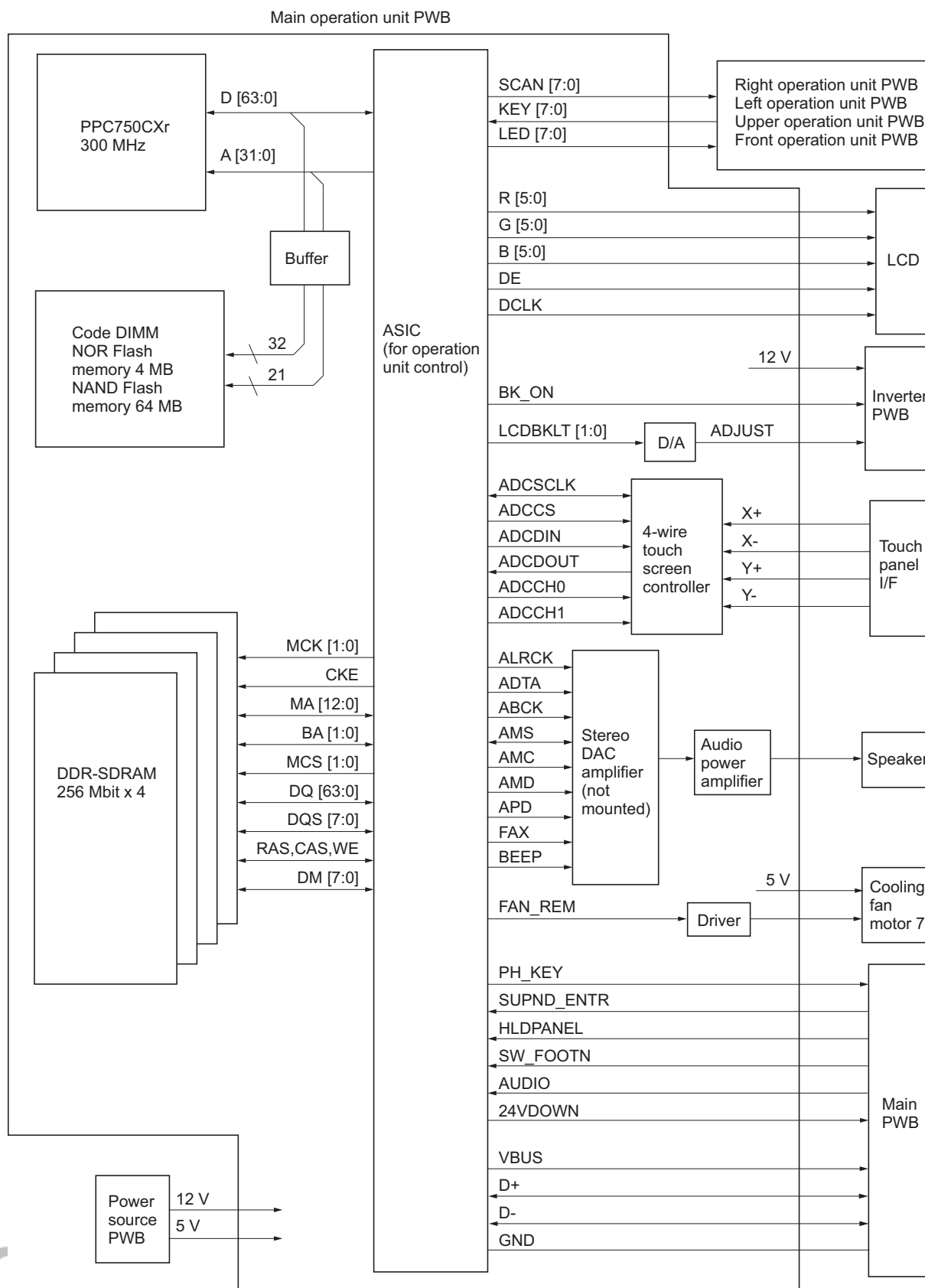


Figure 2-3-5 Main operation unit PWB diagram

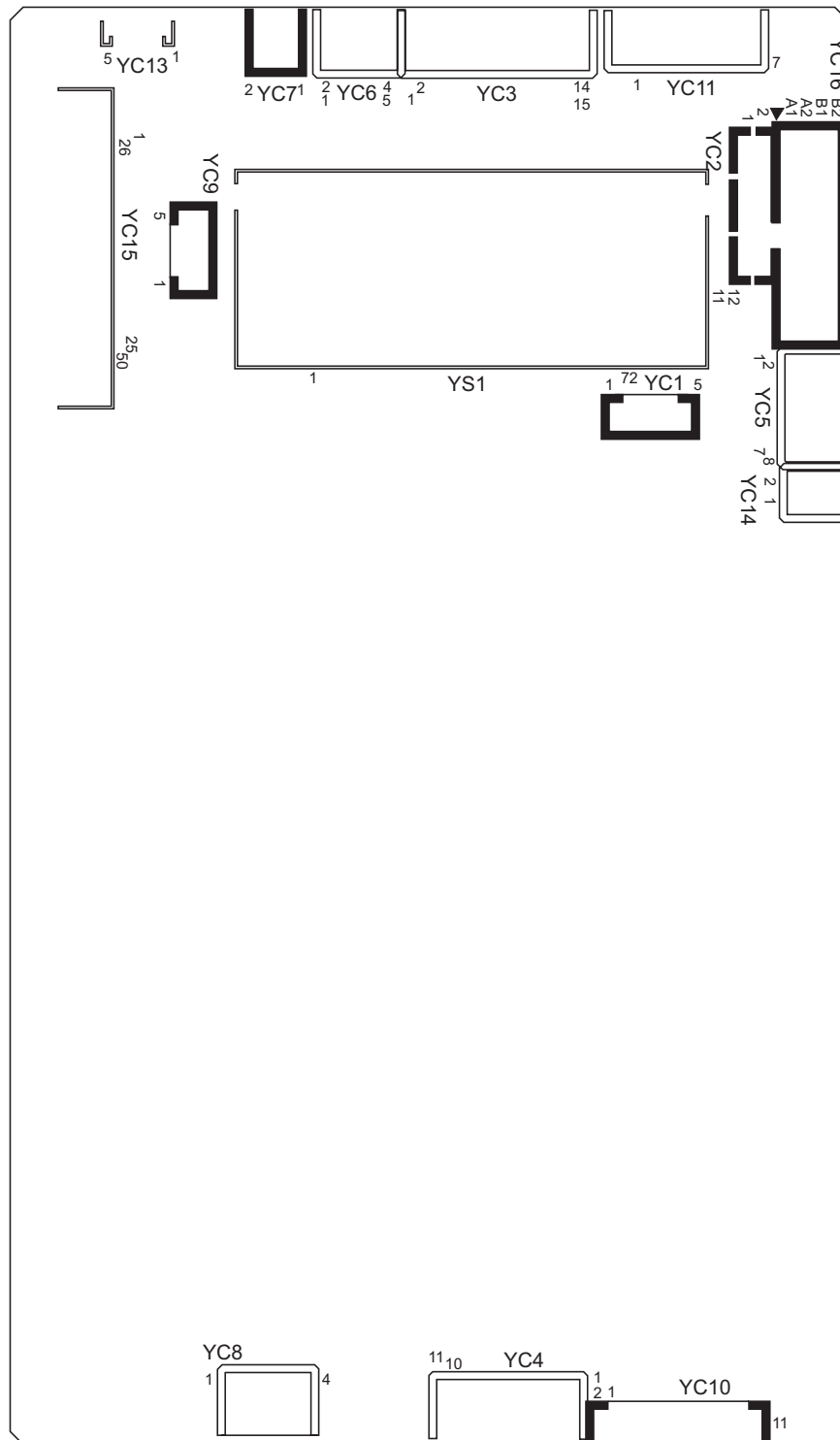


Figure 2-3-6 Main operation unit PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1 Connected to the main PWB	1	Vbus	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power source output
	2	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	5	SHIELD	-	-	
YC2 Connected to the main PWB	1	SPEND_POWER	I	0/3.3 V DC	Energy save mode control signal
	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	PH_KEY	O	0/5 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	5	AUDIO	I	Analog	
	6	SPEND_ENTR	I	0/3.3 V DC	
	7	+24V_DOWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	24 V DC power source shut-off signal
	8	SW_FOOTN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Foot switch: On/Off
	9	HLD_PANEL	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel displaying enable signal
	10	PANEL_RESET	I	0/3.3 V DC	Main operation unit PWB reset signal
	11	S_LED0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 0
	12	S_LED1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 1
YC3 Connected to the right operation unit PWB	1	KEYSENSE0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal
	2	KEYSENSE1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal
	3	KEYSENSE2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal
	4	KEYSENSE3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal
	5	KEYSENSE4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal
	6	SCAN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	7	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	8	SCAN2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	9	SCAN3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	10	LED0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 0
	11	LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 1
	12	PH_KEY	I	0/5 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	13	SGND	-	-	Ground
	14	5V		5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	15	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC4 Connected to the left operation unit PWB	1	KEYSENSE5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal
	2	KEYSENSE6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal
	3	KEYSENSE7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal
	4	SCAN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	5	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	6	SCAN2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	7	SCAN3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	8	LED2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 2
	9	LED3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 3
	10	LED4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 4
	11	SGND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5 Connected to the upper operation unit PWB	1	SCAN0	-	-	Ground
	2	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	3	LED5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 5
	4	LED6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 6
	5	LED7	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 7
	6	S_LED0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 0
	7	S_LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 1
	8	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC6 Connected to the front operation unit PWB	1	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	2	LED5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 5
	3	LED6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 6
	4	S_LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 1
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC7 Connected to the speaker	1	+	O	Analog	Speaker sound signal (+)
	2	-	O	Analog	Speaker sound signal (-)
YC8 Connected to the touch panel	1	TOP	I	Analog	Touch panel X+ position signal
	2	LEFT	I	Analog	Touch panel Y+ position signal
	3	BOTTOM	I	Analog	Touch panel X- position signal
	4	RIGHT	I	Analog	Touch panel Y- position signal
YC11 Connected to the power source PWB	1	12V	I	12 V DC	12 V DC power source input
	2	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power source input
	3	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power source input
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	7	NC	-	-	Not used
YC13 Connected to the inverter PWB	1	12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power source output
	2	PGND	-	-	Ground
	3	LCDBKLT	O	0/5 V DC	LCD back light: On/Off
	4	ADJUST	O	Analog	LCD back light brightness adjustment signal
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC14 Connected to the cooling fan motor 7	1	5	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power source
	2	FAN_REM	O	0/5 V DC	CFM 7: On/Off

Maintenance parts list

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Upper/lower paper feed pulley	PULLEY,PAPER FEED	2AR07220	-	4	1
Upper/lower separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-	4	2
Upper/lower forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	-	4	5
MP paper feed pulley	UPPER PULLEY,BYPASS	61706770	-	11	55
MP separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-	11	2
MP forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	-	11	7
MP feed roller 1	ROLLER2 BYPASSFEED	302BL06541	2BL06541	12	14
MP feed roller 2	ROLLER4 BYPASSFEED	302BL06561	2BL06561	12	15
MP feed pulley	RIGHT PULLEY,FEED	33906660	-	12	23
Left registration roller	ROLLER REGIST	2FG16021	-	7	72
Right registration roller	RIGHT ROLLER REGIST	302FG06211	2FG06211	5	51
Feed pulley	PULLEY FEED	2BL16080	-	6/7	47/17
Feed roller 1	PULLEY MIDDLE FEED A	302GR06010	2GR06010	5	73
Feed roller 1	PULLEY MIDDLE FEED B	302GR06020	2GR06020	5	74
Feed roller 2	ROLLER B FEED	302BL06081	2BL06081	5	22
Feed roller 3	ROLLER C FEED	302BL06091	2BL06091	5	23
Registration switch	SWITCH REGISTRATION	2FG27110	-	5	46
Left registration cleaner	UNDER CLEANER REGIST	2BL07950	-	7	16
Registration guide	GUIDE REGIST F	2BL16130	-	7	20
Right registration cleaner	PARTS,REGISTRATION CLEAN	2BL93450	-	5	44
Transfer guide	PARTS,GUIDE TRANSFER	302GR94480	2GR94480	5	A03
Laser scanner unit	LK-710	302GR93091	2GR93091	13	1
Platen	PARTS CONTACT GLASS (M) ASSY	302GR93310	2GR93310	10	1
Platen	PARTS CONTACT GLASS (I) ASSY	302GR93320	2GR93320	10	1
Slit glass	PARTS CONTACT GLASS DP ASSY	302GR94380	2GR94380	10	2
Mirror 1	MIRROR A	2FB12140	-	9	25
Mirror 2 and mirror 3	MIRROR B	302GR17280	2GR17280	9	17
Reflector	REFLECTOR SCANNER	302GR17250	2GR17250	9	27
Exposure lamp	LAMP SCANNER	302GR17120	2GR17120	9	32
Original size detection switch	SENSOR ORIGINAL	2C927090	-	9	44
Transfer roller unit	TR-710	302GR93281	2GR93281	7	A02
Developing unit	DV-715	302GR93031	2GR93031	14	1
Drum unit	DK-715 (30 ppm)	302GN93011	2GN93011	16	A01
Drum unit	DK-716 (40/50 ppm)	302GR93041	2GR93041	16	A01
Main charger unit	MC-710	302GR93071	2GR93071	16	15
Drum separation claw	PARTS CLAW SEPARATION ASSY	302GR93190	2GR93190	16	14
Fuser unit	FK-715 U	302GR93051	2GR93051	15	A01
Fuser unit	FK-715 E	302GR93061	2GR93061	15	A01
Fuser unit	FK-715 TW	302GR93510	2GR93510	15	A01
Heat roller	PARTS,ROLLER HEAT SP	302GR94270	2GR94270	15	33
Heat roller separation claw	CLAW HEAT ROLLER	2BL20080	-	15	1
Press roller	PARTS,ROLLER PRESS SP	302GR94280	2GR94280	15	A02
Press roller separation claw	CLAW PRESS ROLLER	302BL20351	2BL20351	6	37
Upper duplex feed roller	ROLLER DU FEED UP	2BL07020	-	7	5
Lower duplex feed roller	ROLLER DU FEED LOW	2BL07030	-	7	6
Duplex feed pulley	PULLEY DU	2BL07040	-	7	7

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Eject roller	ROLLER EXIT	302BL21021	2BL21021	8	26
Switchback roller	ROLLER FEED SHIFT	302BL21031	2BL21031	8	27
Eject pulley	PULLEY EXIT C	2BL21520	-	8	24
Eject pulley	PULLEY EXIT	302GR28060	2GR28060	8	34
Switchback pulley	PULLEY FEED SHIFT	2BL21330	-	6	33
Dust filter 1	PARTS FILTER DUST F1 ASSY	302GR94430	2GR94430	13	13
Dust filter 2	PARTS FILTER DUST F2 ASSY	302GR94440	2GR94440	13	14

Maintenance kits

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Maintenance kit <30ppm>	MK-715 U (120 V specifications)	1702GN7US0	072GN7US	24	-
	MK-715 E (220 - 240 V specifications)	1702GN8NL0	072GN8NL	24	-
	MK-715 TW (110 V specifications)	1702GNTTW0	072GNTTW	24	-
	Upper/lower paper feed pulley	-	-	-	-
	Upper/lower separation pulley	-	-	-	-
	Upper/lower forwarding pulley	-	-	-	-
	Left registration cleaner	-	-	-	-
	Registration guide	-	-	-	-
	Right registration cleaner	-	-	-	-
	Transfer guide	-	-	-	-
	Drum unit	-	-	-	-
	Developing unit	-	-	-	-
	Fuser unit	-	-	-	-
	Transfer roller unit	-	-	-	-
	MP paper feed pulley	-	-	-	-
Maintenance kit <40/50 ppm>	MK-716 U (120 V specifications)	1702GR7US0	072GR7US	24	-
	MK-716 E (220 - 240 V specifications)	1702GR8NL0	072GR8NL	24	-
	MK-716 TW (110 V specifications)	1702GRTTW0	072GRTTW	24	-
	Upper/lower paper feed pulley	-	-	-	-
	Upper/lower separation pulley	-	-	-	-
	Upper/lower forwarding pulley	-	-	-	-
	Left registration cleaner	-	-	-	-
	Registration guide	-	-	-	-
	Right registration cleaner	-	-	-	-
	Transfer guide	-	-	-	-
	Drum unit	-	-	-	-
	Developing unit	-	-	-	-
	Fuser unit	-	-	-	-
	Transfer roller unit	-	-	-	-
	MP paper feed pulley	-	-	-	-

Periodic maintenance procedures

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Test copy and test print	Perform at the maximum copy size	Test copy	Every service		



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper feed section	Upper/lower paper feed pulley	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace.*	P.1-5-3
	Upper/lower separation pulley	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace.*	P.1-5-3
	Upper/lower forwarding pulley	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace.*	P.1-5-3
	MP paper feed pulley	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace.*	P.1-5-5
	MP separation pulley	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace.*	P.1-5-5
	MP forwarding pulley	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace.*	P.1-5-5
	MP feed roller 1	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	MP feed pulley	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	MP feed roller 2	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Left registration roller	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Right registration roller	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Feed pulley	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Feed roller 1	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Feed roller 2	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Feed roller 3	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Registration switch	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with a dry cloth.*	
	Left registration cleaner	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace.	P.1-5-10
	Registration guide	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace.	
	Right registration cleaner	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace.	P.1-5-10
	Transfer guide	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace.	

*Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Optical section	Laser scanner unit	Check or clean	User call	Clean the shield glass with a dry cloth.	P.1-5-22
	Platen	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth.	
	Slit glass	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with a dry cloth or alcohol.	
	Mirror 1	Clean	User call	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Mirror 2 and mirror 3	Clean	User call	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Lens	Clean	User call	Clean with a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Reflector	Clean	User call	Clean with a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Exposure lamp	Check or replace	User call	Replace if an image problem occurs.	P.1-5-12
	Optical rail	Grease	User call	Check noise and shifting and then apply scanner rail grease EM-50L.	
	Original size detection sensor	Check or clean	User call	Clean the sensor emitter and sensor receiver with alcohol or a dry cloth only if there is a problem.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Transfer/separation section	Transfer roller unit	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-29



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Developing section	Developing unit	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-28



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Main charging/drum section	Drum unit	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-25
	Main charger unit	Clean	User call	Clean with a wet cloth and then a dry cloth.	P.1-5-26
	Drum separation claw	Check or replace	User call	Replace if the leading edge of the claws are damaged.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Fuser section	Fuser unit	Replace	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Replace. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-30
	Heat roller	Check or replace	User call	Check and replace when user call occurs.	P.1-5-34
	Heat roller separation claw	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-31
	Press roller	Check or replace	User call	Check and replace when user call occurs.	P.1-5-32
	Press roller separation claw	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Duplex section	Upper duplex feed roller	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Lower duplex feed roller	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Duplex feed pulley	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Eject section	Eject roller	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Eject pulley	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Switchback roller	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Switchback pulley	Clean	400K (30) 500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	

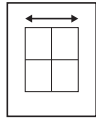
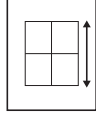
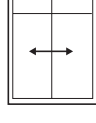



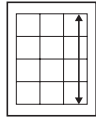
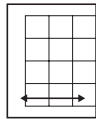
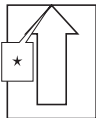
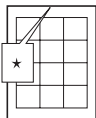
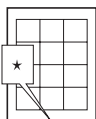
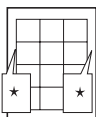
Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Covers	Covers	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	P.1-5-38 P.1-5-38
	Dust filter 1	Clean	Every service	Vacuum.	
	Dust filter 2	Clean	Every service	Vacuum.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Other	Image quality	Check and adjust	Every service		

Chart of image adjustment procedures

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
1	Adjusting the lateral squareness (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit (printing adjustment)			U993 (PG2) Test chart	P.1-5-24	
2	Adjusting the magnification in the main scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Polygon motor speed adjustment	U053	POLYGON MOTOR	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-24	
3	Adjusting the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Drive motor speed adjustment	U053	MAIN MOTOR	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-24	
4	Adjusting the center line (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSU OUT LEFT	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-22	
5	Adjusting the center line of the cassettes and paper feeder (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the position of the rack adjuster	U034	LSU OUT LEFT	U034 test pattern	-	Adjusts the position of each paper source.
6	Adjusting the leading edge registration (printing adjustment)		Registration clutch turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	LSU OUT TOP	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-21	
7	Adjusting the leading edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start timing	U402	LESD	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-68	
8	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination end timing	U402	TRAIL TRAIL(DUP) TRAIL(MP)	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-68	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select TRAIL(DUP). To make an adjustment for MP tray, select TRAIL(MP).
9	Adjusting the left and right margins (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start/end timing	U402	A C	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-68	
10	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Data processing	U065 U070	MAIN SCAN ADJ CIS MAIN ADJ	Test chart	P.1-3-26 P.1-3-29	

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
11	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Original scanning speed	U065	SUB SCAN ADJ	Test chart	P.1-3-26	U065: For copying an original placed on the platen. U070: For copying originals from the DP.
				U070	CONVEY SPEED/ CIS SUB ADJ		P.1-3-29	
12	Adjusting the center line (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U067	ADJUST DATA1/2	Test chart	P.1-3-28	U067: For copying an original placed on the platen. U072: For copying originals from the DP.
				U072	ADJUST DATA1/2/3		P.1-3-33	
13	Adjusting the leading edge registration (scanning adjustment)		Original scan start timing (image adjustment)	U066	ADJUST DATA1/2	Test chart	P.1-3-27	U066: For copying an original placed on the platen. U071: For copying originals from the DP.
				U071	ADJUST DATA1/2/ 3/4/5		P.1-3-31	
14	Adjusting the leading edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403	B MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-69	U403: For copying an original placed on the platen. U404: For copying originals from the DP.
				U404	B MARGIN/ B MARGIN(BACK)		P.1-3-70	
15	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403	D MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-69	U403: For copying an original placed on the platen. U404: For copying originals from the DP.
				U404	D MARGIN/ D MARGIN(BACK)		P.1-3-70	
16	Adjusting the left and right margins (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403	A MARGIN C MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-69	U403: For copying an original placed on the platen. U404: For copying originals from the DP.
				U404	A MARGIN/ A MARGIN(BACK) C MARGIN/ C MARGIN(BACK)		P.1-3-70	

When maintenance item U411 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) is run using the specified original (P/N 302FZ56990), the following adjustments are automatically made:

Adjusting the scanner magnification (U065)
Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration (U066)
Adjusting the scanner center line (U067)

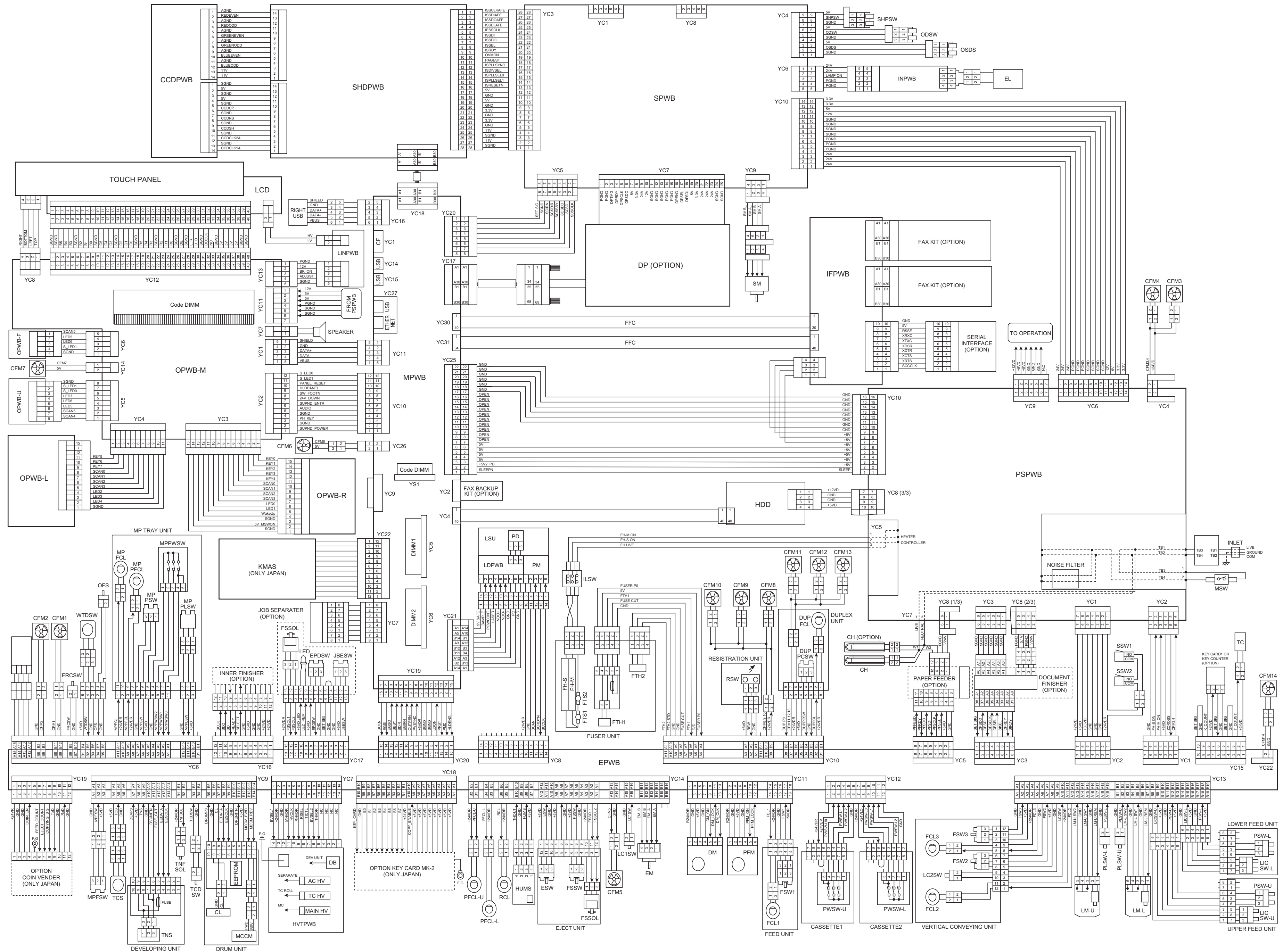
When maintenance item U411 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) is run using the specified original (P/N 2AC68241), the following adjustments are automatically made:

Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)
Adjusting the DP scanning timing (U071)
Adjusting the DP center line (U072)

Image quality

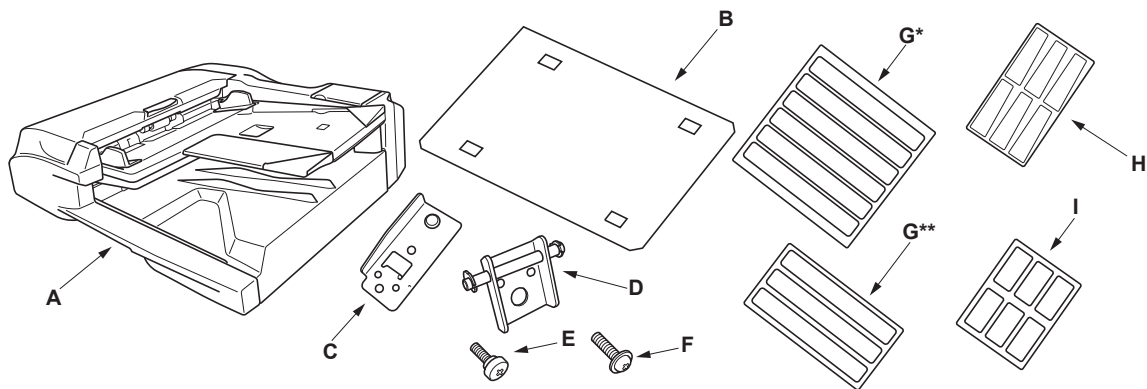
Item	Specifications
100% magnification	Machine: $\pm 0.8\%$ Using DP: $\pm 1.5\%$
Enlargement/reduction	Machine: $\pm 1.0\%$ Using DP: $\pm 1.5\%$
Lateral squareness	Machine: ± 1.5 mm/375 mm Using DP: ± 2.5 mm/375 mm
Leading edge registration	Cassette: ± 2.5 mm MP tray: ± 2.5 mm Duplex copying: ± 2.5 mm
Skewed paper feed	Cassette: 1.5 mm or less MP tray: 1.5 mm or less Duplex copying: 2.0 mm or less
Left-right difference	Cassette: ± 2.0 mm MP tray: ± 2.0 mm Duplex mode: ± 3.0 mm
Curling	Simplex mode: 10.0 mm or less Duplex mode: 10.0 mm or less

General wiring diagram



INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT PROCESSOR

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.
Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.
P/N: 303JX46010, 303JX46020



English

Supplied parts

A DP	1
B Original mat	1
C Fixing fitting	2
D Angle control fitting	1
E Pin	3

F M4 × 14TP screw	4
G Label "Operation procedure" (except for 100 V models)	1
*: for metric specification **: for inch specification	
H Caution label "Remove original!" (except for 100 V models)	1
I Caution label "Original face up!" (except for 100 V models)	1

Français

Pièces fournies

A DP	1
B Plaque d'original	1
C Fixation	2
D Fixation d'angle	1
E Goupille	3

F Vis TP M4 × 14	4
G Étiquette relative à la procédure d'utilisation (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)	1
*: pour des spécifications métriques **: pour des spécifications anglo-saxonnes	
H Étiquette d'avertissement relative au retrait de l'original (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)	1
I Étiquette d'avertissement relative à l'orien- tation vers le haut de la face de l'original (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)	1

Español

Piezas suministradas

A DP	1
B Alfombrilla para originales	1
C Herraje de fijación	2
D Herraje de control de ángulo	1
E Pasador	3

F Tornillo TP M4 × 14	4
G Etiqueta "Procedimiento operativo" (excepto para modelos de 100 V)	1
*: para especificaciones en el sistema métrico **: para especificaciones en el sistema de pulgadas	
H Etiqueta de precaución "Retire original" (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)	1
I Etiqueta de precaución "Original cara arriba" (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)	1

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A DP	1
B Originalmatte	1
C Befestigungshalterung	2
D Winkeleinstellbefestigung	1
E Stift	3

F M4 × 14TP Schraube	4
G Schild "Funktionsanweisung" (außer 100 V-Modelle)	1
*: für metrische Angaben **: für Angaben in Zoll	
H Warnschild "Original entfernen" (außer 100 V-Modelle)	1
I Warnschild "Originalschriftseite nach oben" (außer 100 V-Modelle)	1

Italiano

Parti fornite

A DP	1
B Tappetino originale	1
C Accessorio di fissaggio	2
D Accessorio di regolazione angolare	1
E Perno	3

F Vite M4 × 14TP	4
G Etichetta "Procedura di funzionamento" (eccetto modelli 100 V)	1
*: per specifiche in unità del sistema metrico **: per specifiche in pollici	
H Etichetta di avvertimento "Rimuovere origi- nale!" (eccetto modelli 100 V)	1
I Etichetta di avvertimento "Originale rivolto verso l'alto!" (eccetto modelli 100 V)	1

简体中文

附属部件

A DP	1
B 原稿垫	1
C 固定附件	2
D 角度控制附件	1
E 销	3

F M4 × 14TP 螺钉	4
G 标签“操作步骤”(除 100V 型号)	1
*: 公制规格 **: 英制规格	
H 注意标签“取出原稿!” (除 100V 型号)	1
I 注意标签“原稿正面朝上!” (除 100V 型号)	1

日本語

付属品

A DP 本体	1
B 原稿マット	1
C 固定金具	2
D 角度規制金具	1
E ピン	3

F ビス M4 × 14TP	4
G 操作ラベル (100V 仕様以外)	1
*: センチ仕様 **: インチ仕様	
H 原稿忘れラベル (100V 仕様以外)	1
I 原稿表向きラベル (100V 仕様以外)	1

Installation Procedure

When installing the DP, be sure to turn the MFP power off and disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

Méthode d'installation

Lors de l'installation du DP, veiller à mettre l'interrupteur du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Procedimiento de instalación

Cuando instale el DP, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y desenchúfelo del tomacorriente de la pared.

Installationsverfahren

Schalten Sie vor Installation des DP unbedingt den MFP-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose.

Istruzioni per il montaggio

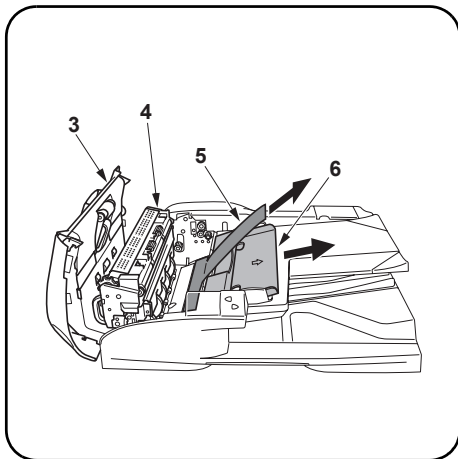
Spegnere l'interruttore principale e sfilare la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di installare il DP.

安装步骤

安装 DP 时，请务必将 MFP 电源关闭，并拔下电源插头再进行安装作业。

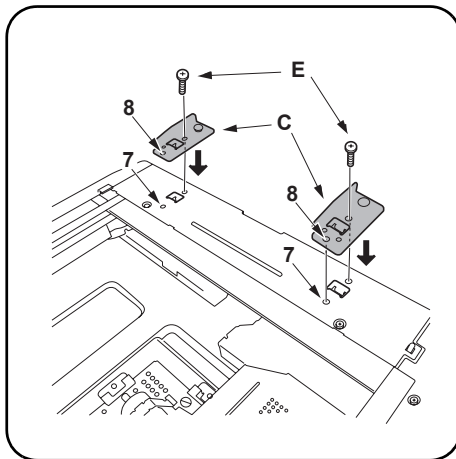
取付手順

DP 本体を設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチをOFFにし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。



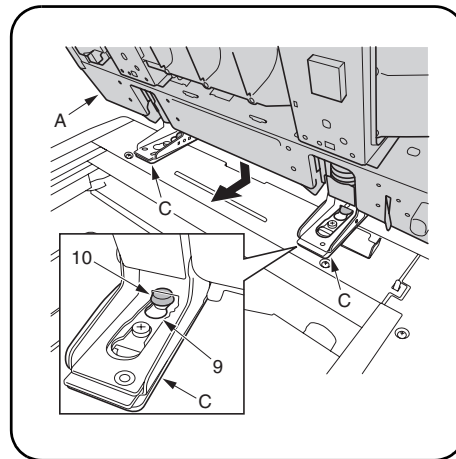
Remove the film and cushioning material.

1. Remove the fixing tape from the original feed unit cover of DP (A).
2. Open original feed unit cover (3) and carrier unit (4).
3. Remove film (5) and cushioning material (6).



Attach the fixing fitting.

4. Align MFP projection (7) with hole (8) of fixing fitting (C) and insert fixing fitting (C) into the MFP.
5. Secure fixing fitting (C) with two pins (E).



Install the DP.

6. Align hinge hole (9) of DP (A) with pin (10) of fixing fitting (C), place DP (A) on the MFP.
7. Slide DP (A) to ward the front side.

Retirer le film et la garniture d'emballage.

1. Retirer la bande adhésive de fixation du couvercle de l'unité d'alimentation d'original du DP (A).
2. Ouvrir le couvercle de l'unité d'alimentation d'original (3) et sortir l'unité de support (4).
3. Retirer le film (5) et la garniture d'emballage (6).

Mettre en place la fixation.

4. Aligner la saillie du MFP (7) sur le trou (8) de la fixation (C) et insérer cette dernière dans le MFP.
5. Attacher la fixation (C) à l'aide des deux goupilles (E).

Installer le DP.

6. Aligner le trou de la charnière (9) du DP (A) sur la goupille (10) de la fixation (C) et placer le DP (A) sur le MFP.
7. Faire glisser le DP (A) vers l'avant.

Retire la película y el material amortiguador.

1. Quite la cinta adhesiva de la cubierta de la unidad de alimentación de originales del DP (A).
2. Abra la cubierta de la unidad de alimentación de originales (3) y la unidad del carro (4).
3. Retire la película (5) y el material amortiguador (6).

Monte el herraje de fijación.

4. Alinee el saliente del MFP (7) con el orificio (8) del herraje de fijación (C) e inserte el herraje de fijación (C) en el MFP.
5. Asegure el herraje de fijación (C) con dos pasadores (E).

Instale el DP.

6. Alinee el orificio de bisagra (9) del DP (A) con el pasador (10) del herraje de fijación (C) y coloque el DP (A) en el MFP.
7. Deslice el DP (A) hacia el lado delantero.

Entfernen des Films und des Polstermaterials.

1. Das Befestigungsband von der Abdeckung der Originalzufuhreinheit des DP (A) abnehmen.
2. Abdeckung der Originalzufuhreinheit (3) und der Trägereinheit (4) öffnen.
3. Film (5) und Polstermaterial (6) abnehmen.

Anbringen der Befestigungshalterung.

4. MFP-Projektion (7) mit Loch (8) der Befestigungshalterung (C) ausrichten und Befestigungshalterung (C) in den MFP einsetzen.
5. Befestigungshalterung (C) mit zwei Stiften (E) befestigen.

Installieren des DP.

6. Scharnierloch (9) des DP (A) mit Stift (10) der Befestigungshalterung (C) ausrichten, und DP (A) auf den MFP stellen.
7. DP (A) nach vorne schieben.

Rimozione della pellicola e del materiale antiurto.

1. Rimuovere il nastro di fissaggio dal coperchio dell'unità di alimentazione originali del DP (A).
2. Aprire il coperchio dell'unità di alimentazione originali (3) e il trasportatore (4).
3. Rimuovere la pellicola (5) e il materiale antiurto (6).

Applicazione dell'accessorio di fissaggio.

4. Allineare la sporgenza dell'MFP (7) con il foro (8) dell'accessorio di fissaggio (C), quindi inserire l'accessorio di fissaggio (C) nell'MFP.
5. Assicurare l'accessorio di fissaggio (C) con due perni (E).

Montaggio del DP.

6. Allineare il foro della cerniera (9) del DP (A) con il perno (10) dell'accessorio di fissaggio (C), quindi posizionare il DP (A) sull'MFP.
7. Fare scorrere il DP (A) verso la parte anteriore.

拆下薄膜和弹性垫料。

1. 从 DP (A) 的原稿送稿组件盖板上拆下固定胶带。
2. 打开原稿送稿组件盖板 (3) 和夹持器组件 (4)。
3. 拆下薄膜 (5) 和弹性垫料 (6)。

安装固定附件。

4. 将 MFP 突出部 (7) 对准固定附件 (C) 的孔 (8) 并将固定附件 (C) 插入 MFP。
5. 用两颗销 (E) 将固定附件 (C) 固定。

安装 DP。

6. 将 DP (A) 的铰链孔 (9) 对准固定附件 (C) 的销 (10)，并将 DP (A) 放在 MFP 上。
7. 将 DP (A) 滑向正面。

フィルム / 緩衝材の取り外し

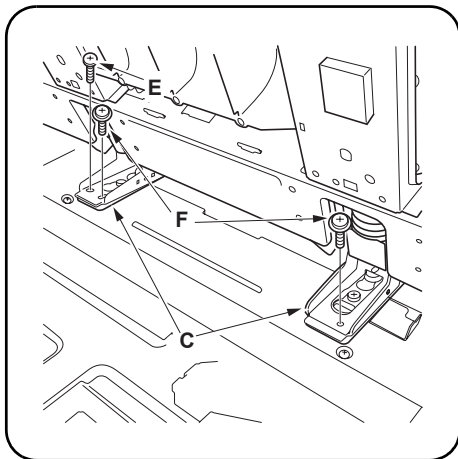
1. DP 本体 (A) の原稿送り装置カバーの固定テープを剥がす。
2. 原稿送り装置カバー (3) と搬送ユニット (4) を開く。
3. フィルム (5) と緩衝材 (6) を取り除く。

固定金具の取り付け

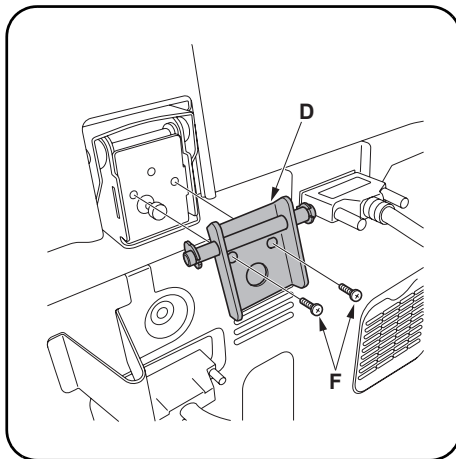
4. MFP 本体の突起 (7) と固定金具 (C) の穴 (8) を合わせ、MFP 本体に固定金具 (C) を差し込む。
5. ピン (E) 2 本で固定金具 (C) を固定する。

DP 本体の取り付け

6. DP 本体 (A) のヒンジ部の穴 (9) と固定金具 (C) のピン (10) を合わせ、MFP 本体に DP 本体 (A) を乗せる。
7. DP 本体 (A) を手前にスライドさせる。



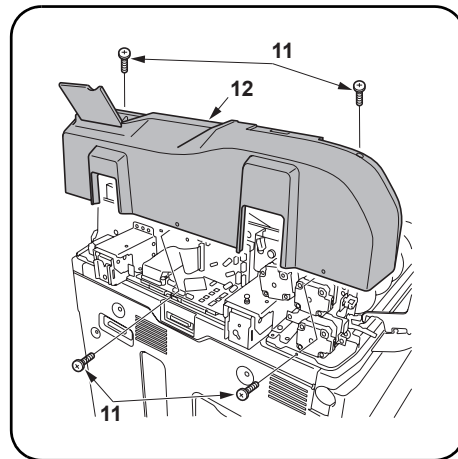
8. Install DP (A) onto the MFP securely with pin (E) and two M4 x 14TP screws (F).



Install the angle control fitting.

To adjust DP open-close angle 60 degrees

9. Install angle control fitting (D) at the rear side of the right hinge with two M4 x 14TP screws (F).



To adjust DP open-close angle 30 degrees

10. Remove four screws (11) and then remove rear cover (12) of DP (A).

8. Installer le DP (A) sur le MFP en le fixant à l'aide de la goupille (E) et des deux vis TP M4 x 14 (F).

Installer la fixation d'angle.

Pour régler l'angle d'ouverture/de fermeture du DP de 60 degrés

9. Placer la fixation d'angle (D) à l'arrière de la charnière droite à l'aide des deux vis TP M4 x 14 (F).

Pour régler l'angle d'ouverture/de fermeture du DP de 30 degrés

10. Retirer les quatre vis (11), puis le couvercle arrière (12) du DP (A).

8. Instale el DP (A) firmemente en el MFP con el pasador (E) y dos tornillos TP M4 x 14 (F).

Instale el herraje de control de ángulo. Para ajustar el DP, abra o cierre el ángulo 60 grados

9. Instale el herraje de control de ángulo (D) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha con dos tornillos TP M4 x 14 (F).

Para ajustar el DP, abra o cierre el ángulo 30 grados

10. Saque cuatro tornillos (11) y retire la cubierta trasera (12) del DP (A).

8. DP (A) sicher mit einem Stift (E) und zwei M4 x 14TP Schrauben (F) am MFP befestigen.

Installieren der Winkeleinstellbefestigung.

Einstellen des Öffnungs-/Schließungswinkels des DP um 60 Grad

9. Winkeleinstellbefestigung (D) an der Rückseite des rechten Scharniers mit zwei M4 x 14TP Schrauben (F) befestigen.

Einstellen des Öffnungs-/Schließungswinkels des DP um 30 Grad

10. Vier Schrauben (11) abnehmen und dann die Rückabdeckung (12) des DP (A) abnehmen.

8. Montare il DP (A) sull'MFP assicurandolo con il perno (E) e due viti M4 x 14TP (F).

Montaggio dell'accessorio di regolazione angolare.

Per regolare l'angolo di chiusura / apertura del DP a 60 gradi

9. Montare l'accessorio di regolazione angolare (D) sul lato posteriore della cerniera destra con due viti M4 x 14TP (F).

Per regolare l'angolo di chiusura / apertura del DP a 30 gradi

10. Rimuovere quattro viti (11), quindi rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (12) del DP (A).

8. 用销 (E) 和两颗 M4 x 14TP 螺钉 (F) 将 DP (A) 安装到 MFP 上。

安装角度控制附件。

若要将 DP 的开关角度调整为 60 度

9. 在右部铰链的后部使用两颗 M4 x 14TP 螺钉 (F) 安装角度控制附件 (D)。

若要将 DP 的开关角度调整为 30 度

10. 拆下 4 颗螺钉 (11)，然后拆下 DP (A) 的后盖板 (12)。

8. ピン (E) 1 本とビス M4 x 14TP (F) 2 本で DP 本体 (A) を MFP 本体に固定する。

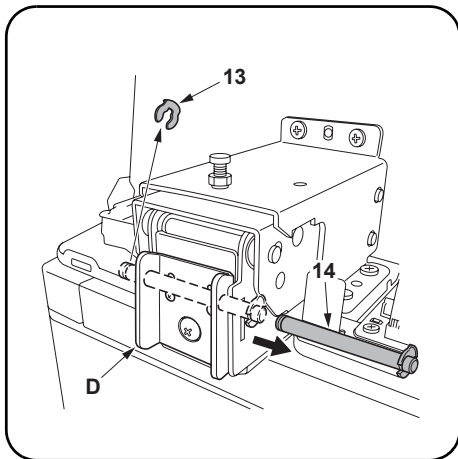
角度規制金具の取り付け

DP 開閉角度を 60 度に設定する場合

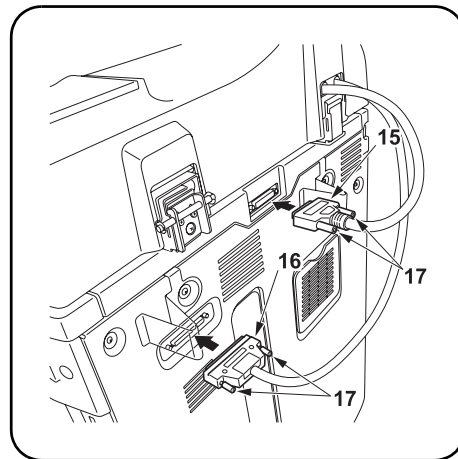
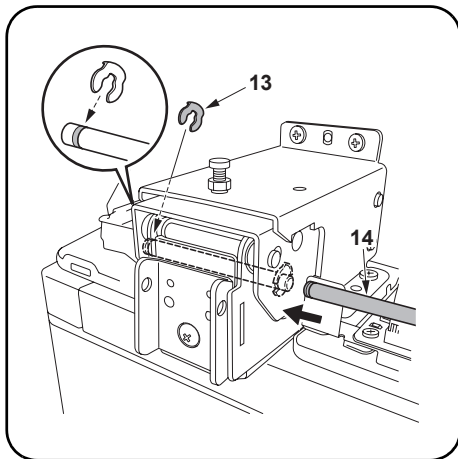
9. 右ヒンジ後側にビス M4 x 14TP (F) 2 本で角度規制金具 (D) を取り付け。

DP 開閉角度を 30 度に設定する場合

10. ビス (11) 4 本を外し、DP 本体 (A) の後カバー (12) を取り外す。



11. Remove stop ring (13) of angle control fitting (D) that has been installed in step 12 to remove shaft (14).
12. Insert shaft (14) into the rear side of the right hinge.
13. Attach stop ring (13) to the notch of shaft (14) and secure shaft (14).
14. Reinstall rear cover (12) that has been removed in step 10, with four screws (11).



Connect the signal lines.

15. Connect control signal line (15) of DP (A) and data signal line (16) to the MFP.
16. Turn fixing knobs (17) at the both sides of the connector clockwise to secure the signal lines.

11. Retirer l'anneau de butée (13) de la fixation d'angle (D) installée à l'étape 12 pour enlever la tige (14).
12. Insérer la tige (14) à l'arrière de la charnière droite.
13. Fixer l'anneau de butée (13) sur l'encoche de la tige (14) et mettre en place la tige (14).
14. Remettre en place le couvercle arrière (12) retiré à l'étape 10 à l'aide des quatre vis (11).

Connecter les circuits de transmission.

15. Connecter le circuit de transmission de commande (15) du DP (A) ainsi que celui de données (16) au MFP.
16. Tourner les boutons de fixation (17) de chaque côté du connecteur dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre pour fixer les circuits de transmission.

11. Retire el anillo de retención (13) del herraje de control de ángulo (D) que se instaló en el paso 12 para retirar el eje (14).
12. Inserte el eje (14) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha.
13. Fije el anillo de retención (13) a la muesca del eje (14) y asegure el eje (14).
14. Reinstale la cubierta trasera (12) que ha retirado en el paso 10 con cuatro tornillos (11).

Conecte las líneas de señal.

15. Conecte la línea de señal de control (15) del DP (A) y la línea de señal de datos (16) al MFP.
16. Gire los pomos de fijación (17) de ambos lados del conector en sentido horario para asegurar las líneas de señal.

11. Anschlagring (13) von der Winkeleinstellbefestigung (D) abnehmen, die in Schritt 12 montiert wurde, um die Welle (14) zu entfernen.
12. Welle (14) in die Rückseite des rechten Scharniers einsetzen.
13. Anschlagring (13) an der Wellenkerbe (14) anbringen und Welle befestigen (14).
14. Die in Schritt 10 abgenommene Rückabdeckung (12) wieder mit vier Schrauben (11) einbauen.

Anschließen der Signalleitungen.

15. Steuersignalleitung (15) von DP (A) und Datensignalleitung (16) an den MFP anschließen.
16. Befestigungshandräder (17) an beiden Seiten des Anschlusses nach rechts drehen, um die Signalleitungen zu befestigen.

11. Rimuovere l'anello di bloccaggio (13) dell'accessorio di regolazione angolare (D) che era stato installato al Punto 12 per rimuovere l'albero (14).
12. Inserire l'albero (14) nella parte posteriore della cerniera destra.
13. Applicare l'anello di bloccaggio (13) nell'incavo dell'albero (14) e assicurare l'albero (14).
14. Rimontare il coperchio posteriore (12) rimosso al Punto 10 con quattro viti (11).

Connessione delle linee dei segnali.

15. Connettere la linea del segnale di controllo (15) del DP (A) e la linea del segnale dati (16) all'MFP.
16. Ruotare le rotelle di fissaggio (17) su entrambi i lati del connettore in senso orario, fissando così le linee dei segnali.

11. 拆下在第 9 步中安装的角度控制配件 (D) 的止动环 (13), 以将轴 (14) 拆下。
12. 将轴 (14) 插入到右部铰链的后部。
13. 将止动环 (13) 安装到轴 (14) 的切口并将轴 (14) 固定。
14. 用 4 颗螺钉 (11) 将步骤 10 中拆下的后盖板 (12) 重新安装。

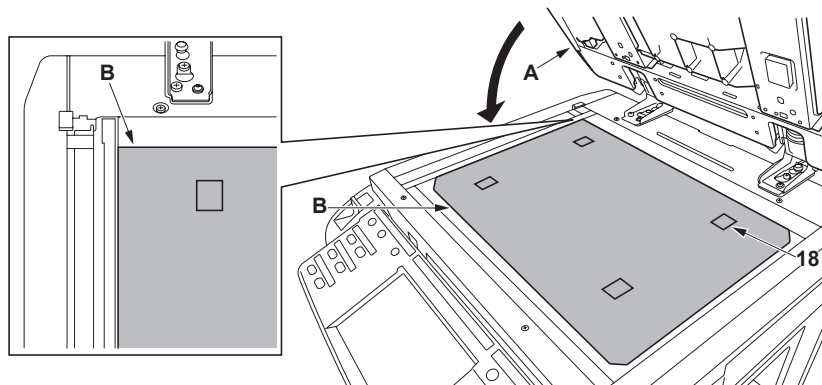
连接信号线。

15. 将 DP (A) 的控制信号线 (15) 和数据信号线 (16) 连接到 MFP。
16. 顺时针旋转连接器两侧的固定旋钮 (17) 将信号线固定。

11. 手順 12 で取り付けした角度規制金具 (D) のストップリング (13) 1 個を外し、シャフト (14) を取り外す。
12. 右ヒンジ後側にシャフト (14) を挿入する。
13. ストップリング (13) をシャフト (14) の溝に取り付け、シャフト (14) を固定する。
14. 手順 10 で外した後カバー (12) をビス (11) 4 本で元通り取り付ける。

信号線の接続

15. DP 本体 (A) の制御信号線 (15) とデータ信号線 (16) を MFP 本体に接続する。
16. コネクタ両側の固定ツマミ (17) を右へ回し固定する。



Fasten the original mat.

17. Place original mat (B) with its Velcro (18) upward over the contact glass.

Align original mat (B) corner that has not been surface cut with the inner left corner of the original instruction panel.

18. Close DP (A) and attach original mat (B) onto it with Velcro.

Fixer la plaque d'original.

17. Placer la plaque d'original (B) sur la vitre d'exposition, en orientant les bandes Velcro (18) vers le haut.

Aligner le coin de la plaque d'original (B) qui n'est pas découpé sur le coin intérieur gauche du panneau d'instructions de l'original.

18. Abaisser le DP (A) et y fixer la plaque d'original (B) à l'aide des bandes Velcro.

Fije la alfombrilla para originales.

17. Coloque la alfombrilla para originales (B) con el velcro (18) hacia arriba sobre el cristal de contacto.

Alinee la esquina no cortada de la alfombrilla para originales (B) con la esquina interior izquierda del panel de instrucciones del original.

18. Cierre el DP (A) y fije la alfombrilla para originales (B) con el velcro.

Befestigen der Originalmatte.

17. Die Originalmatte (B) mit dem Klettband (18) nach oben über das Kontaktglas legen.

Die Ecke der Originalmatte (B), deren Oberfläche nicht ausgeschnitten ist, mit der linken, inneren Kante des Originalbedienfeldes ausrichten.

18. Den DP (A) schließen und die Originalmatte (B) mit dem Klettband auf ihm befestigen.

Fissaggio del tappetino originale.

17. Posizionare il tappetino originale (B) con il velcro (18) rivolto verso l'alto sul vetro di appoggio.

Allineare l'angolo del tappetino originale (B) non tagliato in superficie con l'angolo interno sinistro del pannello di controllo originale.

18. Chiudere il DP (A) e applicarvi il tappetino originale (B) con il velcro.

固定原稿墊。

17. 將原稿墊 (B) 放置在壓片玻璃上，使維可牢尼龍搭扣 (18) 向上。

將未切割表面的原稿墊 (B) 的角對准原稿指示板的內部左角。

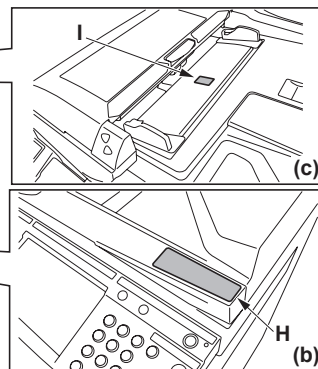
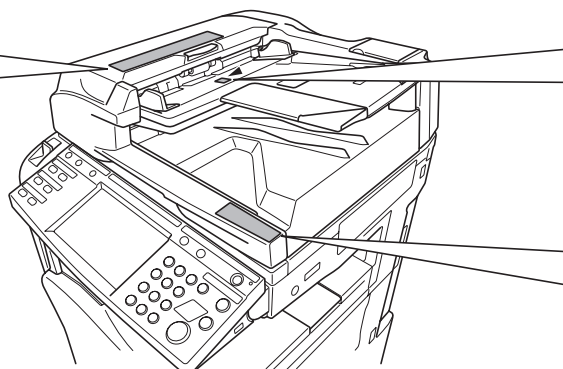
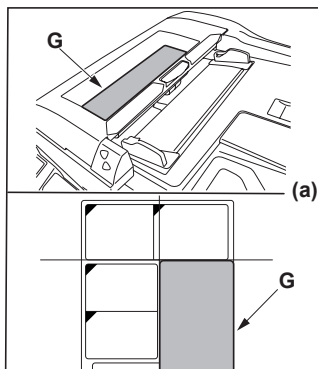
18. 關閉 DP (A) 并用維可牢尼龍搭扣將原稿墊 (B) 安裝在它上面。

原稿マットの貼り付け

17. 原稿マット (B) を、マジックテープ (18) を上に向けてコンタクトガラス上に置く。

原稿マット (B) は面カットされていない角を原稿指示板の左奥に合わせる。

18. DP 本体 (A) を下ろし、原稿マット (B) を DP 本体 (A) に貼り付ける。



Adhere the label "Operation procedure" (except for 100 V models)

19. Clean the label surface of the original feed unit cover with alcohol.
20. Adhere label "Operation procedure" (G) of which the language corresponding to the destination of the MFP on to the existing label of the original feed unit cover. Figure (a)

Adhere the caution label "Remove original!" (except for 100 V models)

21. Clean the label surface of the original delivery table with alcohol.
22. Adhere caution label "Remove original!" (H) of which the language corresponding to the destination of the MFP on to the label of the original delivery table. Figure (b)

Adhere the caution label "Original face up!" (except for 100 V models)

23. Clean the label on the original table with alcohol.
24. Adhere caution label "Original face up!" (I) of which the language corresponding to the destination of MFP on to the label of the original table. Figure (c)

Coller l'étiquette relative à la procédure d'utilisation (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)

19. Nettoyer la surface de l'étiquette du couvercle de l'unité d'alimentation d'original avec de l'alcool.
20. Coller l'étiquette relative à la procédure d'utilisation (G) dans la langue correspondant à la destination du MFP sur l'étiquette déjà apposée sur le couvercle de l'unité d'alimentation d'original. Figure (a)

Coller l'étiquette d'avertissement relative au retrait de l'original (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)

21. Nettoyer la surface de l'étiquette du plateau de sortie d'original avec de l'alcool.
22. Coller l'étiquette d'avertissement relative au retrait de l'original (H) dans la langue correspondant à la destination du MFP sur l'étiquette du plateau de sortie d'original. Figure (b)

Coller l'étiquette d'avertissement relative à l'orientation vers le haut de la face de l'original (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)

23. Nettoyer l'étiquette figurant sur le plateau d'original avec de l'alcool.
24. Coller l'étiquette d'avertissement relative à l'orientation vers le haut de la face de l'original (I) dans la langue correspondant à la destination du MFP sur l'étiquette du plateau d'original. Figure (c)

Pegue la etiqueta "Procedimiento operativo" (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)

19. Limpie con alcohol la superficie de etiquetas de la cubierta de la unidad de alimentación de originales.
20. Pegue la etiqueta "Procedimiento operativo" (G) del idioma correspondiente al destino del MFP sobre la etiqueta existente de la cubierta de la unidad de alimentación de originales. Figura (a)

Pegue la etiqueta de precaución "Retirar original" (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)

21. Limpie con alcohol la superficie de etiquetas de la cubierta de originales.
22. Pegue la etiqueta de precaución "Retirar original" (H) del idioma correspondiente al destino del MFP sobre la etiqueta de la cubierta de originales. Figura (b)

Pegue la etiqueta de precaución "Original cara arriba" (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)

23. Limpie con alcohol la etiqueta de la cubierta de originales.
24. Pegue la etiqueta de precaución "Original cara arriba" (I) del idioma correspondiente al destino del MFP sobre la etiqueta de la cubierta de originales. Figura (c)

Anbringen des Schildes "Funktionsanweisung" (außer 100 V-Modelle)

19. Die Schildoberfläche an der Abdeckung der Originalzufuhreinheit mit Alkohol reinigen.
20. Das Schild "Funktionsanweisung" (G) in der Sprache des Bestimmungsortes des MFP auf das bestehende Schild an der Abdeckung der Originalzufuhreinheit aufkleben. Abbildung (a)

Anbringen des Warningschildes "Original entfernen" (außer 100 V-Modelle)

21. Die Schildoberfläche am Originalzufuhrschacht mit Alkohol reinigen.
22. Das Warningschild "Original entfernen" (H) in der Sprache des Bestimmungsortes des MFP auf das bestehende Schild am Originalzufuhrschacht aufkleben. Abbildung (b)

Anbringen des Warningschildes "Originalschriftseite nach oben" (außer 100 V-Modelle)

23. Die Schildoberfläche am Originalzufuhrschacht mit Alkohol reinigen.
24. Das Warningschild "Originalschriftseite nach oben" (I) in der Sprache des Bestimmungsortes des MFP auf das bestehende Schild am Originalzufuhrschacht aufkleben. Abbildung (c)

Applicazione dell'etichetta "Procedura di funzionamento" (eccetto modelli 100 V)

19. Pulire con alcool la superficie dell'etichetta sul coperchio dell'unità di alimentazione originali.
20. Applicare l'etichetta "Procedura di funzionamento" (G) nella lingua corrispondente alla destinazione dell'MFP sopra l'etichetta del coperchio dell'unità di alimentazione originali. Figura (a)

Applicazione dell'etichetta di avvertimento "Rimuovere originale!" (eccetto modelli 100 V)

21. Pulire con alcool la superficie dell'etichetta sul piano di ricevimento originali.
22. Applicare l'etichetta di avvertimento "Rimuovere originale!" (H) nella lingua corrispondente alla destinazione dell'MFP sopra l'etichetta del piano di ricevimento originali. Figura (b)

Applicazione dell'etichetta di avvertimento "Originale rivolto verso l'alto!" (eccetto modelli 100 V)

23. Pulire con alcool l'etichetta sul piano originali.
24. Applicare l'etichetta di avvertimento "Originale rivolto verso l'alto!" (I) nella lingua corrispondente alla destinazione dell'MFP sopra l'etichetta del piano originali. Figura (c)

粘貼标签“操作步骤”（除 100V 型号）

19. 用酒精清洁原稿送稿组件盖板的标签表面。
20. 将语言与 MFP 目标对应的标签“操作步骤”（G）粘贴到原稿送稿组件盖板的标签上。

图（a）

粘貼注意标签“取出原稿！”（除 100V 型号）

21. 用酒精清洁原稿发送台的标签表面。
22. 将语言与 MFP 目标对应的注意标签“取出原稿！”（H）粘贴到原稿发送台的标签上。

图（b）

粘貼注意标签“原稿正面朝上！”（除 100V 型号）

23. 用酒精清洁原稿台的标签。
24. 将语言与 MFP 目标对应的注意标签“原稿正面朝上！”（I）粘贴到原稿台的标签上。

图（c）

操作ラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様以外）

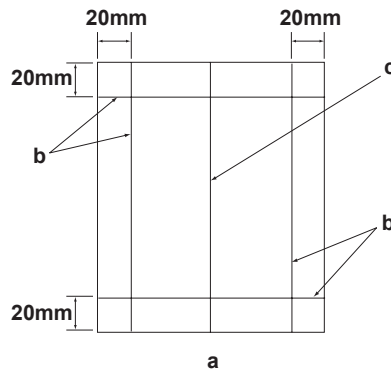
19. 原稿送り装置カバーのラベル上をアルコール清掃する。
20. MFP 本体を使用する国の言語に合った操作ラベル（G）をラベルの上に貼り付ける。図（a）

原稿忘れラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様以外）

21. 原稿排紙テーブルのラベル上をアルコール清掃する。
22. MFP 本体を使用する国の言語に合った原稿忘れラベル（H）をラベルの上に貼り付ける。図（b）

原稿表向きラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様以外）

23. 原稿テーブルのラベル上をアルコール清掃する。
24. MFP 本体を使用する国の言語に合った原稿表向きラベル（I）をラベルの上に貼り付ける。図（c）



[Operation check]

1. To check the machine operation, prepare original (a) where 4 lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges of the A3 sheet and 1 line (c) is drawn at its center.
2. Connect the power plug of the MFP into the wall outlet and turn the main power on.
3. Set the original (a) on the DP and perform a test copy to check the operation and the copy example.
4. Compare original (a) with the copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustments according to the type of the gap.

Check images of the DP after checking and adjusting images of the MFP. For details, see the service manual.

[Vérification du fonctionnement]

1. Pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'appareil, préparer un original (a) sur lequel sont tracées 4 lignes (b) à 20 mm des bords de la feuille A3 et 1 ligne (c) en son axe.
2. Brancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP sur la prise murale et mettre l'appareil sous tension.
3. Placer l'original (a) sur le DP et effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.
4. Comparer l'original (a) avec l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, effectuer les réglages suivants en fonction du type d'écart.

Vérifier les images du DP après avoir contrôlé et réglé les images du MFP. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

[Verifique el funcionamiento]

1. Para comprobar el funcionamiento del aparato, prepare un original (a) que contenga 4 líneas (b) dibujadas a 20 mm de los bordes de la hoja A3 y 1 línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y el ejemplo de copia.
4. Compare el original (a) con el ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realice los siguientes ajustes según el tipo de separación.

Compruebe las imágenes del DP después de comprobar y ajustar las imágenes del MFP. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

[Funktionsprüfung]

1. Zum Prüfen der Gerätefunktion das Original (a) vorbereiten, auf das 4 Linien (b) 20 mm von den Kanten des A3-Blattes und 1 Linie (c) in der Mitte gezeichnet sind.
2. Den Netzstecker am MFP in die Steckdose stecken und den Strom einschalten.
3. Das Original (a) auf den DP legen und eine Testkopie erstellen, um die Funktion und das Kopierbeispiel zu prüfen.
4. Das Original (a) mit dem Kopierbeispiel vergleichen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, die folgenden Einstellungen gemäß dem Abstandstyp durchführen.

Die Bilder des DP nach dem Prüfen und Einstellen der Bilder des MFP prüfen. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

[Verifica del funzionamento]

1. Per verificare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare l'originale (a) tirando 4 linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi del foglio A3 e una linea (c) al centro.
2. Inserire la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa a muro, quindi posizionare l'interruttore principale su On.
3. Posizionare l'originale(a) sul DP ed eseguire una copia di prova per verificare il funzionamento e l'esempio di copia.
4. Confrontare l'originale (a) con l'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le seguenti regolazioni in funzione del tipo di scostamento.

Controllare le immagini del DP dopo avere effettuato i controlli e le regolazioni delle immagini sull'MFP. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

[操作確認]

1. 若要检查机器操作，准备一张 A3 原稿 (a)，距纸张边缘 20mm 画出 4 条线 (b) 并且在原稿中心画出 1 条线 (c)。
2. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入墙壁插座并打开主电源。
3. 在 DP 上设定原稿 (a) 并进行测试复印，检查操作和复印样本。
4. 用复印样本对比原稿 (a)。如果间隙超过标准值，根据间隙类型进行下列调整。

检查和调整 MFP 图像后检查 DP 的图像。有关详细信息，请参见维修手册。

[動作確認]

1. A3 サイズ用紙の端から 20mm の位置に線 (b)4 本と、用紙の中心に線 (c)1 本を引いた、動作確認用の原稿 (a) を用意する。
2. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
3. 原稿 (a) を DP 本体にセットし、テストコピーを行い、動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。
4. 原稿 (a) とコピーサンプルを比較し、基準値以上のずれがある場合、ずれ方に応じて調整を行う。

MFP 本体の画像確認及び調整を行ってから DP 本体の画像確認を行うこと。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.

- For the adjustment of DP oblique position, see page 10. <Reference value> Single copying: within ± 3 mm; Duplex copying: within ± 4 mm
 - For the adjustment of DP original size, see page 13. <Reference value> within $\pm 1.5\%$
 - For the adjustment of DP leading edge timing, see page 15. <Reference value> within ± 2.5 mm
 - For the adjustment of DP original center line, see page 17. <Reference value> Single copying: ± 2 mm; Duplex copying: within ± 3 mm
- When using the DP auto adjusting original, automatic adjustments excluding the DP oblique position adjustment can be performed.**
- For the adjustments using DP auto adjusting original, see page 20.

Veiller à effectuer les réglages dans l'ordre suivant. Si ce n'est pas le cas, ils ne seront pas effectués correctement.

- Pour le réglage de la position oblique du DP, voir la page 10. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto : ± 3 mm ; Copie recto-verso : ± 4 mm
 - Pour le réglage du format d'original du DP, voir la page 13. <Valeur de référence> $\pm 1,5\%$
 - Pour le réglage de la synchronisation du bord avant du DP, voir la page 15. <Valeur de référence> $\pm 2,5$ mm
 - Pour le réglage de l'axe de l'original du DP, voir la page 17. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto : ± 2 mm ; Copie recto-verso : ± 3 mm
- En cas d'utilisation de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP, les réglages automatiques, sauf le réglage de la position oblique du DP, peuvent être effectués.**
- Pour les réglages effectués à l'aide de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP, voir la page 20.

Haga el ajuste en el orden siguiente. De lo contrario, el ajuste no será correcto.

- Para el ajuste de la posición oblicua del DP, consulte la página 10. <Valor de referencia> Copiado por una cara: dentro de ± 3 mm; Copiado dúplex: dentro de ± 4 mm
 - Para el ajuste del tamaño de original del DP, consulte la página 13. <Valor de referencia> dentro de $\pm 1,5\%$
 - Para el ajuste de la sincronización de extremo guía del DP, consulte la página 15. <Valor de referencia> dentro de $\pm 2,5$ mm
 - Para el ajuste de la línea de centro del original del DP, consulte la página 17. <Valor de referencia> Copiado por una cara: ± 2 mm; Copiado dúplex: dentro de ± 3 mm
- Cuando se usa el original de ajuste automático del DP, se pueden realizar los ajustes automáticos, a excepción del ajuste de la posición oblicua del DP.**
- Para los ajustes que usan el original de ajuste automático del DP, consulte la página 20.

Die Einstellungen müssen in der folgenden Reihenfolge vorgenommen werden. Sonst kann die Einstellung nicht richtig ausgeführt werden.

- Einzelheiten zur Einstellung der Schräglage des DP siehe Seite 10. <Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Innerhalb ± 3 mm; Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ± 4 mm
 - Einzelheiten zur Einstellung der Originalgröße des DP siehe Seite 13. <Bezugswert> Innerhalb $\pm 1,5\%$
 - Einzelheiten zur Einstellung des Vorderkantentaktes des DP siehe Seite 15. <Bezugswert> Innerhalb $\pm 2,5$ mm
 - Einzelheiten zur Einstellung der Originalmittellinie des DP siehe Seite 17. <Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: ± 2 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ± 3 mm
- Bei der Verwendung der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP können automatische Einstellungen, außer der Einstellung der Schräglage des DP, ausgeführt werden.**
- Einzelheiten zu den Einstellungen mit der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP siehe Seite 20.

Accertarsi di eseguire le regolazioni in questa sequenza: in caso contrario, la regolazione non può essere effettuata correttamente.

- Per la regolazione della posizione obliqua del DP, vedere pagina 10. <Valore di riferimento> Copia singola: tolleranza ± 3 mm; Copia duplex: tolleranza ± 4 mm
 - Per la regolazione delle dimensioni dell'originale DP, vedere pagina 13. <Valore di riferimento> tolleranza $\pm 1,5\%$
 - Per la regolazione della fasatura del bordo di entrata del DP, vedere pagina 15. <Valore di riferimento> tolleranza $\pm 2,5$ mm
 - Per la regolazione della linea centrale del DP, vedere pagina 17. <Valore di riferimento> Copia singola: ± 2 mm; Copia duplex: tolleranza ± 3 mm
- Se si utilizza l'autoregolazione originale DP, è possibile eseguire regolazioni automatiche, eccetto la regolazione della posizione obliqua del DP.**
- Per le regolazioni con l'autoregolazione originale DP, vedere pagina 20.

请务必按下列顺序调整。如果未按照下列顺序,则无法正确进行调整。

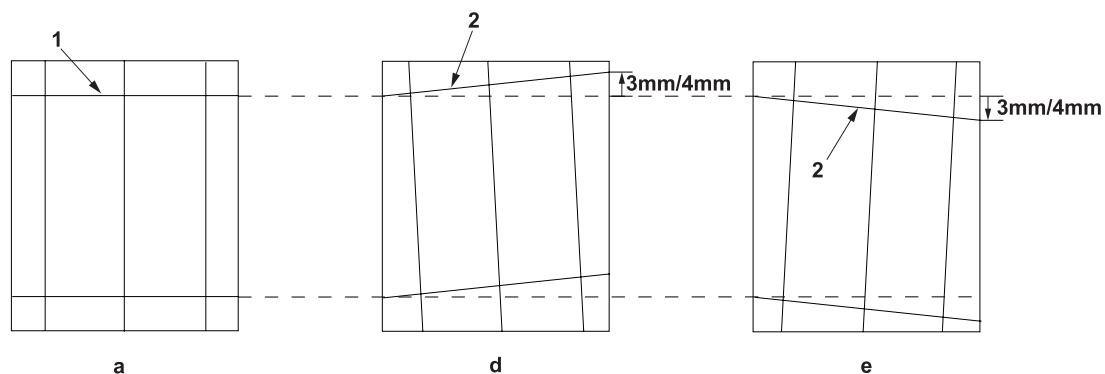
- 有关 DP 倾斜位置的调整,请参见第 10 页。 <标准值> 单面复印: ± 3 mm 内, 双面复印: ± 4 mm 内
- 有关 DP 原稿尺寸的调整,请参见第 13 页。 <标准值> $\pm 1.5\%$ 内
- 有关 DP 前边定时的调整,请参见第 15 页。 <标准值> ± 2.5 mm 内
- 有关 DP 原稿中心线的调整,请参见第 17 页。 <标准值> 单面复印: ± 2 mm, 双面复印: ± 3 mm 内

使用 DP 自动调整原稿时,可进行不包括 DP 倾斜位置调整的自动调整。

- 有关使用 DP 自动调整原稿的调整,请参见第 20 页。

必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。

- DP 斜め確認 10 ページ <基準値> 片面: ± 3 mm 以内 両面: ± 4 mm 以内
 - DP 等倍度確認 13 ページ <基準値> $\pm 1.5\%$
 - DP 先端タイミング確認 15 ページ <基準値> ± 2.5 mm 以内
 - DP 原稿センター位置確認 17 ページ <基準値> 片面: ± 2 mm 以内 両面: ± 3 mm 以内
- DP 自動調整原稿を使用すると、DP 斜め調整以外の自動調整が行える。
- DP 自動調整原稿による調整 20 ページ



[Checking DP oblique position]

1. Check the horizontal gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example positions. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

- <Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ± 3 mm.
For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ± 4 mm.

[Vérification de la position oblique du DP]

1. Vérifier l'écart horizontal entre la position de la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et celle de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

- <Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ± 3 mm.
Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ± 4 mm.

[Verificación de la posición oblicua del DP]

1. Compruebe la separación horizontal entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de las posiciones del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

- <Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ± 3 mm.
Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ± 4 mm.

[Prüfen der Schräglage des DP]

1. Den horizontalen Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) der Kopierbeispielspositionen prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

- <Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ± 3 mm liegen.
Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ± 4 mm liegen.

[Verifica della posizione obliqua del DP]

1. Verificare lo scostamento orizzontale fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) delle posizioni dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

- <Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ± 3 mm.
Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ± 4 mm.

[检查 DP 倾斜位置]

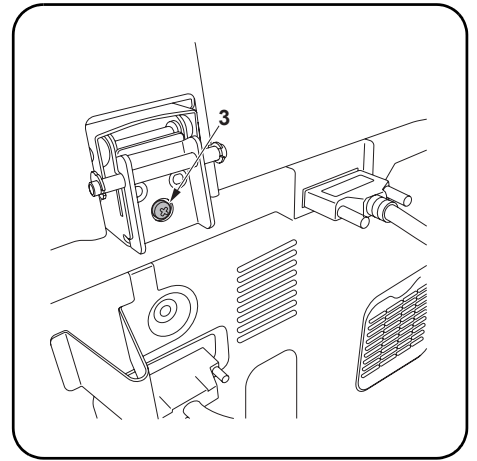
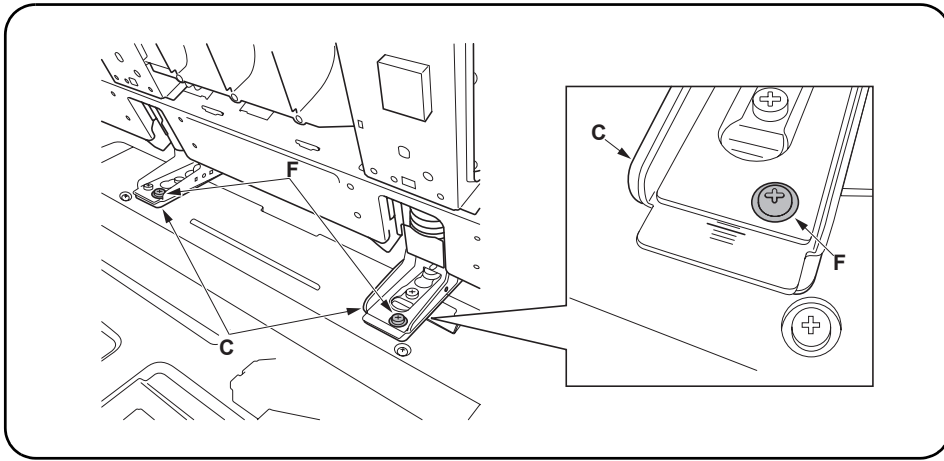
1. 检查原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本位置上的线 (2) 之间的水平间隙。如果间隙超过标准值，按照下列步骤调整间隙。

- <标准值> 对于单面复印：线 (2) 的水平间隙在 ± 3 mm 内。
对于双面复印：线 (2) 的水平间隙在 ± 4 mm 内。

[DP 斜め確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) の左右のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

- <基準値> 片面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ： ± 3 mm 以内
両面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ： ± 4 mm 以内



Adjusting the DP oblique position.

1. Loosen two M4 × 14TP screws (F) of right and left fixing fittings (C).
2. Turn adjusting screw (3) at the rear side of the right hinge to adjust the DP position.
For copy example (d): Turn the adjusting screw counterclockwise and move the DP to the inner side.
For copy example (e): Turn the adjusting screw clockwise and move the DP to the front side.
Amount of change per scale: Approx. 1 mm
3. Perform a test copy.

Réglage de la position oblique du DP.

1. Desserrer les deux vis TP M4 × 14 (F) des fixations (C) droite et gauche.
2. Tourner la vis de réglage (3) à l'arrière de la charnière droite pour régler la position du DP.
Pour l'exemple de copie (d) : tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'intérieur.
Pour l'exemple de copie (e) : tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'avant.
Changement par graduation d'échelle : environ 1 mm
3. Effectuer une copie de test.

Ajuste de la posición oblicua del DP.

1. Afloje dos tornillos TP M4 × 14 (F) de los herrajes de fijación (C) derecho e izquierdo.
2. Gire el tornillo de ajuste (3) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha para ajustar la posición del DP.
Para el ejemplo de copia (d): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido antihorario y mueva el DP al lado interno.
Para el ejemplo de copia (e): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido horario y mueva el DP al lado frontal.
Magnitud del cambio por escala: aprox. 1 mm
3. Haga una copia de prueba.

Einstellen der Schräglage des DP.

1. Die zwei M4 × 14TP Schrauben (F) an der rechten und linken Befestigungshalterung (C) lösen.
2. Die Einstellschraube (3) an der Rückseite des rechten Scharniers einstellen, um die DP-Position einzustellen.
Kopierbeispiel (d): Die Einstellschraube nach links drehen und den DP nach innen schieben.
Kopierbeispiel (e): Die Einstellschraube nach rechts drehen und den DP nach vorne schieben.
Änderung pro Maßstab: Ungefähr 1 mm
3. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

Regolazione della posizione obliqua del DP.

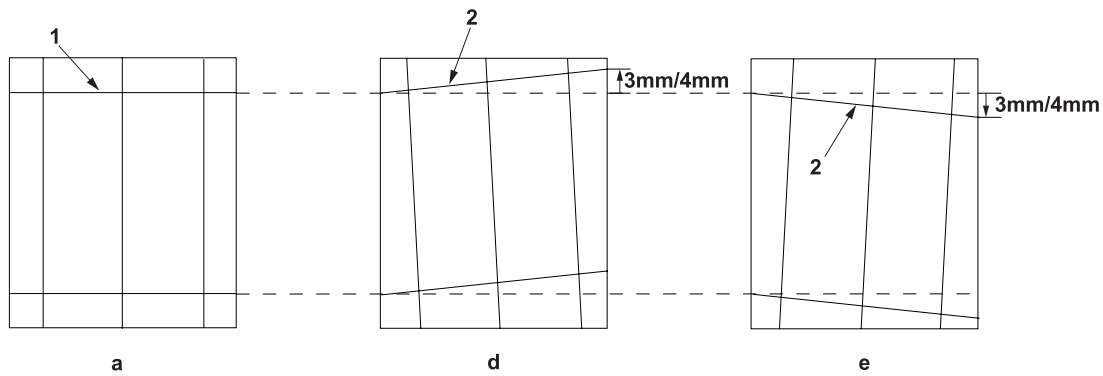
1. Allentare le due viti M4 × 14TP (F) degli accessori di fissaggio (C) destro e sinistro.
2. Ruotare la vite di regolazione (3) sul lato posteriore della cerniera destra per regolare la posizione del DP.
Per l'esempio di copia (d): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso antiorario e spostare il DP verso l'interno.
Per l'esempio di copia (e): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso orario e spostare il DP in avanti.
Entità modifica per scala: circa 1 mm
3. Eseguire una copia di prova.

調整 DP 傾斜位置。

1. 松开右侧和左侧的固定附件 (C) 的两颗 M4 × 14TP 螺钉 (F)。
2. 旋转右部铰链的后部的调整螺钉 (3) 以调整 DP 位置。
对于复印样本 (d)：逆时针旋转调整螺钉并将 DP 移动到内侧。
对于复印样本 (e)：顺时针旋转调整螺钉并将 DP 移动到正面。
按比例尺的更改量：约 1mm
3. 进行测试复印。

DP 斜め調整

1. 左右の固定金具 (C) のビス M4 × 14TP (F) 2本を緩める。
2. 右ヒンジ後側の調整ビス (3) を回し、DP 本体の位置を調整する。
コピーサンプル (d) の場合：調整ビスを左に回し、DP 本体を奥へ動かす
コピーサンプル (e) の場合：調整ビスを右に回し、DP 本体を手前へ動かす
1 目盛り当たりの変化量：約 1mm
3. テストコピーを行う。



4. Repeat the steps above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the following reference values.
 <Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ± 3 mm.
 For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ± 4 mm.
5. After adjustment is completed, retighten two M4 \times 14TP screws (F) that have been loosened in step 1.

4. Répéter les étapes ci-dessus jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique les valeurs de référence suivantes.
 <Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ± 3 mm.
 Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ± 4 mm.
5. Une fois le réglage effectué, resserrer les deux vis TP M4 \times 14 (F) desserrées à l'étape 1.

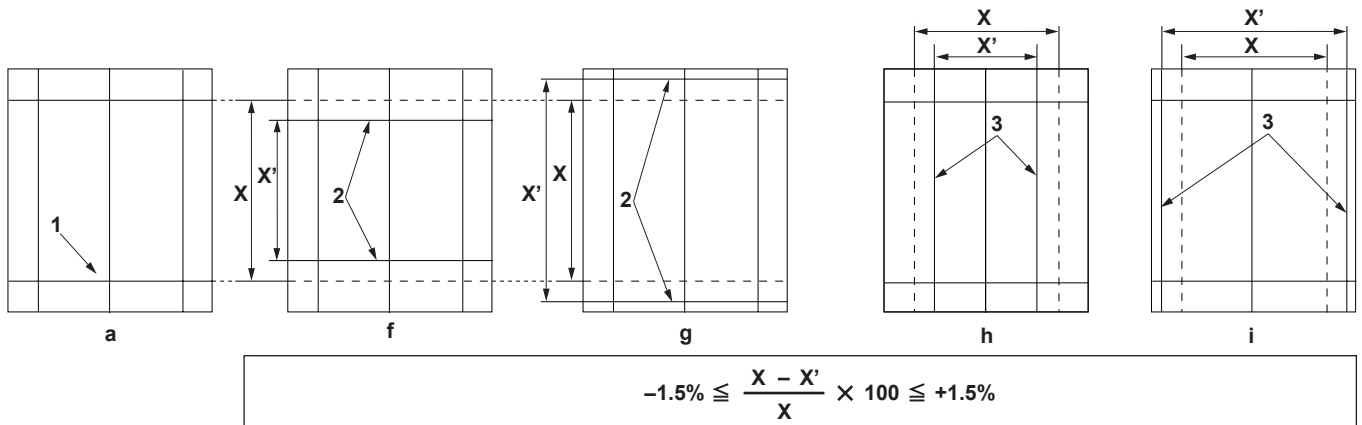
4. Repita los pasos anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente los siguientes valores de referencia.
 <Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ± 3 mm.
 Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ± 4 mm.
5. Una vez hecho el ajuste, vuelva a apretar los dos tornillos TP M4 \times 14 (F) que ha aflojado en el paso 1.

4. Die obigen Schritte wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.
 <Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ± 3 mm liegen.
 Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ± 4 mm liegen.
5. Nach der Einstellung die zwei M4 \times 14TP Schrauben (F), die in Schritt 1 gelöst wurden, wieder festziehen.

4. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento seguenti.
 <Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ± 3 mm.
 Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ± 4 mm.
5. Una volta conclusa la regolazione, serrare nuovamente le viti M4 \times 14TP (F) che erano state allentate al Punto 1.

4. 重复上述步骤直到复印样本上的线(2)的间隙显示下列标准值。
 <标准值> 对于单面复印: 线(2)的水平间隙在 ± 3 mm 内。
 对于双面复印: 线(2)的水平间隙在 ± 4 mm 内。
5. 调整完成后, 重新拧紧在步骤 1 中松开的两颗 M4 \times 14TP 螺钉(F)。

4. コピーサンプルの線(2)ずれが基準値内になるまで、調整を繰り返す。
 <基準値> 片面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ: ± 3 mm 以内
 両面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ: ± 4 mm 以内
5. 調整終了後、手順 1 で緩めたビス M4 \times 14TP (F) 2 本を締め付ける。



[Checking DP original size]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) (3) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.
<Reference value>
For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within $\pm 1.5\%$
For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within $\pm 1.5\%$

Adjusting DP original size.

1. Set the maintenance mode U070, and adjust the copy example for each of single and duplex copying respectively.
For the single copying, adjusts the CONVEY SPEED (sub-scan direction).
For the duplex copying, adjusts the CIS MAIN ADJ (rear side main-scan direction) and the CIS SUB ADJ (rear side sub-scan direction).

[Vérification du format d'original du DP]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.
<Valeur de référence>
Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de $\pm 1,5\%$
Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de $\pm 1,5\%$

Réglage du format d'original du DP.

1. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U070 et régler l'exemple de copie pour la copie recto et la copie recto-verso respectivement.
Pour la copie recto, régler CONVEY SPEED (vitesse d'acheminement) (direction du balayage secondaire).
Pour la copie recto-verso, régler CIS MAIN ADJ (réglage principal du détecteur d'image à contact) (direction du balayage principal - arrière) et CIS SUB ADJ (réglage secondaire du détecteur d'image à contact) (direction du balayage secondaire - arrière).

[Verificación del tamaño de original del DP]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.
<Valor de referencia>
Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de $\pm 1,5\%$
Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de $\pm 1,5\%$

Ajuste del tamaño de original del DP.

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento U070 y ajuste el ejemplo de copia para el copiado por una cara y para el copiado dúplex, respectivamente.
Para el copiado por una cara, ajuste CONVEY SPEED (velocidad de transporte) (dirección de exploración secundaria).
Para el copiado dúplex, ajuste CIS MAIN ADJ (aj principal CIS) (dirección de exploración principal del reverso) y CIS SUB ADJ (aj secundario CIS) (dirección de exploración secundaria del reverso).

[Prüfen der Originalgröße des DP]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.
<Bezugswert>
Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb $\pm 1,5\%$
Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb $\pm 1,5\%$

Einstellen der Originalgröße des DP.

1. Den Wartungsmodus U070 einstellen und das Kopierbeispiel für jede Einzel- und Duplexkopie einstellen.
Für die Einzelkopie die CONVEY SPEED (ZUFUHRGESCHWINDIGKEIT) (Subscanrichtung) einstellen.
Für die Duplexkopie CIS MAIN ADJ (CIS-HAUPT-EINSTELLUNG) (Hauptscanrichtung hinten) und CIS SUB ADJ (CIS-UNTEREINSTELLUNG) (Subscanrichtung hinten) einstellen.

[Verifica delle dimensioni dell'originale DP]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra $\pm 1,5\%$
Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra $\pm 1,5\%$

Regolazione delle dimensioni dell'originale DP.

1. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U070 e regolare l'esempio di copia rispettivamente per ogni esecuzione di copia singola e duplex.
Per la copia singola, regolare CONVEY SPEED (VELOCITÀ TRASFERIMENTO) (orientamento della scansione ausiliare).
Per la copia duplex, regola CIS MAIN ADJ (REGOLAZIONE SCANSIONE PRINCIPALE CIS) (orientamento scansione principale lato posteriore) e CIS SUB ADJ (REGOLAZIONE SCANSIONE AUSILIARE CIS) (orientamento scansione ausiliare lato posteriore).

[检查 DP 原稿尺寸]

1. 检查原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) (3) 之间的间隙。如果间隙超过标准值, 按照下列步骤调整间隙。
<标准值>
对于副扫描方向, 线 (2) 的垂直间隙: $\pm 1.5\%$ 内
对于主扫描方向, 线 (3) 的水平间隙: $\pm 1.5\%$ 内

调整 DP 原稿尺寸。

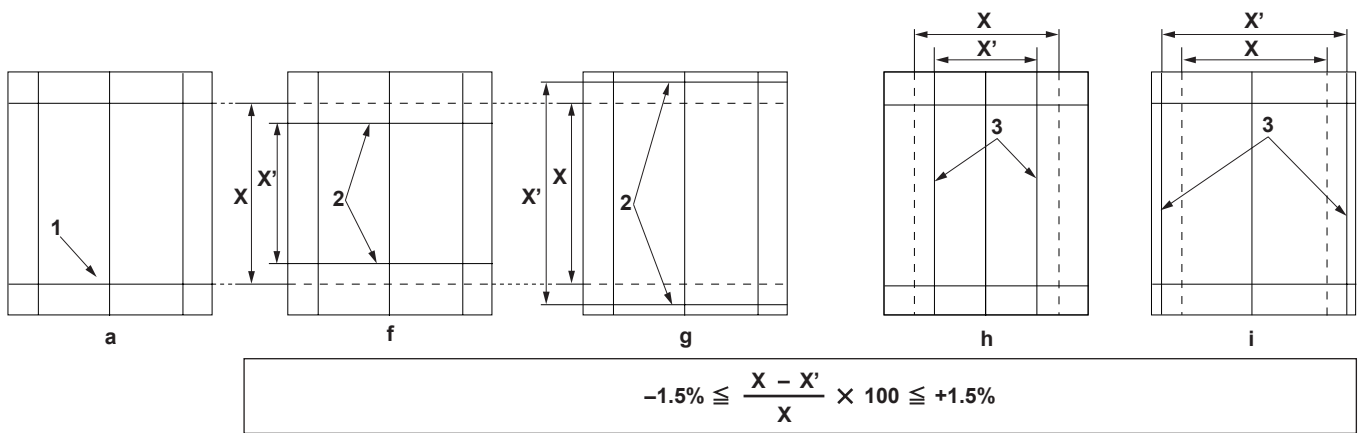
1. 设定维修模式 U070, 并分别调整每次单面和双面复印的复印样本。
对于单面复印, 调整 CONVEY SPEED (传送速度) (副扫描方向)。
对于双面复印, 调整 CIS MAIN ADJ (后部主扫描调整) (后部主扫描方向) 和 CIS SUB ADJ (后部副扫描调整) (后部副扫描方向)。

[DP 等倍度確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) (3) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
<基準値>
副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ: $\pm 1.5\%$ 以内
主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ: $\pm 1.5\%$ 以内

DP 等倍度調整

1. メンテナンスモード U070 をセットし、コピーサンプルの片面、両面別に調整する。
片面の場合、CONVEY SPEED (副走査方向) の調整を行う。
両面の場合、CIS MAIN ADJ (裏面の主走査方向) と CIS SUB ADJ (裏面の副走査方向) の調整を行う。



2. Adjust the values.
For the shorter length copy example (f)(h): Increases the value.
For the longer length copy example (g)(i): Decreases the value.
Amount of change per step: 0.42 mm
3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat the steps 1 to 3 above until the gap of line (2) (3) of copy example shows the reference value.
<Reference value>
For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within $\pm 1.5\%$
For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within $\pm 1.5\%$

2. Régler les valeurs.
Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus courte (f)(h) : augmenter la valeur.
Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus longue (g)(i) : diminuer la valeur.
Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,42 mm
3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence>
Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de $\pm 1,5\%$
Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de $\pm 1,5\%$

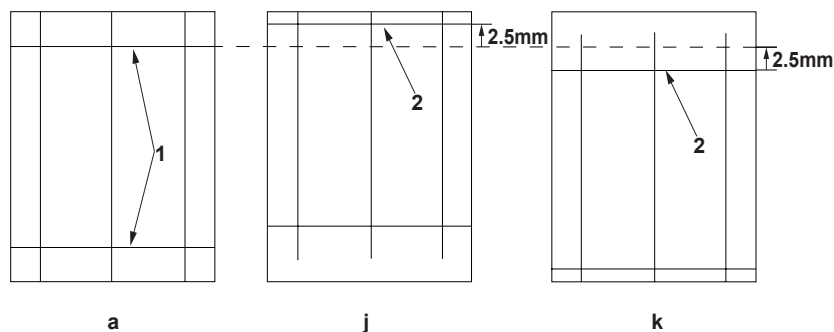
2. Ajuste los valores.
Para el ejemplo de copia más corto (f)(h): aumenta el valor.
Para el ejemplo de copia más largo (g)(i): disminuye el valor.
Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,42 mm
3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia>
Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de $\pm 1,5\%$
Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Die Werte einstellen.
Für die kürzere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (f)(h): Den Wert erhöhen.
Für die längere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (g)(i): Den Wert verringern.
Änderung pro Schritt: 0,42 mm
3. Eine Testkopie erstellen.
4. Die Schritte 1 bis 3 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.
<Bezugswert>
Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb $\pm 1,5\%$
Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Regolare i valori.
Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza inferiore (f)(h): aumenta il valore.
Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza superiore (g)(i): riduce il valore.
Entità modifica per passo: 0,42 mm
3. Eseguire una copia di prova
4. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 1 a 3 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra $\pm 1,5\%$
Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra $\pm 1,5\%$

2. 調整数値。
对于更短长度的复印样本 (f) (h): 增大数值。
对于更长长度的复印样本 (g) (i): 减小数值。
按步骤的更改量: 0.42mm
3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复上述步骤 1 至 3 直到复印样本上的线 (2) (3) 的间隙显示标准值。
<标准值>
对于副扫描方向, 线 (2) 的垂直间隙: $\pm 1.5\%$ 内
对于主扫描方向, 线 (3) 的水平间隙: $\pm 1.5\%$ 内

2. 設定値を調整する。
長さが短い場合 コピーサンプル (f) (h): 設定値を上げる
長さが長い場合 コピーサンプル (g) (i): 設定値を下げる
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.42mm
3. テストコピーを行う。
4. コピーサンプルの線 (2) (3) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。
<基準値>
副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ: $\pm 1.5\%$ 以内
主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ: $\pm 1.5\%$ 以内



[Checking the DP leading edge timing]

1. Check the gap between line (1) on original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.
<Reference value> Vertical gap of line (2): within ± 2.5 mm

Adjusting the DP leading edge timing.

1. Set the maintenance mode U071, and adjust the copy example for each of single, duplex and 180-degree rotation copying respectively.
For the single copying, adjusts the ADJUST DATA1 (leading edge).
For the duplex copying, adjusts the ADJUST DATA3 (rear side main-scan direction).
For the 180-degree rotation copying, adjusts the ADJUST DATA5 (180-degree rotation).

[Vérification de la synchronisation du bord avant du DP]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.
<Valeur de référence> Écart vertical de la ligne (2) : ± 2.5 mm

Réglage de la synchronisation du bord avant du DP.

1. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U071 et régler l'exemple de copie pour la copie recto, la copie recto-verso et la copie avec rotation de 180 degrés respectivement.
Pour la copie recto, régler ADJUST DATA1 (régler données1) (bord avant).
Pour la copie recto-verso, régler ADJUST DATA3 (régler données3) (direction du balayage principal - arrière).
Pour la copie avec rotation de 180 degrés, régler ADJUST DATA5 (régler données5) (rotation de 180 degrés).

[Verificación de la sincronización de extremo guía del DP]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.
<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de $\pm 2,5$ mm

Ajuste de la sincronización de extremo guía del DP.

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento U071 y ajuste el ejemplo de copia para el copiado por una cara, para el copiado dúplex y para el copiado con giro de 180 grados, respectivamente.
Para el copiado por una cara, ajuste ADJUST DATA1 (ajustar datos 1) (extremo guía).
Para el copiado dúplex, ajuste ADJUST DATA3 (ajustar datos 3) (dirección de exploración principal del reverso).
Para el copiado con giro de 180 grados, ajuste ADJUST DATA5 (ajustar datos 5) (giro de 180 grados).

[Prüfen des Vorderkantentaktes des DP]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.
<Bezugswert> Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb $\pm 2,5$ mm

Einstellen des Vorderkantentaktes des DP.

1. Den Wartungsmodus U071 einstellen und das Kopierbeispiel für jede Einzelkopie, Duplexkopie und um 180 Grad gedrehte Kopie einstellen.
Für die Einzelkopie ADJUST DATA1 (EINSTELLDATEN1) (Vorderkante).
Für die Duplexkopie ADJUST DATA3 (EINSTELLDATEN3) (Hauptscanrichtung hinten).
Für die um 180 Grad gedrehte Kopie ADJUST DATA5 (EINSTELLDATEN5) (Drehung um 180 Grad) einstellen.

[Verifica della fasatura del bordo di entrata]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.
<Valore di riferimento> Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra $\pm 2,5$ mm

Regolazione della fasatura del bordo di entrata.

1. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U071 e regolare l'esempio di copia rispettivamente per ogni esecuzione di copia singola, duplex e in rotazione di 180 gradi.
Per la copia singola, regola ADJUST DATA1 (REGOLAZIONE DATI1) (bordo di entrata).
Per la copia duplex, regola ADJUST DATA3 (REGOLAZIONE DATI3) (orientamento scansione principale lato posteriore).
Per la copia in rotazione di 180 gradi, regola ADJUST DATA5 (REGOLAZIONE DATI5) (rotazione 180 gradi).

[检查 DP 前边定时]

1. 检查原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 之间的间隙。如果间隙超过标准值, 按照下列步骤调整间隙。
<标准值> 线 (2) 的垂直间隙: ± 2.5 mm 内

调整 DP 前边定时。

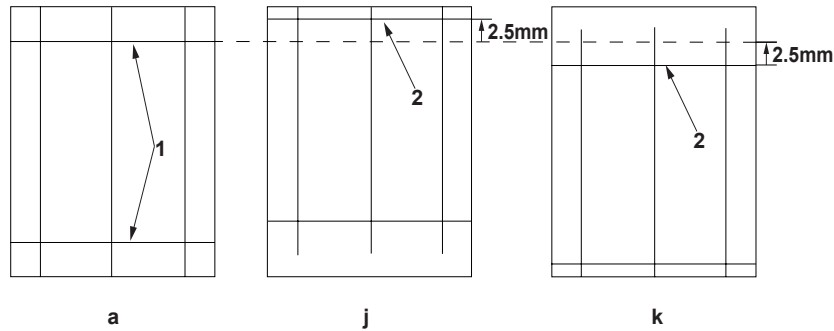
1. 设定维修模式 U071, 并分别调整每次单面、双面和 180 度旋转复印的复印样本。
对于单面复印, 调整 ADJUST DATA1 (调整数据 1) (前边)。
对于双面复印, 调整 ADJUST DATA3 (调整数据 3) (后部主扫描方向)。
对于 180 度旋转复印, 调整 ADJUST DATA5 (调整数据 5) (180 度旋转)。

[DP 先端タイミング確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
<基準値> 線 (2) の上下ずれ: ± 2.5 mm 以内

DP 先端タイミング調整

1. メンテナンスモード U071 をセットし、コピーサンプルの片面、両面、180 度回転別に調整する。
片面と両面の表の場合、ADJUST DATA1 (先端) の調整を行う。
両面の裏面の場合、ADJUST DATA3 (裏先端) の調整を行う。
180 度回転の場合、ADJUST DATA5 (180 度回転) の調整を行う。



2. Adjust the values.

For the faster leading edge timing, copy examples (j): Decreases the value.

For the slower leading edge timing, copy examples (k): Increases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.17 mm

3. Perform a test copy.

4. Repeat the steps 1 to 3 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.

<Reference value> Vertical gap of line (2): within ± 2.5 mm

2. Régler les valeurs.

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus rapide (j) : diminuer la valeur.

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus lente (k) : augmenter la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,17 mm

3. Effectuer une copie de test.

4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence> Écart vertical de la ligne (2) : ± 2.5 mm

2. Ajuste los valores.

Para una sincronización más rápida de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (j): disminuye el valor.

Para una sincronización más lenta de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (k): aumenta el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,17 mm

3. Haga una copia de prueba.

4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de $\pm 2,5$ mm

2. Die Werte einstellen.

Für den schnelleren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (j): Den Wert verringern.

Für den langsameren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (k): Den Wert erhöhen.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,17 mm

3. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

4. Die Schritte 1 bis 3 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.

<Bezugswert> Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb $\pm 2,5$ mm

2. Regolare i valori.

Per accelerare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (j): riduce il valore.

Per rallentare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (k): aumenta il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,17 mm

3. Eseguire una copia di prova

4. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 1 a 3 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento> Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra $\pm 2,5$ mm

2. 調整数值。

对于更快的前边定时, 复印样本 (j): 减小数值。

对于更慢的前边定时, 复印样本 (k): 增大数值。

按步骤的更改量: 0.17mm

3. 进行测试复印。

4. 重复上述步骤 1 至 3 直到复印样本上的线 (2) 的间隙显示标准值。

<标准值> 线 (2) 的垂直间隙: ± 2.5 mm 内

2. 設定値を調整する。

先端タイミングが早い場合 コピーサンプル (j): 設定値を下げる

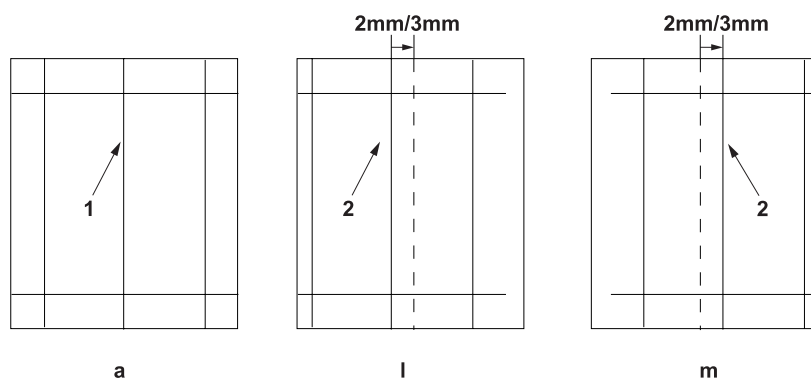
先端タイミングが遅い場合 コピーサンプル (k): 設定値を上げる

1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.17mm

3. テストコピーを行う。

4. コピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。

<基準値> 線 (2) の上下ずれ: ± 2.5 mm 以内



[Checking the DP original center line]

1. Check the gap between center line (1) on original (a) and center line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value> Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying: ± 2 mm
Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying: ± 3 mm

[Vérification de l'axe de l'original du DP]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre l'axe (1) de l'original (a) et l'axe (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence> Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto : ± 2 mm
Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso : ± 3 mm

[Verificación de la línea de centro del original del DP]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea de centro (1) del original (a) y la línea de centro (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia> Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara: ± 2 mm
Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex: ± 3 mm

[Prüfen der Originalmittellinie des DP]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Mittellinie (1) des Originals (a) und der Mittellinie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert> Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie: ± 2 mm
Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie: ± 3 mm

[Verifica della linea centrale del DP]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea centrale (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea centrale (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento> Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola: ± 2 mm
Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex: ± 3 mm

[检查 DP 原稿中心线]

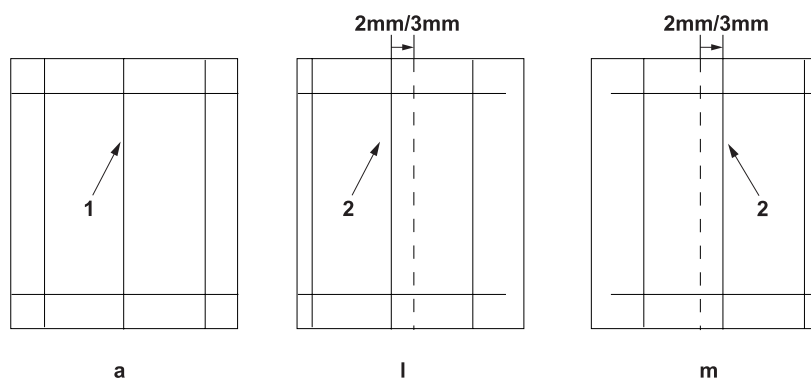
1. 检查原稿 (a) 中心线 (1) 和复印样本中心线 (2) 之间的间隙。如果间隙超过标准值，按照下列步骤调整间隙。

<标准值> 单面复印时中心线 (2) 的水平差距: ± 2 mm
双面复印时中心线 (2) 的水平差距: ± 3 mm

[DP 原稿センター位置確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の中心線 (1) とコピーサンプルの中心線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値> 片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ: ± 2 mm 以内
両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ: ± 3 mm 以内



Adjusting the DP original center line.

1. Set the maintenance mode U072, and adjust the copy example for each of single, duplex and 180-degree rotation copying respectively.
For the single copying or the surface of the duplex copying, adjusts the ADJUST DATA1 (surface).
For the rear side of the duplex copying, adjusts the ADJUST DATA2 (rear side).
For the 180-degree rotation copying, adjusts the ADJUST DATA3 (180-degree rotation).

Réglage de l'axe de l'original du DP.

1. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U072 et régler l'exemple de copie pour la copie recto, la copie recto-verso et la copie avec rotation de 180 degrés respectivement.
Pour la copie recto ou la surface de la copie recto-verso, régler ADJUST DATA1 (régler données1) (surface).
Pour le verso de la copie recto-verso, régler ADJUST DATA2 (régler données2) (verso).
Pour la copie avec rotation de 180 degrés, régler ADJUST DATA3 (régler données3) (rotation de 180 degrés).

Ajuste de la línea de centro del original del DP.

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento U072 y ajuste el ejemplo de copia para el copiado por una cara, para el copiado dúplex y para el copiado con giro de 180 grados, respectivamente.
Para el copiado por una cara o para el anverso en el copiado dúplex, ajuste ADJUST DATA1 (ajustar datos 1) (anverso).
Para el reverso en el copiado dúplex, ajuste ADJUST DATA2 (ajustar datos 2) (reverso).
Para el copiado con giro de 180 grados, ajuste ADJUST DATA3 (ajustar datos 3) (giro de 180 grados).

Einstellen der Originalmittellinie des DP.

1. Den Wartungsmodus U072 einstellen und das Kopierbeispiel für jede Einzelkopie, Duplexkopie und um 180 Grad gedrehte Kopie einstellen.
Für die Einzelkopie oder die Oberfläche der Duplexkopie ADJUST DATA1 (EINSTELLDATEN1) (Oberfläche) einstellen.
Für die Rückseite der Duplexkopie ADJUST DATA2 (EINSTELLDATEN2) (Rückseite) einstellen.
Für die um 180 Grad gedrehte Kopie ADJUST DATA3 (EINSTELLDATEN3) (Drehung um 180 Grad) einstellen.

Regolazione della linea centrale del DP.

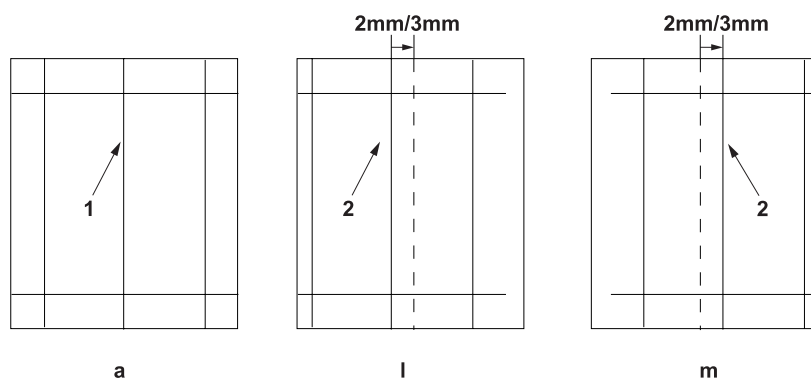
1. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U072 e regolare l'esempio di copia rispettivamente per ogni esecuzione di copia singola, duplex e in rotazione di 180 gradi.
Per la copia singola o per la superficie della copia duplex, regola ADJUST DATA1 (REGOLAZIONE DATI1) (superficie).
Per il lato posteriore della copia duplex, regola ADJUST DATA2 (REGOLAZIONE DATI2) (lato posteriore).
Per la copia in rotazione di 180 gradi, regola ADJUST DATA3 (REGOLAZIONE DATI3) (rotazione 180 gradi).

調整 DP 原稿中心線。

1. 設定維修模式 U072，并分別調整每次單面、雙面和 180 度旋轉複印的複印樣本。
對於單面複印或雙面複印表面，調整 ADJUST DATA1（調整數據 1）（表面）。
對於雙面複印的後部，調整 ADJUST DATA2（調整數據 2）（後部）。
對於 180 度旋轉複印，調整 ADJUST DATA3（調整數據 3）（180 度旋轉）。

DP 原稿センター位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U072 をセットし、コピーサンプルの片面、両面、180 度回転別に調整を行う。
片面の場合、両面の表の場合、ADJUST DATA1（表面）を調整する。
両面の裏の場合、ADJUST DATA2（裏面）を調整する。
180 度回転の場合、ADJUST DATA3（180 度回転）を調整する。



2. Adjust the values.

If the center moves more front, copy example (l): Increases the value.

If the center moves inner, copy sample (m): Decreases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.085 mm

3. Perform a test copy.

4. Repeat the steps 1 to 3 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.

<Reference value> Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying: ± 2 mm

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying: ± 3 mm

2. Régler les valeurs.

Pour l'exemple de copie (l) dont l'axe se déplace davantage vers l'avant : augmenter la valeur.

Pour l'exemple de copie (m) dont l'axe se déplace vers l'intérieur : diminuer la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,085 mm

3. Effectuer une copie de test.

4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence> Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto : ± 2 mm

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso : ± 3 mm

2. Ajuste los valores.

Si el centro se desplaza más hacia el frente, ejemplo de copia (l): aumenta el valor.

Si el centro se desplaza hacia dentro, ejemplo de copia (m): disminuye el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,085 mm

3. Haga una copia de prueba.

4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara: ± 2 mm

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex: ± 3 mm

2. Die Werte einstellen.

Wenn die Mitte nach vorne verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (l): Den Wert erhöhen.

Wenn die Mitte nach innen verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (m): Den Wert verringern.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,085 mm

3. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

4. Die Schritte 1 bis 3 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.

<Bezugswert> Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie: ± 2 mm

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie: ± 3 mm

2. Regolare i valori.

Se il centro si sposta più avanti, esempio di copia (l): aumenta il valore.

Se il centro si sposta verso l'interno, esempio di copia (m): riduce il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,085 mm

3. Eseguire una copia di prova

4. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 1 a 3 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento> Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola: ± 2 mm

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex: ± 3 mm

2. 調整数値。

如果中心移动更靠前，复印样本 (l)：增大数值。

如果中心移动更靠内，复印样本 (m)：减小数值。

按步骤的更改量：0.085mm

3. 进行测试复印。

4. 重复上述步骤 1 至 3 直到复印样本上的线 (2) 的间隙显示标准值。

<标准值> 单面复印时中心线 (2) 的水平差距： ± 2 mm

双面复印时中心线 (2) 的水平差距： ± 3 mm

2. 設定値を調整する。

センターが手前にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (l)：設定値を上げる

センターが奥にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (m) 設定値を下げる

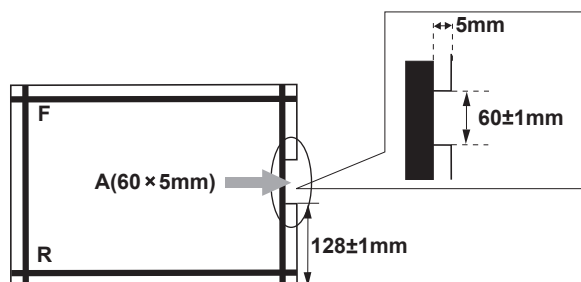
1 ステップ当たりの変化量：0.085mm

3. テストコピーを行う。

4. コピーサンプルの中心線 (2) ずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。

<基準値> 片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ： ± 2 mm 以内

両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ： ± 3 mm 以内



[Adjustment using the DP auto adjustment original]

1. Direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original upward, and set the original from the place where F and R are marked.
2. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the DP (FACE UP) key, the INPUT key and the START key in order to adjust the surface.
3. When RESULT OK 00 appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment is failed. Check the original set position and repeat the steps 1 to 2 until RESULT OK 00 appears. **For details, see the service manual.**

[Réglage à l'aide de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP]

1. Diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le haut, puis placer l'original à partir de l'emplacement des repères F et R.
2. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U411. Appuyer sur les touches DP (FACE UP) (DP - face vers le haut), INPUT (entrer) et START (démarrer) pour régler la surface.
3. Lorsque le message RESULT OK 00 (résultat OK 00) s'affiche sur l'écran, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier la position de réglage de l'original et répéter les étapes 1 et 2 jusqu'à ce que le message RESULT OK 00 (résultat OK 00) s'affiche. **Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.**

[Ajuste usando el original de ajuste automático del DP]

1. Dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia arriba, y coloque el original a partir del sitio en que están marcados F y R.
2. Active el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse la tecla DP (FACE UP) (cara arriba), la tecla INPUT (entrada) y la tecla START (inicio) para ajustar el anverso.
3. Cuando aparece en la pantalla RESULT OK 00 (resultado correcto 00), el ajuste ha finalizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición del original colocado y repita los pasos 1 a 2 hasta que aparezca RESULT OK 00 (resultado correcto 00). **Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.**

[Einstellung mit der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP]

1. F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach oben zeigen und das Original an die mit F und R markierte Stelle setzen.
2. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einstellen. Die Tasten DP (FACE UP) (DP SCHRIFTSEITE NACH OBEN), INPUT (EINGABE) und START der Reihe nach drücken, um die Oberfläche einzustellen.
3. Bei richtigem Ergebnis wird RESULT OK 00 (ERGEBNIS OK 00) auf der Anzeige angezeigt, und die Einstellung ist abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Die eingestellte Originalposition prüfen und die Schritte 1 und 2 wiederholen, bis RESULT OK 00 (ERGEBNIS OK 00) angezeigt wird. **Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.**

[Regolazione con l'autoregolazione originale DP]

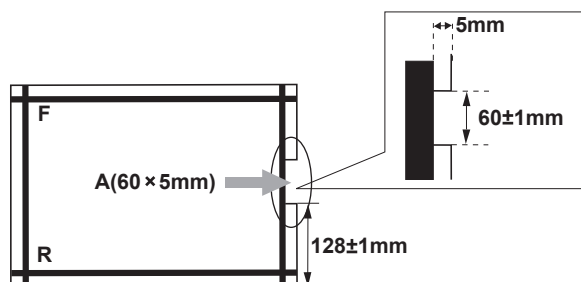
1. Orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso l'alto e disporre l'originale rispetto ai punti in cui sono contrassegnati F e R.
2. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U411. Premere il tasto DP (FACE UP, FACCIA TA SU), il tasto INPUT (IMMETTI) e il tasto START (AVVIA) per regolare la superficie.
3. Quando sul display appare RESULT OK 00 (RISULTATO OK 00), la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni da 1 a 3 fino a quando non viene visualizzato RESULT OK 00 (RISULTATO OK 00). **Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.**

[使用 DP 自动调整原稿的调整]

1. 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向上，并在标有 F 和 R 的地方设定原稿。
2. 设定维修模式 U411。按 DP (FACE UP) (正面朝上) 键、INPUT (输入) 键和 START (开始) 键以调整表面。
3. 屏幕上出现 RESULT OK 00 (结果正常 00) 时，调整完成。
如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX)，则调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 1 至 2，直到 RESULT OK 00 (结果正常 00) 出现。
请参见维修手册。

[DP 自動調整原稿による調整]

1. DP 自動調整原稿の F、R を上に向け、F、R が書かれている方から DP 本体へセットする。
2. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、DP (FACE UP) キー、INPUT キー、START の順に押し、表面の調整を行う。
3. ディスプレイに RESULT OK 00 が表示されれば調整完了となる。
ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、RESULT OK 00 が表示されるまで手順 1 ～ 2 を繰り返す。
詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。



4. After completing the surface adjustment, direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original downward and set the original by inserting the side where the F and R are marked into the DP first.
5. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the DP (FACE DOWN) key, NORMAL TARGET key, START INPUT key and START in order to adjust the rear surface.
6. When RESULT OK 00 appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment is failed. Check the original set position and repeat the steps 4 to 5 until RESULT OK 00 appears. **For details, see the service manual.**

4. Une fois le réglage de la surface effectué, diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le bas et placer l'original en introduisant en premier dans le DP le côté sur lequel F et R sont indiqués.
5. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U411. Appuyer sur les touches DP (FACE DOWN) (DP - FACE VERS LE BAS), NORMAL TARGET (CIBLE NORMALE), START INPUT (DÉMARRER ENTRÉE) puis START (DÉMARRER) afin de régler la surface arrière.
6. Lorsque le message RESULT OK 00 (résultat OK 00) s'affiche sur l'écran, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier la position de réglage de l'original et répéter les étapes 4 et 5 jusqu'à ce que le message RESULT OK 00 (résultat OK 00) s'affiche. **Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.**

4. Una vez hecho el ajuste del anverso, dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia abajo y coloque el original insertando en el DP, en primer lugar, el lado en el que están marcados F y R.
5. Active el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse las teclas DP (FACE DOWN) (CARA ABAJO), NORMAL TARGET (DESTINO NORMAL), START INPUT (INICIAR ENTRADA) y START (INICIO) para ajustar el reverso.
6. Cuando aparece en la pantalla RESULT OK 00 (resultado correcto 00), el ajuste ha finalizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición del original colocado y repita los pasos 4 a 5 hasta que aparezca RESULT OK 00 (resultado correcto 00). **Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.**

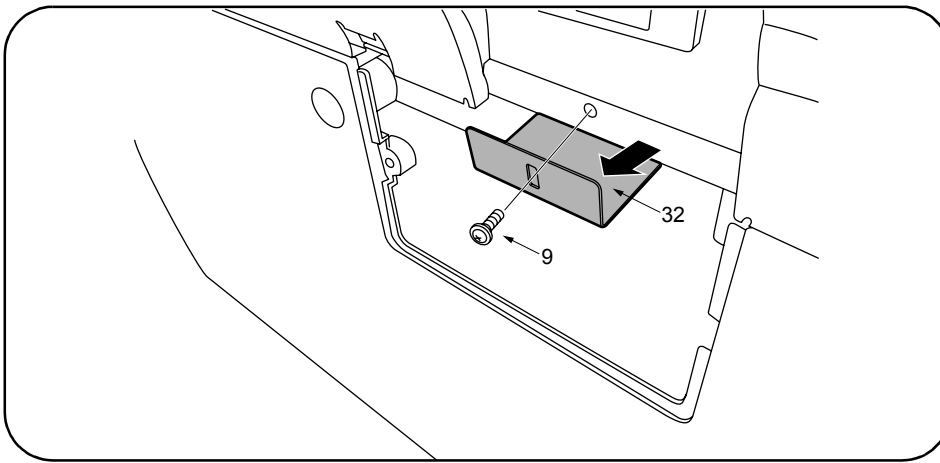
4. Nach dem Abschluss der Oberflächeneinstellung F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach unten zeigen und das Original einstellen, indem die mit F und R markierte Seite zuerst in den DP eingeführt wird.
5. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einstellen. Die Tasten DP (FACE DOWN) (SCHRIFTSEITE NACH UNTEN), NORMAL TARGET (NORMALZIEL), START INPUT (EINGABE) und START der Reihe nach drücken, um die hintere Oberfläche einzustellen.
6. Bei richtigem Ergebnis wird RESULT OK 00 (ERGEBNIS OK 00) auf der Anzeige angezeigt, und die Einstellung ist abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Die eingestellte Originalposition prüfen und die Schritte 4 und 5 wiederholen, bis RESULT OK 00 (ERGEBNIS OK 00) angezeigt wird. **Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.**

4. Una volta conclusa la regolazione della superficie, orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso il basso e disporre l'originale inserendo nel DP prima il lato su cui sono contrassegnati F e R.
5. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U411. Premere il tasto DP (FACE DOWN, FACCIAA GIÙ), il tasto NORMAL TARGET (DESTINAZIONE NORMALE), il tasto START INPUT (AVVIA INPUT) e START (AVVIA) per regolare la superficie posteriore.
6. Quando sul display appare RESULT OK 00 (RISULTATO OK 00), la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni da 4 a 5 fino a quando non viene visualizzato RESULT OK 00 (RISULTATO OK 00). **Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.**

4. 完成表面调整后，将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向下，并首先将标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。
5. 设定维修模式 U411。按 DP FACE DOWN（正面朝下）键、NORMAL TARGET（常规目标）键、START INPUT（开始输入）键和 START（启动）键以调整后表面。
6. 屏幕上出现 RESULT OK 00（结果正常 00）时，调整完成。
如果出现 ERROR XX（错误 XX），则调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 4 至 5，直到 RESULT OK 00（结果正常 00）出现。
请参见维修手册。

4. 表面の調整完了後、DP 自動調整原稿の F、R を下に向け、F、R が書かれている方から DP 本体へセットする。
5. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、DP (FACE DOWN) キー、NORMAL TARGET キー、START キー、INPUT キー、START の順に押し、裏面の調整を行う。
6. ディスプレイに RESULT OK 00 が表示されれば調整完了となる。
ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、RESULT OK 00 が表示されるまで手順 4～5 を繰り返す。
詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR PAPER FEEDER



English Changing installation procedure of the paper feeder

Step 6 of page 3 is changed as below:

6. Remove the screw (9) from the MFP to detach the connector cover (32).
(Move to step 7.)

Français Changement apporté à la procédure d'installation de l'alimenteur de papier

L'étape 6 de la page 3 est changée de la façon décrite ci-dessous:

6. Retirer la vis (9) du MFP pour détacher le couvercle du connecteur (32).
(Passer à l'étape 7.)

Español Cambio del procedimiento de instalación del alimentador de papel

El paso 6 de la página 3 se cambia de la siguiente forma:

6. Saque el tornillo (9) del MFP para desmontar la cubierta del conector (32).
(Vaya al paso 7.)

Deutsch Änderung des Installationsverfahrens für Papierzuführer

Schritt 6 auf Seite 3 wurde wie folgt geändert:

6. Die Schraube (9) vom MFP herausdrehen, um die Anschlussabdeckung (32) abzunehmen.
(Zu Schritt 7 übergehen.)

Italiano Modifica della procedura per l'installazione dell'unità di alimentazione carta

Il passo 6 a pagina 3 è stato modificato nel seguente modo:

6. Rimuovere la vite (9) dall'MFP per staccare il pannello del connettore (32).
(Passare al passo 7.)

简体中文 供纸盒安装步骤的变更

第 3 页的步骤 6 内容变更如下。

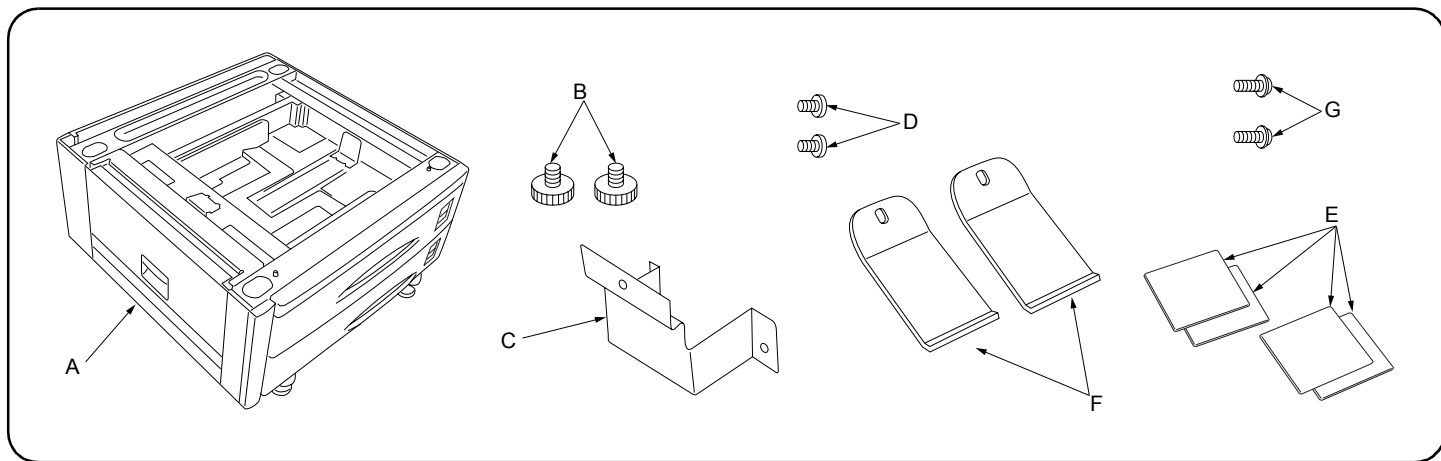
6. 将 MFP 本体后部的 1 个螺丝 (9) 卸下, 然后取下连接器盖 (32)。
(进行步骤 7 的操作。)

TONER

日本語 ペーパーフィーダ設置手順書の変更

3 ページ手順 6 を次のように変更します。

6. MFP 本体後部のビス (9) 1 本を外し、コネクターカバー (32) を取り外す。
(手順 7 に進む)



English

Supplied parts

A	Paper feeder.....	1
B	Pin.....	2
C	Retainer.....	1
D	Taptite S binding screw, M4 × 08.....	2
E	Paper size plate.....	4

F	Stay.....	2
G	TP screw, M4 × 10.....	2

Procedure

Be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the paper feeder.

Français

Pièces fournies

A	Bureau papier.....	1
B	Broche.....	2
C	Élément de retenue.....	1
D	Borne de raccordement Taptite S, M4 × 08.....	2

E	Plaque de format de papier.....	4
F	Support.....	2
G	Vis TP, M4 × 10.....	2

Procédure

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du bureau papier.

Español

Partes suministradas

A	Alimentador de papel.....	1
B	Clavija.....	2
C	Retén.....	1
D	Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S, M4 × 08.....	2
E	Placa de tamaño de papel.....	4

F	Base.....	2
G	Tornillo TP, M4 × 10.....	2

Procedimiento

Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del MFP del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el alimentador de papel.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A	Papiereinzug.....	1
B	Stift.....	2
C	Halterung.....	1
D	Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube, M4 × 08.....	2
E	Papierformatplatte.....	4

F	Stütze.....	2
G	TP-Schraube, M4 × 10.....	2

Vorgang

Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Papiereinzugs beginnen.

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A	Unità di alimentazione della carta.....	1
B	Perno.....	2
C	Fermo.....	1
D	Vite di serraggio Taptite S, M4 × 08.....	2
E	Piastra formato carta.....	4

F	Sospensione.....	2
G	Vite TP, M4 × 10.....	2

Procedura

Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione dell'unità di alimentazione della carta, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e di disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

简体中文

附属品

A	供纸工作台.....	1
B	固定插销.....	2
C	安装板.....	1
D	连接用螺纹紧固 S 螺丝 M4 × 08.....	2

E	复印纸尺寸托板.....	4
F	防倒金属件.....	2
G	TP 螺丝 M4 × 10.....	2

[安装步骤]

安装供纸工作台时, 必须先关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关, 并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

日本語

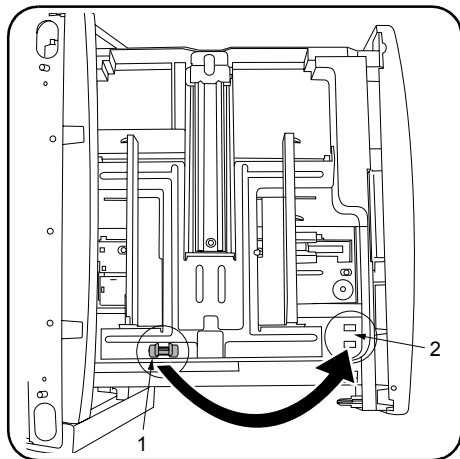
付属部品

A	ペーパーフィーダ.....	1
B	ピン.....	2
C	取付板.....	1
D	ビス M4 × 08 バインドタップタイト S.....	2

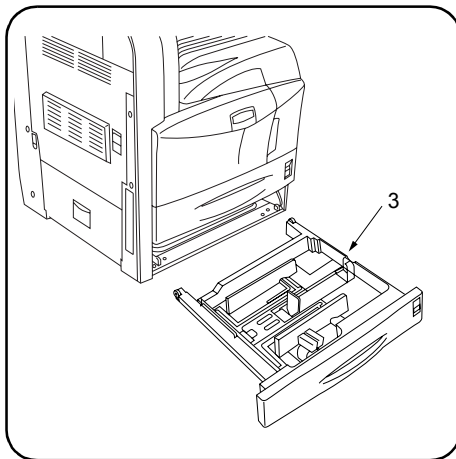
E	ペーパーサイズプレート.....	4
F	転倒防止金具 (日本仕様では使用しない).....	2
G	ビス M4 × 10TP (日本仕様では使用しない).....	2

[取付手順]

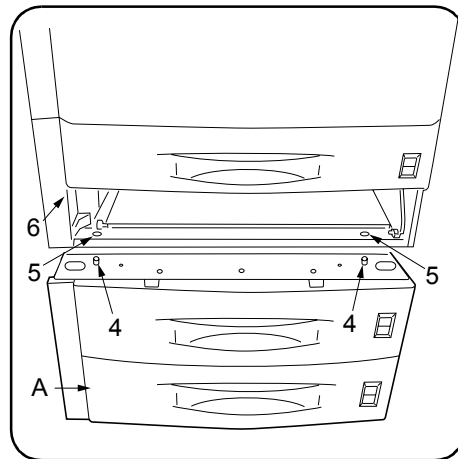
ペーパーフィーダを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。



Note
Remove the lift plate stopper (1) from each paper cassette and attach it to the storage location (2).



1. Remove the lower paper cassette (3) from the MFP.



2. Place the MFP (6) on top of the paper feeder (A) with the positioning pins (4) at the front left and right of the paper feeder (A) aligned with the holes (5) in the base of the MFP.

Remarque

Retirer la butée de plaque d'élévation (1) de chaque tiroir et la fixer à l'emplacement de rangement (2).

1. Retirer le tiroir inférieur (3) du MFP.

2. Placer le MFP (6) sur le bureau papier (A) en alignant les broches de positionnement (4) situées aux côtés avant gauche et droit du bureau papier (A) sur les orifices (5) à la base du MFP.

Nota

Quite el tope de placa de elevación (1) de cada cajón de papel y fije en el lugar de almacenamiento (2).

1. Quite el cajón de papel inferior (3) del MFP.

2. Coloque el MFP (6) sobre el alimentador de papel (A) con las clavijas de posicionamiento (4) de la parte frontal izquierda y derecha del alimentador de papel (A) alineadas con los huecos (5) de la base del MFP.

Hinweis

Entfernen Sie den Hebeplattenanschlag (1) von jeder Papierlade, und bringen Sie ihn an der Speicherposition (2) an.

1. Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade (3) vom MFP ab.

2. Setzen Sie den MFP (6) auf den Papiereinzug (A), wobei die Positionsstifte (4) vorne links und rechts am Papiereinzug (A) mit den Löchern (5) in der Basis des MFP ausgerichtet sein müssen.

Nota

Rimuovere il fermo della piastra di sollevamento (1) da ciascun cassetto della carta e fissarlo nella posizione di immagazzinaggio (2).

1. Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta (3) dall'MFP.

2. Installare l'MFP (6) sopra l'unità di alimentazione della carta (A), mantenendo i perni di posizionamento (4) situati sul lato anteriore sinistro e destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) stessa allineati con i fori (5) situati sulla base dell'MFP.

注意

拆下各供纸盒的升降板挡块 (1)，并安装在保管场所 (2) 上。

1. 取出 MFP 主机下部供纸盒 (3)。

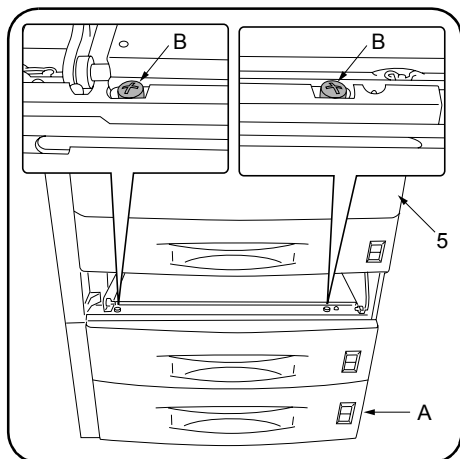
2. 供纸工作台 (A) 的左右前面的各插销 (4) 分别对准 MFP 主机底面的各相应销孔 (5) 后，将 MFP 主机 (6) 放在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

注意

各カセットのリフト板ストッパ (1) を外し、保管場所 (2) に取り付けます。

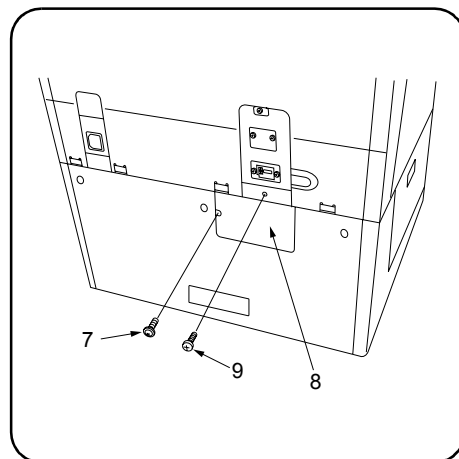
1. MFP 本体の下段カセット (3) を取り外す。

2. ペーパーフィーダ (A) の左右前方の各ピン (4) と MFP 本体のベースの穴 (5) が合うように、ペーパーフィーダ (A) に MFP 本体 (6) を載せる。



3. Secure the MFP to the paper feeder (A) using the two pins (B).

4. Refit the lower paper cassette (3) removed in step 1 to the MFP.



5. Remove the screw (7) and then the cover (8) from the rear of the paper feeder.
6. Remove the screw (9) from the MFP.

3. Fixer le MFP sur le bureau papier (A) à l'aide des deux broches (B).

4. Remettre en place sur le MFP le tiroir inférieur (3) qui a été retiré auparavant à l'étape 1.

5. Retirer la vis (7) puis le couvercle (8) de l'arrière du bureau papier.
6. Retirer la vis (9) du MFP.

3. Asegure el MFP al alimentador de papel (A) usando las dos clavijas (B).

4. Vuelva a colocar el cajón de papel inferior (3) desmontado en el paso 1 en el MFP.

5. Quite el tornillo (7) y luego la tapa (8) de la parte trasera del alimentador de papel.
6. Quite el tornillo (9) del MFP.

3. Befestigen Sie den MFP mit den zwei Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).

4. Bringen Sie die untere Papierlade (3), die in Schritt 1 entfernt wurde, erneut am MFP an.

5. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (7) und dann die Abdeckung (8) von der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs.
6. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (9) vom MFP.

3. Assicurare l'MFP all'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) utilizzando i due perni (B).

4. Reinserire nell'MFP il cassetto inferiore della carta (3) rimosso al punto 1.

5. Rimuovere la vite (7) e quindi il pannello (8) dal retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.
6. Rimuovere la vite (9) dal retro dell'MFP.

3. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将 MFP 主机固定在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

4. 在步骤 1 取下的 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (3) 装回原来的位置。

5. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (7)，拆下供纸工作台的后部盖板 (8)。
6. 拆除 MFP 主机后部的 1 个螺丝 (9)。

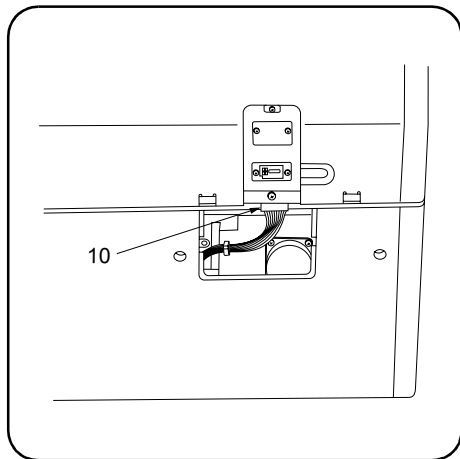
3. ピン (B) 2 本で MFP 本体をペーパーフィーダ (A) に固定する。

4. 手順 1 で取り外した MFP 本体の下段カセット (3) を元に戻す。

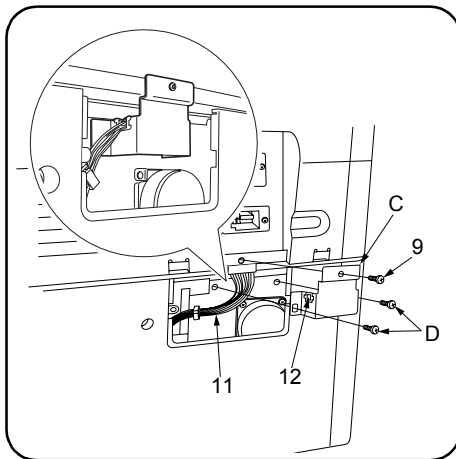
5. ビス (7) 1 本を外し、ペーパーフィーダ後部のカバー (8) を取り外す。
6. MFP 本体後部のビス (9) 1 本を外す。

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua



7. Insert the 12-P connector (10) of the paper feeder into the connector on the MFP.



8. Route the harness (11) through the clamp (12) on the retainer (C).

Note

Since the harness (11) may touch the motor, be sure to pass the harness (11) through the clamp (12).

9. Fit the retainer (C) using the screw (9) removed in step 6 and the two M4 × 08 Taptite S binding screws (D).

10. Refit the cover (8) using the screw (7) removed in step 5.

7. Insérer le connecteur à douze broches (10) du bureau papier dans le connecteur du MFP.

8. Faire passer le faisceau de câbles (11) par le collier (12) de l'élément de retenue (C).

Remarque

Comme le faisceau de câbles (11) risque de toucher le moteur, veiller à faire passer le faisceau de câbles (11) par le collier (12).

9. Installer l'élément de retenue (C) à l'aide de la vis (9) retirée à l'étape 6 et les deux M4 × 08 bornes de raccordement Taptite S (D).

10. Remettre le couvercle (8) en place à l'aide de la vis (7) retirée auparavant à l'étape 5.

7. Inserte el conector de 12 clavijas (10) del alimentador de papel en el conector del MFP.

8. Inserte el soporte (11) a través del sujetador (12) del retén (C).

Nota

Como el soporte (11) puede tocar el motor, asegúrese de pasar el soporte (11) a través del sujetador (12).

9. Coloque el retén (C) utilizando el tornillo (9) removido en el paso 6 y los dos tornillos de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 08 (D).

10. Vuelva a colocar la tapa (8) usando el tornillo (7) quitado en el paso 5.

7. Stecken Sie den 12poligen Steckverbinder (10) des Papiereinzugs in die Buchse am MFP.

8. Führen Sie den Kabelbaum (11) durch die Klemme (12) auf der Halterung (C).

Hinweis

Da der Kabelbaum (11) den Motor berühren kann, führen Sie den Kabelbaum (11) unbedingt durch die Klemme (12).

9. Bringen Sie die Halterung (C) an, indem Sie die Schraube (9) benutzen, die Sie in Schritt 6 entfernt haben, sowie die zwei M4 × 08 Taptite S-Befestigungsschrauben (D).

10. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (8) wieder mit der in Schritt (7) entfernten Schraube 5 an.

7. Inserire il connettore a 12 piedini (10) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta nel connettore situato sull'MFP.

8. Far passare i cavi (11) attraverso il morsetto (12) sul fermo (C).

Nota

Poiché i cavi (11) potrebbero toccare il motore, assicurarsi di farli passare attraverso il morsetto (12).

9. Inserire il fermo (C) utilizzando la vite (9) rimossa al passo 6 e le due viti di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 08 (D).

10. Inserire il pannello posteriore (8) usando le viti (7) rimosse al punto 5.

7. 将供纸工作台的 12 脚接头 (10) 接于 MFP 主机上的接口。

8. 将电线 (11) 插入安装板 (C) 上的夹钳 (12) 中而进行电线处理。

注意

务必将电线 (11) 穿过夹钳 (12), 以免马达碰触电线 (11)。

9. 用步骤 6 中拆除的 1 个螺丝 (9) 和 2 个连接用螺纹紧固 S 螺丝 M4 × 08 (D) 来进行安装板 (C) 的安装工作。

10. 用步骤 5 拆除的 1 个螺丝 (7) 将盖板 (8) 装回原来的位置。

7. ペーパーフィーダの 12P コネクタ (10) を MFP 本体のコネクターに接続する。

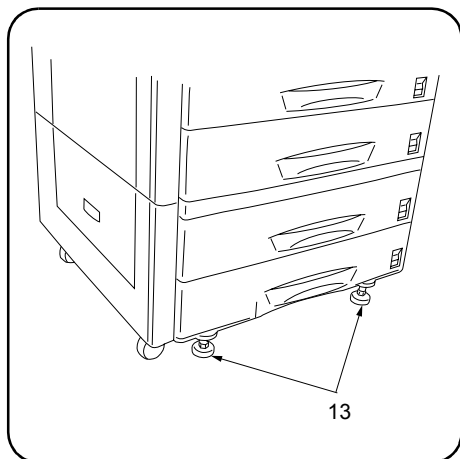
8. 電線 (11) を取付板に付いているクランプ (12) に挿入し、電線処理をおこなう。

注意

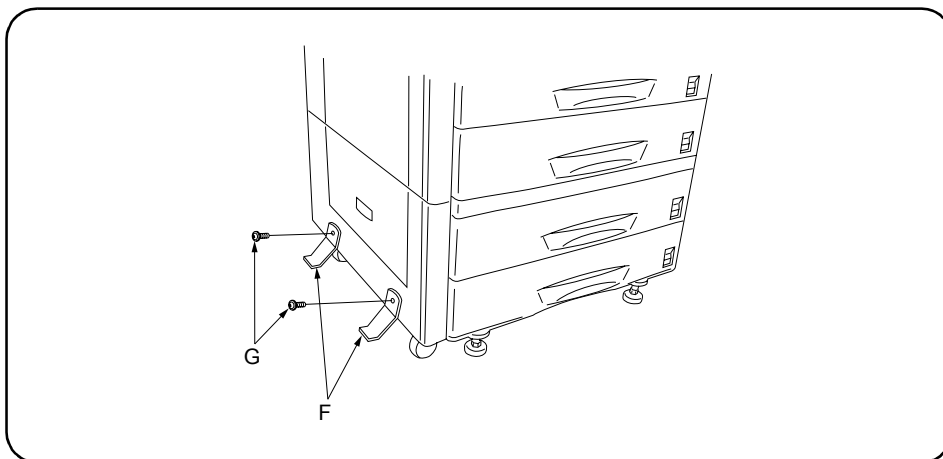
電線 (11) がモータに接触する恐れがあるので、必ずクランプ (12) に電線 (11) を通すこと。

9. 手順 6 で取り外したビス (9) 1 本と、ビス M4 × 08 バインドタップタイト S (D) 2 本で取付板 (C) を取り付ける。

10. 手順 5 で取り外したビス (7) 1 本でカバー (8) を元通りに取り付ける。



11. Turn the four adjusters (13) until they reach the floor and adjust them to level the machine.



For 120 and 220 – 240 V specifications only
12. Fit the two stays (F) to the left of the paper feed desk (one toward the front and the other the rear) using the two M4 × 10 TP screws (G) such that they make contact with the floor.

Note: Do not fit the stays (F) if the document finisher is to be installed.

11. Tourner les quatre pieds réglables (13) jusqu'à ce qu'ils atteignent le sol, et les régler au niveau de la machine.

Pour spécifications 120 et 220 – 240 V uniquement

12. Installer les deux supports (F) sur la gauche du bureau d'alimentation de papier (l'un vers l'avant et l'autre vers l'arrière) à l'aide des deux vis TP M4 × 10 (G), de façon à ce qu'elles soient en contact avec le sol.

Remarque: Ne pas mettre en place les supports (F) si le retoucheur de document doit être installé.

11. Gire los cuatro ajustadores (13) hasta que lleguen al piso y ajústelos hasta que nivelen la máquina.

Para especificaciones de 120 V y 220 – 240 V solamente

12. Coloque las dos bases (F) en el lado izquierdo de la unidad de alimentación de papel (una hacia el frente y la otra hacia la parte de atrás) usando los dos tornillos TP M4 × 10 (G) de modo que hagan contacto con el piso.

Nota: No coloque las bases (F) si se va a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

11. Drehen Sie die vier Einstellfüße (13), bis sie den Boden erreichen und stellen Sie sie so ein, daß die Maschine nivelliert ist.

Nur Für 120 und 220 – 240 V Spezifikationen

12. Bringen Sie die zwei Stützen (F) links am Papiereinzugstisch (eine in Richtung Vorderseite und eine in Richtung Rückseite) an. Benutzen Sie dazu die zwei M4 × 10 TP-Schrauben (G) so, daß diese mit dem Boden in Berührung kommen.

Hinweis: Bringen Sie die Stützen (F) nicht an, wenn der Dokumentenfixierer installiert werden soll.

11. Ruotare i quattro piedini regolabili (13) sino a quando vengono a contatto con il pavimento; quindi regolarne l'altezza in modo da livellare la macchina.

Specifiche solo per 120 V e 220 – 240 V

12. Inserire le due sospensioni (F) alla sinistra dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (una verso la parte anteriore e l'altra verso la parte posteriore) utilizzando le due viti TP M4 × 10 (G) in modo tale che sia a contatto col pavimento.

Nota: Non inserire le sospensioni (F) se la finitrice di documenti deve essere installata.

11. 旋转 4 个角落的高度调节器 (13) 至地板高度, 以调节 MFP 主机的整体高度。

仅适用于 120V、220/240V 的产品

12. 在前后两处各用 1 个 TP 螺丝 M4 × 10 (G) 安装防倒金属件 (F), 防倒金属件 (F) 须贴紧地面。

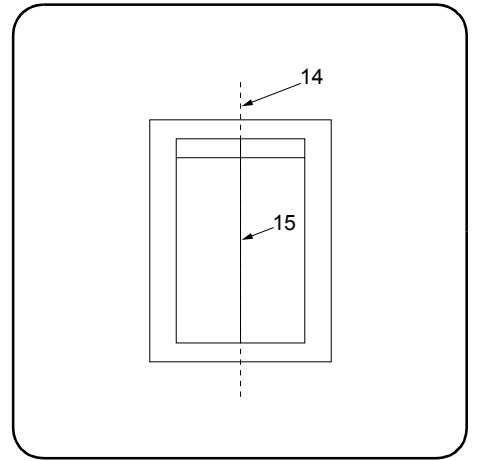
若欲安装装订器, 则不安装防倒金属件 (F)。

11. 4 隅のアジャスター (13) を床に接触するまで回しながら MFP 本体の全体の高さを調節する。
www.tonerplus.com.ua

日本仕様ではこの作業はありません

12. 転倒防止取付金具 (F) を床に接触するように、ビス M4 × 10TP (G) 1 本で転倒防止取付金具 (F) を前後 2 箇所に取り付ける。

ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける場合、転倒防止取付金具 (F) は取り付けない。



Checking the center line

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main switch on.
2. Load paper into the drawer and make a test copy to check the operation.

3. Run maintenance item 993. Select "VTC PG1" and output a test pattern.
For full-color machines, run maintenance item 402 and output the test pattern.

4. If the center of the paper (14) and that of the test pattern output (15) do not meet the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

Vérification de la ligne médiane

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.
2. Mettre du papier dans le tiroir et effectuer une copie d'essai pour vérifier le fonctionnement.

3. Exécuter le point de maintenance 993. Sélectionner "VTC PG1" et produire une mire.
Sur les machines entièrement en couleurs, exécuter le point de maintenance 402 et produire la mire.

4. Si le centre du papier (14) et celui de la sortie de mire (15) ne correspondent à la valeur de référence, effectuer le réglage suivant.
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

Verificación de la línea central

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.
2. Introduzca papel en el cajón y haga una copia de prueba para verificar la operación.

3. Ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 993. Seleccione "VTC PG1" y saque un patrón de prueba.
Para máquinas a todo color, ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 402 y haga que salga un patrón de prueba.

4. Si el centro del papel (14) y aquél de la salida del patrón de prueba (15) no cumplen con el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

Überprüfen der Mittellinie

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Legen Sie Papier in die Papierlade ein und machen Sie eine Testkopie, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

3. Lassen Sie Wartungspunkt 993 laufen. Wählen Sie "VTC PG1" und drucken Sie ein Testmuster.
Nur für Vollfarbenmaschinen den Wartungspunkt 402 ausführen und das Testmuster ausgeben.

4. Falls die Mitte des Papiers (14) und des ausgegebenen Testmusters (15) nicht mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

Controllare la linea centrale

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Caricare la carta nel cassetto ed eseguire una copia di prova per controllare il funzionamento.

3. Eseguire la voce manutenzione 993. Selezionare "VTC PG1" e stampare un modello di prova.
Solo per le macchine a colore, eseguire la voce manutenzione 402 e stampare un modello di prova.

4. Se il centro della carta (14) e quello del modello di prova (15) non rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento, eseguire la seguente regolazione.
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

[中心線の確認]

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 在纸盘内装入复印纸。
进行测试复印，以确定复印动作状态。

3. 执行维修模式“993”而选择“VTC PG1”以进行测试图案的输出。
全彩色机执行维修模式“402”，以进行测试图案的输出。

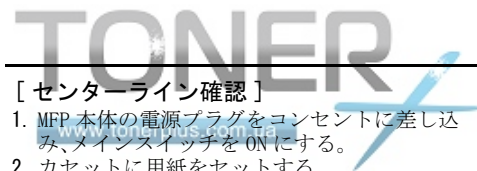
4. 如果复印纸的中心位置 (14) 与测试图案的中心位置 (15) 为标准值以外时，必须进行下列的调整项目。
(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下

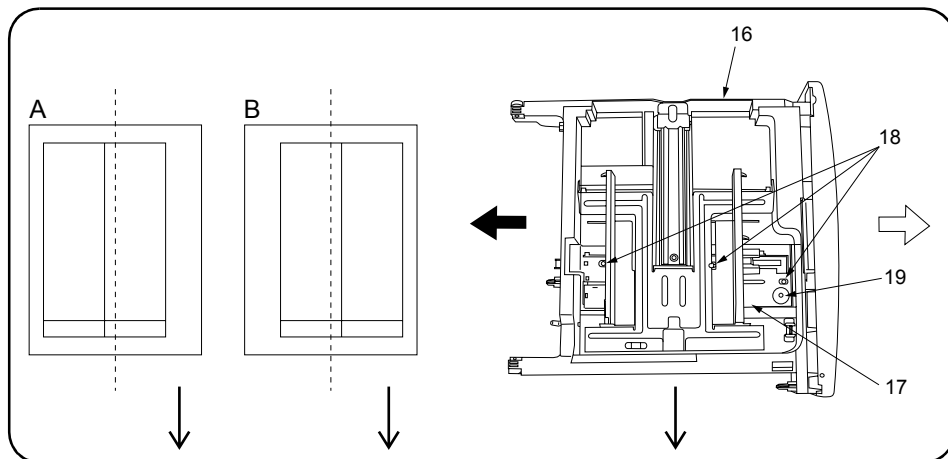
[センターライン確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. カセットに用紙をセットする。
テストコピーをおこない、動作を確認する。

3. メンテナンスモード“993”で“VTC PG1”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。
フルカラー機は、メンテナンスモード“402”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。

4. 用紙のセンター (14) とテストパターンのセンター (15) が基準値外の時は、次の調整をおこなう。
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下





Adjusting the center line

1. Open the drawer (16) of the paper feeder and loosen the three screws (18) securing the adjuster (17).

A and B: test pattern output examples

2. If the test pattern output example looks like A, turn the adjusting screw (19) clockwise, move the adjuster (17) in the direction of the black arrow (➡), and retighten the three screws (18).
3. If the test pattern output example looks like B, turn the adjusting screw (19) counterclockwise, move the adjuster (17) in the direction of the white arrow (⇐), and retighten the three screws (18).

4. Output the test pattern again.

5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern meet the reference value.

<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

Réglage de la ligne médiane

1. Ouvrir le tiroir (16) du bureau papier et desserrer les trois vis (18) qui fixent le dispositif de réglage (17).

A et B: exemples de sortie de mieres

2. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à A, tourner la vis de réglage (19) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (17) dans la direction de la flèche noire (➡), et resserrer les trois vis (18).
3. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à B, tourner la vis de réglage (19) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (17) dans la direction de la flèche blanche (⇐), et resserrer les trois vis (18).

4. Reproduire une nouvelle mire

5. Répéter les étapes 1 à 4 jusqu'à ce que le centre du papier et celui de la mire correspondent à la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

Ajuste de la línea central

1. Abra el cajón de papel (16) del alimentador de papel y suelte los tres tornillos (18) que aseguran el regulador (17).

A y B: ejemplos de salidas de patrones de prueba

2. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a A, gire el tornillo de ajuste (19) en sentido horario, mueva el regulador (17) en la dirección que indica la flecha negra (➡) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (18).
3. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a B, gire el tornillo de ajuste (19) en antihorario, mueva el regulador (17) en la dirección que indica la flecha blanca (⇐) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (18).

4. Saque un patrón de prueba nuevamente.

5. Repita los pasos 1 a 4 hasta que los centros de papel y el patrón de prueba cumplan con el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

Einstellen der Mittenlinie

1. Öffnen Sie den Auszug (16) der Papierlade und lösen Sie die drei Schrauben (18), die den Anpasser (17) halten.

A und B: Beispiele von Testmuster Ausgaben

2. Wenn die Testmuster Ausgabe aussieht wie A, drehen Sie die Einstellschraube (19) im Uhrzeigersinn, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (17) in Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils (➡), und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (18) wieder fest.
3. Wenn die Testmuster Ausgabe aussieht wie B, drehen Sie die Einstellschraube (19) entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (17) in Richtung des weißen Pfeils (⇐), und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (18) wieder fest.

4. Drucken Sie erneut ein Testmuster aus.

5. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 4, bis die Mitte des Papiers und des Testmusters mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt.

<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

Regolazione della linea centrale

1. Aprire il cassetto (16) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta e, allentando le tre viti (18), assicurare il regolatore (17).

A e B: esempi di stampa del modello di prova

2. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto A, girare la vite di regolazione (19) in senso orario, spostare il regolatore (17) nella direzione della freccia nera (➡) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (18).
3. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto B, girare la vite di regolazione (19) in senso antiorario, spostare il regolatore (17) nella direzione della freccia bianca (⇐) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (18).

4. Stampare nuovamente il modello di prova.

5. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 4 fino a quando i centri della carta e del modello di prova rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

[中心线的调整]

1. 拉出供纸工作台的纸盘 (16) 后, 松开调整板 (17) 上的 3 个螺丝 (18)。

A, B 测试图案

2. 测试图案为 A 画面时, 将调整螺丝 (19) 向右旋转, 按箭头 (➡) 方向移动调整板 (17), 并紧固 3 个螺丝 (18)。
3. 测试图案为 B 画面时, 将调整螺丝 (19) 向左旋转, 按箭头 (⇐) 方向移动调整板 (17), 并紧固 3 个螺丝 (18)。

4. 再次进行测试图案的输出。

5. 反复操作步骤 1 至 4, 直到复印纸的中心与测试图案的中心为标准值内为止。
(标准值) 左右偏移: 1.5mm 以下

[センターライン調整]

1. ペーパーフィーダのカセット (16) を引き出し、調整板 (17) のビス (18) 3 本を緩める。

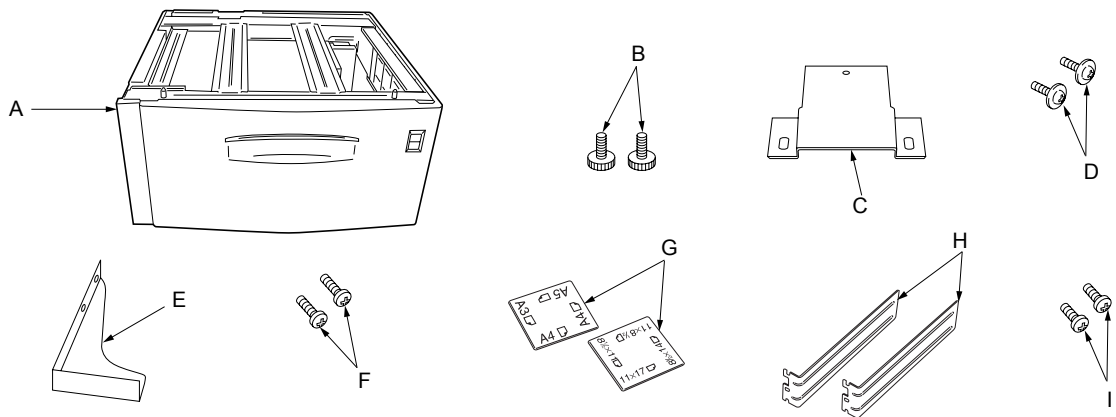
A, B: テストパターン

2. テストパターンが A 画像の場合、調整ネジ (19) を右に回し、矢印 (➡) の向きに調整板 (17) を動かす、ビス (18) 3 本を締め付ける。
3. テストパターンが B 画像の場合、調整ネジ (19) を左に回し、矢印 (⇐) の向きに調整板 (17) を動かす、ビス (18) 3 本を締め付ける。

4. 再度、テストパターン出力をおこなう。

5. 用紙のセンターとテストパターンのセンターが基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 4 を繰り返す。
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR 3000 SHEETS PAPER FEEDER



English

Supplied parts

A Paper feeder.....	1
B Pin	2
C Retainer	1
D TP screw, M4 × 06.....	2
E Stay	1

F Binding screw, M4 × 16.....	2
G Paper size plate	2
H Longitudinal size adjuster (inch specifications only)	2
I Round cross-head tapping screw, M3 × 8 (inch specifications only)	2

Français

Pièces fournies

A Bureau papier	1
B Broche	2
C Élément de retenue	1
D Vis TP, M4 × 06	2
E Support.....	1

F Vis de raccordement, M4 × 16	2
G Plaque de format de papier.....	2
H Dispositif de réglage du format longitudinal (spécifications en pouces seulement)	2
I Vis de connexion à tête cruciforme ronde, M3 × 8 (spécifications en pouces seulement)	2

Español

Partes suministradas

A Alimentador de papel.....	1
B Clavija.....	2
C Retén.....	1
D Tornillo TP, M4 × 06.....	2
E Base	1

F Tornillo de sujeción, M4 × 16	2
G Placa de tamaño de papel	2
H Regulador de tamaño longitudinal (sólo especificaciones de pulgadas).....	2
I Tornillo de roscado de cabeza en cruz redonda, M3 × 8 (sólo especificaciones de pulgadas).....	2

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Papiereinzug	1
B Stift	2
C Halterung.....	1
D TP-Schraube, M4 × 06	2
E Stütze	1

F Verbundschraube, M4 × 16.....	2
G Papierformatplatte.....	2
H Längsgrößen-Einsteller (nur Zollspezifikationen)	2
I Kreuzschlitz-Rundkopf-Schneidschraube, M3 × 8 (nur Zollspezifikationen)	2

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A Unità di alimentazione della carta	1
B Perno	2
C Fermo	1
D Vite TP, M4 × 06	2
E Sospensione	1

F Vite di serraggio, M4 × 16.....	2
G Piastra formato carta.....	2
H Regolatore della misura longitudinale (solo per le specifiche in pollici).....	2
I Vite autofilettante circolare a croce, M3 × 8 (solo per le specifiche in pollici).....	2

简体中文

附属品

A 供纸工作台.....	1
B 固定插销.....	2
C 安装板.....	1
D TP 螺丝 M4 × 06.....	2

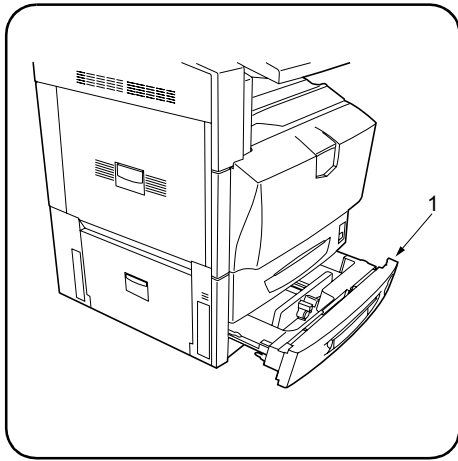
E 防倒金属件	1
F 连接螺丝 M4 × 16.....	2
G 复印纸尺寸托板	2
H 纵向尺寸板 (仅适用于英寸尺寸的产品).....	2
I 十字槽盘头自攻螺丝 M3 × 8 (仅适用于英寸尺寸的产品).....	2

日本語

付属部品

A ペーパーフィーダ.....	1
B ピン.....	2
C 取付板.....	1
D ビス TP M4 × 06	2

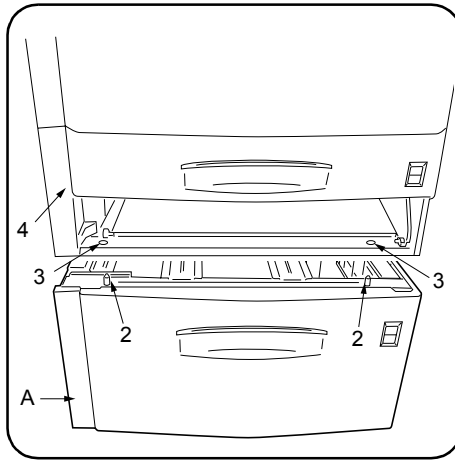
E 転倒防止金具 (日本仕様では使用しない)	1
F ビス バインド M4 × 16 (日本仕様では使用しない)	2
G ペーパーサイズプレート.....	2
H 縦幅サイズ板(インチ仕様のみ).....	2
I ビス + ナベ M3 × 8 タッピング (インチ仕様のみ)	2



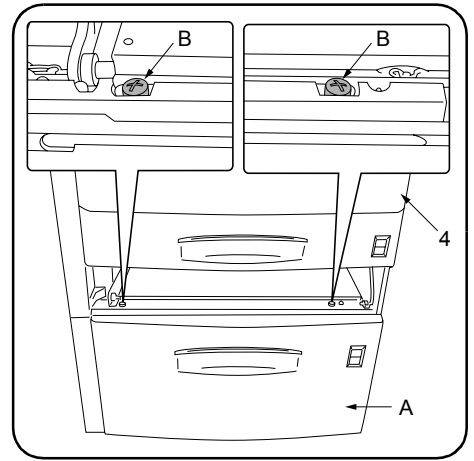
Procedure

Be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the paper feeder.

1. Remove the lower paper cassette (1) from the MFP.



2. Place the MFP (4) on top of the paper feeder (A) with the positioning pins (2) at the front left and right of the paper feeder (A) aligned with the holes (3) in the base of the MFP.



3. Secure the MFP to the paper feeder (A) using the two pins (B).

Procédure

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du bureau papier.

1. Retirer le tiroir inférieur (1) du MFP.

2. Placer le MFP (4) sur le bureau papier (A) en alignant les broches de positionnement (2) situées aux côtés avant gauche et droit du bureau papier (A) sur les orifices (3) à la base du MFP.

3. Fixer le MFP sur le bureau papier (A) à l'aide des deux broches (B).

Procedimiento

Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del MFP del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el alimentador de papel.

1. Quite el cajón de papel inferior (1) del MFP.

2. Coloque el MFP (4) sobre el alimentador de papel (A) con las clavijas de posicionamiento (2) de la parte frontal izquierda y derecha del alimentador de papel (A) alineadas con los huecos (3) de la base del MFP.

3. Asegure el MFP al alimentador de papel (A) usando las dos clavijas (B).

Vorgang

Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Papiereinzugs beginnen.

1. Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade (1) vom MFP ab.

2. Setzen Sie den MFP (4) auf den Papiereinzug (A), wobei die Positionsstifte (2) vorne links und rechts am Papiereinzug (A) mit den Löchern (3) in der Basis des MFP ausgerichtet sein müssen.

3. Befestigen Sie den MFP mit den zwei Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).

Procedura

Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione dell'unità di alimentazione della carta, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e di disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

1. Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta (1) dall'MFP.

2. Installare l'MFP (4) sopra l'unità di alimentazione della carta (A), mantenendo i perni di posizionamento (2) situati sul lato anteriore sinistro e destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) stessa allineati con i fori (3) situati sulla base dell'MFP.

3. Assicurare l'MFP all'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) utilizzando i due perni (B).

〔 安装步骤 〕

安装供纸工作台时, 必须先关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关, 并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

1. 取出 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (1)。

2. 供纸工作台 (A) 的左右前面的各插销 (2) 分别对准 MFP 主机底面的各相应销孔 (3) 后, 将 MFP 主机 (4) 放在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

3. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将 MFP 主机固定在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

〔 取付手順 〕

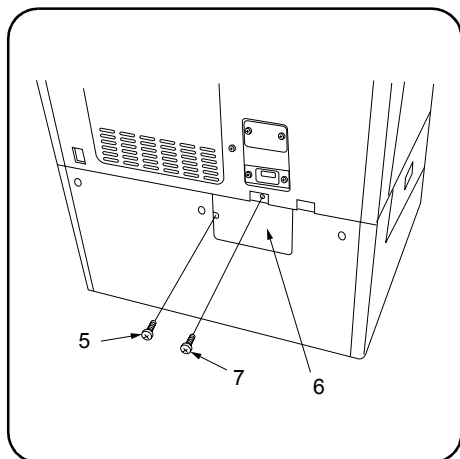
ペーパーフィーダを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、MFP 本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。

1. MFP 本体の下段カセット (1) を取り外す。

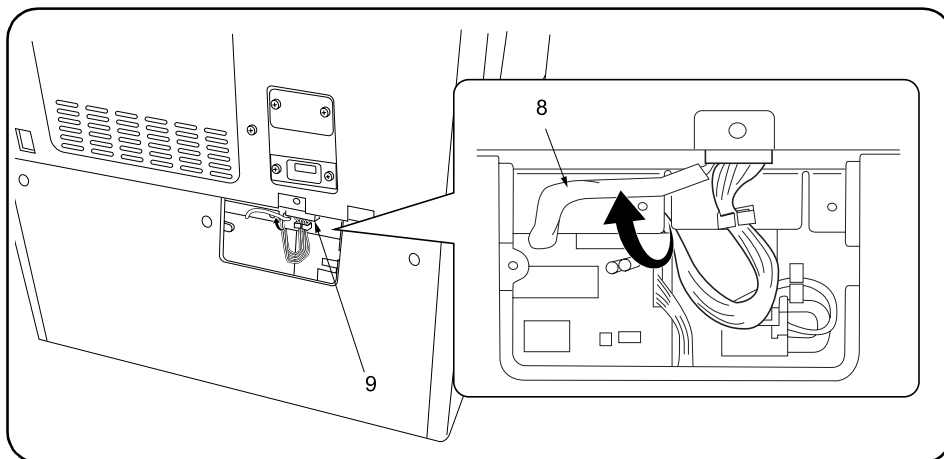
2. ペーパーフィーダ (A) の左右前方の各ピン (2) と MFP 本体のベースの穴 (3) が合うように、ペーパーフィーダ (A) に MFP 本体 (4) を載せる。

3. ピン (B) 2 本で MFP 本体をペーパーフィーダ (A) に固定する。

TONER



4. Refit the lower paper cassette (1) removed in step 1 to the MFP.
5. Remove the screw (5) and then the cover (6) from the rear of the paper feeder.
6. Remove the screw (7) from the MFP.



7. Pull out the wire (8) covered with the black tube in front of the frame. Connect the 12-P connector (9) to the connector on the MFP.

4. Remettre en place sur le MFP le tiroir inférieur (1) qui a été retiré auparavant à l'étape 1.
5. Retirer la vis (5) puis le couvercle (6) de l'arrière du bureau papier.
6. Retirer la vis (7) du MFP.

7. Tirer le câble (8) recouvert par le tube noir à l'avant du cadre. Connecter le connecteur à douze broches (9) au connecteur du MFP.

4. Vuelva a colocar el cajón de papel inferior (1) desmontado en el paso 1 en el MFP.
5. Quite el tornillo (5) y luego la tapa (6) de la parte trasera del alimentador de papel.
6. Quite el tornillo (7) del MFP.

7. Saque el cable (8) cubierto con el tubo negro en el frente del bastidor. Conecte el conector de 12 clavijas (9) en el conector del MFP.

4. Bringen Sie die untere Papierlade (1), die in Schritt 1 entfernt wurde, erneut am MFP an.
5. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (5) und dann die Abdeckung (6) von der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs.
6. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (7) vom MFP.

7. Ziehen Sie das mit dem schwarzen Mantel umhüllte Kabel (8) auf der Vorderseite des Rahmens heraus. Schließen Sie den 12-poligen Steckverbinder (9) an den Steckverbinder am MFP an.

4. Reinserire nell'MFP il cassetto inferiore della carta (1) rimosso al punto 1.
5. Rimuovere la vite (5) e quindi il pannello (6) dal retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.
6. Rimuovere la vite (7) dal retro dell'MFP.

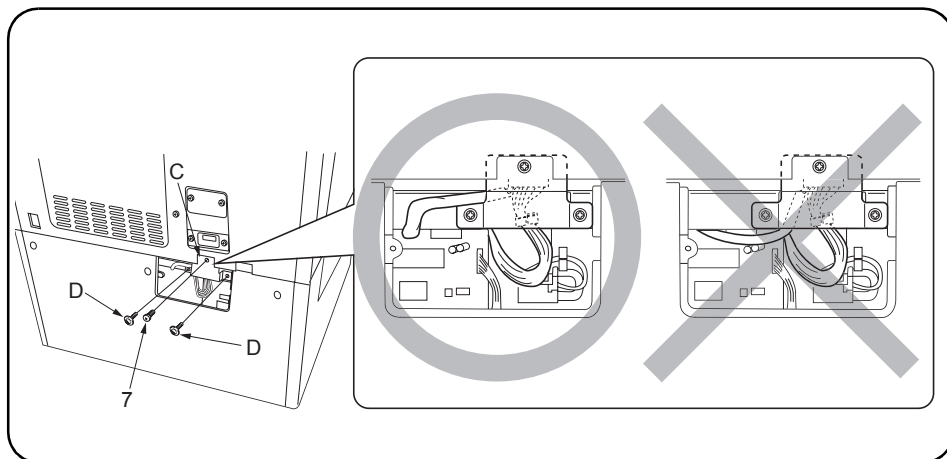
7. Tirare fuori, davanti al telaio, il cavo (8) coperto con il tubo nero. Collegare il connettore a 12 piedini (9) al connettore sull'MFP.

4. 在步骤 1 取下 MFP 主机下部供纸盒 (1) 装回原来的位置。
5. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (5)，拆下供纸工作台的后部盖板 (6)。
6. 拆除 MFP 主机后部的 1 个螺丝 (7)。

7. 将用黑套管包覆的电线 (8) 拉至机架前。将 12 脚接头 (9) 与 MFP 主机上的接口连接。

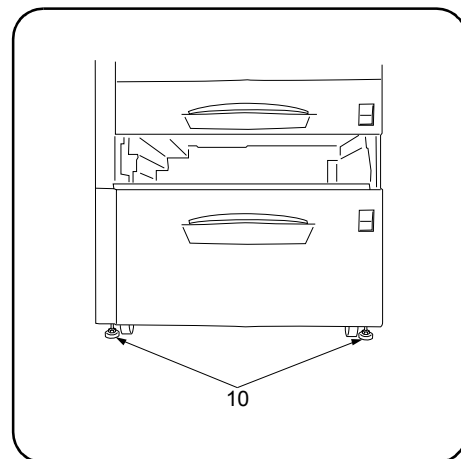
4. 手順 1 で取り外した MFP 本体の下段カセット (1) を元に戻す。
5. ビス (5) 1 本を外し、ペーパーフィーダ後部のカバー (6) を取り外す。
6. MFP 本体後部のビス (7) 1 本を外す。

7. 黒いチューブで覆われた電線 (8) を、フレームの手前に引き出す。12P コネクタ (9) を MFP 本体のコネクタに接続する。



8. Separate the wire (8) covered with the black tube and the signal wires as shown on the above drawing, and install the retainer (C) using the screw (7) removed in step 6 and the two M4 x 06 TP screws (D).

9. Refit the cover (6) using the screw (5) removed in step 5.



10. Turn the four adjusters (10) until they reach the floor and adjust them to level the machine.

8. Séparer le câble (8) recouvert par le tube noir et les câbles de signaux comme montré dans le dessin ci-dessus et installer l'élément de retenue (C) à l'aide de la vis (7) retirée à l'étape 6 et les deux vis TP M4 x 06 (D).

9. Remettre le couvercle (6) en place à l'aide de la vis (5) retirée auparavant à l'étape 5.

10. Tourner les quatre pieds réglables (10) jusqu'à ce qu'ils atteignent le sol, et les régler au niveau de la machine.

8. Separe el cable (8) cubierto con el tubo negro y los cables de señal tal como aparece en el dibujo de arriba e instale el retén (C) usando el tornillo (7) removido en el paso 6 y los dos tornillos TP M4 x 06 (D).

9. Vuelva a colocar la tapa (6) usando el tornillo (5) quitado en el paso 5.

10. Gire los cuatro ajustadores (10) hasta que lleguen al piso y ajústelos hasta que nivelen la máquina.

8. Trennen Sie das mit dem schwarzen Mantel umhüllte Kabel (8) und die Signalkabel, wie in der obigen Zeichnung gezeigt, und installieren Sie die Halterung (C), indem Sie die Schraube (7) benutzen, die Sie in Schritt 6 entfernt haben, sowie die zwei M4 x 06 TP-Schrauben (D).

9. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (6) wieder mit der in Schritt (5) entfernten Schraube 5 an.

10. Drehen Sie die vier Einstellfüße (10), bis sie den Boden erreichen und stellen Sie sie so ein, daß die Maschine nivelliert ist.

8. Separare il cavo (8) coperto con il tubo nero e i cavi del segnale come indicato nel disegno qui sopra, e installare il fermo (C) utilizzando la vite (7) rimossa al passo 6 e le due viti TP M4 x 06(D).

9. Inserire il pannello posteriore (6) usando le viti (5) rimosse al punto 5.

10. Ruotare i quattro piedini regolabili (10) sino a quando vengono a contatto con il pavimento; quindi regolarne l'altezza in modo da livellare la macchina.

8. 将用黑套管包覆的电线 (8) 如图示要求那样使电线分离, 用步骤 6 中拆除的 1 个螺丝 (7) 和两个 TP 螺丝 M4 x 06 (D) 来进行安装板 (C) 的安装工作。

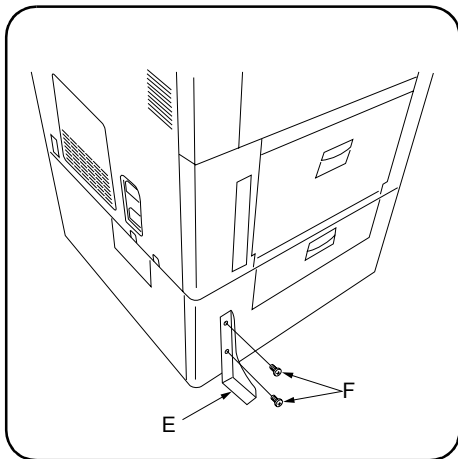
9. 用步骤 5 拆除的 1 个螺丝 (5) 将盖板 (6) 装回原来的位置。

10. 旋转 4 个角落的高度调节器 (10) 至地板高度, 以调节 MFP 主机的高度。

8. 黒いチューブで覆われた電線 (8) と電線を図のように分離させ、手順 6 で外したビス (7) 1 本と、ビス TP M4 x 06 (D) 2 本で取付板 (C) を取り付ける。

9. 手順 5 で取り外したビス (5) 1 本でカバー (6) を元通りに取り付ける。

10. 4 隅のアジャスター (10) を床に接触するまで回しながら MFP 本体の全体の高さを調節する。



For 120 V and 220 – 240 V specifications only

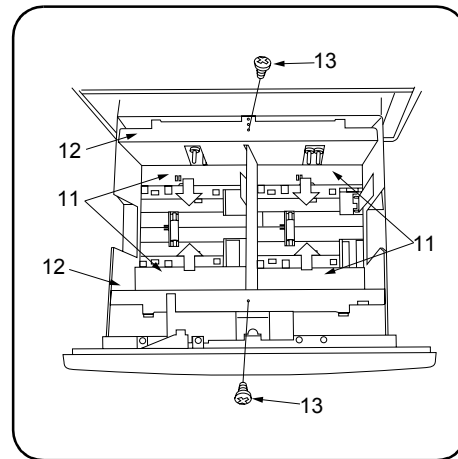
11. Fit the stay (E) to the lower left of the large paper deck toward the rear using the two M4 × 16 binding screws (F) such that it makes contact with the floor.

Note: Do not fit the stay (E) if the document finisher is to be installed.

Setting the paper size

At the time of shipping, the paper size is set to Letter for inch specifications and A4 for metric specifications. To change the size, follow the procedure below.

1. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder.



2. Move the sliders (11) at the machine front and rear inward (two at each point).
3. Remove the screw (13) from each of the front and rear lateral size adjusters (12).

Pour spécifications 120 V et 220 – 240 V uniquement

11. Installer le support (E) sur la partie inférieure gauche du grand plateau à papier, vers l'arrière, à l'aide des deux vis de raccordement M4 × 16 (F) de façon à qu'il soit en contact avec le sol.

Remarque: Ne pas installer le support (E) si le retoucheur de document doit être installé.

Réglage de la taille du papier

Au moment de l'expédition, le format du papier est réglé à Lettre pour les spécifications en pouces, et à A4 pour les spécifications métriques. Pour changer le format, procéder comme suit.

1. Tirer le magasin du bureau papier vers soi.

2. Déplacer les curseurs (11), à l'avant et à l'arrière de la machine, vers l'intérieur (deux à chaque endroit).
3. Retirer la vis (13) de chaque dispositif de réglage du format latéral avant et arrière (12).

Para especificaciones de 120 V y 220 – 240 V solamente

11. Coloque la base (E) en el lado izquierdo inferior de la tabla grande de papel hacia la parte de atrás usando los dos tornillos de sujeción M4 × 16 (F) de modo que haga contacto con el piso.

Nota: No coloque la base (E) si se va a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

Configuración del tamaño de papel

Al momento de la salida de fábrica, el tamaño de papel está ajustado a Carta para las especificaciones de pulgadas y A4 para las especificaciones métricas. Para cambiar el tamaño, siga el procedimiento de abajo.

1. Abra el casete del alimentador de papel.

2. Mueva los graduadores (11) del frente y parte trasera de la máquina hacia adentro (dos en cada punto).
3. Quite el tornillo (13) de cada regulador de tamaño lateral frontal y trasero (12).

Nur für 120 V und 220 – 240 V Spezifikationen

11. Bringen Sie die Stütze (E) unten links am großen Papierdeck, in Richtung Rückseite an. Benutzen Sie dazu die zwei M4 × 16 Verbundschrauben (F) so, daß diese mit dem Boden in Berührung kommen.

Hinweis: Bringen Sie die Stütze (E) nicht an, wenn der Dokumentenfixierer installiert werden soll.

Einstellen der Papiergröße

Das Papierformat wurde vor dem Versand auf Letter für Zollspezifikationen und A4 für metrische Spezifikationen eingestellt. Um das Format zu ändern, gehen Sie folgendermaßen vor.

1. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade aus dem Papiereinzug.

2. Bewegen Sie die Schieber (11) an der Vorder- und Rückseite des Gerätes nach innen (zwei an jedem Punkt).
3. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (13) von jedem der vorderen und hinteren Quergrößen-Einsteller (12).

Specifiche solo per 120 V e 220 – 240 V

11. Inserire la sospensione (E) nella parte inferiore sinistra del cassettone verso il retro utilizzando le due viti di serraggio M4 × 16 (F) in modo tale che sia a contatto col pavimento.

Nota: non inserire la sospensione (E) se la finitrice di documenti deve essere installata.

Impostazione della dimensione della carta

Al momento della spedizione, il formato della carta è impostato su Lettera per le specifiche in pollici e A4 per le specifiche metriche. Per cambiare formato, seguire la procedura qui in basso.

1. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentatore della carta.

2. Spostare verso l'interno gli scivoli (11) nella parte anteriore e posteriore della macchina (due in ciascun punto).
3. Rimuovere la vite (13) da ciascuno dei regolatori della misura laterale anteriori e posteriori (12).

仅适用于 120V、220/240V 的产品

11. 用 2 个连接螺丝 M4 × 16(F) 安装防倒金属件 (E), 防倒金属件 (E) 须贴紧地面。若欲安装装订器, 则不安装防倒金属件 (E)。

[尺寸设定]

出厂时, 英寸尺寸的产品设定为 Letter, 厘米尺寸的产品设定为 A4。需要变更尺寸时, 按照以下顺序进行操作。

1. 拉出供纸工作台的供纸盒。

2. 把前后各 2 张的滑板 (11) 往内侧移动。
3. 拆除横向尺寸板 (12) 上前后的各 1 个螺丝 (13)。

日本仕様ではこの作業はありません

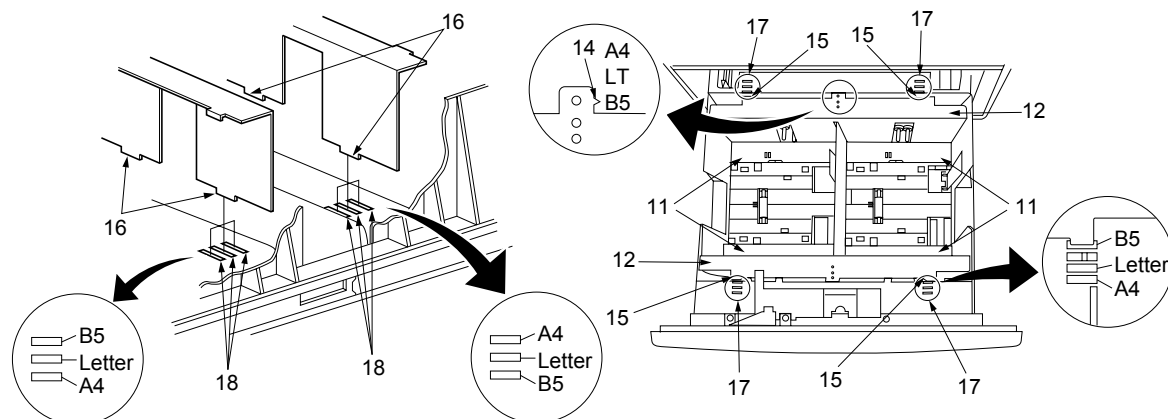
11. 転倒防止取付金具 (E) を床に接触するように、ビス バインド M4 × 16(F) 2 本で取り付ける。ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける場合、転倒防止取付金具 (E) は取り付けない。

[サイズ設定]

出荷時、インチ仕様は Letter、センチ仕様は A4 に設定されています。サイズを変更する場合は次の手順をおこなってください。

1. ペーパーフィーダのカセットを引き出す。

2. 前後各 2 枚のスライド板 (11) を内側にずらす。
3. 前後の横幅サイズ板 (12) より各ビス (13) 1 本を外す。



4. Insert the upper tabs (15) and lower tabs (16) of the front and rear lateral size adjusters (12) into the upper slots (17) and lower slots (18) respectively such that the size indicators (14) point to the size of paper to be used. Secure the lateral size adjusters using the screw (13) for each.

For the front side, check the paper size referring to the positions where the upper tabs (15) are inserted into the upper slots (17).

Upper slot (17) positions: Front (A4), middle (Letter), rear (B5)

Upper slot (17) positions on the rear side: Front (B5), middle (Letter), rear (A4)

5. Move the front and rear sliders (11) (two at each point) outward until they make contact with the lateral size adjusters (12).

4. Insérer les pattes supérieures (15) et inférieures (16) des dispositifs de réglage du format latéral avant et arrière (12), dans les fentes supérieures (17) et inférieures (18) respectivement, de façon à ce que les indicateurs de format (14) pointent à la taille du papier à utiliser. Fixer les dispositifs de réglage du format latéral à l'aide de leur vis (13).

Pour le côté avant, vérifier la taille du papier en se référant aux positions auxquelles les pattes supérieures (15) sont insérées dans les fentes supérieures (17).

Positions des fentes supérieures (17): Avant (A4), milieu (Lettre), arrière (B5)

Positions des fentes supérieures (17) sur le côté arrière: Avant (B5), milieu (Lettre), arrière (A4)

5. Déplacer les curseurs avant et arrière (11), (deux à chaque endroit), vers l'extérieur jusqu'à ce qu'ils entrent en contact avec les dispositifs de réglage du format latéral (12).

4. Inserte las lengüetas superiores (15) y las lengüetas inferiores (16) de los reguladores de tamaño laterales frontales y traseros (12) en las ranuras superiores (17) y las ranuras inferiores (18) respectivamente de modo que los indicadores de tamaño (14) apunten al tamaño de papel a ser usado. Asegure los reguladores de tamaño laterales usando el tornillo (13) para cada uno.

Para el lado frontal, verifique el tamaño de papel consultando las posiciones donde las lengüetas superiores (15) están insertadas en las ranuras superiores (17)

Posiciones de ranura superior (17): Adelante (A4), medio (Carta), atrás (B5)

Posiciones de ranura superior (17) en el lado trasero: Adelante (B5), medio (Carta), atrás (A4)

5. Mueva los graduadores frontales y traseros (11) (dos en cada punto) hacia fuera hasta que hagan contacto con los reguladores de tamaño laterales (12).

4. Führen Sie die oberen Laschen (15) und die unteren Laschen (16) der vorderen und hinteren Quergrößen-Einsteller (12) jeweils in die oberen Schlitze (17) und unteren Schlitze (18), so daß die Größenanzeiger (14) auf die zu benutzende Papiergröße zeigen. Sichern Sie die Quergrößen-Einsteller mit jeweils einer Schraube (13).

Für die Vorderseite das Papierformat anhand der Positionen prüfen, wo die oberen Laschen (15) in die oberen Schlitze (17) eingeführt sind.

Positionen der oberen Schlitze (17): Vorne (A4), Mitte (Letter), Hinten (B5)

Positionen der oberen Schlitze (17) auf der Rückseite: Vorne (B5), Mitte (Letter), Hinten (A4)

5. Bewegen Sie die vorderen und hinteren Schieber (11) (zwei an jedem Punkt) nach außen, bis sie mit den Quergrößen-Einstellern (12) in Kontakt kommen.

4. Inserire le linguette superiori (15) e le linguette inferiori (16) dei regolatori della misura laterale anteriori e posteriori (12) nelle scanalature superiori (17) e nelle scanalature inferiori (18) rispettivamente, in modo tale che gli indicatori della misura (14) puntino alla dimensione della carta da utilizzare. Fissare i regolatori della misura laterale utilizzando la vite (13) per ciascuno di essi.

Per il lato anteriore, controllare il formato carta facendo riferimento alle posizioni dove le linguette superiori (15) sono inserite nelle scanalature superiori (17).

Le posizioni delle scanalature superiori (17): Anteriore (A4), centrale (lettera), posteriore (B5)

Posizioni delle scanalature superiori sul lato posteriore: Anteriore (B5), centrale (Lettera), posteriore (A4)

5. Spostare verso l'esterno gli scivoli anteriori e posteriori (11) (due in ciascun punto) fino a quando non vengano a contatto con i regolatori della misura laterale (12).

4. 将前后横向尺寸板 (14) 的上卡爪 (15)、下卡爪 (16) 分别插入上槽 (17) 和下槽 (18)，再用 1 个螺丝 (13) 固定，让尺寸指示爪 (14) 表示所使用的复印纸尺寸。

前侧是在上卡爪 (15) 插入上槽 (17) 的位置上确认纸张尺寸。

上槽 (17) 的位置：前面 (A4)、中央 (Letter)、里侧 (B5)

后面的上槽 (17) 的位置：前面 (B5)、中央 (Letter)、里侧 (A4)

5. 向外移动前后各 2 张滑板 (11)，直到碰到横向尺寸板 (12) 为止。

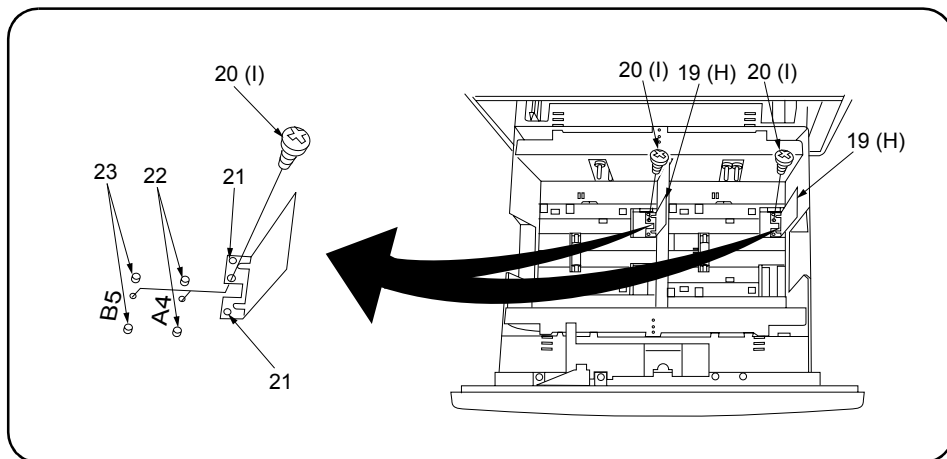
4. サイズ指示爪 (14) が使用する用紙サイズを示すように、前後の横幅サイズ板 (12) の上爪 (15)、下爪 (16) を上溝 (17)、下溝 (18) に差し込み、ビス (13) 1 本で固定する。

前側は、上爪 (15) を上溝 (17) の差し込む位置で用紙サイズを確認する。

上溝 (17) の位置：手前 (A4)、中央 (Letter)、奥 (B5)

後側の上溝 (17) の位置：手前 (B5)、中央 (Letter)、奥 (A4)

5. 前後各 2 枚のスライド板 (11) を、横幅サイズ板 (12) に当たるまで外側にずらす。



6. Remove the screw (20) from each of the left and right longitudinal size adjusters (19). (metric specifications only)
7. Align the pin holes (21) in the left and right longitudinal size adjusters (19) with the A4 pins (22) or B5 pins (23) according to the size of paper to be used. Secure the adjusters using the screw (20) for each.
For inch specifications, align the pin holes (21) in the left and right longitudinal size adjusters (H) with the A4 pins (22) or B5 pins (23) according to the size of paper to be used. Secure the adjusters using the round cross-head tapping screw M3 × 8 (I) for each.

8. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main switch on.
9. Run maintenance item 208 and set the paper size for the paper feeder (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Retirer la vis (20) de chaque dispositif de réglage du format longitudinal gauche et droit (19). (spécifications métriques seulement)
7. Aligner les trous de broches (21) des dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal gauche et droit (19), avec les broches A4 (22) ou B5 (23), selon la taille du papier à utiliser. Fixer les dispositifs de réglage à l'aide de leur vis (20).
Pour les spécifications en pouces, aligner les trous de broches (21) des dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal gauche et droit (H) sur les broches A4 (22) ou B5 (23) selon la taille du papier à utiliser. Fixer les dispositifs de réglage à l'aide de leur vis de connexion à tête cruciforme ronde M3 × 8 (I).

8. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.
9. Exécuter l'élément d'entretien 208 et régler la taille du papier pour le bureau papier (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Quite el tornillo (20) de cada regulador de tamaño longitudinal de la izquierda y de la derecha (19). (sólo especificaciones métricas)
7. Alinee los huecos de las clavijas (21) de los reguladores de tamaño longitudinales de la izquierda y de la derecha (19) con las clavijas A4 (22) o clavijas B5 (23) de acuerdo al tamaño del papel a utilizarse. Asegure los reguladores usando el tornillo (20) para cada uno.
Para las especificaciones de pulgadas, alinee los huecos de las clavijas (21) en los reguladores de tamaño longitudinal de la izquierda y de la derecha (H) con las clavijas A4 (22) o clavijas B5 (23) de acuerdo al tamaño de papel a utilizarse. Asegure los reguladores usando el tornillo de roscado de cabeza en cruz M3 × 8 (I) para cada uno.

8. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.
9. Haga el ítem de mantenimiento 208 y configure el tamaño de papel para el alimentador de papel (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (20) von jedem der linken und rechten Längsgrößen-Einsteller (19). (nur metrische Spezifikationen)
7. Richten Sie die Stiftlöcher (21) in den linken und rechten Längsgrößen-Einstellern (19) mit den A4-Stiften (22) oder B5-Stiften (23) aus, abhängig von der benutzten Papiergröße. Sichern Sie die Einsteller mit jeweils einer Schraube (20).
Richten Sie die Stiftlöcher (21) im linken und rechten Längsgrößen-Einsteller (H) für Zollspezifikationen auf die A4-Stifte (22) oder B5-Stifte (23) aus, abhängig von der zu verwendenden Papiergröße. Sichern Sie die Einsteller mit jeweils einer Kreuzschlitz- Rundkopf-Schneidschraube M3 × 8 (I).

8. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.
9. Führen Sie Wartungspunkt 208 aus und stellen Sie die Papiergröße für den Papiereinzug (B5/A4/Letter) ein.

6. Rimuovere la vite (20) da ciascuno dei regolatori della misura longitudinale sinistro e destro (19). (solo specifiche metriche)
7. Allineare i fori dei perni (21) nei regolatori della misura longitudinale sinistro e destro (19) con i perni A4 (22) o con i perni B5 (23) a seconda della misura della carta da utilizzare. Fissare i regolatori utilizzando la vite (20) per ciascuno di essi.
Per le specifiche in pollici, allineare i fori dei perni (21) nei regolatori della misura longitudinale sinistro e destro (H) con i perni di A4 (22) o B5 (23) a seconda del formato della carta che si deve usare. Fissare i regolatori usando una vite autofilettante circolare a croce M3 × 8 (I) per ciascuno.

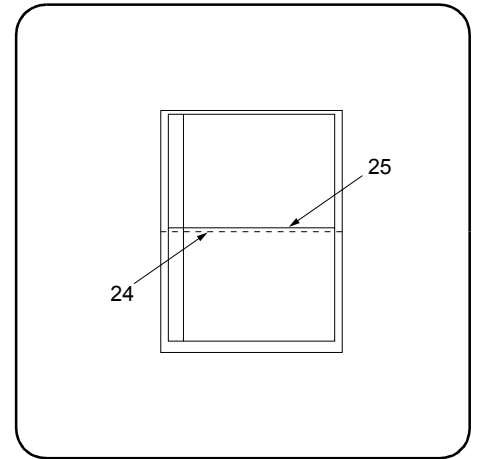
8. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
9. Eseguire l'opzione di manutenzione 208 ed impostare la dimensione della carta della relativa unità di alimentazione (B5/A4/Letter).

6. 拆除各 1 个螺丝 (20) 后, 再拆下左右两侧的纵向尺寸板 (19)。(仅适用于厘米尺寸的产品)
7. 按复印纸的尺寸, 将左右两侧的纵向尺寸板 (19) 的插销孔 (21) 对准 A4 插销 (22) 或 B5 插销 (23) 插好, 再用 1 个螺丝 (20) 固定。
英寸尺寸的产品按复印纸的尺寸, 将左右两侧的纵向尺寸板 (H) 的插销孔 (21) 对准 A4 插销 (22) 或 B5 插销 (23) 插好, 再用 1 个十字槽盘头自攻螺丝 M3 × 8 (I) 固定。

8. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中, 打开主电源开关。
9. 择维修模式 “208” 设定供纸工作台所使用的复印纸尺寸 (B5/A4/Letter)。

6. 各ビス (20) 1 本を外し、左右の縦幅サイズ板 (19) を取り外す。(センチ仕様のみ)
7. 用紙サイズに応じて、左右の縦幅サイズ板 (19) のピン穴 (21) を A4 ピン (22) または B5 ピン (23) に合わせて取り付け、ビス (20) 1 本で固定する。
インチ仕様では、用紙サイズに応じて、左右の縦幅サイズ板 (H) のピン穴 (21) を A4 ピン (22) または B5 ピン (23) に合わせて取り付け、ビス + ナベ M3 × 8 タッピング (I) 1 本で固定する。

8. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
9. メンテナンスモード “208” でペーパーフィーダにセットする用紙のサイズ (B5 / A4 / Letter) を設定する。



Checking the center line

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main switch on.
2. Run maintenance item 993. Select "VTC PG1" and output a test pattern.
For full-color machines, run maintenance item 402 and output the test pattern.
3. If the center of the paper (24) and that of the test pattern output (25) do not meet the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

Vérification de la ligne médiane

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.
2. Exécuter le point de maintenance 993. Sélectionner "VTC PG1" et produire une mire.
Sur les machines entièrement en couleurs, exécuter le point de maintenance 402 et produire la mire.
3. Si le centre du papier (24) et celui de la sortie de mire (25) ne correspondent à la valeur de référence, effectuer le réglage suivant.
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

Verificación de la línea central

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.
2. Ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 993. Seleccione "VTC PG1" y saque un patrón de prueba.
Para máquinas a todo color, ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 402 y haga que salga un patrón de prueba.
3. Si el centro del papel (24) y aquél de la salida del patrón de prueba (25) no cumplen con el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

Überprüfen der Mittellinie

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Lassen Sie Wartungspunkt 993 laufen. Wählen Sie "VTC PG1" und drucken Sie ein Testmuster.
Nur für Vollfarbemaschinen den Wartungspunkt 402 ausführen und das Testmuster ausgeben.
3. Falls die Mitte des Papiers (24) und des ausgegebenen Testmusters (25) nicht mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

Controllare la linea centrale

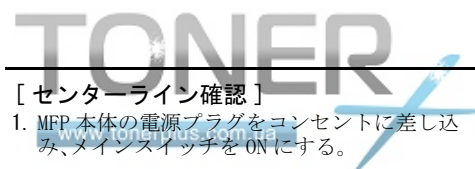
1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Eseguire la voce manutenzione 993. Selezionare "VTC PG1" e stampare un modello di prova.
Solo per le macchine a colore, eseguire la voce manutenzione 402 e stampare un modello di prova.
3. Se il centro della carta (24) e quello del modello di prova (25) non rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento, eseguire la seguente regolazione.
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

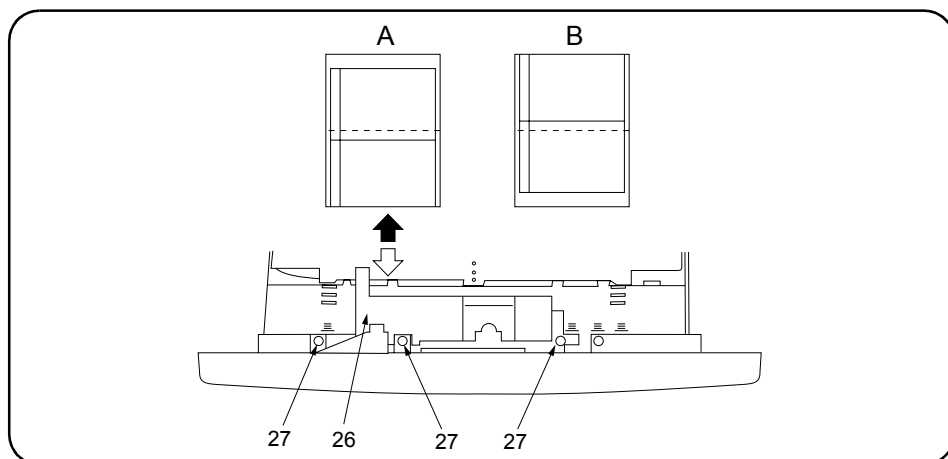
[中心线的确认]

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 执行维修模式“993”而选择“VTC PG1”以进行测试图案的输出。
全彩色机执行维修模式“402”，以进行测试图案的输出。
3. 如果复印纸的中心位置 (24) 与测试图案的中心位置 (25) 为标准值以外时，必须进行下列的调整项目。
(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下

[センターライン確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. メンテナンスモード“993”で“VTC PG1”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。
フルカラー機は、メンテナンスモード“402”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。
3. 用紙のセンター (24) とテストパターンのセンター (25) が基準値外の時は、次の調整をおこなう。
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下





Adjusting the center line

4. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder and loosen the three screws (27) securing the adjuster (26).

A and B: test pattern output examples

5. If the test pattern output looks like A, move the adjuster (26) in the direction of the black arrow (←) and retighten the three screws (27).
If the test pattern output looks like B, move the adjuster (26) in the direction of the white arrow (⇒) and retighten the three screws (27).

6. Output a test pattern again.

7. Repeat steps 4 to 6 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern meet the reference value.

<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

Réglage de la ligne médiane

4. Tirer le magasin du bureau papier vers soi et desserrer les trois vis (27) fixant le dispositif de réglage (26).

A et B: exemples de sortie de mieres

5. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à A, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (26) dans la direction de la flèche noire (←) et resserrer les trois vis (27).
Si la sortie de mire ressemble à B, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (26) dans la direction de la flèche blanche (⇒) et resserrer les trois vis (27).

6. Reproduire une nouvelle mire.

7. Répéter les étapes 4 à 6 jusqu'à ce que le centre du papier et celui de la mire correspondent à la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

Ajuste de la línea central

4. Abra el casete del alimentador de papel y suelte los tres tornillos (27) que aseguran el regulador (26).

A y B: ejemplos de salidas de patrones de prueba

5. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a A, mueva el regulador (26) en la dirección que indica la flecha negra (←) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (27).
Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecido a B, mueva el regulador (26) en la dirección que indica la flecha blanca (⇒) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (27).

6. Saque un patrón de prueba nuevamente.

7. Repita los pasos 4 a 6 hasta que los centros de papel y el patrón de prueba cumplan con el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

Einstellen der Mittelinie

4. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade des Papiereinzugs heraus und lösen Sie die drei Schrauben (27), die den Anpasser (26) halten.

A und B: Beispiele von Testmusterangaben

5. Wenn die Testmusterangabe wie A aussieht, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (26) in Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils (←) und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (27) wieder fest.
Wenn die Testmusterangabe wie B aussieht, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (26) in Richtung des weißen Pfeils (⇒) und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (27) wieder fest.

6. Drucken Sie erneut ein Testmuster aus.

7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 4 bis 6, bis die Mitte des Papiers und des Testmusters mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt.

<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

Regolazione della linea centrale

4. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentazione della carta ed allentare le tre viti (27) assicurando il regolatore (26).

A e B: esempi di stampa del modello di prova

5. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto A, spostare il regolatore (26) nella direzione della freccia nera (←) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (27).
Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto B, spostare il regolatore (26) nella direzione della freccia bianca (⇒) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (27).

6. Stampare nuovamente un modello di prova.

7. Ripetere i passi da 4 a 6 fino a quando i centri della carta e del modello di prova rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

中心线的调整

4. 拉出供纸工作台的纸匣，再松开调整板 (26) 上的 3 个螺丝 (27)。

A, B 测试图案

5. 测试图案为 A 时，按箭头 (←) 方向移动调整板 (26)，并紧固 3 个螺丝 (27)。
测试图案为 B 时，按箭头 (⇒) 方向移动调整板 (26)，并紧固 3 个螺丝 (27)。

6. 再次进行测试图案的输出。

7. 反复操作步骤 4 至 6，直到复印纸的中心与测试图案的中心为标准值内为止。
(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下

センターライン調整

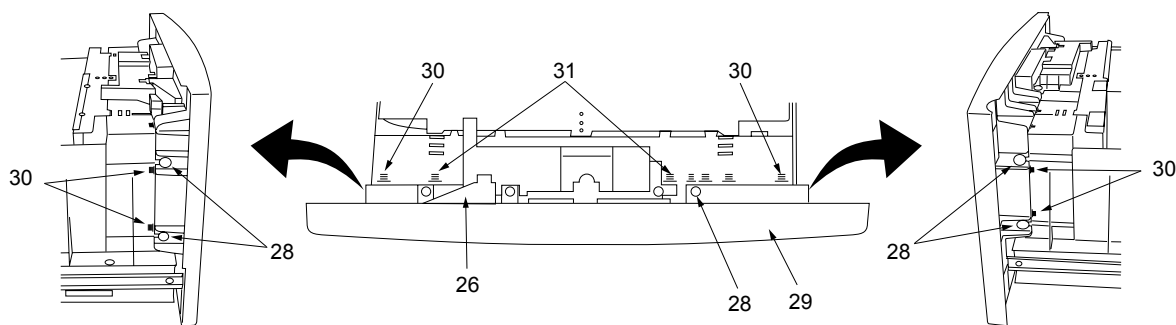
4. ペーパーフィーダのカセットを引き出し、調整板 (26) のビス (27) 3 本を緩める。

A, B: テストパターン

5. A 画像の場合、矢印 (←) の向きに調整板 (26) を動かし、ビス (27) 3 本を締め付ける。
B 画像の場合、矢印 (⇒) の向きに調整板 (26) を動かし、ビス (27) 3 本を締め付ける。

6. 再度、テストパターン出力をおこなう。

7. 用紙のセンターとテストパターンのセンターが基準値内になるまで、手順 4 ～ 6 を繰り返す。
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下



Adjusting the front cover position

Note:

If the position of the adjuster is changed, adjust the front cover position.

If the front cover position is not proper, the cassette may not be fixed with the magnet or the gap between the front cover and the paper feeder body may be opened.

8. Loosen the five screws (28).

9. Move the position of the front cover (29) by the amount of divisions of the level that corresponds to the movement of the adjuster (26) (amount of movement of the level (31)) using the level (30).

10. Retighten the five screws (28).

Réglage de la position du couvercle avant

Remarque:

Si la position du dispositif de réglage est changée, régler la position du couvercle avant.

Si la position du couvercle avant est incorrecte, le tiroir risquera de ne pas être fixé par l'aimant, ou un écart risquera de s'ouvrir entre le couvercle avant et le corps du bureau papier.

8. Desserrer les cinq vis (28).

9. Déplacer la position du couvercle avant (29) de la quantité de divisions du niveau correspondant au mouvement du dispositif de réglage (26) (quantité de mouvement du niveau (31)) en utilisant le niveau (30).

10. Resserrer les cinq vis (28).

Ajuste de la posición de la tapa frontal

Nota:

Si cambia la posición del regulador, ajuste la posición de la tapa frontal.

Si la posición de la tapa frontal no es la adecuada, el casete puede no fijarse con la imagen o la separación entre la tapa frontal y el cuerpo del alimentador de papel puede abrirse.

8. Suelte los cinco tornillos (28).

9. Mueva la posición de la tapa frontal (29) en la cantidad de divisiones del nivel que corresponde al movimiento del regulador (26) (cantidad de movimiento del nivel (31)) utilizando el nivel (30).

10. Vuelva a apretar los cinco tornillos (28).

Einstellen der Position der Frontabdeckung

Hinweis:

Falls die Position des Einstellers geändert wird, muss die Position der Frontabdeckung geändert werden.

Falls die Position der Frontabdeckung nicht stimmt, wird die Papierlade eventuell nicht mit dem Magneten gesichert, oder der Spalt zwischen der Frontabdeckung und dem Papiereinzug kann sich öffnen.

8. Lösen Sie die fünf Schrauben (28).

9. Die Position der Frontabdeckung (29) mithilfe der Ebene (30) um den Teilungsbetrag der Ebene verschieben, welcher der Bewegung des Anpassers (26) entspricht (Bewegungsbetrag der Ebene (31)).

10. Ziehen Sie die fünf Schrauben (28) wieder fest.

Regolare la posizione del pannello anteriore

Nota

Se la posizione del regolatore viene cambiata, regolare la posizione del pannello anteriore.

Se la posizione del pannello anteriore non è corretta, non sarà possibile fissare il cassetto con il magnete o potrebbe aprirsi uno spazio tra il pannello anteriore e il corpo dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.

8. Allentare le cinque viti (28).

9. Muovere la posizione del pannello anteriore (29) di tante posizioni del livello quanto è necessario per farlo corrispondere al movimento del regolatore (26) (movimento del livello (31)) utilizzando il livello (30).

10. Serrare nuovamente le cinque viti (28).

前盖板位置的调整

注意

如果调整板的位置变更时，必须进行前盖板位置的调整。

如果前盖板的位置调整不一致时，供纸盒就不能在磁铁处停住，并会在前盖板和供纸工作台主机之间出现间隙。

8. 松开5个螺丝(28)。

9. 用刻度(30)移动前面盖板(29)的位置。但是，只限调整板(26)移动的刻度量(刻度(31)的移动值)。

10. 紧固5个螺丝(28)。

前カバーの位置調整

注意

調整板の位置を変更した場合は、前カバーの位置調整をおこなう。

前カバーの位置が正しくないと、カセットがマグネットで止まらなくなったり、前カバーとペーパーフィーダ本体との間に隙間が開いたりする。

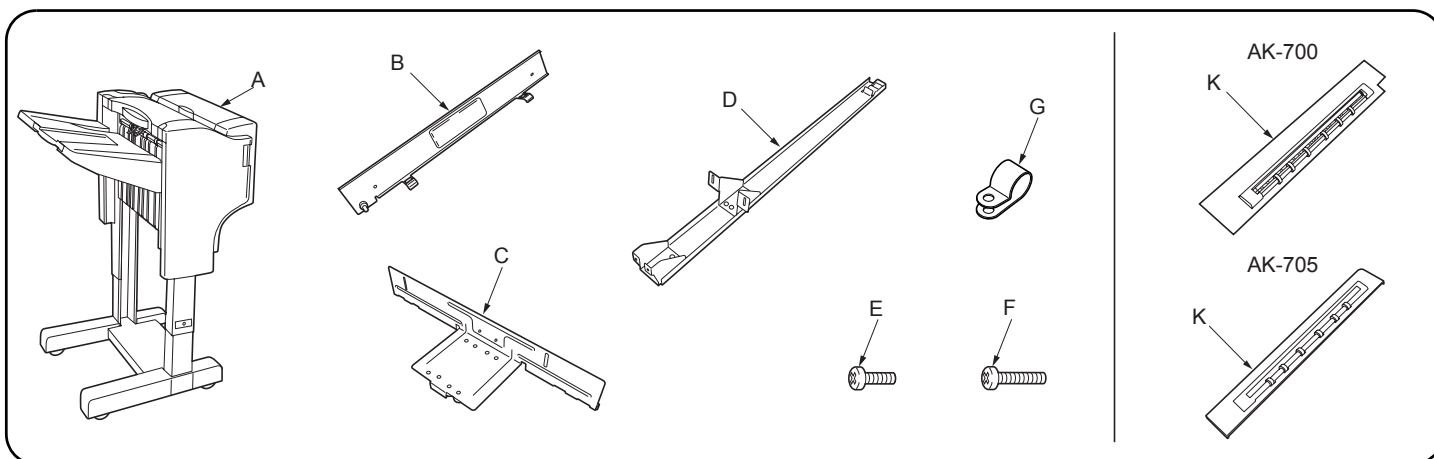
8. ビス(28)5本を緩める。

9. 調整板(26)を移動させた目盛り(目盛り(31)の移動値)だけ、前カバー(29)の位置を、目盛り(30)を使って移動させる。

10. ビス(28)5本を締め付ける。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT FINISHER

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.
Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.
P/N: 305H180180



English

Supplied parts

A Document finisher	1
B Latch catch	1
C Rail retainer	1
D Guide rail	1

E Binding screw M4 × 6	4
F Binding screw M4 × 10	4
G Clamp (Not used for full-color machines)	1
K Curl eliminator	1
For monochrome MFP's: AK-700	
For monochrome printers: AK-705	

For full-color machines, two pieces of (F) are not used.

For monochrome machines, part (K) is needed separately.

For full-color machines, part (K) is not needed.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Retoucheur de document	1
B Pontet du loquet	1
C Élément de rétention du rail	1
D Glissière	1

E Vis de raccordement M4 × 6	4
F Vis de raccordement M4 × 10	4
G Bride (Non utilisé pour les machines entièrement en couleurs)	1
K Élément d'élimination des boucles	1
Pour les MFP monochromes: AK-700	
Pour les imprimantes monochromes: AK-705	

Sur les machines entièrement en couleurs, deux pièces de (F) ne sont pas utilisées.

Sur les machines monochromes, il faut utiliser la pièce (K) séparément.

Pour les machines entièrement en couleurs, la pièce (K) n'est pas nécessaire.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Finalizador de documentos	1
B Cerrojo	1
C Retén del carril	1
D Carril guía	1

E Tornillo de sujeción M4 × 6	4
F Tornillo de sujeción M4 × 10	4
G Abrazadera (No utilizado para máquinas a todo color)	1
K Eliminador de enrollado	1
Para las MFP monocromáticas: AK-700	
Para las impresoras monocromáticas: AK-705	

Para las máquinas a todo color, no se utilizan dos piezas de (F).

Para las máquinas monocromáticas, es necesario por separado la pieza (K).

Para las máquinas a todo color, la pieza (K) no es necesaria.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Dokument Finishers	1
B Riegelschloßbausatz	1
C Schienenhalterungseinheit	1
D Führungsschieneneneinheit	1

E Verbundschraube M4 × 6	4
F Verbundschraube M4 × 10	4
G Klemme (Nicht für Vollfarbenmaschinen verwendet)	1
K Glättungseinrichtung	1
Für monochrome MFP: AK-700	
Für Monochromedruker: AK-705	

Für Vollfarbenmaschinen werden zwei Teile von (F) nicht benutzt.

Für Monochrommaschinen wird Teil (K) getrennt benötigt.

Für Vollfarbenmaschinen wird Teil (K) nicht benötigt.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Finitrice di documenti	1
B Dispositivo di arresto	1
C Fermo della guida	1
D Guida della rotaia	1

E Vite di serraggio M4 × 6	4
F Vite di serraggio M4 × 10	4
G Morsetto (Non utilizzato per le macchine a colori)	1
K Eliminatore di pieghe	1
Per gli MFP in bianco e nero: AK-700	
Per gli stampatori in bianco e nero: AK-705	

Per le macchine a colori, due pezzi di (F) non sono utilizzati.

Per le macchine in bianco e nero, separatamente è necessaria la parte (K).

Per le macchine a colori, la parte (K) non è necessaria.

简体中文

附属品

(A)装订器	1
(B)挂钩承支架	1
(C)轨道座	1
(D)导向轨道	1

(E) M4 × 6 固结螺钉	4
(F) M4 × 10 固结螺钉	4
(G) 夹紧件 (全彩色机上不使用)	1
(K) 防卷曲部件	1
黑白MFP: AK-700	
黑白打印机: AK-705	

全彩色机时(F)剩下2个连接螺钉。

黑白机时另外需要安装(K)部件。

全彩色机时, 不需要安装(K)部件。

日本語

付属品

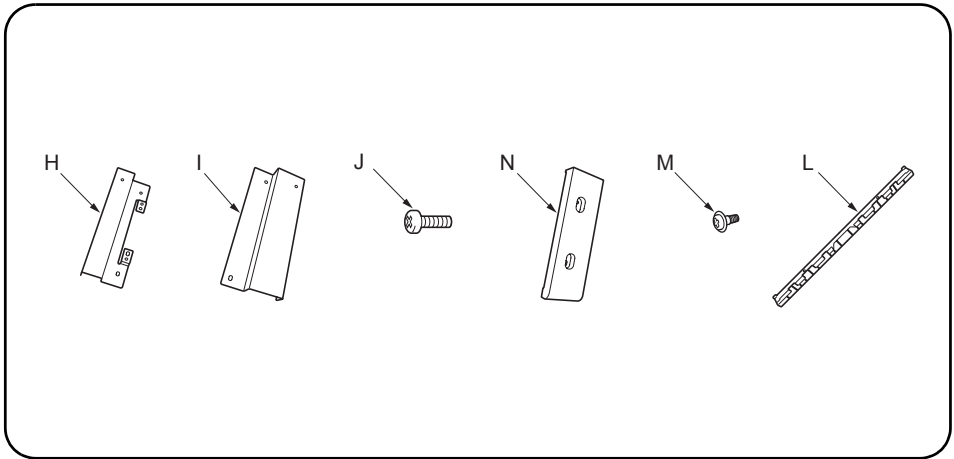
A ドキュメントフィニッシャー	1
B ラッチ受け板	1
C レール取付板	1
D ガイドレール	1

E ビス M4 × 6 バインド	4
F ビス M4 × 10 バインド	4
G クランプ (フルカラー機では使用しません)	1
K デカーラー	1
モノクロ MFP 用: AK-700	
モノクロプリンタ用: AK-705	

フルカラー機では、(F) が 2 本余ります。

モノクロ機では、(K) が別途必要です。

フルカラー機では、(K) は不要です。



H	Fixing plate F	1
I	Fixing plate R	1
J	S Tite screw M4 × 10	9
N	Cover AT	1
M	Shoulder screw	1
L	Guide plate	1

When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, use parts (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) and (N) supplied with the job separator.

H	Plaque de fixation avant	1
I	Plaque de fixation arrière	1
J	Vis S Tite M4 × 10	9
N	Couvercle AT	1
M	Vis d'épaule	1
L	Plaque guide	1

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de documents sur une MFP polychrome, les pièces (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) et (N) avec le séparateur de travaux sont requises.

H	Placa de fijación F	1
I	Placa de fijación R	1
J	Tornillo S Tite M4 × 10	9
N	Cubierta AT	1
M	Tornillo de hombro	1
L	Placa guía	1

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una MFP a todo color serán necesarias las partes (H), (I), (J), (L), (M), y (N) suministradas con el separador de tareas.

H	Fixierplatte F	1
I	Fixierplatte R	1
J	S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10	9
N	Abdeckung AT	1
M	Bundschraube	1
L	Führungsplatte	1

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Farbmultifunktionsgerät angebracht wird, sind die Teile (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) und (N), die mit dem Jobtrenner gelieferten erforderlich.

H	Piastra di fissaggio F	1
I	Piastra di fissaggio R	1
J	Vite S Tite M4 × 10	9
N	Coperchio AT	1
M	Vite a colletto	1
L	Piastra della guida	1

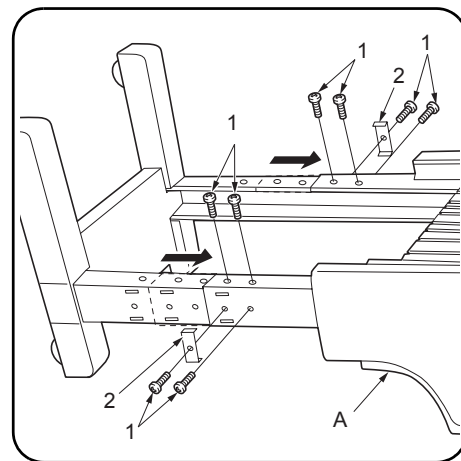
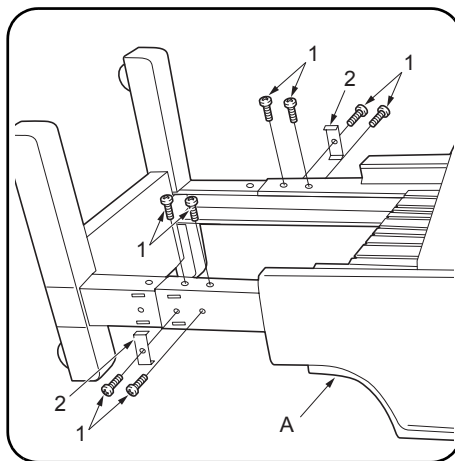
Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un MFP a colori, sono necessarie le parti (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) e (N) fornite in dotazione con il separatore dei lavori.

(H)	固定板 F	1
(I)	固定板 R	1
(J)	紧固螺钉 M4 × 10S	9
(N)	盖板 AT	1
(M)	阶梯螺钉	1
(L)	导向板	1

全彩色 MFP 上安装装订器时，请使用作业分离器上附属的部件 (H)、(I)、(J)、(L)、(M) 和 (N)。

H	固定板 F	1
I	固定板 R	1
J	ビス M4 × 10S タイプ	9
N	カバー AT	1
M	段付きビス	1
L	ガイド板	1

フルカラーMFP 機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合、ジョブセパレータに付属する (H)、(I)、(J)、(L)、(M)、(N) が必要となる。



Installation Procedure

When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, install the job separator in advance. Be sure to turn the main switch of the MFP or the printer off and disconnect the power plug of the MFP or the printer from the wall outlet before installing the document finisher.

[Steps 1 to 5 below are only for full-color machines.]

1. Place the document finisher (A) sideways, remove the eight screws (1), and remove the two pieces of fittings (2).

2. To align the document finisher with the paper outlet of the MFP or the printer, slide the legs of the document finisher (A) to the uppermost positions indicated in the illustration, attach the two pieces of fittings (2) that have been removed in step 1, and secure them using the eight screws (1).

Procédure d'installation

Installer le séparateur de travaux, puis installer le retoucheur de documents sur la MFP polychrome. Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal de la MFP ou de l'imprimante hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la MFP ou de l'imprimante de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du retoucheur de documents.

[Les étapes 1 à 5 ci-dessous concernent les machines entièrement en couleurs seulement.]

1. Placer le retoucheur de documents (A) sur le côté, retirer les huit vis (1), et retirer les deux pièces de fixation (2).

2. Pour aligner le retoucheur de document sur la sortie de papier du MFP ou imprimante, faire glisser les pieds du retoucheur de document (A) jusqu'aux positions les plus hautes indiquées sur l'illustration, fixer les deux pièces de fixation (2) qui avaient été retirées auparavant à l'étape 1, et les fixer à l'aide des huit vis (1).

Procedimiento de instalación

Instale el separador de tareas y luego instale el finalizador de documentos en la MFP a todo color. Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal de la MFP o de la impresora y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación de la MFP o de la impresora de la toma de corriente de la pared, antes de empezar a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

[Los pasos 1 a 5 a continuación son solo para máquinas a todo color.]

1. Apoye el finalizador de documentos (A) sobre un lado, saque los ocho tornillos (1) y saque dos piezas de herrajes (2).

2. Para alinear el finalizador de documentos con la salida de papel del MFP o impresora, deslice las patas del finalizador de documentos (A) a las posiciones superiores indicadas en la figura, instale las dos piezas de herrajes (2) desmontadas en el paso 1 y asegúrelos con los ocho tornillos (1).

Einbauverfahren

Bauen Sie zuerst den Jobtrenner und dann den Dokument-Finisher in den Farbmultifunktionsgerät ein. Schalten Sie den MFP-Hauptschalter oder den Drucker-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den MFP-Netzstecker oder den Drucker-Netzstecker von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Dokument Finishers beginnen.

[Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 5 gelten nur für Vollfarbmaschinen.]

1. Den Dokument Finisher (A) auf die Seite legen, die acht Schrauben (1) entfernen, und die zwei Befestigungsteile (2) abnehmen.

2. Um den Dokument Finisher auf den Papierausslass des MFP oder Drucker auszurichten, die Beine des Dokument Finishers (A) auf die in der Abbildung gezeigte oberste Position schieben, dann die zwei in Schritt 1 entfernten Befestigungsteile (2) anbringen und mit den acht Schrauben (1) befestigen.

Procedura di installazione

Installare il separatore dei lavori e poi procedere all'installazione della finitrice di documenti sul MFP a colori. Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione della finitrice di documenti, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP o lo stampatore usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e disinserire la spina dell'MFP o dello stampatore dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

[I seguenti passi da 1 a 5 sono solo per le macchine a colori.]

1. Collocare la finitrice di documenti (A) lateralmente, rimuovere le otto viti (1) e rimuovere i due pezzi di raccordo (2).

2. Per allineare la finitrice di documenti con l'uscita della carta dell'MFP o stampatore, fare scivolare i piedini della finitrice di documenti (A) sulle posizioni più in alto indicate nel disegno, montare i due pezzi di raccordo (2) che sono stati rimossi nel passo 1 e fissarli utilizzando le otto viti (1).

安裝步驟

將裝訂器安裝到全彩色MFP時，請提前安裝作業分離器。請務必關閉MFP或打印機的主開關並從牆壁插座拔下MFP或打印機的電源插頭再安裝裝訂器。

[步驟1~5仅限于全彩色机]

1. 將裝訂器(A)橫向放置，卸下8個螺釘(1)，然後，取下2個固定件(2)。

2. 為了對准主機排紙口，先將裝訂器(A)的機腳滑動到最上面的位置(如圖所示的位置)，然後，安裝在步驟1取下的2個固定件(2)，并用8個螺釘(1)加以固定。

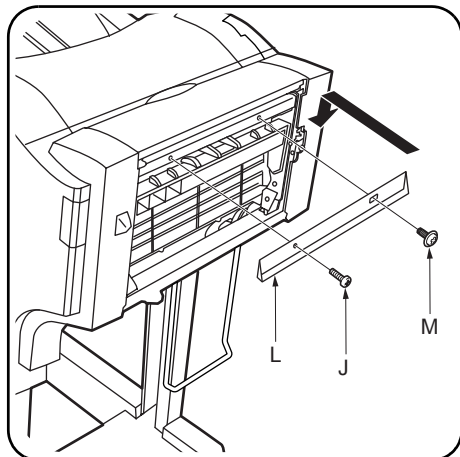
設置手順

フルカラーMFP機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける際には、先にジョブセパレータを装着すること。ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける際は、必ずMFP本体またはプリンタ本体のメインスイッチをOFFにし、電源プラグを外して作業をおこなうこと。

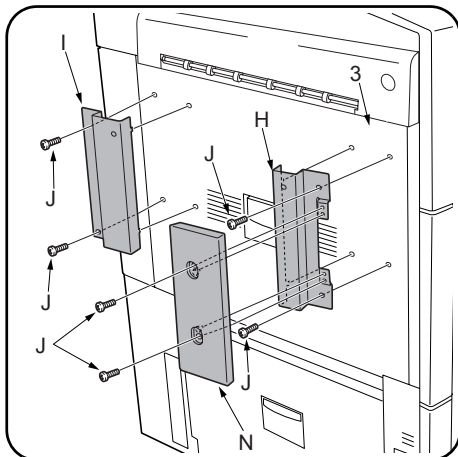
[手順1～5はフルカラー機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)を横向きにおき、ビス(1)8本を外し、固定金具(2)2個を取り外す。

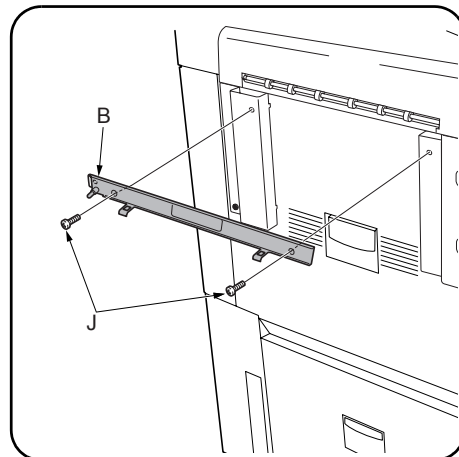
2. 本体用紙排出口に合わせる為、ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)の脚を最上の位置(図の位置)までスライドさせ、手順1で取り外した固定金具(2)2個を取り付け、ビス(1)8本で固定する。



3. Secure the guide plate (L) using the shoulder screw (M) and an S Tite screw M4 × 10 (J).



4. Fit the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) to the left cover (3) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (J) for each and fit the cover AT (N) to the fixing plate F (H) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (J).



5. Fit the latch catch (B) to the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (J). (Proceed to step 7.)

3. Fixez la plaque guide (L) à l'aide de la vis d'épaule (M) et d'une vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

4. Fixer la plaque de fixation avant (H) et la plaque de fixation arrière (I) sur le couvercle de gauche (3) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J) chaque et fixer le couvercle AT (N) sur la plaque de fixation avant (H) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

5. Fixer le pontet du loquet (B) sur la plaque de fixation avant (H) et sur la plaque de fixation arrière (I) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J). (Passer à l'étape 7.)

3. Asegure la placa guía (L) utilizando el tornillo de hombro (M) y un tornillo S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

4. Encaje la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) en la cubierta izquierda (3) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (J) para cada una y encaje la cubierta AT (N) en la placa de fijación F (H) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

5. Encaje el cerrojo (B) en la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) utilizando los dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (J). (Vaya al paso 7.)

3. Die Führungsplatte (L) mit der Bundschraube (M) und einer S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10 (J) befestigen.

4. Die Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) mit je zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (J) an der linken Abdeckung (3) anbringen, und die Abdeckung AT (N) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (J) an der Fixierplatte F (H) anbringen.

5. Die Riegelschloßbausatz (B) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (J) an der Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) anbringen. (Zu Schritt 7 übergehen.)

3. Fissare la piastra della guida (L) utilizzando la vite a colletto (M) e la vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

4. Montare la piastra di fissaggio F (H) e la piastra di fissaggio R (I) sul coperchio sinistro (3) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J) per ciascuna di esse e montare il coperchio AT (N) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

5. Montare il dispositivo di arresto (B) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) e sulla piastra di fissaggio R (I) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J). (Procedere con il passo 7.)

3. 在用阶梯螺钉(M)和紧固螺钉M4×10S (J)各1个固定导板(L)。

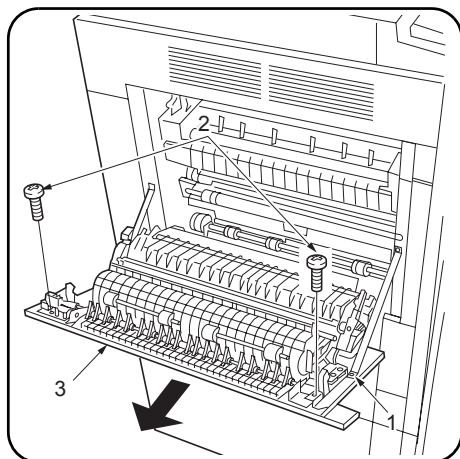
4. 将固定板F(H)和固定板R(I)分别用2个紧固螺丝M4×10S(J)固定在左盖板(3)上, 将盖板AT(N)用2个紧固螺丝M4×10S(J)固定在固定板F(H)上。

5. 挂钩承支架(B)用2个紧固螺丝M4×10S(J)固定在固定板F(H)和固定板R(I)上。(接着操作步骤7)

3. ガイド板 (L) を段付きビス (M) とビス M4 × 10S タイト (J) 各 1 本で固定する。

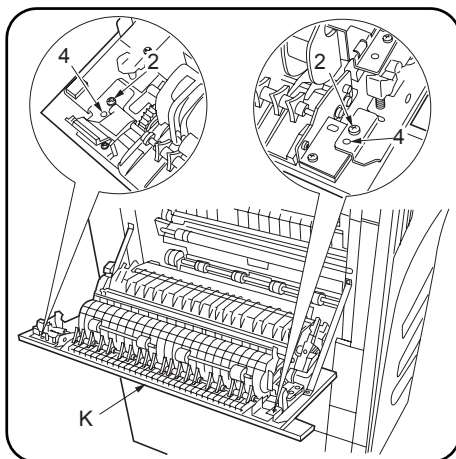
4. 固定板 F(H) と固定板 R(I) を左カバー (3) にビス M4 × 10S タイト (J) 各 2 本で固定し、カバーAT(N) をビス M4 × 10S タイト (J) 2 本で固定板 F(H) に固定する。

5. ラッチ受け板 (B) をビス M4 × 10S タイト (J) 2 本で固定板 F(H) と固定板 R(I) に固定する。(手順 7 に進む)

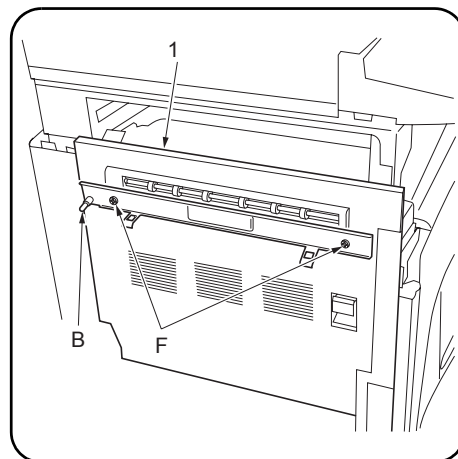


[Steps 1 to 6 below are only for monochrome machines.]

1. Open the eject cover (1) of the MFP or the printer.
2. Remove the two screws (2) securing the feedshift guide assembly (3) and then the assembly.



3. Fit the curl eliminator (K) to the eject cover (1) such that the projections (4) on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator (K).
4. Secure the curl eliminator (K) using the two screws (2) removed in step 2.



5. Close the eject cover (1).
6. Fit the latch catch (B) to the eject cover (1) using two M4 x 10 binding screws (F).

[Les étapes 1 à 6 ci-dessous concernent les machines monochromes seulement.]

1. Ouvrir le couvercle d'éjection (1) du MFP ou imprimante.
2. Retirer les deux vis (2) fixant l'assemblage de la glissière d'alimentation (3) puis retirer l'assemblage.

3. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (K) au couvercle d'éjection (1) de telle façon que les projections (4) du couvercle s'insèrent dans les deux extrémités de cet élément (K).
4. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (K) à l'aide des deux vis (2) retirées à l'étape 2.

5. Fermer le couvercle d'éjection (1).
6. Fixer le pontet du loquet (B) au couvercle d'éjection (1) à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 x 10 (F).

[Los pasos 1 a 6 a continuación son sólo para máquinas monocromáticas.]

1. Abra la cubierta de expulsión (1) del MFP o impresora.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (2) que aseguran el ensamble guía de la unidad de cambio de alimentación de papel (3) y luego el ensamble.

3. Coloque el eliminador de enrollamiento (K) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) de modo que las proyecciones (4) de la cubierta encajen en los dos extremos del eliminador de enrollamiento (K).
4. Asegure el eliminador de enrollamiento (K) usando los dos tornillos (2) que quitó en el paso 2.

5. Cierre la cubierta de expulsión (1).
6. Coloque el cerrojo (B) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 x 10 (F).

[Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 6 gelten nur für Monochrommaschinen.]

1. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1) des MFP oder Drucker.
2. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (2), die den Zuführungswechsel-Bausatz (3) befestigen und dann den Bausatz.

3. Bringen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (K) so an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an, daß die Vorsprünge (4) auf der Abdeckung in die zwei Enden des Wellenverhinderers (K) passen.
4. Befestigen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (K) mittels der in Schritt 2 entfernten zwei Schrauben (2).

5. Schliessen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1).
6. Bringen Sie den Riegelschloßbausatz (B) mittels der zwei M4 x 10 Verbundschrauben (F) an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an.

[I seguenti passi da 1 a 6 sono solo per le macchine in bianco e nero.]

1. Aprire la copertura dell'uscita carta (1) dell'MFP o stampatore.
2. Rimuovere le due viti (2) che fissano il gruppo di guida di cambio alimentazione (3) e quindi il gruppo.

3. Inserire l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) in modo tale che le proiezioni (4) sulla copertura siano inserite nelle due estremità dell'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K).
4. Fissare l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K) utilizzando le due viti (2) rimosse al punto 2.

5. Chiudere la copertura dell'uscita carta (1).
6. Inserire il dispositivo di arresto (B) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) utilizzando due viti di serraggio M4 x 10 (F).

[步骤1~6仅限于黑白机]

1. 将MFP或打印机的出纸盖板(1)打开。
2. 将两个小螺钉(2)摘下,并将分支导向组件(3)卸下。

3. 将带凸肩压板的凸部(4)嵌入防卷曲部件(K)两端后,将防卷曲部件(K)安装于出纸盖板(1)上。
4. 用依步骤2摘下的两个小螺钉(2)来固定防卷曲部件(K)。

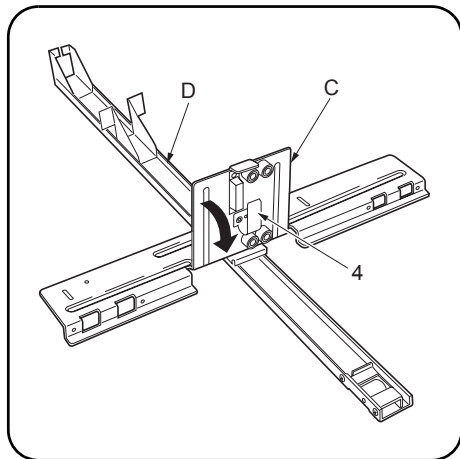
5. 将出纸盖板(1)关上。
6. 用两个M4 x 10 固结螺钉(F)将挂钩承支架(B)安装于出纸盖板(1)上。

[手順1~6はモノクロ機のみ]

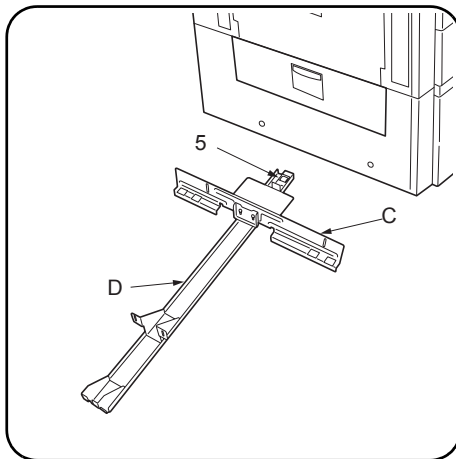
1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の排出カバー(1)を開く。
2. ビス(2)2本を外し、分岐ガイド組立(3)を取り外す。

3. デカーラー(K)の両端に半押し(4)がはまる位置で、デカーラー(K)を排出カバー(1)に取り付ける。
4. 手順2で外したビス(2)2本でデカーラー(K)を固定する。

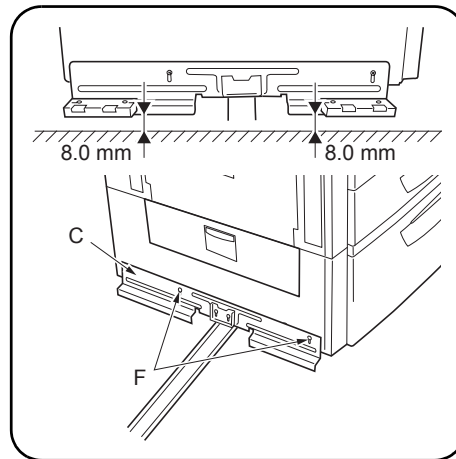
5. 排出カバー(1)を閉じる。
6. ラッチ受け板(B)をビス M4 x 10 バインド(F)2本で排出カバー(1)に取り付ける。



7. Align the rail retainer (C) with the groove of the guide rail (D) and attach the rail retainer (C) to the guide rail (D). Make sure that the plate spring (4) of the rail retainer (C) fits into the groove and the edge of the guide rail (D) fits between the pulleys on the reverse side of the rail retainer (C).



8. Orient the guide rail (D) such that its pulley (5) is positioned toward the MFP or the printer.



9. Secure the rail retainer (C) to the MFP or the printer using two M4 x 10 binding screws (F) such that the front and the rear gaps between the floor and the rail retainer (C) are approximately 8.0 mm.

7. Aligner l'élément de rétention du rail (C) sur le sillon de la glissière (D) et le fixer à l'élément de rétention du rail (C) à la glissière (D). Veiller à ce que le ressort de plaque (4) de l'élément de rétention du rail (C) s'adapte au sillon et que l'extrémité de la glissière (D) puisse passer entre les poulies sur le côté opposé de l'élément de rétention du rail (C).

8. Orienter la glissière (D) de manière que sa poulie (5) soit orientée vers le MFP ou imprimante.

9. Fixer l'élément de rétention du rail (C) au MFP ou imprimante à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 x 10 (F) de manière que les écarts avant et arrière entre le sol et l'élément de rétention du rail (C) soient d'environ 8.0 mm.

7. Alinee el retén del carril (C) con la acanaladura del carril guía (D) y anexe el retén del carril (C) al carril guía (D). Asegúrese de que el resorte de la placa (4) del retén del carril (C) encaje en la acanaladura y que el borde del carril guía (D) encaje entre las poleas del lado inverso del retén del carril (C).

8. Oriente el carril guía (D) de modo que su polea (5) se encuentre ubicada hacia el MFP o impresora.

9. Asegure el retén del carril (C) a el MFP o impresora usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 x 10 (F) de modo que los espacios frontal y trasero entre el piso y el retén del carril (C) sean de aproximadamente 8.0 mm.

7. Richten Sie die Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) mit der Rille der Führungsschiene (D) aus, und bringen Sie die Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) an die Führungsschiene (D) an. Stellen Sie sicher, daß die Tellerfeder (4) der Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) in die Rille paßt und die Kante der Führungsschiene (D) zwischen den Seilzügen auf der Rückseite der Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) sitzt.

8. Richten Sie die Führungsschiene (D) so aus, daß die Riemenscheibe (5) zum MFP oder Drucker ausgerichtet ist.

9. Bringen Sie die Schienenhalterung (C) am MFP oder Drucker mit zwei M4 x 10 Verbundschrauben (F) so an, daß die vorderen und hinteren Abstände zwischen Boden und Schienenhalterung (C) etwa 8.0 mm betragen.

7. Allineare il fermo della guida (C) con la scanalatura della guida della rotaia (D) e fissare il fermo della guida (C) alla guida della rotaia (D). Assicurarsi che la molla della piastra (4) del fermo della guida (C) sia collocata nella scanalatura e che il bordo della guida della rotaia (D) sia inserito tra le pulegge sul lato opposto del fermo della guida (C).

8. Orientare la guida della rotaia (D) in modo da posizionare la puleggia (5) in direzione dell'MFP o stampatore.

9. Assicurare il fermo della guida (C) all'MFP o stampatore utilizzando le due viti di serraggio M4 x 10 (F), in modo che la distanza anteriore e posteriore tra il pavimento ed il fermo della guida (C) sia di circa 8.0 mm.

7. 将轨道座 (C) 沿着导向轨道 (D) 的凹槽嵌入。此时, 应将片簧部 (4) 插入于凹槽中并将导向轨道 (D) 的一端插入于轨道座 (C) 背面的滚轮与滚轮之间。

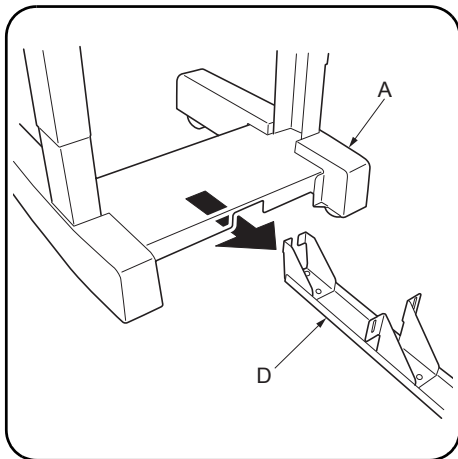
8. 使导向轨道 (D) 的滚轮部 (5) 朝向MFP或打印机。

9. 用两个M4 x 10固结螺钉(F)将轨道座(C)固定于MFP或打印机上。此时, 轨道座(C)与地板之间的距离应约为8.0毫米。

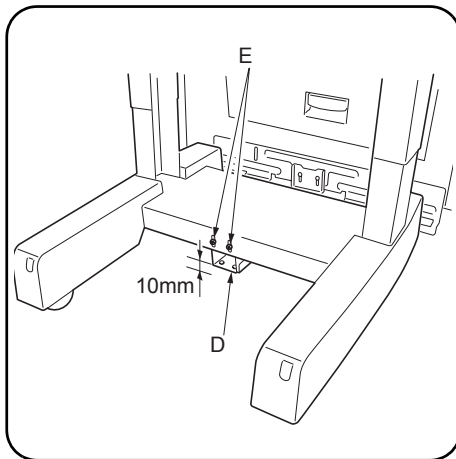
7. レール取付板 (C) をガイドレール (D) の溝に合わせてはめ込む。
板バネ部 (4) が溝の中に入り、レール取付板 (C) 裏側のコロとコロの間にガイドレール (D) の端が入るようにする。

8. ガイドレール (D) のコロ部 (5) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体側に向ける。

9. レール取付板 (C) と床面の前後隙間が約 8.0mm になるように、レール取付板 (C) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体にビス M4 x 10 バインド (F) 2 本で固定する。



10. Insert the guide rail (D) into the bottom of the document finisher (A).

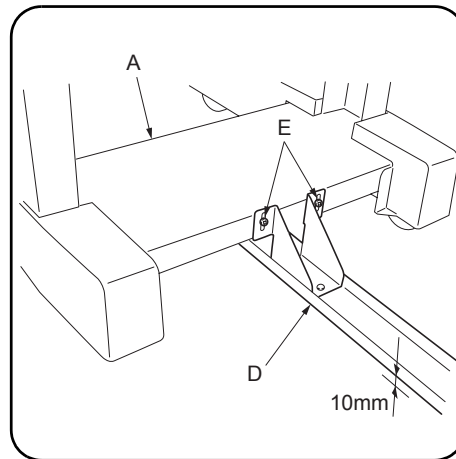


Fitting and adjusting the guide rail

11. While pressing the guide rail (D) to the document finisher (A) so that the gap between the guide rail (D) and the floor is approximately 10 mm, secure it using two M4 × 6 binding screws (E).

Note

If the guide rail is not properly adjusted, the guide rail may not move when the document finisher is separated.



12. Separate the document finisher (A) from the MFP or the printer and secure it using two M4 × 6 binding screws (E) so that the gap between the guide rail (D) and the floor is approximately 10 mm.

10. Insérer la glissière (D) en bas du retoucheur de document (A).

Fixation et réglage de la glissière

11. Tout en pressant la glissière (D) contre le retoucheur de document (A) de façon que l'écart entre la glissière (D) et le sol soit d'environ 10 mm, la fixer à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 6 (E).

Remarque

Si la glissière n'est pas réglée correctement, la glissière risquera de ne pas se déplacer lorsque le retoucheur de document sera séparé.

12. Séparer le retoucheur de document (A) du MFP ou imprimante, puis le fixer à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 6 (E) de façon que l'écart entre la glissière (D) et le sol soit d'environ 10 mm.

10. Inserte el carril de guía (D) en la parte inferior del finalizador de documentos (A).

Fijación y ajuste del carril de guía

11. Mientras presiona el carril de guía (D) en el finalizador de documentos (A) para que la separación entre el carril de guía (D) y el piso sea de unos 10 mm, asegúrelo utilizando dos tornillos de fijación M4 × 6 (E).

Nota

Si el carril de guía no está bien ajustado, el carril de guía puede no moverse cuando se separa el finalizador de documentos.

12. Separe el finalizador de documentos (A) del MFP o impresora y asegúrelo utilizando dos tornillos de fijación M4 × 6 (E) para que la separación entre el carril de guía (D) y el piso sea de unos 10 mm.

10. Die Führungsschiene (D) in das Unterteil des Dokument Finishers (A) einschieben.

Anbringen und Einstellen der Führungsschieneinheit

11. Die Führungsschiene (D) gegen den Dokument Finisher (A) gedrückt halten, so dass der Abstand zwischen der Führungsschiene (D) und dem Boden ca. 10 mm beträgt, und mit zwei M4 × 6 Befestigungsschrauben (E) sichern.

Hinweis

Falls die Führungsschieneinheit nicht korrekt eingestellt ist, bewegt sie sich beim Trennen des Dokument Finishers eventuell nicht.

12. Den Dokument Finisher (A) vom MFP oder Drucker trennen und mit zwei M4 × 6 Befestigungsschrauben (E) sichern, so dass der Abstand zwischen der Führungsschiene (D) und dem Boden ca. 10 mm beträgt.

10. Inserire la guida della rotaia (D) nella parte inferiore della finitrice di documenti (A).

Montaggio e regolazione della guida della rotaia

11. Mentre si tiene premuta la guida della rotaia (D) alla finitrice di documenti (A) in modo che lo spazio tra la guida della rotaia (D) e il pavimento sia di circa 10 mm, fissarla a mezzo di due viti di serraggio M4 × 6 (E).

Nota

Se la guida della rotaia non è regolata correttamente, potrebbe non muoversi quando il separatore la finitrice di documenti verrà staccato.

12. Separare la finitrice di documenti (A) dall'MFP o stampatore per fissarla a mezzo di due viti di serraggio M4 × 6 (E) in modo che lo spazio tra la guida della rotaia (D) e il pavimento sia di circa 10 mm.

10. 将导向轨道(D)插入装订器(A)的底部。

导向轨道的安装调整

11. 调整导向轨道(D)与地板之间的间距为10毫米左右, 将导向轨道(D)插入装订器(A)到底, 用两个M4×6固结螺钉(E)进行固定。

注意

如果不能正确调整导向轨道的话, 在分离装订器时, 可能会发生导向轨道不能移动的情况。

12. 将装订器(A)分离MFP或打印机, 调整导向轨道(D)与地板之间的间距为10毫米左右后, 用两支M4×6固结螺钉(E)进行固定。

10. ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)の底部にガイドレール(D)を挿入する。
www.tonerplus.com.ua

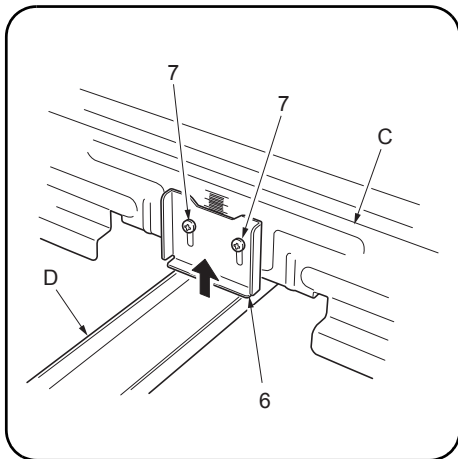
ガイドレールの取付調整

11. ガイドレール(D)と床面の隙間が約10mmになるように、ガイドレール(D)をドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)に突き当てながら、ビスM4 × 6 バインド(E)2本で固定する。

注意

正しく調整しないと、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの切り離し時、ガイドレールが動かない恐れがある。

12. ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)をMFP本体またはプリンタ本体より切り離し、ガイドレール(D)と床面の隙間が約10mmになるように、ビスM4 × 6 バインド(E)2本で固定する。



13. Loosen temporarily the two screws (7) that secure the sheet metal (6) of the rail mounting plate (C) on the MFP or the printer, raise the sheet metal (6) by two divisions of the scale from the guide rail (D), and tighten the two screws (7).

Note

If the guide rail is not properly adjusted, the guide rail may not move smoothly or the document finisher may fall down.

Slide the document finisher to engage it with the latch catch of the MFP or the printer. If the document finisher and the MFP or the printer do not engage securely, perform the following document finisher height adjustment.

13. Desserrer provisoirement les deux vis (7) qui fixent la feuille métallique (6) de la plaque de montage du rail (C) sur le MFP ou imprimante, élever la feuille métallique (6) de deux crans sur l'échelle de la glissière (D), puis resserrer les deux vis (7).

Remarque

Si la glissière n'est pas réglée correctement, la glissière risquera de ne pas se déplacer soûplement ou le retoucheur de document risquera de tomber.

Faire glisser le retoucheur de document pour l'engager dans le pontet du loquet du MFP ou imprimante. Si le retoucheur de document et le MFP ou imprimante ne s'engagent pas correctement, effectuer le réglage de hauteur suivant sur le retoucheur de document.

13. Afloje temporalmente los dos tornillos (7) que aseguran la hoja de metal (6) de la placa de montaje de carril (C) en el MFP o impresora, levante la hoja de metal (6) con dos divisiones de la escala del carril de guía (D) y apriete los dos tornillos (7).

Nota

Si no se ajusta correctamente el carril de guía, el carril de guía puede no moverse suavemente o el finalizador de documentos puede caer.

Deslice el finalizador de documentos hasta que enganche con el cerrojo del MFP o impresora. Si el finalizador de documentos y el MFP o impresora no se acoplan de manera segura, realice el siguiente ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos.

13. Die zwei Schrauben (7), die das Blech (6) der Schienenmontageplatte (C) am MFP oder Drucker sichern, vorübergehend lösen, das Blech (6) um zwei Teilstriche der Skala von der Führungsschiene (D) aus anheben, und die zwei Schrauben (7) wieder anziehen.

Hinweis

Falls die Führungsschieneinheit nicht korrekt eingestellt ist, bewegt sie sich eventuell nicht reibungslos, oder der Dokument Finisher kann herunterfallen.

Den Dokument Finisher verschieben, um ihn mit dem Riegelschloßbausatz des MFP oder Drucker in Eingriff zu bringen. Wenn der Dokument Finisher und der MFP oder Drucker nicht richtig ineinander eingreifen, führen Sie die folgende Höheneinstellung für den Dokument Finisher aus.

13. Allentare temporaneamente le due viti (7) che fissano il foglio metallico (6) della piastra di montaggio della rotaia (C) dell'MFP o stampatore, sollevare il foglio di metallo (6) di due posizioni sulla guida della rotaia (D) e serrare le due viti (7).

Nota

Se la guida della rotaia non è regolata correttamente, potrebbe non muoversi scorrevolmente oppure la finitrice di documenti potrebbe cadere.

Fare scivolare la finitrice di documenti per farla innestare con il dispositivo di arresto dell'MFP o stampatore. Qualora la finitrice di documenti e l'MFP o stampatore non si innestino saldamente, osservare la seguente procedura di regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

13. 松动固定在MFP或打印机侧轨道座(C)的金属板(6)上的两支固接螺钉(7), 在金属板(6)碰及导向轨道(D)的状态下, 抬升到第2个刻度的位置, 然后用两支螺钉(7)固定。

注意

如果不能正确调整的话, 导向轨道则不能顺利移动, 并会发生装订器倒置的情况。

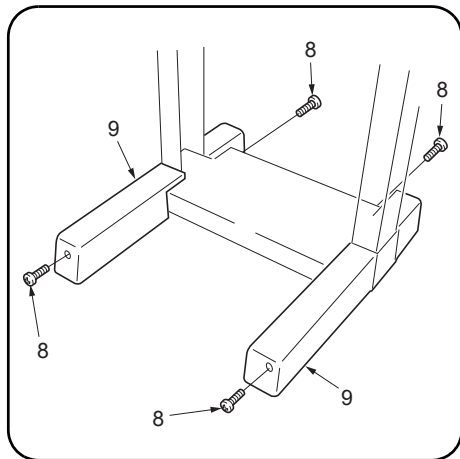
滑动装订器并连接于MFP或打印机的挂钩承支架上。
如无法吻合, 请按下述步骤调整装订器的高度。

13. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体側のレール取付板 (C) の板金 (6) を固定しているビス (7) 2 本をいったん緩め、板金 (6) をガイドレール (D) に当てた状態から 2 目盛り上の位置にあげて、ビス (7) 2 本を固定する。

注意

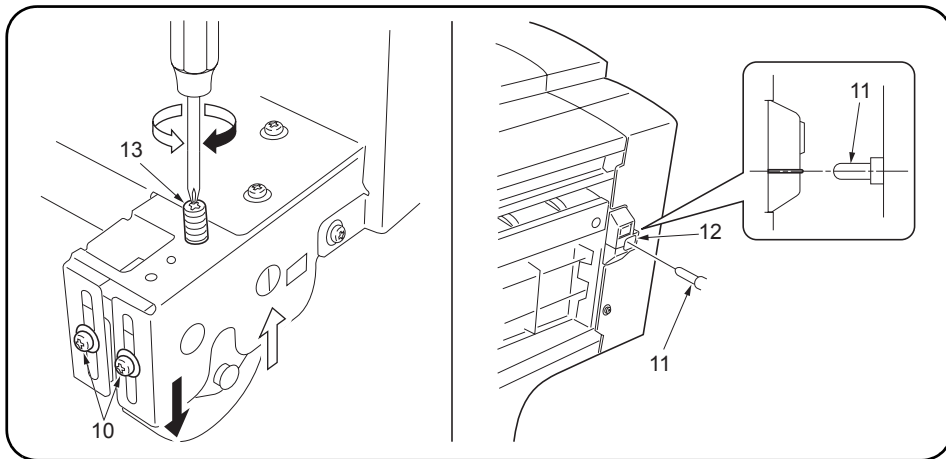
正しく調整しないと、ガイドレールがスムーズに動かない。又ドキュメントフィニッシャが倒れる恐れがある。

ドキュメントフィニッシャをスライドさせて MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体のラッチ受け板に連結させる。確実に連結しない場合は、次のドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整をおこなう。



Adjusting the height of the document finisher

1. Remove the front and rear covers (9) from the document finisher (A) by removing two screws (8) each.



2. Loosen the two screws (10) on the rear right caster of the document finisher (A). Adjust the height of the rear right caster by turning its adjustment bolt (13) using a cross-headed screwdriver so that the axis of the pin (11) of the latch catch is aligned with the marking of the slot (12) of the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP or the printer (viewed from the machine front).

Note: Turning the adjustment bolt (13) clockwise lifts the document finisher (A), while turning it counterclockwise lowers the document finisher (A).

Réglage de la hauteur du retoucheur de document

1. Retirer les couvercles avant et arrière (9) du retoucheur de document (A) en retirant deux vis (8) sur chacun des couvercles.

2. Desserrer les deux vis (10) de la roulette arrière droite du retoucheur de document (A). Régler la hauteur de la roulette arrière droite en tournant son boulon de réglage (13) à l'aide d'un tournevis cruciforme de manière que l'axe de la broche (11) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur la marque de la fente (12) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP ou imprimante (vue à partir de l'avant de la machine).

Remarque: Si l'on tourne le boulon de réglage (13) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'élève; si on le tourne dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'abaisse.

Ajuste de altura del finalizador de documentos

1. Desmonte las tapas delantera y trasera (9) del finalizador de documentos (A) sacando los dos tornillos (8) cada uno.

2. Afloje los dos tornillos (10) en la rueda trasera del finalizador de documentos (A). Ajuste la altura de la rueda trasera derecha girando su perno de ajuste (13) utilizando un destornillador de punta en cruz para que el eje del pasador (11) en el pestillo esté alineado con la marca de la ranura (12) del finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) esté unido a el MFP o impresora (vista del frente de la máquina).

Nota: Al girar el perno de ajuste (13) en la dirección de las manecillas del reloj se levanta el finalizador de documentos (A) y al girar contra las manecillas del reloj baja el finalizador de documentos (A).

Einstellen der Dokument Finisherhöhe

1. Die Vorder- und Rückabdeckung (9) nach Entfernen von je zwei Schrauben (8) vom Dokument Finisher (A) abnehmen.

2. Die zwei Schrauben (10) an der hinteren rechten Laufrolle des Dokument Finishers (A) lösen. Die Höhe der hinteren rechten Laufrolle durch Drehen ihrer Einstellschraube (13) mit einem Kreuzschlitzschraubenzieher so einstellen, dass die Achse des Stifts (11) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Markierung des Schlitzes (12) des Dokument Finishers (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP oder Drucker angesetzt ist (von der Gerätevorderseite gesehen).

Hinweis: Durch Drehen der Einstellschraube (13) im Uhrzeigersinn wird der Dokument Finisher (A) angehoben, während er durch Drehen entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn abgesenkt wird.

Regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti

1. Rimuovere i pannelli anteriore e posteriore (9) dalla finitrice di documenti (A) togliendo 2 viti (8) per ciascuno.

2. Allentare le due viti (10) sulla ruota orientabile posteriore destra della finitrice di documenti (A). Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile posteriore destra ruotandone il suo bullone di regolazione (13) a mezzo di un cacciavite a croce, in modo che l'asse del perno (11) del dispositivo di arresto risulti allineato ai contrassegni del foro (12) della finitrice di documenti (A) una volta che la finitrice stessa (A) viene unita all'MFP o stampatore (vista dal lato frontale della macchina).

Nota: Ruotando il bullone di regolazione (13) in senso orario si solleva la finitrice di documenti (A), mentre ruotandolo in senso antiorario si abbassa la finitrice di documenti (A).

[調整装订器の高度]

1. 卸下各两支小螺钉(8), 并取下装订器(A)的前后盖板(9)。

2. 将装订器(A)后右侧滚轮的两支固定螺钉(10)拧松。

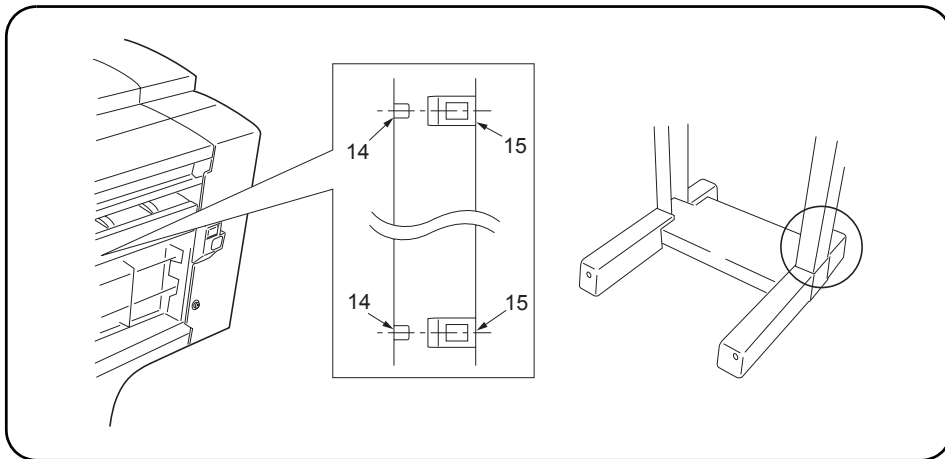
将装订器(A)与MFP或打印机连接, 为了使(从前面看时)挂钩承支架销(11)的中心与装订器(A)的长孔(12)的刻度相对准, 用十字螺丝刀旋转调节用螺钉(13), 对后右侧滚轮的高度进行调整。将调节用螺钉(13)往顺时针方向旋转时, 可调高装订器(A), 而往逆时针方向旋转螺钉时, 则可调低高度。

[ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整]

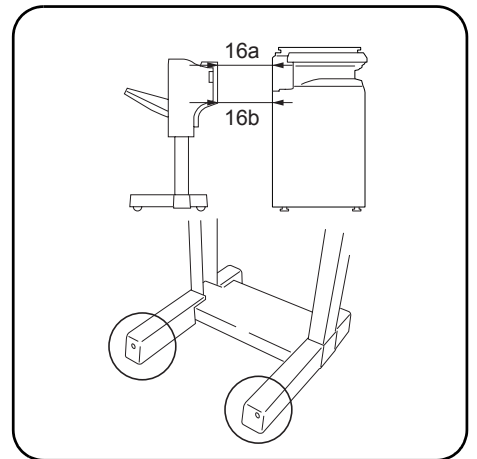
1. ビス(8)各2本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の前後カバー(9)を取り外す。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)右後のキャストの固定ビス(10)2本を緩める。

ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)をMFP本体またはプリンタ本体に連結し、前から見た時に、ラッチ受け板のピン(11)の中心が、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の長穴(12)の刻印に合うように、ブラスドライバーを用いて調整用ボルト(13)を回し、右後のキャストの高さ調整をおこなう。調整用ボルト(13)を時計方向に回すとドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)が上がり、反時計方向に回すと下がる。



3. Adjust the height of the front right caster in the same manner as in step 2 so that each center of the hooking portions (15) of the latch catch is aligned with the center of the two hooks (14) on the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP or the printer (viewed from above).



4. Adjust the height of the left two casters in the same manner as in step 2 so that the gaps (16a) and (16b) between the document finisher (A) and the MFP or the printer are the same when the document finisher (A) is detached from the MFP or the printer.

3. Régler la hauteur de la roulette avant droite en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que chacun des centres des parties d'accrochage (15) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur le centre des deux crochets (14) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP ou imprimante (vue à partir du haut).

4. Régler la hauteur des deux roulettes gauches en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que les écarts (16a) et (16b) entre le retoucheur de documents (A) et la MFP ou l'imprimante soient identiques lorsque le retoucheur de documents (A) est détaché de la MFP ou de l'imprimante.

3. Ajuste la altura de la rueda delantera derecha de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que cada centro de las partes de enganche (15) de cada pestillo esté alineado con el centro de los dos ganchos (14) en el finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) está unido a el MFP o impresora (vista de arriba).

4. Ajuste la altura de las dos ruedas izquierdas de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que las separaciones (16a) y (16b) entre el finalizador de documentos (A) y la MFP o la impresora sean las mismas cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) está soltado de la MFP o la impresora.

3. Die Höhe der vorderen rechten Laufrolle auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Mitte der Rasten (15) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Mitte der zwei Haken (14) am Dokument Finisher (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP oder Drucker angesetzt ist (von oben gesehen).

4. Die Höhe der beiden linken Laufrollen auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Abstände (16a) und (16b) zwischen dem Dokument Finisher (A) und dem MFP oder dem Drucker gleich groß sind, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) vom MFP oder vom Drucker abgenommen wird.

3. Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile anteriore destra allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che ciascun centro delle parti di aggancio (15) del dispositivo di arresto sia allineato al centro dei due ganci (14) della finitrice di documenti (A), una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene unita all'MFP o stampatore (vista dall'alto).

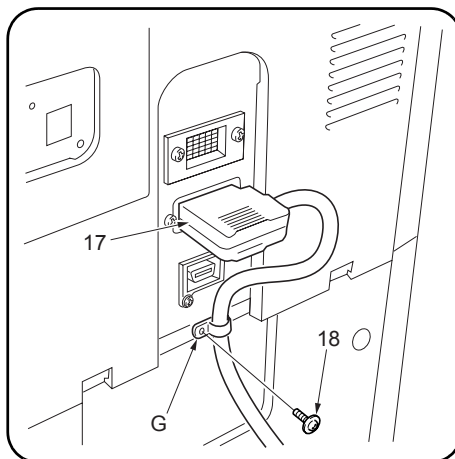
4. Regolare l'altezza delle due ruote orientabili sinistre allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che le distanze (16a) e (16b) tra la finitrice di documenti (A) e l'MFP o lo stampatore siano le stesse una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene separata dall'MFP o dallo stampatore.

3. 将装订器(A)与MFP或打印机连接, 使(从上面看时)装订器(A)的两个挂钩(14)与挂钩承支架的孔(15)中心相对准, 并按与步骤2相同的方法来调整前右侧滚轮的高度。

4. 按照步骤2中相同的方式调整左侧两个轮脚的高度, 使得装订器(A)和MFP或打印机之间的间隙(16a)和(16b)在从MFP或打印机上拆下装订器(A)时为相同的。

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)をMFP本体またはプリンタ本体に連結し、上から見た時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)のフック(14)2ヶ所とラッチ受け板の引っ掛け部(15)の中心が合うように、手順2と同様にして右前のキャスターの高さ調整をおこなう。

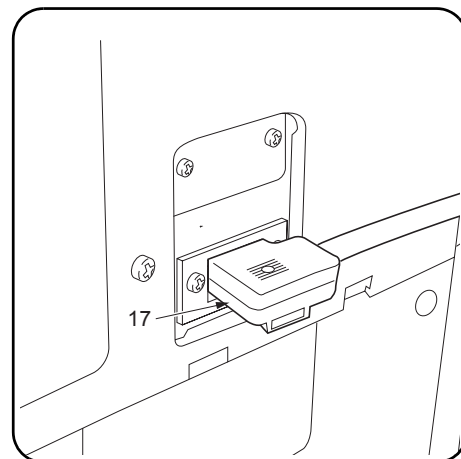
4. ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)をMFP本体またはプリンタ本体から切り離した時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)とMFP本体またはプリンタ本体の間隔(16a)(16b)が等しくなるように、手順2と同様にして左側のキャスター2カ所の高さ調整をおこなう。



5. Reattach the removed parts to their original positions.

Connecting the signal cable (monochrome machines only)

1. Connect the signal cable (17) of the document finisher (A) to the MFP or the printer, pass the cable through the clamp (G), and secure the clamp by tightening the screw (18) of the MFP or the printer. The cable length to the clamp (G) must be approximately 100 mm.



Connecting the signal cable (full-color machines only)

1. Connect the signal cable (17) of the document finisher (A) to the MFP or the printer.

5. Remettez les pièces enlevées à leur position d'origine.

Connexion du câble d'interconnexion (machines monochromes seulement)

1. Connecter le câble d'interconnexion (17) du retoucheur de document (A) au MFP ou imprimante, passer le câble par la bride (G), puis fixer la bride en serrant la vis (18) du MFP ou imprimante. La longueur du câble jusqu'à la bride (G) doit être d'environ 100 mm.

Connexion du câble d'interconnexion (machines entièrement en couleurs seulement)

1. Connecter le câble d'interconnexion (17) du retoucheur de document (A) au MFP ou imprimante.

5. Vuelva a instalar las piezas desmontadas en sus posiciones originales.

Conexión del cable de señal (sólo para máquinas monocromáticas)

1. Conecte el cable de señal (17) del finalizador de documentos (A) en el MFP o impresora, pase el cable por la abrazadera (G) y asegure la abrazadera apretando el tornillo (18) del MFP o impresora. La longitud del cable a la abrazadera (G) debe ser de unos 100 mm.

Conexión del cable de señal (sólo para máquinas a todo color)

1. Conecte el cable de señal (17) del finalizador de documentos (A) en el MFP o impresora.

5. Die entfernten Teile wieder an ihren ursprünglichen Positionen anbringen.

Anschließen des Signalkabels (nur Monochrommaschinen)

1. Das Signalkabel (17) des Dokument Finishers (A) an den MFP oder Drucker anschließen, das Kabel durch die Klemme (G) führen, und die Klemme durch Anziehen der Schraube (18) des MFP oder Drucker befestigen. Die Kabellänge bis zur Klemme (G) muss ungefähr 100 mm betragen.

Anschließen des Signalkabels (nur Vollfarbmaschinen)

1. Das Signalkabel (17) des Dokument Finishers (A) an den MFP oder Drucker anschließen.

5. Rimontare le parti rimosse nelle loro posizioni originali.

Connessione del cavo del segnale (solo per macchine in bianco e nero)

1. Collegare il cavo del segnale (17) della finitrice di documenti (A) all'MFP o stampatore, fare passare il cavo attraverso il morsetto (G) e fissare il morsetto stringendo la vite (18) dell'MFP o stampatore. La lunghezza del cavo al morsetto (G) deve essere di circa 100 mm.

Connessione del cavo del segnale (solo per le macchine a colori)

1. Collegare il cavo del segnale (17) della finitrice di documenti (A) all'MFP o stampatore.

5. 卸下的部品を元通りに取り付ける。

[连接信号电线：仅限于黑白机]

1. 连接装订器(A)的信号电线(17)，将电线穿过夹紧件(G)，然后，用螺钉(18)一起紧固。到夹紧件(G)处的电线长度约需100mm。

[连接信号电线：仅限于全彩色机]

1. 装订器(A)的信号电线(17)连接在MFP或打印机上。

5. 取り外した部品を元通りに取り付ける。

[信号線の接続: モノクロ機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の信号線(17)を接続し、ケーブルをクランプ(G)に通して、ビス(18)で共締めする。クランプ(G)までのケーブルの長さは約100mmにすること。

[信号線の接続: フルカラー機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の信号線(17)をMFP本体またはプリンタ本体に接続する。

Operation check

1. Insert the MFP or the printer power plug to the wall outlet and turn the main switch on.
2. Check that the paper is fed and that the document finisher (A) operates correctly.

Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP ou imprimante dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Vérifier que le papier est fourni et que le retoucheur de document (A) fonctionne correctement.

Comprobación operacional

1. Inserte el enchufe del MFP o impresora en el receptáculo de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Asegúrese de que avance el papel y verifique que el finalizador de documentos (A) funcione correctamente.

Betriebstest

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP oder Drucker in die Netzsteckdose ein und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter ein.
2. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert und dass der Dokument Finisher (A) einwandfrei funktioniert.

Controllo del funzionamento

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP o stampatore nella presa di rete e quindi premere il pulsante generale di accensione.
2. Verificare che la carta di prova sia alimentata e controllare che la finitrice di documenti (A) funzioni correttamente.

[确认运作]

1. 将MFP主机的电源插头插入插座后，开启总电源。
2. 确认已经送纸并且装订器(A)运行正常。

[動作確認]

1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. 通紙確認をおこない、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) が正常に動作することを確認する。

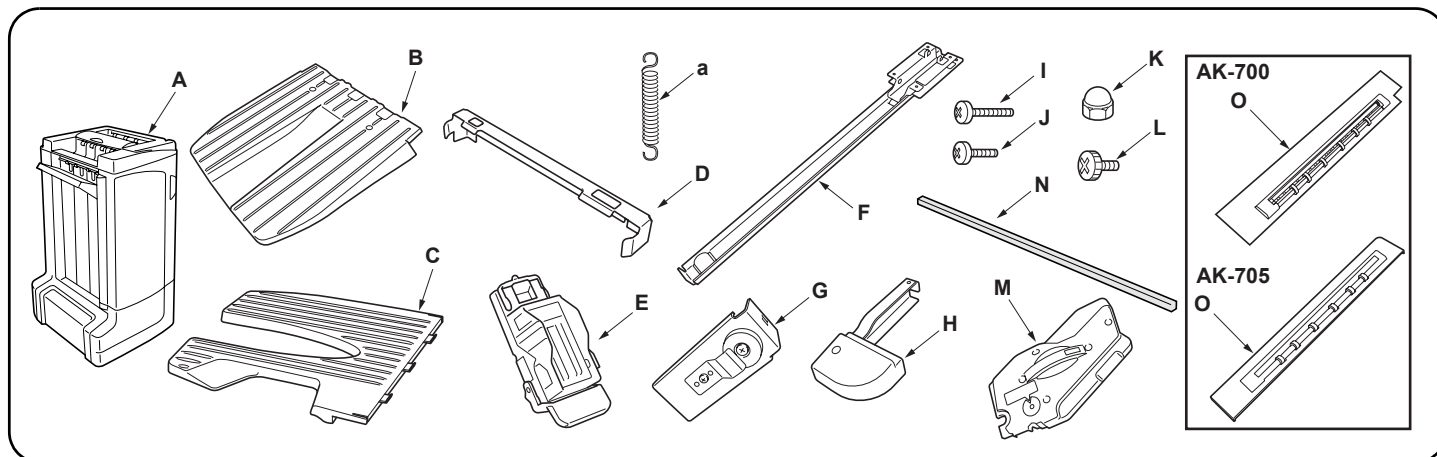
INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR 3000 SHEETS DOCUMENT FINISHER

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.

Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)

Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.

P/N: 3H327220



English

Supplied parts

A Document finisher	1
B Tray A	1
C Tray B	1
D Connecting plate	1
E Staple cartridge	1

F Base slider A	1
G Base slider B	1
H Plate foot R	1
I M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw	9
J M4 × 6 tap Tight S screw	4
K Nut	2
L Pin	2

M Internal tray cover	1
a Spring hook	1
N Sponge	1

For installing the document finisher to a monochrome machine, part (O) above is separately needed.

O Curl eliminator 1

For monochrome MFP's: AK-700

For monochrome printers: AK-705

Français

Pièces fournies

A Retoucheur de document	1
B Bac A	1
C Bac B	1
D Plaque de connexion	1
E Cartouche d'agrafes	1

F Règle de base A	1
G Règle de base B	1
H Pied de plaque R	1
I Vis S taraudée M4 × 10	9
J Vis S taraudée M4 × 6	4
K Ecrou	2
L Broche	2

M Capot de bac interne	1
a Crochet de ressort	1
N Eponge	1

Pour installer le retoucheur de document sur une machine monochrome, la pièce (O) ci-dessous est requise séparément.

O Élément d'élimination des boucles 1

Pour les MFP monochromes: AK-700

Pour les imprimantes monochromes: AK-705

Español

Partes suministradas

A Finalizador de documentos	1
B Bandeja A	1
C Bandeja B	1
D Placa de conexión	1
E Cartucho de grapas	1

F Deslizador A	1
G Deslizador B	1
H Pedal R	1
I Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10	9
J Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 6	4
K Tuerca	2
L Pasador	2

M Cubierta de bandeja interna	1
a Gancho de resorte	1
N Esponja	1

Para instalar el finalizador de documentos en una máquina de blanco y negro será necesaria la parte (O) mostrada arriba.

O Eliminador de curvatura del papel 1

Para las MFP monocromáticas: AK-700

Para las impresoras monocromáticas: AK-705

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Dokument-Finisher	1
B Fach A	1
C Fach B	1
D Verbindungsplatte	1
E Heftklammerkassette	1

F Basis-Schieber A	1
G Basis-Schieber B	1
H Plattenfuß R	1
I M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube	9
J M4 × 6 Passstift-Verbundschraube	4
K Mutter	2
L Stift	2

M Innenfach	1
a Federhaken	1
N Schwamm	1

Für den Einbau des Dokument-Finishers auf einer Monochrommaschine ist der obere Teil (O) zusätzlich erforderlich.

O Glättungseinrichtung 1

Für monochrome MFP: AK-700

Für Monochromedruker: AK-705

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Finitrice di documenti	1
B Vassoio A	1
C Vassoio B	1
D Piastra di connessione	1
E Cartuccia pinzatrice	1

F Scivolo di base A	1
G Scivolo di base B	1
H Piedino di sostegno R	1
I Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10	9
J Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 6	4
K Dad	2
L Perno	2

M Pannello del vassoio interno	1
a Gancio a molla	1
N Spugna	1

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un macchinario in bianco e nero, è separatamente necessaria la parte (O) sopra.

O Eliminatore di arricciature 1

Per gli MFP in bianco e nero: AK-700

Per gli stampatori in bianco e nero: AK-705

简体中文

附属部件

A 装订器	1
B 托盘 A	1
C 托盘 B	1
D 连接板	1
E 订书钉盒	1

F 底座滑板 A	1
G 底座滑板 B	1
H 板脚座 R	1
I M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉	9
J M4 × 6 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉	4
K 螺母	2
L 销	2

M 内部托盘盖板	1
a 弹簧挂钩	1
N 海绵	1

黑白机上安装装订器时, 另外需要安装上述的部件 (O)。

O 防卷曲部件 1

黑白 MFP: AK-700

黑白打印机: AK-705

日本語

付属品

A ドキュメントフィニッシャー	1
B トレイ A	1
C トレイ B	1
D 連結板	1
E ステープルカートリッジ	1

F ベーススライダ A	1
G ベーススライダ B	1
H プレートフット R	1
I ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S	9
J ビス M4 × 6 タップタイト S	4
K ナット	2
L ピン	2

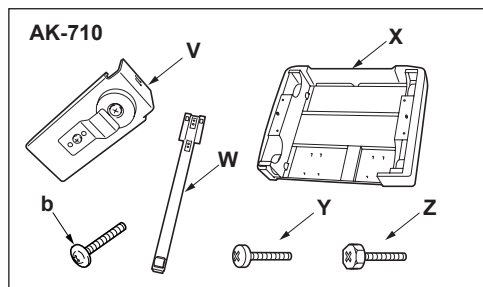
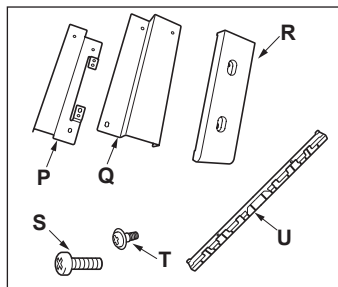
M 内部トレイカバー	1
a パネフック	1
N スポンジ	1

モノクロ機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合、(O) が別途必要となる。

O デカーラー 1

モノクロ MFP 用: AK-700

モノクロプリンタ用: AK-705



When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, use parts (P), (Q), (R) and eight out of nine (S) supplied with the job separator. Remaining parts (S), (T), and (U) are required only when installing DF-730.

P Fixing plate F	1
Q Fixing plate R	1
R Cover AT	1
S M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw	9

T Shoulder screw	1
U Guide plate	1
When installing the document finisher to a full-color machine, parts (V), (W), (X), (Y) and (Z) are additionally needed.	
V Base slider B	1
W Base slider V	1
X Assembly base	1

Y M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw	9
Z M4 × 10 hexagon head screw	1
b M4 × 14 TP tap Tight S screw	1

When the paper feeder of 500 sheets x 2 is used
One M4 × 14 TP tap Tight S screw (b) is left.

When the paper feeder of 3000 sheets is used
One M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (Y) is left.
Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de documents sur une MFP polychrome, les pièces (P), (Q), (R) et 8 des 9 (S) fournies avec le séparateur de travaux sont requises. Les pièces restantes (S), (T) et (U) ne sont requises que pour l'installation de DF-730.

P Plaque de fixation avant	1
Q Plaque de fixation arrière	1
R Couverture AT	1
S Vis S taraudée M4 × 10	9

T Vis d'épaule	1
U Plaque guide	1
Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur une machine entièrement en couleurs, les pièces (V), (W), (X), (Y) et (Z) sont requises en plus.	
V Règle de base B	1
W Règle de base V	1
X Base d'ensemble	1

Y Vis S taraudée M4 × 10	9
Z Vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10	1
b Vis TP S taraudée M4 × 14	1

Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 500 feuilles x 2
Une vis TP S taraudée M4 x 14 (b) est superflue.
Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles
Une vis S taraudée M4 x 10 (Y) est superflue.
Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una MFP a todo color serán necesarias las partes (P), (Q) y (R), y ocho de los nueve tornillos (S) suministrados con el separador de tareas. El resto de las partes (S), (T) y (U) sólo serán necesarias cuando se instale el DF-730.

P Placa de fijación F	1
Q Placa de fijación R	1
R Cubierta AT	1
S Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10	9

T Tornillo de hombro	1
U Placa guía	1
Cuando el finalizador de documentos se instala en una máquina a todo color serán necesarias también las partes (V), (W), (X), (Y) y (Z).	
V Deslizador de base B	1
W Deslizador de base V	1
X Base del conjunto	1

Y Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10	9
Z Tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10	1
b Tornillo TP de ajuste M4 × 14	1

Cuando se utiliza el alimentador de papel de 500 hojas x 2
Sobra un tornillo TP de ajuste M4 x 14 (b).
Cuando se utiliza el alimentador de papel de 3000 hojas
Sobra un tornillo de ajuste M4 x 10 (Y).
Asegúrese de quitar las cintas de fijación o el material amortiguador colocado en las partes suministradas.

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Farbmultifunktionsgerät angebracht wird, sind die Teile (P), (Q), (R) und acht von neun (S) Schrauben die mit dem Jobtrenner geliefert werden erforderlich. Die verbleibenden Teile (S), (T), und (U) sind nur dann erforderlich, wenn der DF-730 aufgestellt wird.

P Fixierplatte F	1
Q Fixierplatte R	1
R Abdeckung AT	1
S M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube	9

T Bundschraube	1
U Führungsplatte	1
Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Vollfarbentkopierer angebracht wird, so sind zusätzlich die Teile (V), (W), (X), (Y) und (Z) erforderlich.	
V Basis-Schieber B	1
W Basis-Schieber V	1
X Bauteile-Basis	1

Y M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben	9
Z M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube	1
b M4 × 14 TP Passstift-Verbundschraube	1

Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 500 Blätter x 2
Eine M4 × 14 TP Passstift-Verbundschraube (b) ist übrig.
Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter
Eine M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (Y) ist übrig.
Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un MFP a colori, sono necessarie le parti (P), (Q), (R) e otto su nove (S) fornite in dotazione con il separatore dei lavori. Le rimanenti parti (S), (T) e (U) sono necessarie solo nel caso di installazione del DF-730.

P Piastra di fissaggio F	1
Q Piastra di fissaggio R	1
R Coperchio AT	1
S Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10	9

T Vite a colletto	1
U Piastra della guida	1
Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti in un macchinario a colori, sono necessarie in aggiunta le parti (V), (W), (X), (Y) e (Z).	
V Scivolo di base B	1
W Scivolo di base V	1
X Base di assemblaggio	1

Y Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10	9
Z Vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10	1
b Vite TP con testa a croce S M4 × 14	1

Quando si utilizza l'alimentatore di carta da 500 fogli x 2
Viene lasciata una vite TP con testa a croce S M4 x 14 (b).
Quando si utilizza l'alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli
Viene lasciata una vite con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (Y).
Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

全彩色 MFP 上安装装订器时, 请使用作业分离器上附属的部件 (P)、(Q)、(R) 和 9 个部件 (S) 中的 8 个。只有安装 DF-730 时需要剩余的部件 (S)、(T) 和 (U)。

P 固定板 F	1
Q 固定板 R	1
R 盖板 AT	1
S M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉	9

T 阶梯螺钉	1
U 导向板	1
全彩色机上安装装订器时, 另外需要安装部件 (V)、(W)、(X)、(Y) 和 (Z)。	
V 底座滑板 B	1
W 底座滑板 V	1
X 组装底座	1

Y M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉	9
Z M4 × 10 六角头螺钉	1
b M4 × 14 TP 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉	1

使用 500 张 × 2 个供纸盒时
剩下 1 个 M4 × 14 TP 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (b)。
使用 3000 张供纸盒时
剩下 1 个 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y)。
请务必拆下附带在附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

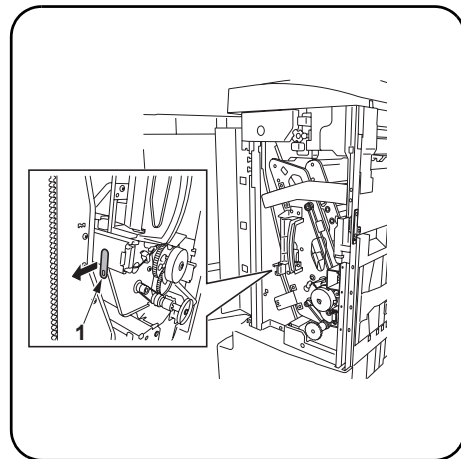
フルカラー MFP 機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合、ジョブセパレータに付属する (P)、(Q)、(R)、(S) 8 本が必要となる。DF-730 を設置する場合のみ、(S)、(T)、(U) が必要となる。

P 固定板 F	1
Q 固定板 R	1
R カバー AT	1
S ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S	9

T 段付きビス	1
U ガイド板	1
フルカラー機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合、(V)、(W)、(X)、(Y)、(Z) が別途必要となる。	
V ベーススライダ B	1
W ベーススライダ V	1
X 組立ベース	1

Y ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S	9
Z M4 × 10 六角ビス	1
b ビス M4 × 14 TP タップタイト S	1

500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダーの場合
ビス M4 × 14 TP タップタイト S (b) が 1 本余ります。
3000 枚ペーパーフィーダーの場合
ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) が 1 本余ります。
付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



Installation Procedure

When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, install the job separator in advance. Be sure to install the document finisher before installing the center-folding unit.

Before installing the document finisher, make sure that the MFP or the printer's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.

Removing the slider fixing pin

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A). Remove the fixing tape from the slider of the inner tray and remove the slider fixing pin A (1).

Procédure d'installation

Installer le séparateur de travaux, puis installer le retoucheur de documents sur la MFP polychrome.

Veiller à installer le retoucheur de document avant d'installer la plieuse.

Avant d'installer le retoucheur de document, s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP ou imprimante est hors tension et que le cordon d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.

Enlèvement de la broche de fixation de la règle

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de documents (A). Retirer la bande de fixation de la règle du plateau interne et retirer la broche de fixation A (1).

Procedimiento de instalación

Instale el separador de tareas y luego instale el finalizador de documentos en la MFP a todo color.

Asegúrese de instalar el finalizador de documentos antes de instalar la unidad de plegado central.

Antes de instalar el finalizador de documentos, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación de la MFP esté desconectado y que su cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente.

Extracción del pasador de fijación del deslizador

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A). Quite la cinta de fijación del deslizador de la bandeja interior y quite el pasador de fijación del deslizador A (1).

Einbauverfahren

Bauen Sie zuerst den Jobtrenner und dann den Dokument-Finisher in den Farbmultifunktionsgerät ein.

Stellen Sie sicher, dass der Dokument-Finisher vor der Mittenfalteinheit angebracht wird.

Vor dem Einbau des Dokument-Finishers muss der MFP-Hauptschalter aktiviert, und das Netzkabel von der Steckdose abgezogen sein.

Entfernen des Schieber-Fixierstifts

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A). Entfernen Sie das Klebeband vom Schieber des Innenfachs, und bauen Sie danach den Schieber-Fixierstift A (1) aus.

Procedura di installazione

Installare il separatore dei lavori e poi procedere all'installazione della finitrice di documenti sul MFP a colori.

Assicurarsi di installare la finitrice di documenti prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale.

Prima di installare la finitrice di documenti, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della MFP sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa.

Rimozione del perno di fissaggio dello scivolo

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A). Togliere il nastro adesivo dallo scivolo del vassoio interno e rimuovere il perno di fissaggio dello scivolo A (1).

安装步骤

将装订器安装到全彩色 MFP 时, 请提前安装作业分离器。

请务必在安装中缝装订一折页单元前安装装订器。

安装装订器前, 请确定 MFP 的主电源开关已经关闭并且电源线已从电源插座上拔下。

拆下滑板固定销

1. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。从内部托盘的滑板上拆下固定胶带并拆下滑板固定销 A (1)。

設置手順

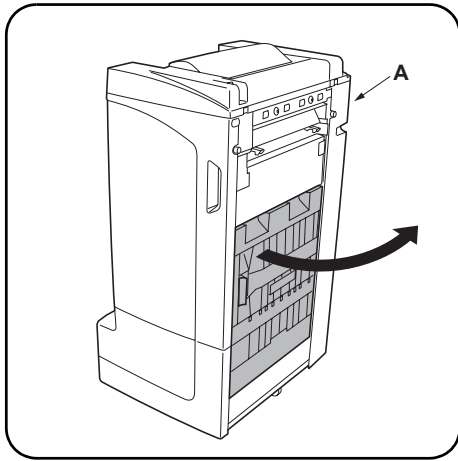
フルカラーMFP機にドキュメントフィニッシャを設置するときは、先にジョブセパレータを設置しておくこと。

ドキュメントフィニッシャの設置は、必ず中折りユニットの設置前に行うこと。

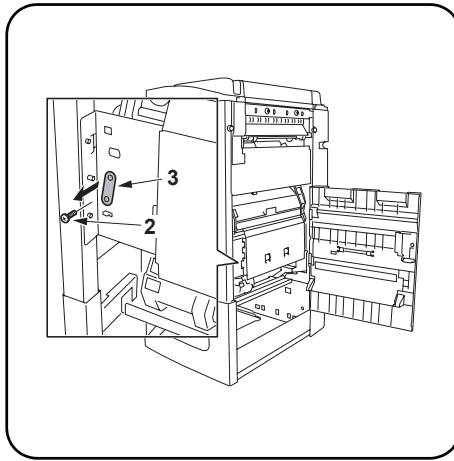
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

スライド固定ピンの取り外し

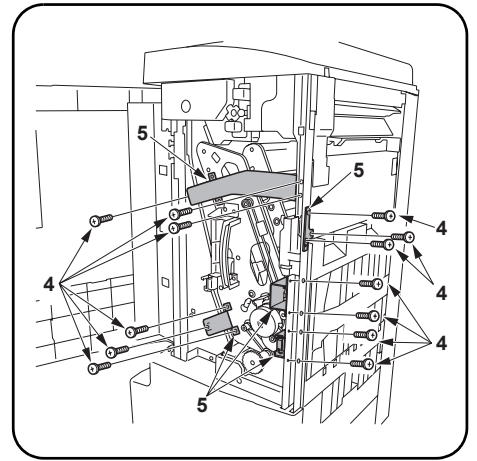
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。内部トレイのスライドの固定テープを剥がし、スライド固定ピン A (1) を取り外す。



2. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).



3. Remove the screw (2) to remove the slider fixing pin B (3).



Removing the fittings

4. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
5. Remove 13 screws (4) to remove five fittings (5).
A yellow label is pasted on the fittings.

2. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).

3. Retirer la vis (2) pour retirer la broche de fixation de la règle B (3).

Enlèvement des fixations

4. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
5. Retirer 13 vis (1) pour retirer cinq fixations (2).
Une étiquette jaune est collée sur les fixations.

2. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

3. Quite el tornillo (2) para quitar el pasador de fijación del deslizador B (3).

Extracción de los accesorios

4. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
5. Quite los 13 tornillos (1) para quitar los cinco accesorios (2).
Hay una etiqueta amarilla pegada en los accesorios.

2. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

3. Lösen Sie die Schraube (2), um den Fixierstift B (3) vom Schieber zu entfernen.

Entfernen der Befestigungselemente

4. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
5. Entfernen Sie die 13 Schrauben (1) um die Befestigungselemente (2) zu entfernen.
Ein gelber Aufkleber ist an den Befestigungselementen angebracht.

2. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).

3. Togliere la vite (2) per rimuovere il perno di fissaggio dello scivolo B (3).

Rimozione dei pezzi di raccordo

4. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
5. Togliere 13 viti (1) per rimuovere i cinque pezzi di raccordo (2).
Un'etichetta gialla è incollata sui pezzi di raccordo (2).

2. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。

3. 拆下螺钉 (2) 以便拆下滑板固定销 B (3)。

拆下固定件

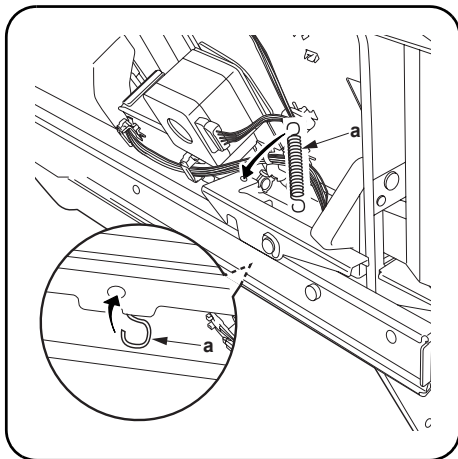
4. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
5. 拆下 13 颗螺钉 (1) 以便拆下 5 个固定件 (2)。
在固定件上贴有黄色标签。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。

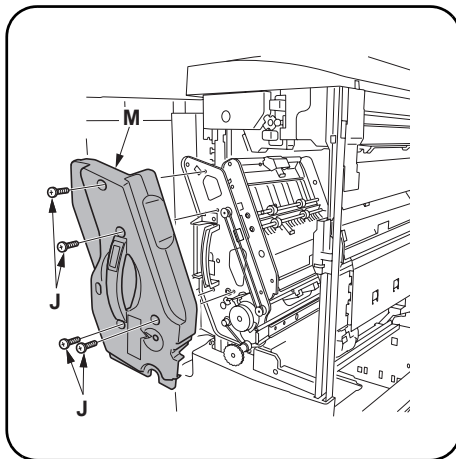
3. ビス (2) 1 本を外し、スライダ固定ピン B (3) を取り外す。

固定金具の取り外し

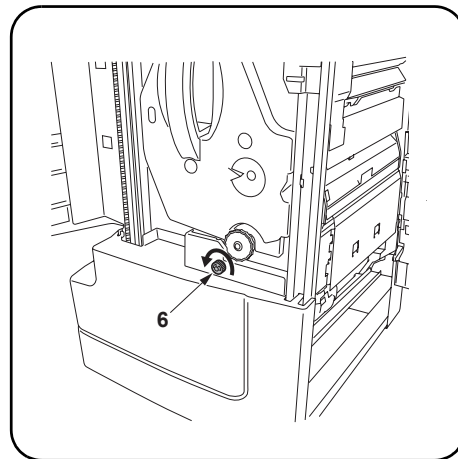
4. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。
5. ビス (4) 13 本を外し、固定金具 (5) 5 個を取り外す。
固定金具には、黄色のシールを貼っています。



6. Pull the internal tray out.
7. Remove the fixing tape from the handle of the internal tray and attach the spring hook (a).



- Installing the internal tray cover**
8. Install the internal tray cover (M) using the four M4 x 6 tap Tight S Screw (J).



- Removing the fixing pin**
9. Turn the fixing pin (6) counterclockwise to remove it.
 10. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).

6. Faire ressortir le bac interne.
7. Retirer la bande de fixation de la poignée du bac interne et fixer le crochet de ressort (a).

- Installation du capot du bac interne**
8. Installer le capot du bac interne (M) à l'aide des quatre vis S taraudées M4 x 6 (J).

- Enlèvement de la broche de fixation**
9. Faire tourner la broche de fixation (6) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre pour la retirer.
 10. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

6. Saque la bandeja interna.
7. Quite la cinta de fijación del mango de la bandeja interior y coloque el gancho de resorte (a).

- Instalación de la cubierta de bandeja interna**
8. Instale la cubierta de bandeja interna (M) utilizando los cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 x 6 (J).

- Extracción del pasador de fijación**
9. Gire el pasador de fijación (6) hacia la izquierda para quitarlo.
 10. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

6. Ziehen Sie das Innenfach heraus.
7. Ziehen Sie das Klebeband vom Griff des Innenfachs, und den Federhaken (a) anbringen.

- Entfernen der Innenfachabdeckung**
8. Bringen Sie die Innenfachabdeckung (M) mit den vier M4 x 6 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (J) an.

- Entfernen des Fixierstifts**
9. Drehen Sie den Fixierstift (6) gegen den Uhrzeigersinn, um ihn zu entfernen.
 10. Schließen sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

6. Estrarre il vassoio interno.
7. Staccare il nastro adesivo dalla maniglia del vassoio interno e fissare il gancio a molla (a).

- Installazione del pannello del vassoio interno**
8. Installare il pannello del vassoio interno (M) utilizzando le quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 x 6 (J).

- Rimozione del perno di fissaggio**
9. Per rimuovere il perno di fissaggio (6) ruotarlo in senso antiorario.
 10. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

6. 拉出内部托盘。
7. 从内部托盘上拆下把手固定胶带，然后安装弹簧挂钩 (a)。

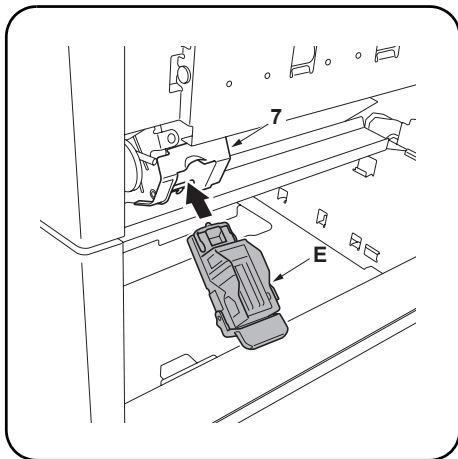
- 安装内部托盘盖板**
8. 用 4 颗 M4 x 6 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (J) 安装内部托盘盖板 (M)。

- 拆下固定销**
9. 逆时针旋转固定销 (6) 将其拆下。
 10. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

6. 内部トレイを引き出す。
7. 内部トレイの取手の固定テープを剥がし、バネフック(a)を取り付ける。

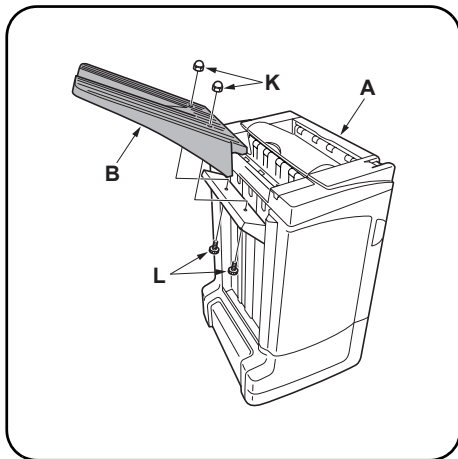
- 内部トレイカバーの取り付け**
8. ビス M4 x 6 タップタイト S (J) 4 本で、内部トレイカバー (M) を取り付ける。

- 固定ピンの取り外し**
9. 固定ピン (6) を左に回して取り外す。
 10. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。



Installing the staple cartridge

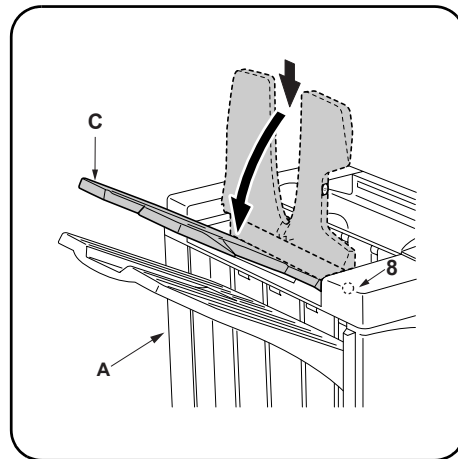
11. Remove the fixing tape from the staple cartridge holder (7).
12. Insert the staple cartridge (E) into the staple cartridge holder (7).
13. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).



Installing the trays

For full color machine only. Follow step 27 on page 19 for the installation procedure.

14. Use two nuts (K) and two pins (L) to install the tray A (B) to the document finisher (A).



15. Fit the right and left projections (8) of the tray B (C) onto the document finisher (A) from its top.

Installation de la cartouche d'agrafes

11. Retirer la bande de fixation du porte-cartouche d'agrafes (7).
12. Insérer la cartouche d'agrafes (E) dans le porte-cartouche d'agrafes (7).
13. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).

Installation des bacs

Pour la machine entièrement en couleurs seulement. Suivre l'étape 27 de la page 19 pour la procédure d'installation.

14. Utiliser deux écrous (K) et deux broches (L) pour installer le bac A (B) sur le retoucheur de document (A).

15. Fixer les saillies droite et gauche (8) du bac B (C) sur le retoucheur de document (A) depuis le haut.

Instalación del cartucho de grapas

11. Quite la cinta de fijación del portacartucho de grapas (7).
12. Inserte el cartucho de grapas (E) en el portacartucho de grapas (7).
13. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

Instalación de las bandejas

Para la máquina a todo color solamente. Siga el paso 27 de la página 19 para realizar el procedimiento de instalación.

14. Utilice dos tuercas (K) y dos pasadores (L) para instalar la bandeja A (B) en el finalizador de documentos (A).

15. Coloque los resaltes derecho e izquierdo (8) de la bandeja B (C) sobre el finalizador de documentos (A) desde su parte superior.

Anbringen der Heftklammerkassette

11. Ziehen Sie das Klebeband von der Heftklammer-Kassettenhalterung (7) ab.
12. Setzen Sie die Heftklammerkassette (E) in die Kassettenhalterung (7) ein.
13. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

Anbringen der Fächer

Nur für Vollfarbenmaschine. Folgen Sie hinsichtlich des Einbauverfahrens dem Schritt 27 auf Seite 19.

14. Verwenden Sie die beiden Muttern (K) und die beiden Stifte (L), um das Fach A (B) in den Dokument-Finisher (A) einzubauen.

15. Setzen Sie die rechten und linken Vorsprünge (8) des Fachs B (C) von oben auf den Dokument-Finisher (A).

Installazione della cartuccia pinzatrice

11. Staccare il nastro adesivo dal contenitore della cartuccia pinzatrice (7).
12. Inserire la cartuccia pinzatrice (E) nel contenitore (7).
13. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).

Installazione dei vassoi

Solamente per macchinari a colori. Per la procedura di installazione, seguire il punto 27 a pagina 19.

14. Utilizzare due dadi (K) e due perni (L) per installare il vassoio A (B) alla finitrice di documenti (A).

15. Inserire dall'alto della finitrice di documenti (A) le parti sporgenti destra e sinistra (8) del vassoio B (C) nella finitrice stessa.

安装订书钉盒

11. 从订书钉盒支架 (7) 上拆下固定胶带。
12. 将订书钉盒 (E) 插入订书钉盒支架 (7)。
13. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。

安装托盘

仅供全彩色机。有关安装步骤，请执行第 19 页上的步骤 27。

14. 用 2 颗螺母 (K) 和 2 颗销 (L) 将托盘 A (B) 安装到装订器 (A) 上。

15. 将托盘 B (C) 的右部和左部突出部 (8) 从顶部固定在装订器 (A) 上。

ステーブルカートリッジの取り付け

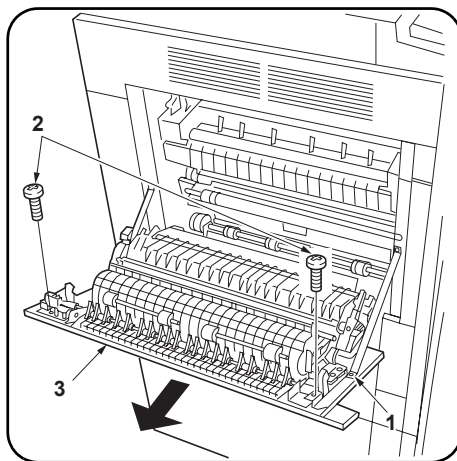
11. ステーブルカートリッジホルダー (7) の固定テープを剥がす。
12. ステーブルカートリッジホルダー (7) にステーブルカートリッジ (E) を挿入する。
13. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の右カバーを閉じる。

トレイの取り付け

フルカラー機の場合、19 ページ手順 27 で取り付けること。

14. ナット (K) 2 個とピン (L) 2 個でドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) にトレイ A (B) を取り付ける。

15. トレイ B (C) の左右の突起 (8) をドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) へ上からはめ込む。



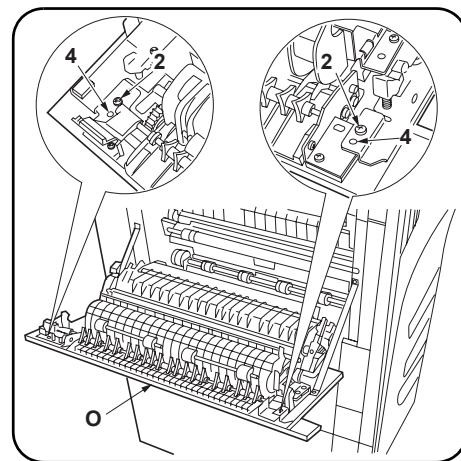
16. Follow each procedure below depending on monochrome or full-color machine.

When using a monochrome machine: Proceed to step 1 on page 7

When using a full-color machine: Proceed to step 1 on page 11

**[When installing the document finisher to the monochrome machine]
Installing the curl eliminator**

1. Open the eject cover (1) of the MFP or the printer.
2. Remove two screws (2) securing the feed-shift guide assembly (3) to remove the assembly.



3. Fit the curl eliminator (O) to the eject cover (1) such that the projections (4) on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator (O).
4. Secure the curl eliminator (O) using two screws (2) removed in step 2.

16. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous en fonction de la machine monochrome ou de la machine entièrement en couleurs.

Lors de l'utilisation de la machine monochrome: passer à l'étape 1 de la page 7

Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs: passer à l'étape 1 de la page 11

**[Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine monochrome]
Installation de l'élément d'élimination des boucles**

1. Ouvrir le couvercle d'éjection (1) de la MFP ou de l'imprimante.
2. Retirer deux vis (2) fixant l'assemblage de la glissière d'alimentation (3) pour retirer l'assemblage.

3. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (O) sur le couvercle d'éjection (1) de façon à ce que les saillies (4) du couvercle s'insèrent dans les deux extrémités de l'élément d'élimination des boucles (O).

4. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (O) à l'aide de deux vis (2) retirées à l'étape 2.

16. Siga cada procedimiento de abajo dependiendo de si la máquina es de blanco y negro o de a todo color.

Cuando utilice una máquina de blanco y negro: Vaya al paso 1 de la página 7

Cuando utilice una máquina a todo color: Vaya al paso 1 de la página 11

**[Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una máquina de blanco y negro]
Instalación del eliminador de curvatura del papel**

1. Abra la cubierta de expulsión (1) de la MFP o de la impresora.
2. Quite dos tornillos (2) que aseguran el conjunto de la guía de cambio de alimentación (3) para quitar el conjunto.

3. Coloque el eliminador de curvatura del papel (O) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) de forma que los resaltos (4) de la cubierta se coloquen en los dos extremos del eliminador de curvatura del papel (O).

4. Asegure el eliminador de curvatura del papel (O) utilizando dos tornillos (2) quitados en el paso 2.

16. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, je nachdem, ob es sich um eine Monochrommaschine bzw. einen Vollfarbepkopierer handelt.

Bei Verwendung einer Monochrommaschine: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 7 weiter

Bei Verwendung eines Vollfarbepkopierers: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 11 weiter

**[Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf der Monochrommaschine angebracht wird]
Anbringen der Glättungseinrichtung**

1. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1) des MFP oder des Druckers.
2. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (2), welche die Papiervorschub-Umschalt-Führungseinheit (3) befestigt, um diese auszubauen.

3. Setzen Sie die Glättungseinrichtung (O) so auf die Auswurfabdeckung (1) auf, dass die Vorsprünge (4) der Abdeckung in die beiden Enden der Glättungseinrichtung (O) eingreifen.

4. Befestigen Sie die Glättungseinrichtung (O) mit den im Schritt 2 entfernten Schrauben (2).

16. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda che si tratti di un macchinario in bianco e nero oppure di uno a colori.

In caso si utilizzi un macchinario in bianco e nero: Procedere con il punto 1 a pagina 7

IN caso si utilizzi un macchinario a colori: Procedere con il punto 1 a pagina 11

**[In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un apparecchio in bianco e nero]
Installazione dell'eliminatore di arricciature**

1. Aprire la copertura dell'uscita carta (1) della MFP o dello stampatore.
2. Togliere le due viti (2) che fissano il gruppo di guida di cambio alimentazione (3) e rimuovere il gruppo.

3. Montare l'eliminatore di arricciature (O) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) in modo tale che le parti sporgenti (4) sulla copertura siano inserite nelle due estremità dell'eliminatore di arricciature (O).

4. Fissare l'eliminatore di arricciature (O) utilizzando le due viti (2) rimosse al punto 2.

16. 请根据黑白机或全彩色机执行下列步骤。

使用黑白机时: 进行第 7 页上的第 1 步

使用全彩色机时: 进行第 11 页上的第 1 步

**[将装订器安装到黑白机上时]
安装防卷曲部件**

1. 打开 MFP 或打印机的出纸盖板 (1)。
2. 拆下固定分支导向组件 (3) 的 2 颗螺钉 (2) 以便拆下组件。

3. 将防卷曲部件 (O) 固定在出纸盖板 (1) 上, 让盖板上的突出部 (4) 嵌入防卷曲部件 (O) 的两端。

4. 用在步骤 2 中拆下的 2 颗螺钉 (2) 固定防卷曲部件 (O)。

16. モノクロ機、フルカラー機別に、下記の手順へ進む。

モノクロ機の場合 7 ページ手順 1 へ進む

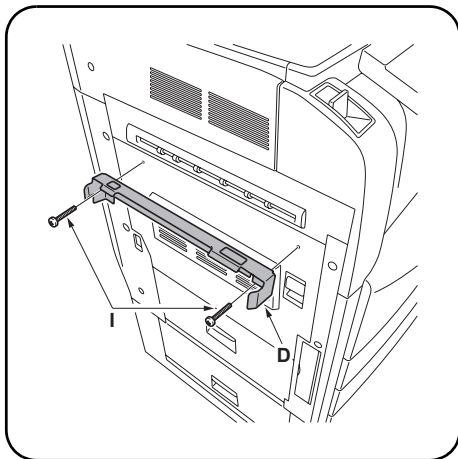
フルカラー機の場合 11 ページ手順 1 へ進む

**[モノクロ機ヘッドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合]
デカーラーの取り付け**

1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の排出カバー (1) を開く。
2. ビス (2) 2 本を外し、分岐ガイド組立 (3) を取り外す。

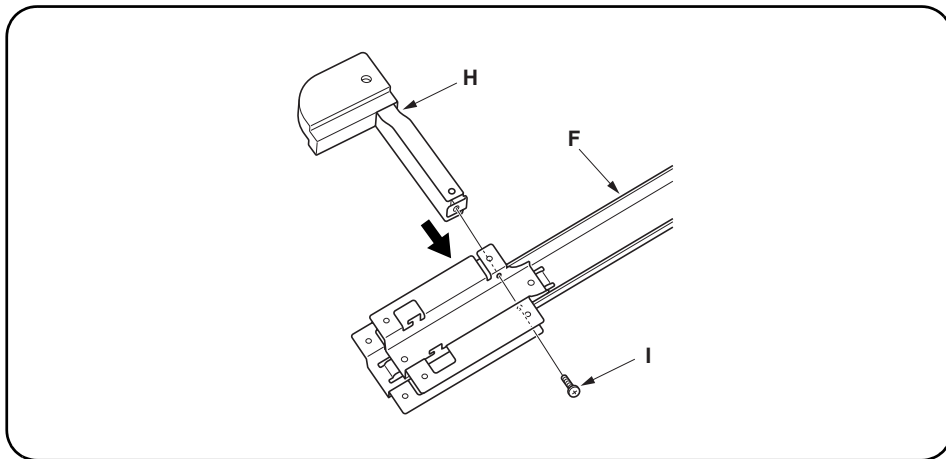
3. デカーラー (O) の両端に半押し (4) がはまる位置で、デカーラー (O) を排出カバー (1) に取り付ける。

4. 手順 2 で外したビス (2) 2 本でデカーラー (O) を固定する。



Installing the connecting plate

5. Install the connecting plate (D) to the left side of the MFP or the printer using two M4 x 10 tap Tight S Screws (I).



Assembling the base slider

6. Install plate foot R (H) to base slider A (F) using M4 x 10 tap Tight S Screw (I).

Installation de la plaque de connexion

5. Installer la plaque de connexion (D) sur le côté gauche du MFP ou imprimante à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (I).

Assemblage de la règle de base

6. Installer le pied de plaque R (H) sur la règle de base A (F) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 x 10 (I).

Instalación de la placa de conexión

5. Instale la placa de conexión (D) en el lado izquierdo de la MFP o impresora utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (I).

Ensamblaje del deslizador de base

6. Instale el pedal R (H) en el deslizador A (F) utilizando el tornillo de ajuste M4 x 10 (I).

Anbringen der Verbindungsplatte

5. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (D) auf der linken Seite des MFP oder Drucker mit den beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I) an.

Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

6. Bringen Sie den Plattenfuß R (H) am Basis-Schieber A (F) mit der M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) an.

Installazione della piastra di connessione

5. Installare la piastra di connessione (D) sul lato destro della MFP o stampatore utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (I).

Assemblaggio dello scivolo di base

6. Installare il piedino di sostegno R (H) allo scivolo di base A (F) utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (I).

安装连接板

5. 用 2 颗 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 将连接板 (D) 安装到 MFP 或打印机的左侧。

组装底座滑板

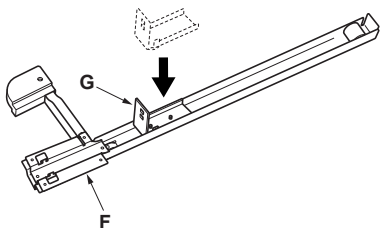
6. 用 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 将板脚座 R (H) 安装到底座滑板 A (F)。

連結板の取り付け

5. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左側にビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (I) 2 本で連結板 (D) を取り付け。

ベーススライダの組立

6. ベーススライダ A (F) にプレートフット R (H) をビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で取り付け。



7. Place base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F).
8. Follow each procedure below suitable for the paper feeder type attached to your MFP or printer.
- When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets: Move to step 9**
- When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets: Move to step 16**

7. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F).
8. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous convenant au type d'alimenteur de papier fixé sur le MFP ou imprimante.
- Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles: passer à l'étape 9**
- Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles: passer à l'étape 16**

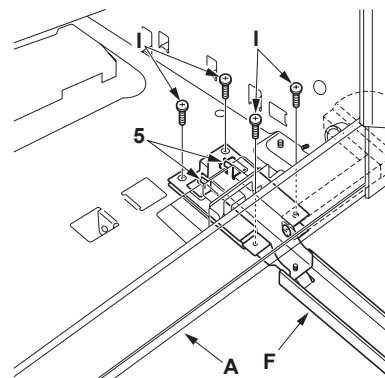
7. Ponga el deslizador B (G) sobre el deslizador A (F).
8. Siga el procedimiento indicado abajo que sea más adecuado al tipo de alimentador de papel colocado en su MFP o impresora.
- Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas: Vaya al paso 9**
- Cuando utilice el alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas: Vaya al paso 16**

7. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) am Basis-Schieber A (F) an.
8. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, das für den am MFP oder Drucker angebrachten Papiervorschubtyp zutreffend ist.
- Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 9 weiter**
- Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 16 weiter**

7. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sopra lo scivolo di base A (F).
8. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda del tipo di alimentatore di carta in dotazione alla vostra MFP o stampatore.
- In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli: Andare al punto 9**
- In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli: Andare al punto 16**

7. 将底座滑板 B (G) 放在底座滑板 A (F) 上。
8. 请执行适合附属在 MFP 或打印机上供纸盒类型的下列步骤。
- 使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时: 转到第 9 步
- 使用 3000 张的供纸盒时: 转到第 16 步

7. ベーススライダ A (F) にベーススライダ B (G) を置く。
8. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に取り付けられているペーパーフィーダ別に、下記の手順へ進む。
- 500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 9 へ
- 3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 16 へ



When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets Installing the base slider

9. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
10. Insert base slider A (F) into the lower right of the document finisher (A) and hook the tabs (5).
11. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I).

Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles Installation de la règle de base

9. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
10. Insérer la règle de base A (F) dans la partie inférieure droite du retoucheur de document (A) et accrocher les onglets (5).
11. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).

Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas Instalación del deslizador de base

9. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
10. Inserte el deslizador A (F) en la parte inferior derecha del finalizador de documentos (A) y enganche las lengüetas (5).
11. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).

Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

9. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
10. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) auf der unteren rechten Seite des Dokument-Finishers (A) ein und rasten Sie die Laschen (5) ein.
11. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I).

In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli Installare lo scivolo di base

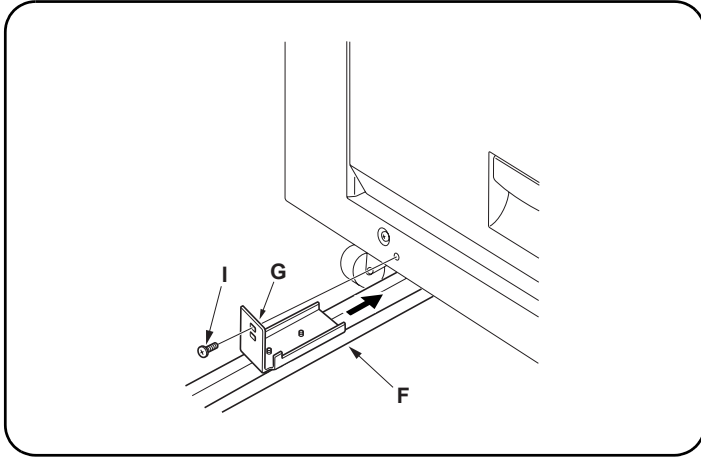
9. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
10. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) nella parte inferiore destra della finitrice di documenti (A) e agganciare le linguette (5).
11. Fissare lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).

使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时 安装底座滑板

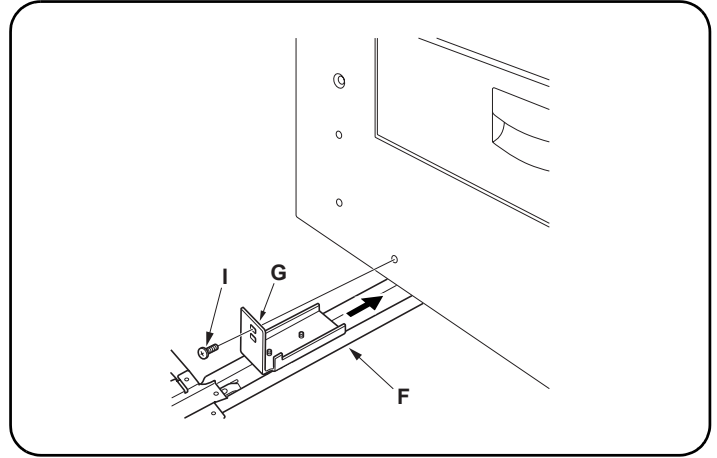
9. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
10. 将底座滑板 A (F) 插到装订器 (A) 的右下侧, 并挂上簧片 (5)。
11. 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F)。

500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 ベーススライダの取り付け

9. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の右カバーを開く。
10. ベーススライダ A (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の右下へ差し込み、ツメ (5) を引っ掛ける。
11. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で固定する。



12. Insert the base slider A (F), and then the base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.
13. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I).
Put M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I) through the upper hole of base slider B (G).
14. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).
15. Move to step 1 on page 20.



When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets Installing the base slider

16. Insert the base slider A (F), and then the base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.
17. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I).
Put M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I) through the lower hole of the base slider B (G).

12. Insérer la règle de base A (F), puis la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.
13. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).
Faire passer la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) par l'orifice supérieur de la règle de base B (G).
14. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
15. Passer à l'étape 1 de la page 20.

Lors de l'utilisation d'un alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles Installation de la règle de base

16. Insérer la règle de base A (F), puis la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.
17. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).
Faire passer la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) par l'orifice inférieur de la règle de base B (G).

12. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y luego el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.
13. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).
Ponga un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) a través del agujero superior del deslizador B (G).
14. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
15. Vaya al paso 1 de la página 20.

Cuando utilice un alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas Instalación del deslizador de base

16. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y luego el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.
17. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).
Ponga un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) a través del agujero inferior del deslizador B (G).

12. Setzen Sie zuerst den Basis-Schieber A (F) und dann den Basis-Schieber B (G) unten links am MFP oder Drucker ein.
13. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I).
Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Bundschraube (I) durch das obere Loch des Basis-Schiebers B (G).
14. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
15. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 20 weiter.

Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

16. Setzen Sie zuerst den Basis-Schieber A (F) und dann den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf der unteren linken Seite des MFP oder Drucker ein.
17. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I).
Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Bundschraube (I) durch das untere Loch des Basis-Schiebers B (G).

12. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP o stampatore.
13. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).
Far passare la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) attraverso il foro superiore dello scivolo di base B (G).
14. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
15. Andare a pagina 20, punto 1.

In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli Installare lo scivolo di base

16. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP o stampatore.
17. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).
Far passare la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) attraverso il foro inferiore dello scivolo di base B (G).

12. 插入底座滑板 A (F)，然后将底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。
13. 用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 B (G)。
将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) 的上部孔。
14. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
15. 转到第 20 页上的第 1 步。

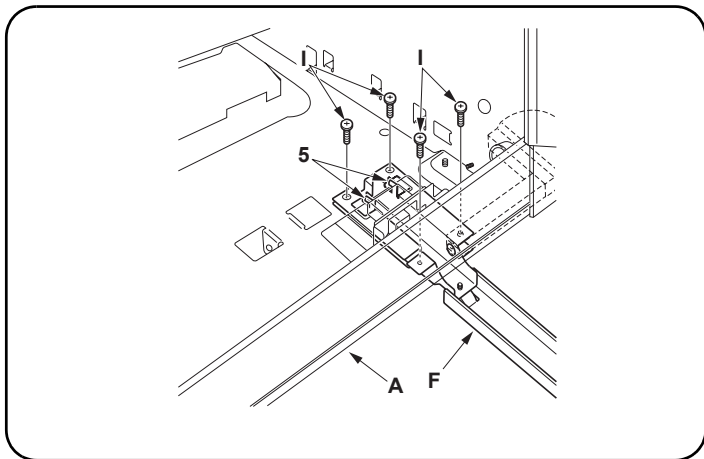
使用 3000 张的供纸盒时 安装底座滑板

16. 插入底座滑板 A (F)，然后将底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。
17. 用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 B (G)。
将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) 的下部孔。

12. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下にベーススライダ A (F) を差し込み、次にベーススライダ B (G) を差し込む。
13. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で固定する。
ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) は、ベーススライダ B (G) の上の穴に通すこと。
14. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを閉じる。
15. 20 ページ手順 1 へ進む。

3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合 ベーススライダの取り付け

16. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下にベーススライダ A (F) を差し込み、次にベーススライダ B (G) を差し込む。
17. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で固定する。
ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) は、ベーススライダ B (G) の下の穴に通すこと。



18. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
19. Insert base slider A (F) under the document finisher (A) and hook the tabs (5).
20. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I).
21. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).
22. Move to step 1 on page 20.

18. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
19. Insérer la règle de base A (F) sous le retoucheur de document (A) et accrocher les onglets (5).
20. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).
21. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
22. Passer à l'étape 1 de la page 20.

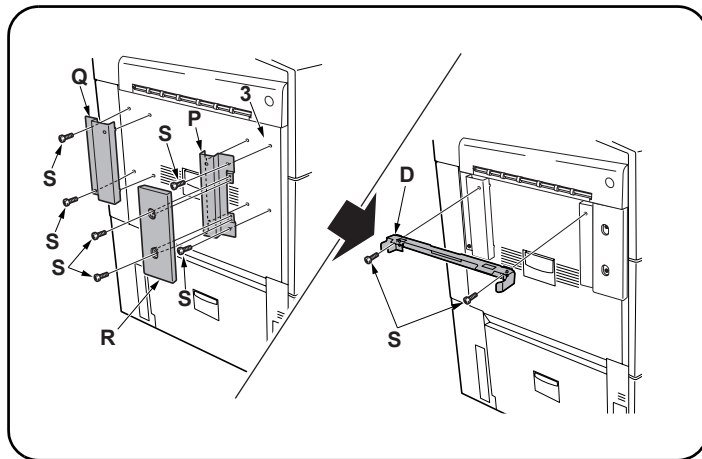
18. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
19. Inserte el deslizador A (F) debajo del finalizador de documentos (A) y enganche las lengüetas (5).
20. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).
21. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
22. Vaya al paso 1 de la página 20.

18. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
19. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter dem Dokument-Finisher (A) ein und rasten Sie die Laschen (5) ein.
20. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I).
21. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
22. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 20 weiter.

18. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
19. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) sotto la finitrice di documenti (A) e agganciare le linguette (5).
20. Fissare lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).
21. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
22. Andare a pagina 20, punto 1.

18. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
19. 将底座滑板 A (F) 插到装订器 (A) 下，并挂上簧片 (5)。
20. 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F)。
21. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
22. 转到第 20 页上的第 1 步。

18. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の右カバーを開く。
19. ベーススライダ A (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の下へ差し込み、ツメ (5) を引っ掛ける。
20. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で固定する。
21. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の右カバーを閉じる。
22. 20 ページ手順 1 へ進む。



[When installing the document finisher to the full-color machine] Installing the fixing and connecting plates

1. Install fixing plates F (P) and R (Q) to the MFP or the printer using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (S) for each plate.
2. Install the cover AT (R) to fixing plate F (P) using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (S).
3. Install the connecting plate (D) to fixing plates F (P) and R (Q) using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (S).

[Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine entièrement en couleurs] Installation des plaques de fixation et de connexion

1. Installer les plaques de fixation avant (P) et arrière (Q) sur le MFP ou imprimante à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (S) par plaque.
2. Installer le couvercle AT (R) sur la plaque de fixation avant (P) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (S).
3. Installer la plaque de connexion (D) sur les plaques de fixation avant (P) et arrière (Q) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (S).

[Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en la máquina a todo color] Instalación de las placas de fijación y conexión

1. Instale las placas de fijación F (P) y R (Q) en la MFP o impresora utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (S) para cada placa.
2. Instale la cubierta AT (R) en la placa de fijación F (P) utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (S).
3. Instale la placa de conexión (D) en las placas de fijación F (P) y R (Q) utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (S).

[Wenn der Dokument-Finisher am Vollfarbengerät angebracht wird] Anbringen der Fixier- und Verbindungsplatten

1. Bringen Sie die Fixierplatten F (P) und R (Q) am MFP oder Drucker mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (S) für jede Platte an.
2. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung AT (R) auf der Fixierplatte F (P) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (S) an.
3. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (D) auf den Fixierplatten F (P) und R (Q) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (S) an.

[In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un apparecchio a colori] Installazione delle piastre di fissaggio e di connessione

1. Installare le piastre di fissaggio F (P) e R (Q) alla MFP o stampatore utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (S) per ciascuna piastra.
2. Installare il coperchio AT (R) alla piastra di fissaggio F (P) utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (S).
3. Installare la piastra di connessione (D) alle piastre di fissaggio F (P) e R (Q) utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (S).

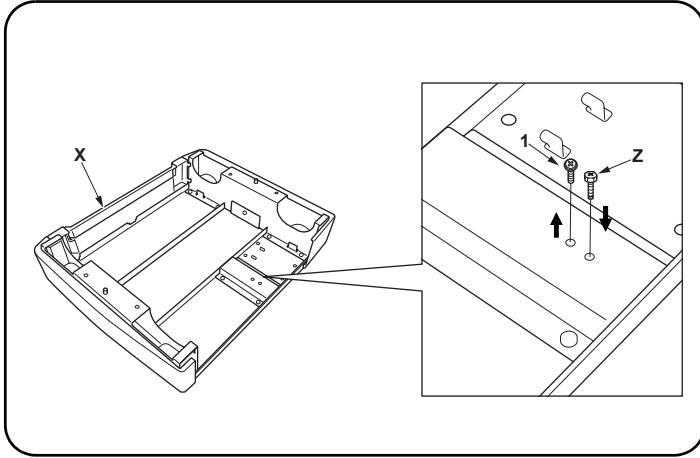
[将装订器安装到全彩色机上时]

安装固定板和连接板

1. 用每张板的 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (S) 将固定板 F (P) 和 R (Q) 安装到 MFP 或打印机。
2. 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (S) 将盖板 AT (R) 安装到固定板 F (P)。
3. 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (S) 将连接板 (D) 安装到固定板 F (P) 和 R (Q) 上。

[フルカラー機へドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合] 固定板と連結板の取り付け

1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に固定板 F (P) と固定板 R (Q) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (S) 各 2 本で取り付け。
2. 固定板 F (P) にカバー AT (R) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (S) 2 本で取り付け。
3. 固定板 F (P) と固定板 R (Q) に連結板 (D) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (S) 2 本で取り付け。



Before adjusting the document finisher height

4. Remove the screw (1) from the left side of the assembly base (X), insert M4 × 10 hexagon head screw (Z) into the right side hole to tighten it temporarily.

Avant d'ajuster la hauteur du retoucheur de document

4. Retirer la vis (1) du côté gauche de la base d'ensemble (X), insérer la vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10 (Z) dans l'orifice de droite pour la resserrer temporairement.

Antes de ajustar la altura del finalizador de documentos

4. Quite el tornillo (1) del lado izquierdo de la base del conjunto (X) e inserte el tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10 (Z) en el agujero del lado derecho para apretarlo temporalmente.

Vor dem Einstellen der Höhe des Dokument-Finishers

4. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (1) von der linken Seite der Bauteile-Basis (X), stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube (Z) in das rechte Loch ein, und ziehen Sie diese danach vorübergehend an.

Prima di regolare l'altezza della finitrice di documenti

4. Togliere la vite (1) dal lato sinistro della base di assemblaggio (X) e inserire la vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10 (Z) nel foro sul lato destro per fissarla temporaneamente.

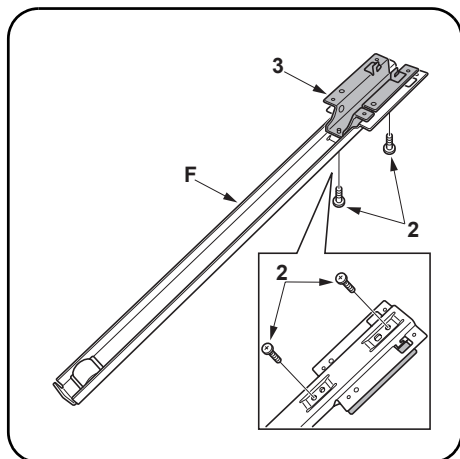
調整装订器高度前

4. 从组件底座 (X) 的左侧拆下螺钉 (1)，将 M4 × 10 六角头螺钉 (Z) 插入右侧孔将其暂时拧紧。

高さ調整の準備

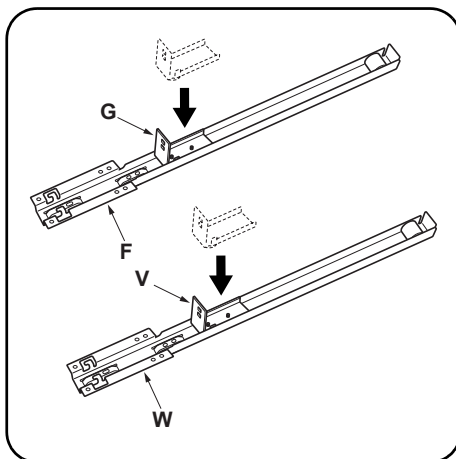
4. 組立ベース (X) の左側のビス (1) 1 本を外し、M4 × 10 六角ビス (Z) を右側の穴に外れない程度に仮締めする。

www.tonerplus.com.ua



Disassembling the base slider

5. Remove the two screws (2) from the base slider A (F) to remove the stay foot (3).



Reassembling the base slider

6. Put base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F). In the same way, put base slider B (V) onto base slider V (W).

7. Follow each procedure below suitable for the paper feeder type attached to your MFP or printer.

When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets: Move to step 8

When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets: Move to step 14

Démontage de la règle de base

5. Retirer les deux vis (2) de la règle de base A (F) pour retirer le pied de la retenue (3).

Remontage de la règle de base

6. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F). De la même façon, mettre la règle de base B (V) en place sur la règle de base V (W).

7. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous convenant au type d'alimenteur de papier fixé sur le MFP ou imprimante.

Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles: passer à l'étape 8

Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles: passer à l'étape 14

Desmontaje del deslizador de base

5. Quite los dos tornillos (2) del deslizador A (F) para quitar la pata de apoyo (3).

Montaje del deslizador de base

6. Ponga el deslizador B (G) sobre el deslizador A (F). De la misma forma, ponga el deslizador de base B (V) sobre el deslizador de base V (W).

7. Siga cada procedimiento de abajo dependiendo del tipo de alimentador de papel colocado en su MFP o impresora.

Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas: Vaya al paso 8

Cuando utilice un alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas: Vaya al paso 14

Zerlegen des Basis-Schiebers

5. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (2) vom Basis-Schieber A (F), um den Strebenfuß (3) auszubauen.

Zusammenbauen des Basis-Schiebers

6. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf den Basis-Schieber A (F). Verfahren Sie in gleicher Weise, indem Sie den Basis-Schieber B (V) auf den Basis-Schieber V (W) setzen.

7. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, das für den am MFP oder Drucker angebrachten Papiervorschubtyp zutreffend ist.

Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 8 weiter.

Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 14 weiter.

Smontaggio dello scivolo di base

5. Togliere le due viti (2) dallo scivolo di base A (F) per rimuovere il piedino di bloccaggio (3).

Riassemblaggio dello scivolo di base

6. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sullo scivolo di base A (F). Allo stesso modo, collocare lo scivolo di base B (V) sullo scivolo di base V (W).

7. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda del tipo di alimentatore di carta in dotazione alla vostra MFP o stampatore.

In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli: Andare al punto 8

In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli: Andare al punto 14

拆卸底座滑板

5. 从底座滑板 A (F) 上拆下 2 颗螺钉 (2) 以便拆下固定脚座 (3)。

重新组装底座滑板

6. 将底座滑板 B (G) 放在底座滑板 A (F) 上。同样，将底座滑板 B (V) 放在底座滑板 V (W) 上。

7. 请执行适合附属在 MFP 或打印机上供纸盒类型的下列步骤。

使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时：转到第 8 步

使用 3000 张的供纸盒时：转到第 14 步

ベーススライダの分解

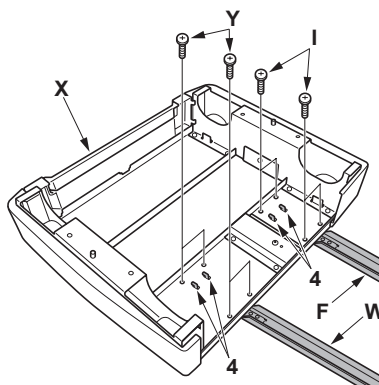
5. ベーススライダ A (F) のビス 2 本 (2) を外し、ステイフット (3) を取り外す。

ベーススライダの組み立て

6. ベーススライダ A (F) にベーススライダ B (G) を置く。同様にベーススライダ V (W) にベーススライダ B (V) を置く。

7. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に取り付けられているペーパーフィーダ別に、下記の手順へ進む。

500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 8 へ
3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 14 へ



Installing the base slider

When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets

8. Insert base slider V (W) and base slider A (F) that was disassembled in step 5 under the assembly base (X) and hook the tabs (4).

9. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I) and fix base slider V (W) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (Y) respectively.

Installation de la règle de base

Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles

8. Insérer la règle de base V (W) et la règle de base A (F) démontées à l'étape 5 sous la base d'ensemble (X) et accrocher les onglets (4).

9. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base V (W) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (Y) respectivement.

Instalación del deslizador de base

Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas

8. Inserte el deslizador de base V (W) y el deslizador A (F) que fueron desmontados en el paso 5 debajo de la base del conjunto (X) y enganche las lengüetas (4).

9. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y fije el deslizador de base V (W) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y) respectivamente.

Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter

8. Führen Sie den im Schritt 5 zerlegten Basis-Schieber V (W) sowie den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter den Bauteile-Basis (X) und rasten Sie die Laschen (4) ein.

9. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I) sowie den Basis-Schieber V (W) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (Y).

Installazione dello scivolo di base

In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli

8. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (W) e lo scivolo di base A (F) smontato al punto 5 sotto la base di assemblaggio (X) e agganciare le linguette (4).

9. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base V (W) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).

安装底座滑板

使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时

8. 将在步骤 5 中拆下的底座滑板 V (W) 和底座滑板 A (F) 插到组装底座 (X) 下，并挂上簧片 (4)。

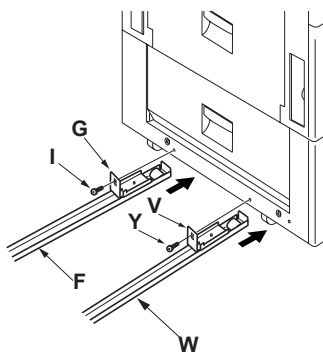
9. 分别用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F)，用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 固定底座滑板 V (W)。

ベーススライダの取り付け

500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合

8. 組立ベース (X) の下にベーススライダ V (W) と、手順 5 で分解したベーススライダ A (F) を差し込み、ツメ (4) を引っ掛ける。

9. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で、ベーススライダ V (W) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 4 本でそれぞれ固定する。



10. Insert base slider A (F) and base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.
11. Insert base slider V (W) and base slider B (V) into the lower right of the MFP or the printer.

12. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I) and fix base slider B (V) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (Y) respectively.
Put M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I)(Y) through the upper holes of base sliders B (G) (V).
13. Move to step 19 on page 17.

10. Insérer la règle de base A (F) et la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.
11. Insérer la règle de base V (W) et la règle de base B (V) dans la partie inférieure droite du MFP ou imprimante.

12. Fixer le règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base B (V) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (Y) respectivement.
Faire passer les vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) (Y) par les orifices supérieurs des règles de base B (G) (V).
13. Passer à l'étape 19 de la page 17.

10. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.
11. Inserte el deslizador de base V (W) y el deslizador de base B (V) en la parte inferior derecha de la MFP o impresora.

12. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y fije el deslizador de base B (V) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y) respectivamente.
Ponga los tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) e (Y) a través de los agujeros superiores de los deslizadores B (G) (V).
13. Vaya al paso 19 de la página 17.

10. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) und den Basis-Schieber B (G) unten links in den MFP oder Drucker ein.
11. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber V (W) und den Basis-Schieber B (V) unten rechts in den MFP oder Drucker ein.

12. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I) bzw. den Basis-Schieber B (V) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (Y).
- Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I) (Y) durch die oberen Löcher des Basis-Schieber B (G) (V).**
13. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 19 auf Seite 17 weiter.

10. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP.
11. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (W) e lo scivolo di base B (V) nella parte inferiore destra della MFP.

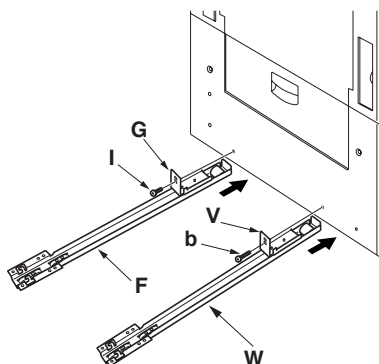
12. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base B (G) una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base B (V) con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).
- Far passare le viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) (Y) attraverso i fori superiori degli scivoli di base B (G) (V).**
13. Andare a pagina 17, punto 19.

10. 将底座滑板 A (F) 和底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。
11. 将底座滑板 V (W) 和底座滑板 B (V) 插入 MFP 或打印机的右下侧。

12. 分别用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 B (G), 用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 固定底座滑板 B (V)。
将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) (Y) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) (V) 的上部孔。
13. 转到第 17 页上的第 19 步。

10. ベーススライダ A (F) とベーススライダ B (G) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下へ差し込む。
11. ベーススライダ V (W) とベーススライダ B (V) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の右下に差し込む。

12. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で、ベーススライダ B (V) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 1 本でそれぞれ固定する。
ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) (Y) は、ベーススライダ B (G) (V) の上の穴に通すこと。
13. 17 ページ手順 19 へ進む。



When the paper feeder of 3000 sheets is used

14. Insert base slider A (F) and base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.
15. Insert base slider V (W) and base slider B (V) into the lower right of the MFP or the printer.

16. Fix the base slider B (G) with the M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I) and the base slider B (V) with the M4 × 14 TP tap Tight S screw (b) respectively.

Put the M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I) and M4 × 14 TP tap Tight S screw (b) through the lower holes of the base sliders B (G) and (V).

Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles

14. Insérer la règle de base A (F) et la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.
15. Insérer la règle de base V (W) et la règle de base B (V) dans la partie inférieure droite du MFP ou imprimante.

16. Fixer respectivement la règle de base B (G) avec la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) et la règle de base B (V) avec la vis TP S taraudée M4 × 14 (b).

Faire passer la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) et la vis TP S taraudée M4 × 14 (b) par les orifices inférieurs des règles de base B (G) et (V).

Cuando utilice el alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas

14. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.
15. Inserte el deslizador de base V (W) y el deslizador de base B (V) en la parte inferior derecha de la MFP o impresora.

16. Fije el deslizador de base B (G) con el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y el deslizador de base B (V) con el tornillo TP de ajuste M4 × 14 (b) respectivamente.

Ponga el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y el tornillo TP de ajuste M4 × 14 (b) a través de los agujeros inferiores de los deslizadores de base B (G) y (V).

Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter

14. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) und den Basis-Schieber B (G) unten links in den MFP oder Drucker ein.
15. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber V (W) und den Basis-Schieber B (V) unten rechts in den MFP oder Drucker ein.

16. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I) bzw. den Basis-Schieber B (V) mit der M4 × 14 TP Passstift-Verbandschraube (b).

Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I) und die M4 × 14 TP Passstift-Verbandschraube (b) durch die unteren Löcher der Basis-Schieber B (G) und (V).

In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli

14. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP o stampatore.
15. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (W) e lo scivolo di base B (V) nella parte inferiore destra della MFP o stampatore.

16. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base B (G) con la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base B (V) con la vite TP con testa a croce S M4 × 14 (b).

Fare passare la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e quella vite TP con testa a croce S M4 × 14 (b) attraverso i fori inferiori degli scivoli di base B (G) e (V).

使用 3000 张的供纸盒时

14. 将底座滑板 A (F) 和底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。
15. 将底座滑板 V (W) 和底座滑板 B (V) 插入 MFP 或打印机的右下侧。

16. 用 1 个 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 紧固底座滑板 B (G), 用 1 个 M4 × 14TP 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (b) 紧固底座滑板 B (V)。

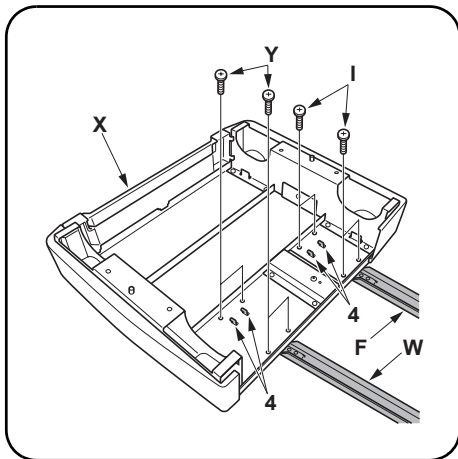
将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 和 M4 × 14TP 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (b) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) (V) 的下孔。

3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合

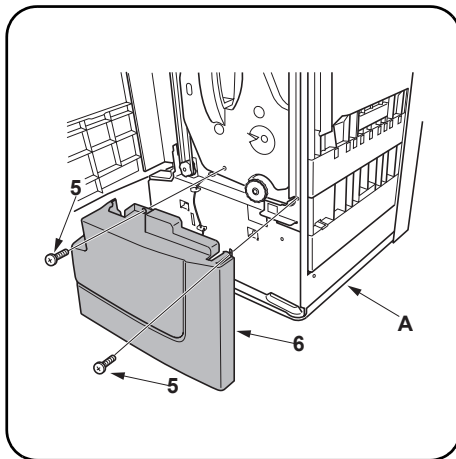
14. ベーススライダ A (F) とベーススライダ B (G) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下に差し込む。
15. ベーススライダ V (W) とベーススライダ B (V) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の右下に差し込む。

16. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で、ベーススライダ B (V) をビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S (b) 1 本でそれぞれ固定する。

ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) ビスおよび M4 × 14TP タップタイト S (b) は、ベーススライダ B (G) (V) の下の穴に通すこと。

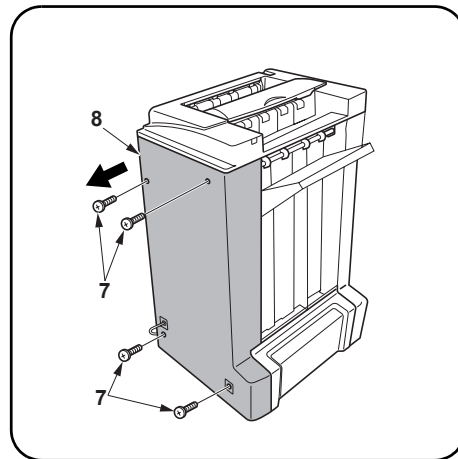


17. Insert base slider A (F) that was disassembled in step 5 and base slider V (W) under the assembly base (X) and hook the tabs (4).
18. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I) and fix base slider V (W) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (Y) respectively.



Removing the cover

19. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
20. Remove two screws (5) to remove the lower front cover (6).
21. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).



22. Remove four screws (7) to remove the back cover (8) from the document finisher (A).

17. Insérer la règle de base A (F) démontée à l'étape 5 et la règle de base V (W) sous la base d'ensemble (X) et accrocher les onglets (4).
18. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base V (W) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (Y) respectivement.

Enlèvement du capot

19. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
20. Retirer les deux vis (5) pour retirer le capot inférieur avant (6).
21. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

22. Retirer quatre vis (7) pour retirer le capot arrière (8) du retoucheur de document (A).

17. Inserte el deslizador A (F) que fue desmontado en el paso 5 y el deslizador de base V (W) debajo de la base del conjunto (X) y enganche las lengüetas (4).
18. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y el deslizador de base V (W) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y) respectivamente.

Extracción de la cubierta

19. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
20. Quite los dos tornillos (5) para quitar la cubierta delantera inferior (6).
21. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

22. Quite los cuatro tornillos (7) para quitar la cubierta trasera (8) del finalizador de documentos (A).

17. Führen Sie den im Schritt zerlegten Basis-Schieber A (F) und den Basis-Schieber V (W) unter die Bauteile-Basis (X), und rasten Sie die Laschen (4) danach ein.
18. Befestigen den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I), und befestigen Sie danach den Basis-Schieber V (W) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (Y).

Entfernen der Abdeckung

19. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung am Dokument-Finisher (A).
20. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (5), um die untere vordere Abdeckung (6) zu entfernen.
21. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

22. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (7), um die hintere Abdeckung (8) vom Dokument-Finisher (A) abzunehmen.

17. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) smontato al punto 5 e lo scivolo di base V (W) sotto la base di assemblaggio (X) e agganciare le linguette (4).
18. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base V (W) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).

Rimozione del pannello

19. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
20. Togliere due viti (5) per rimuovere il pannello anteriore inferiore (6).
21. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

22. Togliere quattro viti (7) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (8) dalla finitrice di documenti (A).

17. 将在步骤 5 中拆下的底座滑板 A (F) 和底座滑板 V (W) 插到组装底座 (X) 下, 并挂上簧片 (4)。
18. 分别用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F), 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 固定底座滑板 V (W)。

拆下盖板

19. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
20. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (5) 以便拆下前下盖板 (6)。
21. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

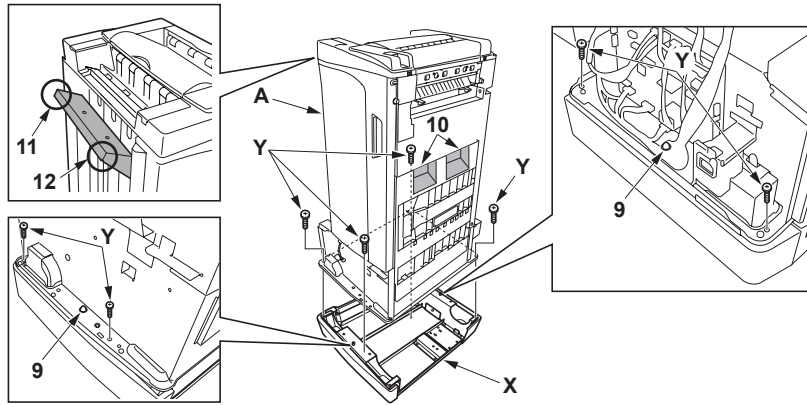
22. 从装订器 (A) 上拆下 4 颗螺钉 (7) 以便拆下后盖板 (8)。

17. 組立ベース (X) の下に手順 5 で分解したベーススライダ A (F) とベーススライダ V (W) を差込み、ツマ (4) を引っ掛ける。
18. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で、ベーススライダ V (W) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 4 本でそれぞれ固定する。

カバーの取り外し

19. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。
20. ビス (5) 2 本外し、前下カバー (6) を取り外す。
21. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。

22. ビス (7) 4 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の後カバー (8) を取り外す。



Installing the assembly base (Be sure to perform step 23 by two service personnel)

23. Align the projection (9) on the assembly base (X) with the hole of the document finisher (A) and place the document finisher (A) on the assembly base (X).

Lift up the document finisher (A) by two service personnel simultaneously by one to hold (10) and the other to hold (11) and (12). Be sure to perform this step by two service personnel, not by one personnel.

24. Fix the document finisher (A) to the assembly base (X) using four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (Y).

Installation de la base d'ensemble (Veiller à faire effectuer l'étape 23 par deux employés de service)

23. Aligner la saillie (9) de la base d'ensemble (X) sur l'orifice du retoucheur de document (A) et mettre le retoucheur de document (A) en place sur la base d'ensemble (X).

Faire soulever le retoucheur de document (A) par deux employés de service ensemble, l'un tenant (10) et l'autre Tenant (11) et (12). Veiller à ce que cette étape soit effectuée par deux employés de service et non par un seul.

24. Fixer le retoucheur de document (A) sur la base d'ensemble (X) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (Y).

Instalación de la base del conjunto (Asegúrese de que el paso 23 lo ejecuten dos personas del servicio de instalación)

23. Alinee el resalto (9) de la base del conjunto (X) con el agujero del finalizador de documentos (A) y ponga el finalizador de documentos (A) en la base del conjunto (X).

El finalizador de documentos (A) deberá ser levantado simultáneamente por dos personas del personal de servicio, una de ellas sujetando la parte (10) y la otra las partes (11) y (12). Asegúrese de que este paso lo lleven a cabo dos personas del personal de servicio, no una sola.

24. Fije el finalizador de documentos (A) en la base del conjunto (X) utilizando cuatro tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y).

Anbringen der Bauteil-Basis (Führen Sie den Schritt 23 mit zwei Personen aus)

23. Richten Sie den Vorsprung (9) auf der Bauteile-Basis (X) mit dem Loch im Dokument-Finisher (A) aus, und setzen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) danach auf die Bauteile-Basis (X).

Heben Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) zusammen mit einer zweiten Person gleichzeitig an. Eine Person hält die Stelle (10) fest, während die andere Person die Stellen (11) und (12) festhält. Führen Sie diesen Schritt unbedingt mit zwei Personen durch.

24. Befestigen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) an die Bauteile-Basis (X) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (Y).

Installazione della base di assemblaggio (Assicurarsi che il punto 23 venga eseguito da due membri del personale)

23. Allineare la parte sporgente (9) della base di assemblaggio (X) al foro della finitrice di documenti (A) e collocare la finitrice di documenti (A) sopra la base di assemblaggio (X).

Due membri del personale sollevino la finitrice di documenti (A) simultaneamente, uno reggendo (10) e l'altro reggendo (11) e (12). Assicurarsi che ad eseguire questo punto siano due membri del personale e non una persona sola.

24. Fissare la finitrice di documenti (A) alla base di assemblaggio (X) utilizzando quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).

安装组装底座 (请务必由两名维修人员执行第 23 步)

23. 将组装底座 (X) 上的突出部 (9) 对准装订器 (A) 的孔, 并将装订器 (A) 放在组装底座 (X) 上。

由两名维修人员同时抬起装订器 (A), 一名按住 (10), 另一名按住 (11) 和 (12)。请务必由两名维修人员执行此步骤, 而不是一个人。

24. 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 将装订器 (A) 固定到组装底座 (X)。

組立ベースの取り付け (手順 23 は必ず 2 人で行うこと)

23. 組立ベース (X) の突起 (9) とドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の穴を合わせ、組立ベース (X) にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を乗せる。

1 人が (10) の部分を、もう 1 人が (11)、(12) の部分を持ち、2 人で同時にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を持ち上げる。必ず 2 人で作業を行い、1 人では行わないこと。

24. ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 4 本で組立ベース (X) にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を固定する。

Installing the cover

25. Use four screws (7) removed from the document finisher in step 22 to reinstall the back cover (8).
26. Use two screws (5) removed from the document finisher in step 20 to reinstall the lower front cover (6).

Installing the tray

27. Install tray A (B) and tray B (C) to the document finisher (A). Refer to steps 14 and 15 on page 6 for the installation.

Installation du capot

25. Utiliser cinq vis (7) retirées du retoucheur de document à l'étape 22 pour réinstaller le capot arrière (8).
26. Utiliser deux vis (5) retirées du retoucheur de document à l'étape 20 pour réinstaller le capot inférieur avant (6).

Installation des bacs

27. Installer le bac A (B) et le bac B (C) sur le retoucheur de document (A). Se référer aux étapes 14 et 15 de la page 6 pour l'installation.

Instalación de la cubierta

25. Utilice cuatro tornillos (7) quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 22 para volver a instalar la cubierta trasera (8).
26. Utilice dos tornillos (5) quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 20 para volver a instalar la cubierta delantera inferior (6).

Instalación de la bandeja

27. Instale la bandeja A (B) y la bandeja B (C) en el finalizador de documentos (A). Consulte los pasos 14 y 15 para hacer la instalación.

Anbringen der Abdeckung

25. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (7), welche Sie im Schritt 22 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt haben, um die hintere Abdeckung (8) wieder anzubringen.
26. Verwenden Sie die beiden Schrauben (5), welche Sie im Schritt 20 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt haben, um die vordere Abdeckung (6) wieder anzubringen.

Anbringen des Fachs

27. Bringen Sie das Fach A (B) und das Fach B (C) am Dokument-Finisher (A) an. Beziehen Sie sich hinsichtlich des Einbaus auf die Schritte 14 und 15 auf Seite 6.

Installazione del pannello

25. Utilizzare le quattro viti (7) rimosse dalla finitrice di documenti al punto 22 per reinstallare il pannello posteriore (8).
26. Utilizzare le due viti (5) rimosse dalla finitrice di documenti al punto 20 per reinstallare il pannello inferiore anteriore (6).

Installazione del vassoio

27. Installare il vassoio A (B) e il vassoio B (C) sulla finitrice di documenti (A). Per l'installazione, fare riferimento ai punti 14 e 15 a pagina 6.

安装盖板

25. 用在步骤 22 中从装订器上拆下的 4 颗螺钉 (7) 重新安装后盖板 (8)。
26. 用在步骤 20 中从装订器上拆下的 2 颗螺钉 (5) 重新安装前下盖板 (6)。

安装托盘

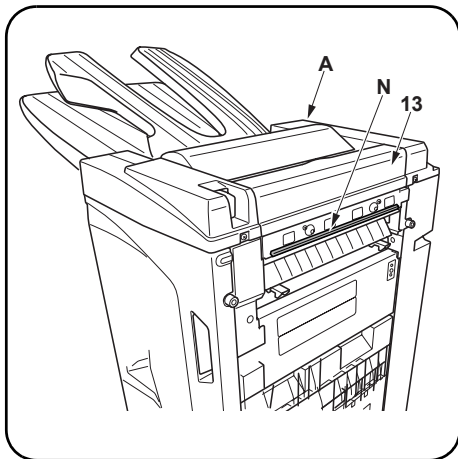
27. 将托盘 A (B) 和托盘 B (C) 安装到装订器 (A) 上。有关安装, 请参考第 6 页上的步骤 14 和 15。

カバーの取り付け

25. 手順 22 で外した後カバー (8) をビス (7) 4 本で元通り取り付け。
26. 手順 20 で外した前下カバー (6) をビス (5) 2 本で元通り取り付け。

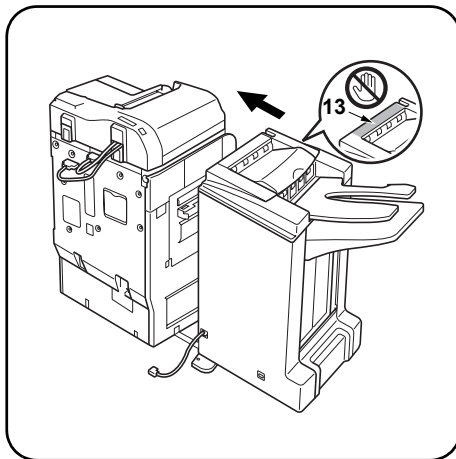
トレイの取り付け

27. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) にトレイ A (B) とトレイ B (C) を取り付け。詳細は 6 ページ手順 14、15 を参照のこと。



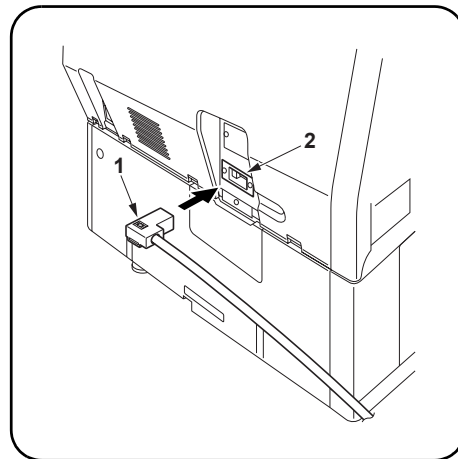
Installing the sponge

1. Clean the sheet metal section under the upper cover (13) of the document finisher (A) with alcohol.
2. Peel the release paper off the sponge (N) and adhere the sponge to the sheet metal section.



[Installing the document finisher and the MFP or the printer]

3. Bring the document finisher (A) near the MFP or the printer and connect them.
For connecting the document finisher (A) and the MFP or the printer, do not hold the upper cover (13) of the document finisher.



Connecting the signal line

4. Connect the signal line (1) of the document finisher (A) to the connector (2) at the back of the MFP or the printer.

Installation de l'éponge

1. Nettoyer la partie en feuille de métal du capot supérieur (13) du retoucheur de document (A) avec de l'alcool.
2. Peler le papier de libération de l'éponge (N) et coller l'éponge sur la partie en feuille de métal.

[Installation du retoucheur de document et du MFP ou imprimante]

3. Approcher le retoucheur de document (A) du MFP ou imprimante et les connecter.
Pour connecter le retoucheur de document (A) et le MFP ou imprimante, ne pas tenir le capot supérieur (13) du retoucheur de document.

Connexion de la ligne d'interconnexion

4. Connecter la ligne d'interconnexion (1) du retoucheur de document (A) au connecteur (2) à l'arrière du MFP ou imprimante.

Instalación de la esponja

1. Limpie con alcohol la sección de la hoja metálica situada debajo de la cubierta superior (13) del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Despegue el papel de la esponja (N) y pegue la esponja en la sección de la hoja metálica.

[Instalación del finalizador de documentos y la MFP o impresora]

3. Acerque el finalizador de documentos (A) a la MFP o impresora y conéctelos.
Para conectar el finalizador de documentos (A) y la MFP o impresora, no sujete la cubierta superior (13) del finalizador de documentos.

Conexión de la línea de señales

4. Conecte la línea de señales (1) del finalizador de documentos (A) al conector (2) de la parte trasera de la MFP o impresora.

Anbringen des Schwamms

1. Reinigen Sie den Metallbereich unter der oberen Abdeckung (13) des Dokument-Finishers (A) mit Alkohol.
2. Ziehen Sie die Klebeschuttfolie vom Schwamm (N) ab, und kleben Sie den Schwamm dann an der Metallfläche an.

[Anbringen des Dokument-Finishers und des MFP oder Drucker]

3. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) nahe am MFP oder Drucker an, und verbinden Sie beide Komponenten miteinander.
Wenn der Dokument-Finisher (A) und der MFP oder Drucker verbunden werden, darf die obere Abdeckung (13) des Dokument-Finishers nicht festgehalten werden.

Anschließen der Signalleitung

4. Schließen Sie die Signalleitung (1) des Dokument-Finishers (A) am Stecker (2) auf der Rückseite des MFP oder Drucker an.

Installazione della spugna

1. Pulire con alcool la sezione in lamiera sotto il pannello superiore (13) della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Staccare la carta protettiva dalla spugna (N) e far aderire la spugna alla sezione in lamiera.

[Installazione della finitrice di documenti e della MFP o stampatore]

3. Avvicinare la finitrice di documenti (A) alla MFP o stampatore e collegarle.
Nel connettere la finitrice di documenti (A) e la MFP o stampatore, non reggere il pannello superiore (13) della finitrice.

Connessione del cavo del segnale

4. Collegare il cavo del segnale (1) della finitrice di documenti (A) al connettore (2) sul retro della MFP o stampatore.

安装海绵

1. 用酒精清洁装订器 (A) 的上盖板 (13) 下的金属板部位。
2. 剥离海绵 (N) 上的隔离纸, 将海绵粘到金属板部位。

[安装装订器和 MFP 或打印机]

3. 将装订器 (A) 放在 MFP 或打印机附近, 并将其连接。
连接装订器 (A) 和 MFP 或打印机时, 不要按住装订器的上盖板 (13)。

连接信号线

4. 将装订器 (A) 的信号线 (1) 连接到 MFP 或打印机后部的插头 (2)。

スポンジの貼り付け

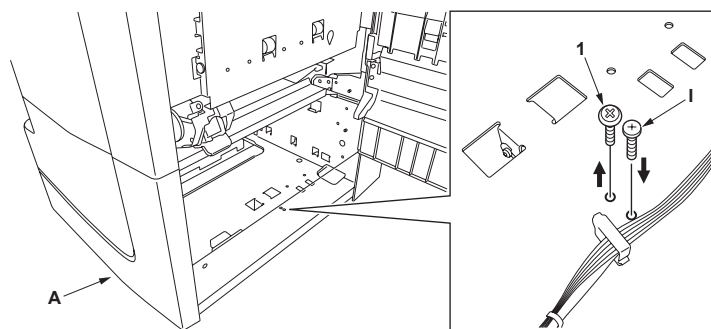
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の上カバー (13) の下の板金部をアルコール清掃する。
2. スポンジ (N) の剥離紙を剥ぎ取り、貼り付ける。

[ドキュメントフィニッシャーと MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の取り付け]

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体へ寄せ、MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体と接続する。
接続する際、ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の上カバー (13) を絶対に持たないこと。

信号線の接続

4. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の信号線 (1) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体後側のコネクタ (2) に接続する。



[Adjusting the document finisher height]

When using a monochrome machine

1. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
2. Remove the screw (1) from the left bottom of the document finisher (A) and install the document finisher to the right hole using M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I).
The more tightening M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I), the more document finisher height increases.

[Ajustement de la hauteur du retoucheur de document]

Lors de l'utilisation d'une machine monochrome

1. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
2. Retirer la vis (1) de la partie inférieure gauche du retoucheur de document (A) et installer le retoucheur de document sur l'orifice de droite à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).
Plus la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) est serrée, plus la hauteur du retoucheur de document augmente.

[Ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos]

Cuando utilice una máquina de blanco y negro

1. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Quite el tornillo (1) de la parte inferior izquierda del finalizador de documentos (A) e instale el finalizador de documentos en el agujero derecho utilizando los tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).
Cuanto más se aprieten los tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) más aumentará la altura del finalizador de documentos.

[Einstellen der Höhe des Dokument-Finishers]

Bei Verwendung einer Monochrommaschine

1. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
2. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (1) links unten am Dokument-Finisher (A), und befestigen Sie den Dokument-Finisher danach mit einer M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) am rechten Loch.
Je stärker die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) festgezogen wird, desto größer ist der Höhenzuwachs für den Dokument-Finisher.

[Regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti]

In caso di utilizzo di un macchinario in bianco e nero

1. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Togliere la vite (1) dalla parte inferiore sinistra della finitrice di documenti (A) e installare la finitrice nel foro destro utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).
Più si stringe la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I), più aumenta l'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

[調整装订器高度]

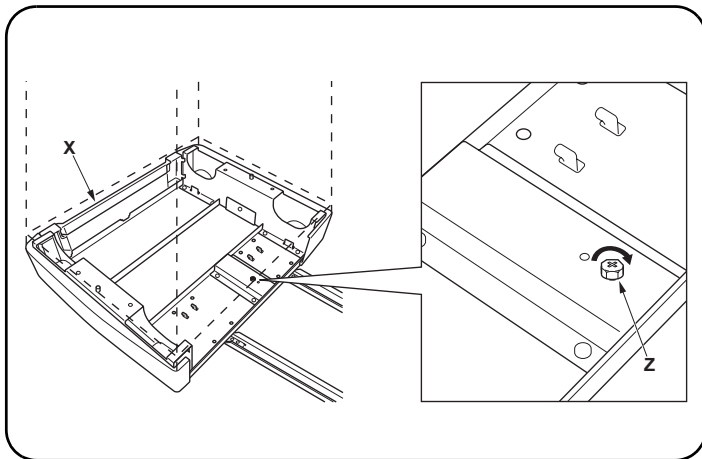
使用黑白机时

1. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
2. 从装订器 (A) 的左下部拆下螺钉 (1) 并用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 将装订器安装到右孔。
M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 拧得越紧，装订器的高度就越高。

[ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整]

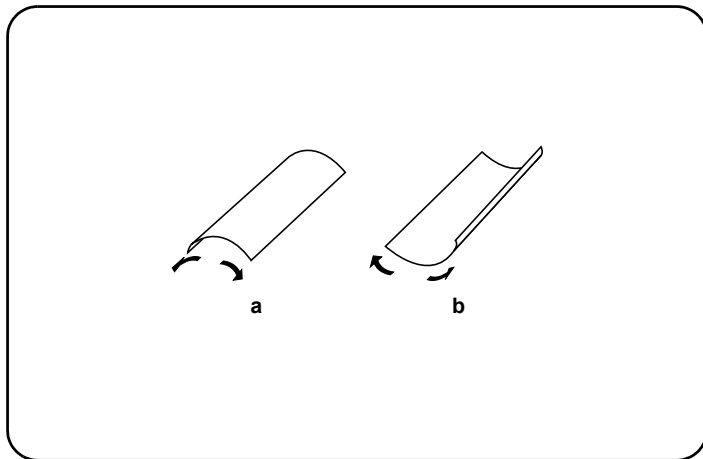
モノクロ機の場合

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。
 2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) 底部左側のビス (1) 1 本を外し、ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) を右側の穴へ取り付け。
- ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) を締めつけるほど、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さが高くなる。



[When using the full-color machine]

1. Tighten M4 × 10 hexagon head screw (Z), which was temporarily tightened in step 4 on page 12, using a spanner.
The more tightening M4 × 10 hexagon head screw (Z), the more document finisher height increases.



[Checking the curl]

1. Plug the MFP or the printer into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. Check the paper is fed.
3. Check the curl of the copy sample, and if the curl is tight, follow the next step to adjust it.

[Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs]

1. Serrer la vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10 (Z) temporairement serrée à l'étape 4 de la page 11 à l'aide d'une clé de serrage.
Plus la vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10 (Z) est serrée, plus la hauteur du retoucheur de document augmente.

[Vérification de la boucle]

1. Brancher le MFP ou imprimante dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur d'alimentation principal sous tension.
2. S'assurer que le papier est fourni.
3. Vérifier la boucle sur l'échantillon de copie et si la boucle est serrée, suivre l'étape suivante pour l'ajuster.

[Cuando utilice la máquina a todo color]

1. Apriete el tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10 (Z), que fue apretado temporalmente en el paso 4 de la página 11, utilizando una llave inglesa.
Cuanto más se apriete el tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10 (Z), más aumentará la altura del finalizador de documentos.

[Comprobación de la curvatura del papel]

1. Enchufe la MFP o impresora a una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. Asegúrese de que avance el papel.
3. Compruebe la curvatura del papel de la muestra de la copia y si ésta es mucha, siga el paso siguiente para ajustarla.

[Bei Verwendung eines Vollfarbenedlers]

1. Ziehen Sie die im Schritt 4 auf Seite 11 vorübergehend angezogene M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube (Z) mit einem Schraubenschlüssel fest.
Je stärker die M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube (Z) festgezogen wird, desto größer ist der Höhenzuwachs für den Dokument-Finisher.

[Überprüfen der Papierwellung]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP oder Drucker an das Netz an, und aktivieren Sie den Geräteschalter.
2. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert.
3. Überprüfen Sie die Testkopie auf Wellung. Falls das Papier zu stark aufgerollt ist, folgen Sie dem nächsten Schritt zur Einstellung.

[In caso di utilizzo di un macchinario a colori]

1. Fissare la vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10 (Z), stretta temporaneamente al punto 4 di pagina 11, utilizzando una chiave.
Più si stringe la vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10 (Z), più aumenta l'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

[Controllo dell'arricciatura]

1. Collegare la MFP o stampatore alla presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
3. Controllare l'arricciatura della copia di prova e, se è notevole, procedere come indicato nel punto successivo per regolarla.

[使用全彩色機時]

1. 用扳子拧紧在第 11 页上第 4 步中暂时拧紧的 M4 × 10 六角头螺钉 (Z)。
M4 × 10 六角头螺钉 (Z) 拧得越紧, 装订器的高度就越高。

[检查卷曲状态]

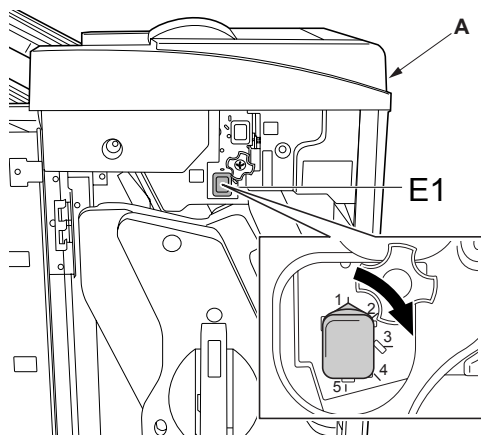
1. 将 MFP 或打印机插入电源插座, 打开主电源开关。
2. 检查送纸。
3. 检查复印样本的卷曲状态, 如果卷曲严重, 按照下一步进行调整。

[フルカラー機の場合]

1. 12 ページ、手順 4 で仮締めした M4 × 10 六角ビス (Z) を、スパナ等を使い締め付ける。
M4 × 10 六角ビス (Z) を締め付けるほど、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さが高くなる。

[カール状態の確認]

1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. 通紙を確認する。
3. コピーサンプルのカール状態を確認し、カールが大きい場合、次の手順で調整を行う。



Checking the curl

If the ejected paper is tightly curled face-down (a)

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
2. Pull the pressure roller bottom adjusting knob E1 to your side and turn the knob by 1 scale in increasing order.

3. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).
4. Check the paper is fed.
5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 until the paper becomes straight.

Vérification de la boucle

Si on enroule vers le bas les papiers sur la sortie (a)

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
2. Tirer la molette de réglage inférieure du rouleau de pression E1 vers soi et faire tourner la molette pour l'augmenter d'un cran.

3. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
4. S'assurer que le papier est fourni.
5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que le papier soit plat.

Comprobación de la curvatura

Si el papel de la salida está curvado hacia abajo (a)

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Tire del control de ajuste inferior del rodillo de presión E1 hacia donde está usted y gire el control 1 posición en el orden de aumento.

3. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
4. Asegúrese de que avance el papel.
5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 hasta que el papel quede derecho.

Überprüfen der Papierwellung

Wenn der Papier auf dem Auslass nach unten aufgerollt wird (a)

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
2. Ziehen Sie den unteren Andruckwalzenreglerknopf E1 gegen sich, und drehen Sie den Knopf um eine Stufe in aufsteigender Richtung.

3. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
4. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert.
5. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 2 bis 4, bis das Papier sich glättet.

Controllo dell'arricciatura

Se la carta all'uscita è rivolta verso il basso arricciata (a)

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Tirare la manopola di regolazione inferiore del rullo di pressione E1 verso di voi e ruotarla di una tacca in ordine crescente.

3. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
4. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
5. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 2 al punto 4 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

检查卷曲状态

如果输出的纸张正面朝下严重卷曲 (a)

1. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
2. 将压力辊底部调整旋钮 E1 朝向自身方向拉, 并按照升序旋转旋钮 1 个刻度。

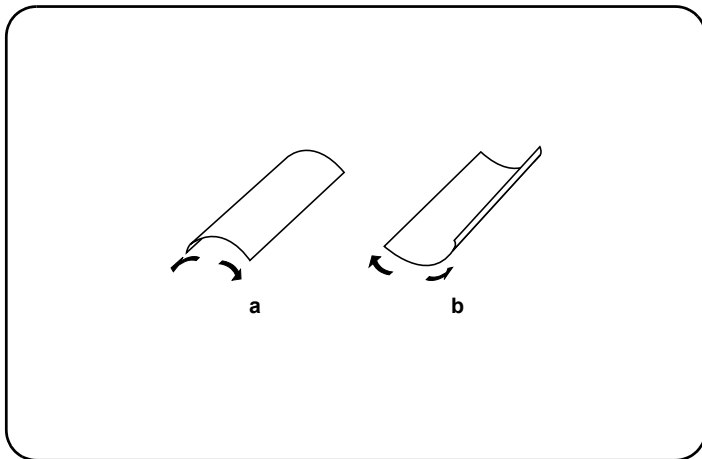
3. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
4. 检查送纸。
5. 重复第 2 步到第 4 步直到纸张变直。

カール状態の調整

排出された用紙のカールが下向きに大きい場合 (a)

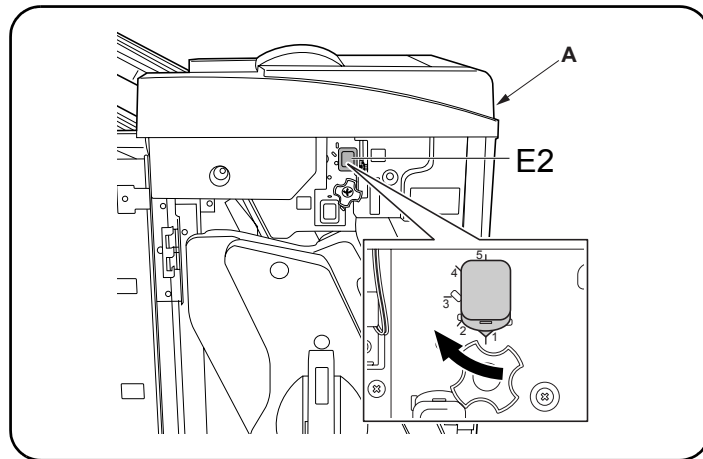
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。
2. 加圧ローラ下調整つまみ E1 を手前に引き、数字の大きい方向に 1 目盛り回す。

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。
4. 通紙を確認する。
5. 用紙のカールがなくなるまで、手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。



If the ejected paper is tightly curled face-up (b)

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
2. Pull the pressure roller top adjusting knob E2 to your side and turn the knob by 1 scale in increasing order.
3. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).



4. Check the paper is fed.
5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 until the paper becomes straight.

Si on enroule de façon serrée vers le haut les papiers sur la sortie (b)

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
2. Tirer la molette de réglage supérieure du rouleau de pression E2 vers soi et faire tourner la molette pour l'augmenter d'un cran.
3. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

4. S'assurer que le papier est fourni.
5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que le papier soit plat.

Si se el papel de la salida está apretado hacia arriba (b)

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Tire del control de ajuste superior del rodillo de presión E2 hacia donde está usted y gire el control 1 posición en el orden de aumento.
3. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

4. Asegúrese de que avance el papel.
5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 hasta que el papel quede derecho.

Wenn der Papier auf dem Auslass straff nach oben aufgerollt wird (b)

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
2. Ziehen Sie den oberen Andruckwalzenreglerknopf E2 gegen sich, und drehen Sie den Knopf um eine Stufe in aufsteigender Richtung.
3. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

4. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert.
5. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 2 bis 4, bis das Papier sich glättet.

Se la carta all'uscita è rivolta verso l'alto notevolmente arricciata (b)

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Tirare la manopola di regolazione superiore del rullo di pressione E2 verso di voi e ruotarla di una tacca in ordine crescente.
3. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

4. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
5. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 2 al punto 4 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

如果输出的纸张正面朝上严重卷曲 (b)

1. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
2. 将压力辊顶部调整旋钮 E2 朝向自身方向拉，并按照升序旋转旋钮 1 个刻度。
3. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

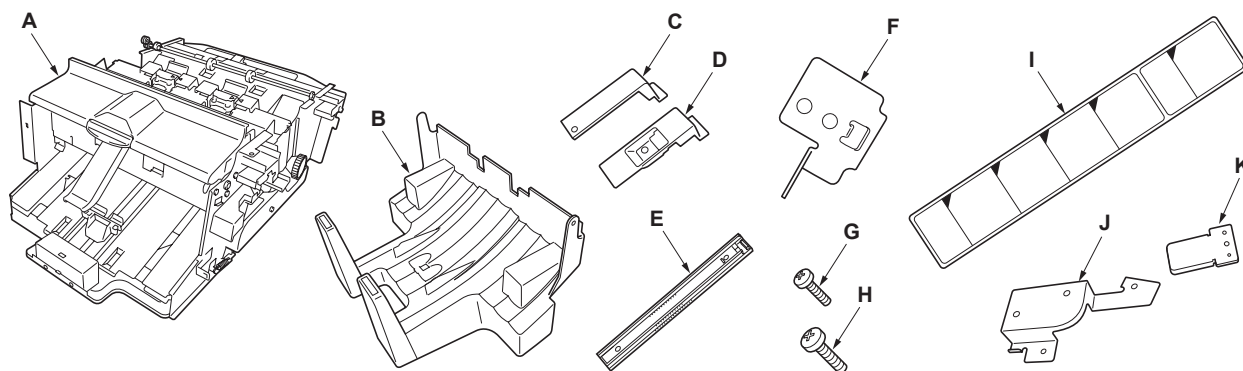
4. 检查送纸。
5. 重复第 2 步到第 4 步直到纸张变直。

排出された用紙のカールが上向きに大きい場合 (b)

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。
2. 加圧ローラー上調整つまみ E2 を手前に引き、数字の大きい方向に 1 目盛り回す。
3. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。

4. 通紙を確認する。
5. 用紙のカールがなくなるまで、手順 2 ～ 4 を繰り返す。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR CENTER-FOLDING UNIT



English

Supplied parts

A Center-Folding unit	1
B Folding tray	1
C Rear cover	1
D Front cover	1
E Slider	2

F Douser	1
G M3 x 8 tap-tight P screw	2
H M4 x 8 tap-tight S screw	11
I Label	1
J Cover handle saddle	1

(K) will be used when the center-folding unit is installed on the full-color machine.

(K) will not be used in monochrome machine.

K Cover V	2
-----------------	---

Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Plieuse	1
B Bac de pliage	1
C Capot arrière	1
D Capot avant	1
E Règle	2

F Ombreur	1
G Vis P taraudées M3 x 8	2
H Vis S taraudées M4 x 8	11
I Etiquette	1
J Poignée de capot à cheval	1

(K) utilisé lorsque la plieuse est installée sur la machine pleine couleurs.

(K) n'est pas utilisé sur une machine monochrome

K Capot V	2
-----------------	---

Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Unidad de plegado	1
B Bandeja de plegado	1
C Cubierta posterior	1
D Cubierta frontal	1
E Deslizador	2

F Pantalla paraluz	1
G Tornillo de ajuste M3 x 8	2
H Tornillo de ajuste M4 x 8	11
I Etiqueta	1
J Placa de manilla de cubierta	1

(K) se utilizará cuando la unidad de plegado esté instalada en la máquina a todo color.

(K) no se utilizará en la máquina de blanco y negro.

K Cubierta V	2
--------------------	---

Asegúrese de quitar cualquier cinta de fijación o material de amortiguación colocado en las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Mittenfalteinheit	1
B Faltfach	1
C Hintere Abdeckung	1
D Vordere Abdeckung	1
E Schieber	2

F Abschirmung	1
G M3 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben	2
H M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben	11
I Aufkleber	1
J Abdeckungsalter	1

(K) Ist erforderlich, wenn die Mittenfalteinheit am Vollfarbkopierer installiert wird.

(K) Ist bei Schwarzweiß-Kopierern nicht erforderlich.

K Abdeckung V	2
---------------------	---

Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Unità di piegatura centrale	1
B Vassoio di piegatura	1
C Pannello posteriore	1
D Pannello anteriore	1
E Scivolo	2

F Dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser)	1
G Viti con testa a croce P M3 x 8	2
H Viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8	11
I Etichetta	1
J Slitta coprimanopola	1

(K) da utilizzarsi quando l'unità di piegatura centrale è installata su un macchinario a colori.

(K) da non utilizzarsi su macchinari monocromi.

K Pannello V	2
--------------------	---

Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属部件

A 中缝装订—折页单元	1
B 折叠托盘	1
C 后盖板	1
D 前盖板	1
E 滑板	2

F 探测器	1
G M3 x 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉	2
H M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉	11
I 标签	1
J 盖板手柄鞍座	1

全彩色机上安装中缝装订—折页单元时将使用 (K)。

黑白机上不使用 (K)。

K 盖板 V	2
--------------	---

请务必拆下附带在附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

日本語

付属品

A 中折りユニット	1
B 中折りトレイ	1
C カバー後	1
D カバー前	1
E スライダー	2

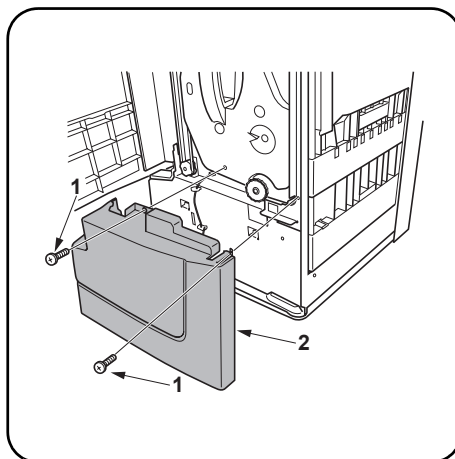
F 遮光板	1
G ビス M3 x 8 タップタイト P	2
H ビス M4 x 8 タップタイト S	11
I ラベル	1
J カバーハンドルサドル	1

フルカラー機に中折りユニットを設置する場合、(K) を使用する。

モノクロ機では (K) は使用しない。

K カバー V	2
---------------	---

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

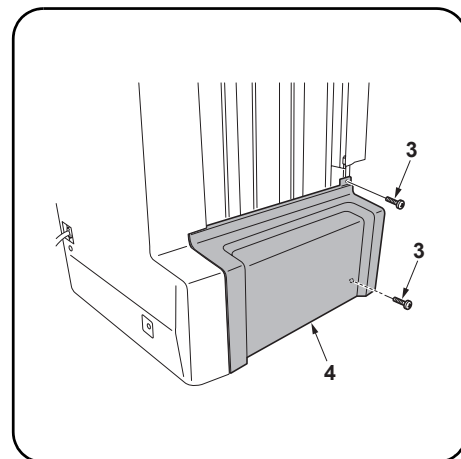


Procedure

Before installing the center-folding unit, turn the MFP's main power switch off and unplug the power cable from the power supply. Install the document finisher, and then install the center-folding unit.

Removing the cover.

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher.
2. Remove two screws (1) and remove lower front cover (2).



3. Remove two screws (3) and remove lower left cover (4).

Procédure

Avant d'installer la plieuse mettre l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP hors tension et débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise de courant. Installer le finisseur de document, puis installer la plieuse.

Enlèvement du capot.

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer deux vis (1) et retirer le capot avant inférieur (2).

3. Retirer deux vis (3) et retirer le capot gauche inférieur (4).

Procedimiento

Antes de instalar la unidad de plegado, desconecte el interruptor de alimentación principal de la MFP y desenchufe el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente. Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la unidad de plegado.

Extracción de la cubierta.

1. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (1) y la cubierta frontal inferior (2).

3. Quite dos tornillos (3) y la cubierta inferior izquierda (4).

Einbauverfahren

Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Mittenfalteinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Mittenfalteinheit an.

Entfernen der Abdeckung.

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (1) und danach die vordere untere Abdeckung (2).

3. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (3) und danach die vordere untere Abdeckung (4).

Procedura

Prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa. Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di piegatura centrale.

Rimuovere il pannello.

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice.
2. Togliere due viti (1) e rimuovere il pannello anteriore inferiore (2).

3. Togliere due viti (3) e rimuovere il pannello inferiore sinistro (4).

步骤

安装中缝装订一折页单元前, 请关闭 MFP 的主电源开关并从电源拔下电源线。安装文档整理器, 然后安装中缝装订一折页单元。

拆下盖板。

1. 打开文档整理器的前盖板。
2. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (1), 然后拆下前下盖板 (2)。

3. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (3), 然后拆下左下盖板 (4)。

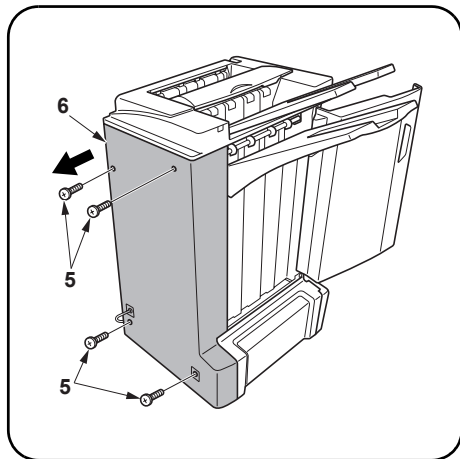
設置手順

中折りユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、中折りユニットを設置すること。

カバーの取り外し

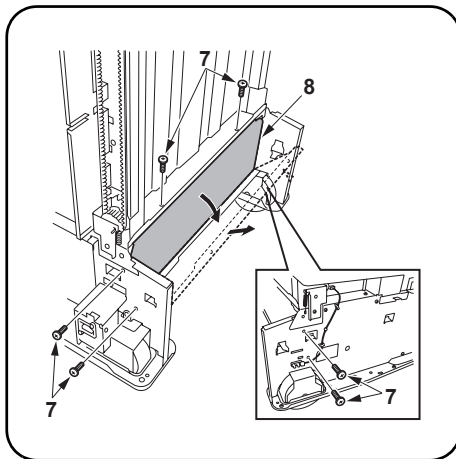
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開く。
2. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、前下カバー (2) を取り外す。

3. ビス (3) 2 本を外し、左下カバー (4) を取り外す。



Removing the back cover.

4. Remove the four screws (5) to remove the back cover (6) from the document finisher.



Removing the reinforcing plate.

5. Remove six screws (7) to remove the left reinforcing plate (8). Tilt the left reinforcing plate (8) to pull out upwards.

Installing the back cover.

6. Use the four screws (5) which was removed from the document finisher in step 4 and reinstall the back cover (6).

Enlèvement du capot arrière.

4. Retirer les quatre vis (5) pour retirer le capot arrière (6) du finisseur de document.

Enlèvement de la plaque de renfort.

5. Retirer six vis (7) pour retirer la plaque de renfort de gauche (8). Incliner la plaque de renfort de gauche (8) pour la faire ressortir vers le haut.

Installation du capot arrière.

6. Utiliser les quatre vis (5) retirées du finisseur de document à l'étape 4 et réinstaller le capot arrière (6).

Extracción de la cubierta posterior.

4. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) para quitar la cubierta posterior (6) del finalizador de documentos.

Extracción de la placa de refuerzo.

5. Quite seis tornillos (7) para quitar la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8). Incline la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8) para sacarla hacia arriba.

Instalación de la cubierta posterior.

6. Utilice los cuatro tornillos (5) que fueron quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 4 y vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (6).

Entfernen der hinteren Abdeckung.

4. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) vom Dokument-Finisher, um die hintere Abdeckung (6) zu entfernen.

Entfernen der Verstärkungsplatte.

5. Entfernen Sie die sechs Schrauben (7), um die linke Verstärkungsplatte (8) auszubauen. Neigen Sie die Verstärkungsplatte (8), um sie nach außen herauszuziehen.

Anbringen der hinteren Abdeckung.

6. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (5), welche im Schritt 4 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurden, und bringen Sie danach die hintere Abdeckung (6) wieder an.

Rimuovere il pannello posteriore.

4. Togliere le quattro viti (5) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (6) dalla finitrice.

Rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo.

5. Togliere sei viti (7) per rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8). Inclinare la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8) ed estrarla verso l'alto.

Installare il pannello posteriore.

6. Utilizzare le quattro viti (5) rimosse dalla finitrice nel passo 4 e reinstallare il pannello posteriore (6).

拆下后盖板。

4. 从文档整理器上拆下 4 颗螺钉 (5) 以便拆下后盖板 (6)。

拆下加强板。

5. 拆下 6 颗螺钉 (7) 以便拆下左加强板 (8)。将左加强板 (8) 倾斜向上拉出。

安装后盖板。

6. 用在步骤 4 中从文档整理器上拆下的 4 颗螺钉 (5) 重新安装后盖板 (6)。

後カバーの取り外し

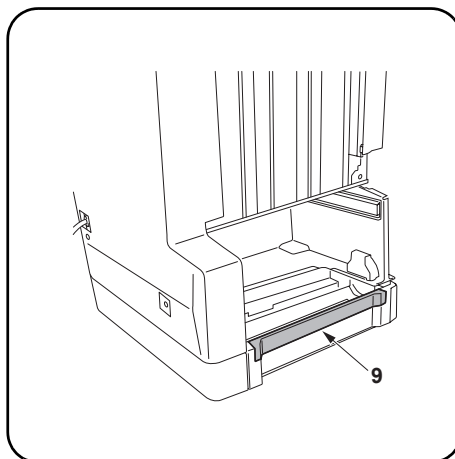
4. ビス (5) 4 本を外し、後カバー (6) を取り外す。

補強板の取り外し

5. ビス (7) 6 本を外し、補強板左 (8) を取り外す。補強板左 (8) は斜めに傾け、上方向へ取り外すこと。

後カバーの取り付け

6. 手順 4 で外した後カバー (6) をビス (5) 4 本で元通り取り付ける。

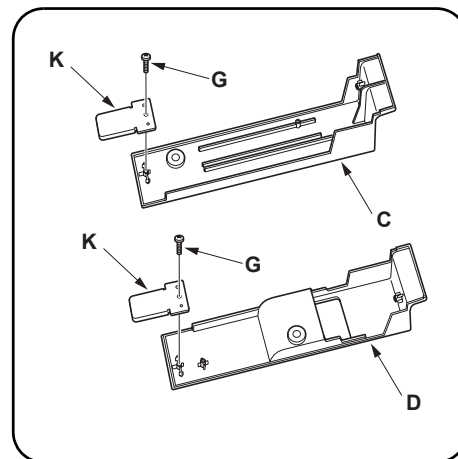


[To install the center-folding unit on the full-color machine]

7. Steps 8 and 9 below will be required when the center-folding unit (A) is installed on the full-color machine.

Removing the divided part.

8. Remove divided part (9) from the base where the document finisher is located.



Reassembling the covers.

9. Install cover V (K) onto each of rear cover (C) and front cover (D) respectively with a M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (G).

[Installation de la plieuse sur la machine pleine couleurs]

7. Les étapes 8 et 9 ci-dessous sont nécessaires lorsque la plieuse (A) est installée sur la machine pleine couleurs.

Enlèvement de la pièce divisée.

8. Retirer la pièce divisée (9) de la base sur laquelle le finisseur de document est situé.

Remontage des capots.

9. Installer le capot V (K) sur le capot arrière (C) et sur le capot avant (D) à l'aide d'une vis P taraudée M3 × 8 chaque (G).

[Para instalar la unidad de plegado en la máquina a todo color]

7. Los pasos 8 y 9 de abajo serán necesarios cuando la unidad de plegado (A) se instale en la máquina a todo color.

Extracción de la parte dividida.

8. Quite la parte dividida (9) de la base donde se encuentre situado el finalizador de documentos.

Reinstalación de las cubiertas.

9. Instale la cubierta V (K) en cada cubierta posterior (C) y cubierta frontal (D) respectivamente con un tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8 (G).

[Anbringen der Mittenfalteinheit am Vollfarbepkopierer]

7. Die nachfolgenden Schritte 8 und 9 sind erforderlich, wenn die Mittenfalteinheit (A) am Vollfarbepkopierer installiert wird.

Entfernen der Abtrennung.

8. Entfernen Sie die Abtrennung (9) von der Grundplatte des Dokument-Finishers.

Anbringen der Abdeckungen.

9. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung V (K) auf jede hintere Abdeckung (C) bzw. vordere Abdeckung (D) mit einer M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbandschraube (G) an.

[Installare l'unità di piegatura centrale su un macchinario a colori]

7. I successivi passi 8 e 9 sono necessari quando l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) viene installata su macchinari a colori.

Rimuovere la parte divisa.

8. Rimuovere la parte divisa (9) dalla base dove la finitrice è situata.

Riassemblare i pannelli.

9. Installare il pannello V (K) su ognuno dei pannelli posteriore (C) e anteriore (D) rispettivamente con viti con testa a croce P M4 × 8 (G).

[若要在全彩色机上安装中缝装订一折页单元]

7. 在全彩色机上安装中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 时, 需要执行下面的步骤 8 和步骤 9。

拆下分离部分。

8. 从文档整理器的底座上拆下分离部分 (9)。

重新组装盖板。

9. 分别用 1 颗 M3 × 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉 (G) 将盖板 V (K) 安装到每个后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D) 上。

[フルカラー機に設置する場合]

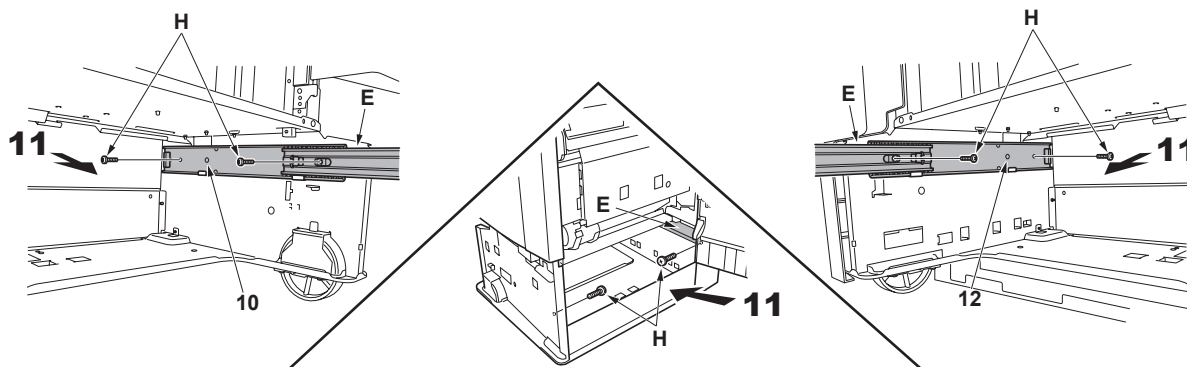
7. フルカラー機に中折りユニット (A) を設置する場合、次の手順 8、9 の作業が必要となる。

割部を取り除く

8. ドキュメントフィニッシャを乗せている組立ベースの割部 (9) を取り除く。

カバーの組み立て

9. カバー後 (C) とカバー前 (D) に、カバー V (K) をビス M3 × 8 タップタイト P (G) 1 本でそれぞれ取り付ける。



Installing the slider.

10. Align slider (E) with projection (10) on the front-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.
11. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H). To tighten the screw at the rear side of slider (E) easily, open the right cover of the document finisher and secure the screw from the right side (11) of the document finisher.

12. Align slider (E) with projection (12) on the back-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.

13. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

Installation de la règle.

10. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (10) de la plaque avant du finisseur de document et installer la règle.
11. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H). Pour pouvoir serrer facilement la vis à l'arrière de la règle (E), ouvrir le capot de droite du finisseur de document et fixer la vis depuis le côté droit (11) du finisseur de document.

12. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (12) à l'arrière de la plaque latérale du finisseur de document et installer la règle.

13. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

Instalación del deslizador.

10. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (10) de la placa del lado frontal del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.
11. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H). Para apretar fácilmente el tornillo del lado posterior del deslizador (E), abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y asegure el tornillo desde el lado derecho (11) del finalizador de documentos.

12. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (12) de la placa del lado posterior del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.

13. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

Anbringen des Schiebers.

10. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (10) auf der vorderen Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.
11. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H). Um die Schraube auf der Rückseite des Schiebers (E) ohne Problems festzuziehen, öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und ziehen Sie die Schraube von der rechten Seite (11) des Dokument-Finishers her an.

12. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (12) auf der hinteren Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.

13. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit zwei M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H).

Installare lo scivolo.

10. Installare lo scivolo (E) allineandolo alla parte sporgente (10) sulla lastra anteriore della finitrice.
11. Fare uscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H). Per fissare con facilità la vite alla parte posteriore dello scivolo (E), aprire il pannello destro della finitrice e serrare la vite dal lato destro (11) della finitrice.

12. Allineare lo scivolo (E) alla parte sporgente (12) sulla lastra posteriore della finitrice e installarlo.

13. Far fuoriuscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

安装滑板。

10. 将滑板 (E) 与文档整理器前侧板上的突出部 (10) 对齐并重新安装滑板。
11. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 颗 M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定。若要轻松拧紧滑板 (E) 后部的螺钉, 打开文档整理器的右盖板并从文档整理器右侧 (11) 固定螺钉。

12. 将滑板 (E) 与文档整理器后侧板上的突出部 (12) 对齐并重新安装滑板。

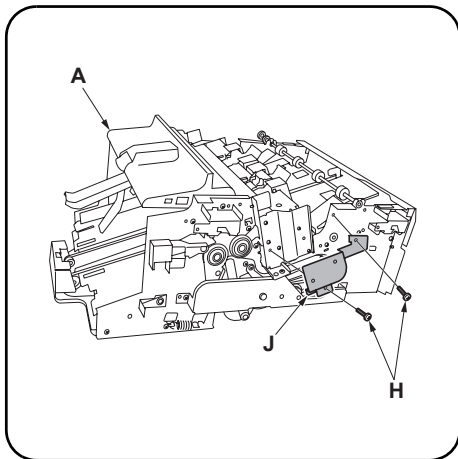
13. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 颗 M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定。

スライダの取り付け

10. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャー前側板の突起 (10) に合わせて取り付け。
11. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で固定する。スライダ (E) 後側のビスは、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの右カバーを開き、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの右方向 (11) から作業すると締めやすい。

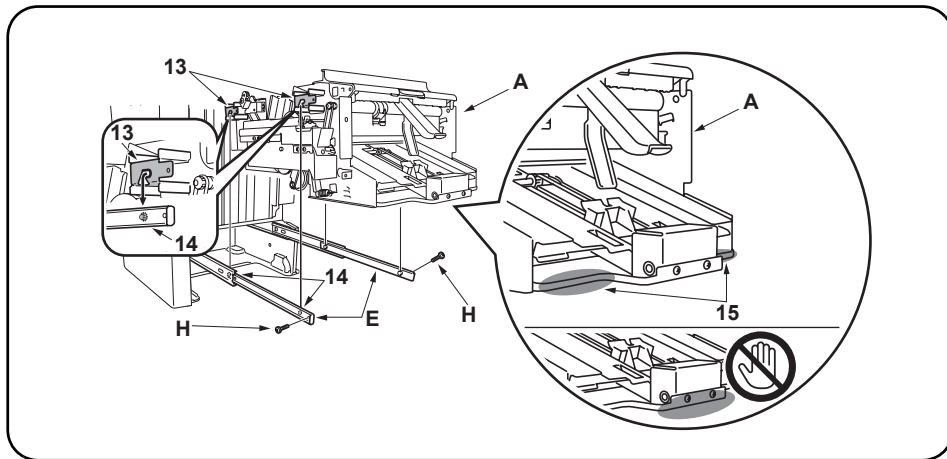
12. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャー後側板の突起 (12) に合わせて取り付け。

13. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で固定する。



Installing the cover handle saddle.

14. Install cover handle saddle (J) on the front side of center-folding unit (A) with two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H).



Installing the center-folding unit.

15. Pull out sliders (E) till they stop.
16. Align pawl (13) of center-folding unit (A) with projection (14) of slider (E) and place the center-folding unit onto the slider.
Be sure to hold both the rear bottom and front side (15) of center-folding unit (A) and place the unit onto slider (E).
17. Secure center-folding unit (A) with two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

Installation de la poignée de capot à cheval.

14. Installer la poignée de capot à cheval (J) sur l'avant de la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H).

Installation de la plieuse.

15. Faire ressortir les règles (E) jusqu'à ce qu'elles s'arrêtent.
16. Aligner le cliquet (13) de la plieuse (A) sur la saillie (14) de la règle (E) et mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle.
Veiller à tenir le fond arrière et l'avant (15) de la plieuse (A) et à mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle (E).
17. Fixer la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H).

Instalación de la placa de manilla de cubierta.

14. Instale la placa de manilla de cubierta (J) en el lado frontal de la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

Instalación de la unidad de plegado.

15. Saque los deslizadores (E) hasta que se paren.
16. Alinee el trinquete (13) de la unidad de plegado (A) con el resalto (14) del deslizador (E) y coloque la unidad de plegado en el deslizador.
Asegúrese de sujetar el lado inferior posterior y el central (15) de la unidad de plegado (A) y colocar la unidad en el deslizador (E).
17. Asegure la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

Anbringen des Abdeckungshalters.

14. Bringen Sie den Abdeckungshalter (J) auf der Vorderseite der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) an.

Anbringen der Mittenfalteinheit.

15. Ziehen Sie die Schieber (E) soweit heraus, bis Sie anschlagen.
16. Richten Sie die Sperrklinke (13) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit dem Vorsprung (14) des Schiebers (E) aus, und setzen Sie danach die Mittenfalteinheit auf den Schieber.
Halten Sie die untere Hinter- und Vorderseite (15) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) fest und setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit danach auf den Schieber (E).
17. Ziehen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) fest.

Installare la slitta coprimanopola.

14. Installare la slitta coprimanopola (J) sul lato anteriore dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) per mezzo di due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H).

Installare l'unità di piegatura centrale.

15. Tirare in fuori gli scivolo (E) finché si bloccano.
16. Allineare il dentello (13) dell'unità centrale di piegatura (A) alla parte sporgente (14) dello scivolo (E) e posarvi sopra l'unità stessa.
Assicurarsi di reggere bene sia la parte posteriore bassa che quella anteriore (15) dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) e posare l'unità sullo scivolo (E).
17. Fissare l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H).

安装盖板手柄鞍座。

14. 用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 将盖板手柄鞍座 (J) 安装到中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的前部。

安装中缝装订一折页单元。

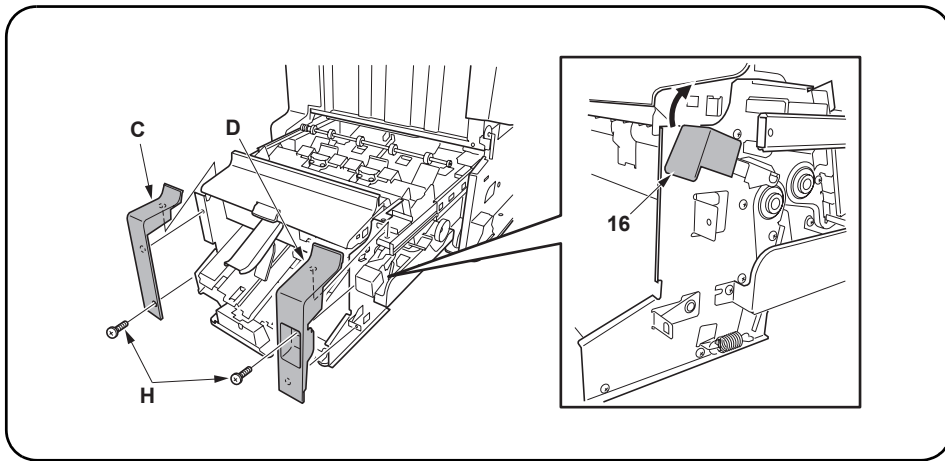
15. 拉出滑板 (E) 直到其停止下来。
16. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的卡爪 (13) 对准滑板 (E) 的突起 (14), 并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板上。
请务必握住中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的后部和前部 (15), 并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板 (E) 上。
17. 用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定中缝装订一折页单元 (A)。

カバーハンドルサドルの取り付け

14. カバーハンドルサドル (J) を中折りユニット (A) 前側にビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で取り付ける。

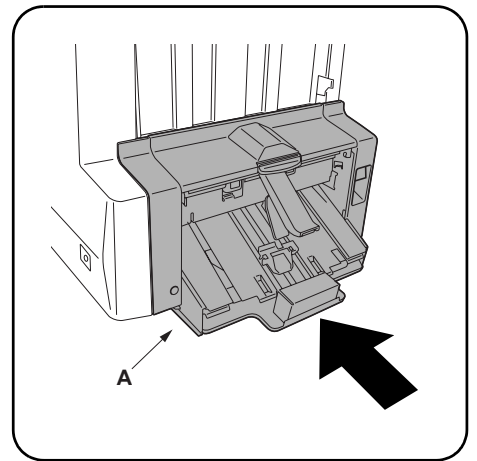
中折りユニットの取り付け

15. スライダ (E) を最後まで引き出す。
16. 中折りユニット (A) のツメ (13) をスライダ (E) の突起 (14) に合わせて乗せる。
中折りユニット (A) は、必ず後側の底部と前側の (15) の部分を持ってスライダ (E) に乗せること。
17. M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で中折りユニット (A) を固定する。



Installing covers.

18. Fit the projections at the rear side of rear cover (C) and front cover (D) into the center-folding unit's holes and install the covers.
It is easy to install front cover (D) by lifting center-folding unit releasing lever (16).
Install the cover assembled in step 6 when the center-folding unit is installed into the full-color machine.
19. Use two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H) to secure rear cover (C) and front cover (D).



20. Store center-folding unit (A) into the document finisher.

If center-folding unit (A) is not stored completely inside the document finisher, the unit cannot be fixed in the document finisher and center-folding unit (A) won't operate properly.

Installation des capots.

18. Ajuster les saillies à l'arrière du capot arrière (C) et du capot avant (D) dans les orifices de la plieuse et installer les capots.
Il est facile d'installer le capot avant (D) en soulevant le levier de relâchement de la plieuse (16).
Installer le capot assemblé à l'étape 6 lorsque la plieuse est installée dans la machine pleine couleurs.
19. Utiliser deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H) pour fixer le capot arrière (C) et le capot avant (D).

20. Ranger la plieuse (A) dans le finisseur de document.

Si la plieuse (A) n'est pas complètement rangée à l'intérieur du finisseur de document, la plieuse ne peut pas être fixée dans le finisseur de document et la plieuse (A) ne fonctionne pas correctement.

Instalación de cubiertas.

18. Coloque los resaltes del lado posterior de la cubierta posterior (C) y de la cubierta frontal (D) dentro de los agujeros de la unidad de plegado e instale las cubiertas.
Es más fácil instalar la cubierta frontal (D) levantando la palanca de liberación de la unidad de plegado (16).
Instale la cubierta ensamblada en el paso 6 cuando la unidad de plegado esté instalada en la máquina a todo color.
19. Utilice dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H) para asegurar la cubierta posterior (C) y la cubierta frontal (D).

20. Meta la unidad de plegado (A) en el finalizador de documentos.

Si la unidad de plegado (A) no se mete completamente en el finalizador de documentos, ésta no podrá fijarse en el finalizador de documentos y no funcionará correctamente.

Anbringen der Abdeckungen.

18. Führen Sie die Vorsprünge an der Rückseite der hinteren Abdeckung (C) sowie der vorderen Abdeckung (D) in die Löcher der Mittenfalteinheit ein, und bringen Sie danach die Abdeckungen an.
Um den Einbau der vorderen Abdeckung (D) zu erleichtern, ist der Entriegelungshebel (16) der Mittenfalteinheit anzuheben.
Bringen Sie nun die in Schritt 6 zusammengesetzte Abdeckung an, nachdem die Mittenfalteinheit in den Vollfarbepkopierer eingebaut wurde.
19. Verwenden Sie die beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H), um die hintere Abdeckung (C) und die vordere Abdeckung (D) zu befestigen.

20. Setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) in den Dokument-Finisher ein.

Wenn die Mittenfalteinheit (A) nicht vollständig in den Dokument-Finisher eingesetzt wurde, kann die Mittenfalteinheit nicht im Dokument-Finisher befestigt werden, und die Mittenfalteinheit (A) funktioniert dann nicht richtig.

Installare i pannelli.

18. Inserire le parti sporgenti sul retro dei pannelli posteriore (C) e anteriore (D) nei fori dell'unità di piegatura centrale e installare i pannelli. È semplice installare il pannello anteriore (D) sollevando la leva di rilascio unità (16). Installare il pannello assemblato nel passo 6 nel momento in cui l'unità di piegatura centrale è installata nel macchinario a colori.
19. Utilizzare due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H) per fissare i pannelli posteriore (C) ed anteriore (D).

20. Inserire perfettamente l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) nella finitrice.

Se l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non è del tutto inserita all'interno della finitrice, è impossibile fissarla alla finitrice stessa e l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non funzionerà correttamente.

安装盖板。

18. 将后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D) 后部的突出部固定在中缝装订一折页单元孔中并安装盖板。
将中缝装订一折页单元释放杆 (16) 抬起以便更容易安装前盖板 (D)。
在全彩色机上安装中缝装订一折页单元时, 安装在步骤 6 中组装的盖板。
19. 使用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D)。

20. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 保存到文档整理器中。

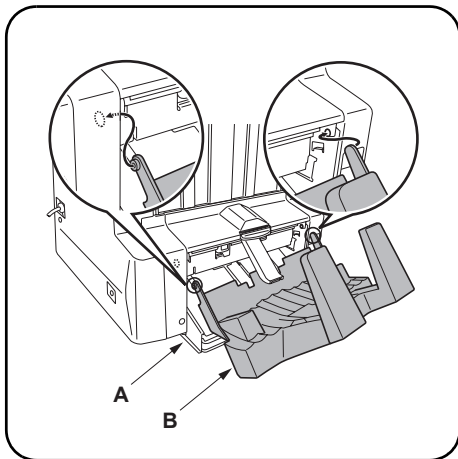
如果中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 未完全保存到文档整理器中, 则无法在文档整理器中固定装置并且中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 无法正常工作。

カバーの取り付け

18. カバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を、裏側の突起を中折りユニット (A) の穴にはめ込み、取り付ける。
カバー前 (D) は、中折りユニット解除レバー (16) を上げると取り付けやすい。
フルカラー機に取り付ける場合、手順 9 で組み立てたカバーを取り付けること。
19. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本でカバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を固定する。

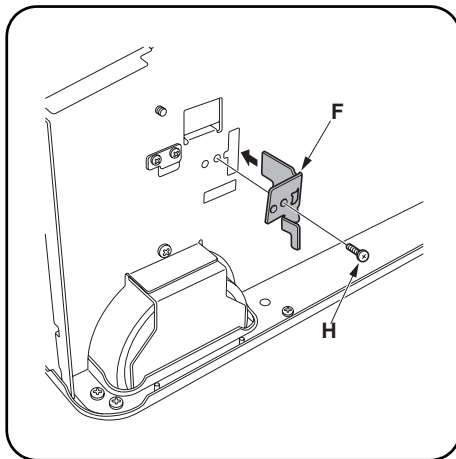
20. 中折りユニット (A) をドキュメントフィニッシャーに収納する。

確実に収納されていない場合、中折りユニット (A) がドキュメントフィニッシャーに固定されず、中折りユニット (A) が正常に動作しない。



Installing the folding tray.

21. Fit the projection of folding tray (B) into the inside hole of center-folding unit (A).



Installing the douser.

- Before installing the douser (F), make sure that center-folding unit (A) is securely stored.
22. Insert douser (F) into the lower front left of the document finisher and secure the douser with a M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw (H).

Reinstalling the cover.

23. Reinstall the lower front cover that was removed in step 2 in place with two screws (1).
24. Close the front cover of the document finisher.

Installation du bac de pliage.

21. Ajuster la saillie du bac de pliage (B) dans l'orifice intérieur de la plieuse (A).

Installation de l'ombreur.

- Avant d'installer l'ombreur (F), s'assurer que la plieuse (A) est bien rangée.
22. Insérer l'ombreur (F) dans l'avant gauche inférieur du finisseur de document et fixer l'ombreur à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (H).

Remontage du capot.

23. Remonter le capot avant inférieur retiré à l'étape 2 à l'aide de deux vis (1).
24. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

Instalación de la bandeja plegable.

21. Coloque el resalto de la bandeja plegable (B) dentro del agujero de la unidad de plegado (A).

Instalación de la pantalla paraluz.

- Antes de instalar la pantalla paraluz (F), asegúrese de que la unidad de plegado (A) esté firmemente metida.
22. Introduzca la pantalla paraluz (F) en la parte frontal inferior izquierda del finalizador de documentos y asegure la pantalla paraluz con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

Reinstalación de la cubierta.

23. Reinstale en su lugar con dos tornillos (1) la cubierta frontal inferior que fue quitada en el paso 2.
24. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

Anbringen des Faltfachs.

21. Führen Sie den Vorsprung des Faltfachs (B) in das innere Loch der Mittenfalteinheit (A) ein.

Anbringen der Abschirmung.

- Vor dem Anbringen der Abschirmung (F) ist sicherzustellen, dass die Mittenfalteinheit (A) sicher eingesetzt ist.
22. Stecken Sie die Abschirmung (F) in die untere linke Vorderseite des Dokument-Finishers ein, und ziehen Sie die Abschirmung danach mit einer M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (H) fest.

Anbringen der Abdeckung.

23. Bringen Sie die in Schritt 2 entfernte untere Frontabdeckung wieder an und verwenden Sie hierfür die beiden Schrauben (1).
24. Schließen Sie die Frontabdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

Installare il vassoio di piegatura.

21. Inserire la parte sporgente del vassoio di piegatura (B) nel foro interno dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A).

Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser).

- Prima di procedere all'installazione del dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F), assicurarsi che l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) sia perfettamente inserita.
22. Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F) nella facciata inferiore a sinistra della finitrice e fissarlo con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H).

Reinstallare il pannello.

23. Reinstallare nella sua posizione originale il pannello anteriore inferiore rimosso nel passo 2 con due viti (1).
24. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

安装折叠托盘。

21. 将折叠托盘 (B) 的突出部固定在中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的内部孔。

安装探测器。

- 安装探测器 (F) 前, 请确定中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 已牢固地保存。
22. 将探测器 (F) 插入文档整理器的左前下侧, 并用 1 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定探测器。

重新安装盖板。

23. 用 2 颗螺钉 (1) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的前下盖板。
24. 关闭文档整理器的前盖板。

中折りトレイの取り付け

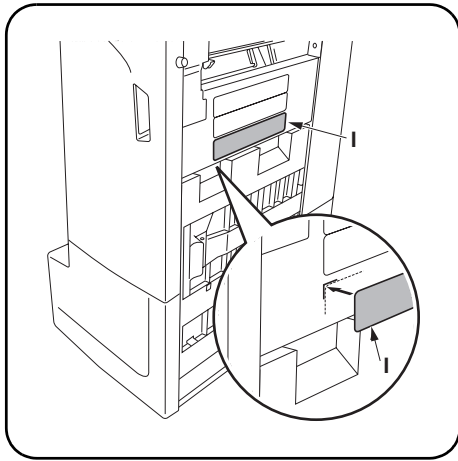
21. 中折りトレイ (B) の突起を中折りユニット (A) の内側の穴にはめ、取り付ける。

遮光板の取り付け

- 遮光板 (F) を取り付けの前に、中折りユニット (A) が確実に収納されていることを確認すること。
22. 遮光板 (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャー正面の左下へ差し込み、M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 1 本で固定する。

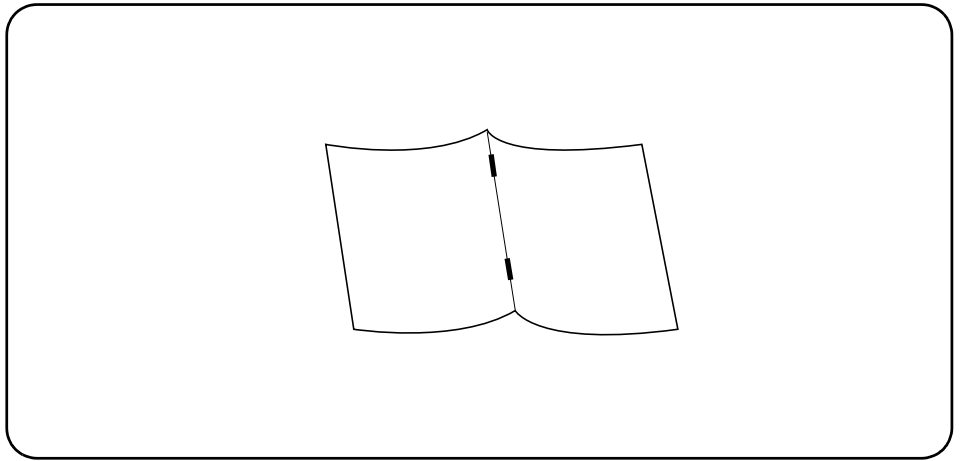
カバーの取り付け

23. 手順 2 で外した前下カバー (2) をビス (1) 2 本で元通り取り付け。
24. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前カバーを閉じる。



Adhering the label.

25. Clean the area where the label is adhered on the right cover of the document finisher with alcohol and adhere label (I) aligning with making-off line.



[Checking staple position]

1. In the center-stapling mode, perform a test copy with the paper fed from the main tray. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Check the distance from the center of the paper to the staple position. If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.
<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

Collage de l'étiquette.

25. Nettoyer la zone où l'étiquette doit être collée sur le capot de droite du finisseur de document avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (I) en l'alignant, sur la ligne indiquée.

[Vérification de la position des agrafes]

1. Dans le mode d'agrafage central, effectuer une copie de test avec la papier alimenté depuis le plateau principal. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants:
A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)
2. Vérifier la distance entre le centre du papier et l'emplacement de l'agrafe. Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.
<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

Para pegar la etiqueta.

25. Limpie con alcohol el área donde va a pegar la etiqueta (I) en la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y péguela alineándola con la línea de referencia.

[Comprobación de la posición de grapado]

1. En el modo de grapado central, realice una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja principal. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Compruebe la distancia desde el centro del papel a la posición de grapado. Si la distancia no está dentro del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

Anbringen des Aufklebers.

25. Reinigen Sie den Bereich auf der rechten Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers mit Alkohol, richten Sie den Aufkleber (I) aus und kleben Sie ihn dann fest.

[Überprüfen der Heftklammerposition]

1. Machen Sie im Mitten-Heftklammermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom Hauptfach aus zugeführt wird. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Prüfen Sie den Abstand von der Mitte des Papiers zur Heftklammerposition. Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist gemäß den folgenden Schritten vorzugehen, um die Position zu korrigieren.
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

Incollare l'etichetta.

25. Pulire con alcool la zona dove si applica l'etichetta sul pannello destro della finitrice. Attaccare l'etichetta (I) allineandola alla linea di taglio.

[Controllare la posizione della pinzatrice]

1. In modalità "pinzatura centrale", eseguire una copia di prova con carta alimentata dal vassoio principale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei seguenti formati di carta:
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Controllare la distanza tra il centro del foglio e la posizione della pinzatrice. Se la distanza non rientra nell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire i seguenti passaggi per regolarne la posizione.
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

粘貼标签。

25. 用酒精清洁在文档整理器右盖板上粘貼标签的区域并与脱离线对齐粘貼标签 (I)。

[检查装订位置]

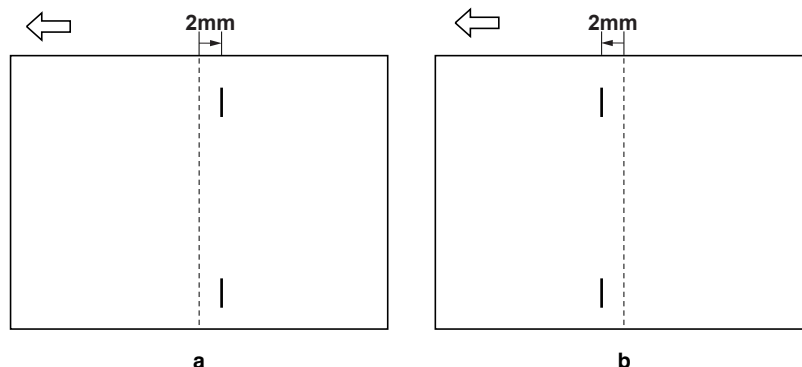
1. 在中央装订模式中，从主托盘进纸进行测试复印。下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. 检查纸张中央到装订位置的距離。如果距離超出標準值範圍，按照下列步驟調整位置。
<標準值> 距離中央的距離：±2mm 內

ラベルの貼り付け

25. ドキュメントフィニッシャの右カバーに貼られているラベルの下をアルコール清掃し、罫書き線に合わせてラベル (I) を貼り付ける。

[中とジステイブル位置確認]

1. 以下の用紙を使用し、中とジステイブルモード、メイントレイ排紙でテストコピーを行う。
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. ステイブル位置の中心からのずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
<基準値> 中心からのずれ：± 2mm 以内



Adjusting staple position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ1.
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ2.
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ3.

2. Adjust setting value.

When staples are placed too far right copy example (a): Decrease the setting value.
When staples are placed too far left copy example (b): Increase the setting value.
Changing the value by 1 moves the stapling position by approximately 0.55 mm.

3. Perform a test copy.

4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the staple position indicates the value within the reference range.

<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

Ajustement de la position des agrafes

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ1.
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ2.
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ3.

2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.

Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (a): diminuer la valeur de réglage.
Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (b): augmenter la valeur de réglage.
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position d'agrafage d'environ 0,55 mm.

3. Effectuer une copie de test.

4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position d'agrafage se trouve dans la gamme de référence.

<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

Ajuste de la posición de grabado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y realice el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ1.
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ2.
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ3.

2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.

Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (a): Disminuya el valor de configuración.
Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (b): Aumente el valor de configuración.
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de grabado 0,55 mm aproximadamente.

3. Haga una copia de prueba.

4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del centro a la posición de grapado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

Einstellen der Heftklammerposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiengröße durch.
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8.5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ1.
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8.5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ2.
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ3.

2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes.

Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheinen (a): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.
Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheinen (b): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1, verschiebt die Heftklammerposition um 0,55 mm.

3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.

4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Heftklammerposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.

<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

Regolare la posizione della pinzatrice

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia di prova.
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ1
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ2
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ3

2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.

Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a destra (esempio a): Ridurre il valore di impostazione.
Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a sinistra (esempio b): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.
La modifica del valore di 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di pinzatura di circa 0,55 mm.

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.

4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione delle pinzatrici non rientra nell'intervallo di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

調整装订位置

1. 进入维修模式 U246, 选择 BOOKLET FOLDER (小册子折叠) 并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。
使用 A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ1 (装订位置调整 1)。
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ2 (装订位置调整 2)。
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ3 (装订位置调整 3)。

2. 调整设定值。

订书钉远离右侧复印样本 (a) 时: 减小设定值
订书钉远离左侧复印样本 (b) 时: 增大设定值
以 1 更改数值将装订位置移动大约 0.55mm

3. 进行测试复印。

4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到装订位置的距離表示数值在标准值范围之内。

<标准值> 距离中央的距离: ±2mm 内

中とヒステイブル位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。
A4R、LTR (8.5" × 11") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ1 の調整を行う。
B4、LGL (8.5" × 14") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ2 の調整を行う。
A3、LGR (11" × 17") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ3 の調整を行う。

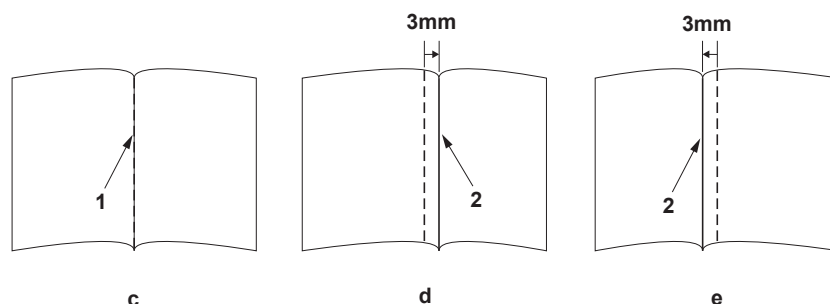
2. 設定値を調整する。

ステイブル位置が右にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (a): 設定値を下げる
ステイブル位置が左にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (b): 設定値を上げる
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.55mm

3. テストコピーを行う。

4. コピーサンプルのステイブル位置のずれが基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。

<基準値> 中心からのずれ: ±2mm 以内



[Checking centerfold position]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. Perform a test copy in centerfold mode. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes. Draw a straight line (1) at the center of each paper (a).
A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. If the distance from center line (1) on paper (c) to centerfold position (2) on the copy sample is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the distance.

<Reference value>

Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

[Vérification de la page centrale dépliant]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Effectuer une copie de test dans le mode page centrale dépliant. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants. Tirer une ligne droite (1) au centre de chaque feuille de papier (a). Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants:
A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)

3. Si la distance entre la ligne centrale (1) sur la feuille de papier (c) et la position de la page centrale dépliant (2) de l'exemple de copie se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la distance.

<Valeur de référence>

Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliant (2): ±3 mm

[Comprobación de la posición de plegado]

1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de plegado. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes. Trace una línea recta (1) en el centro de cada papel (a). Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes:
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Si la distancia de la línea central (1) del papel (c) a la posición de plegado (2) de la muestra de copia está fuera del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la distancia.

<Valor de referencia>

Distancia desde la posición de plegado (2): ±3 mm

[Überprüfen der Mittenfaltposition]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.
2. Führen Sie im Mittenfaltmodus eine Testkopie durch. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:
Ziehen Sie eine gerade Linie (1) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Papiers (a). Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Wenn der Abstand von der Mittellinie (1) am Papier (c) zur Mittenfaltposition (2) auf der Musterkopie außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, folgen Sie den nachfolgenden Schritten, um den Abstand einzustellen.

<Bezugswert>

Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

[Controllare la posizione della piegatura centrale]

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. Eseguire una copia di prova in modalità piegatura centrale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei formati di carta indicati in seguito. Disegnare una linea retta (1) al centro di ogni foglio (a).
Formati di carta su cui eseguire la copia di prova:
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Se la distanza tra la linea centrale (1) del foglio (c) e la posizione della piegatura centrale (2) nella copia campione è al di fuori dell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire la seguente procedura per regolarla.

<Valore di riferimento>

Distanza dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

[检查折叠位置]

1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源开关。
2. 在折叠模式中进行测试复印。下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印。在每张纸 (a) 的中央划一条直线 (1)。
下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. 如果纸 (c) 上中线 (1) 距离复印样本上的折叠位置 (2) 超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整距离。

<标准值>

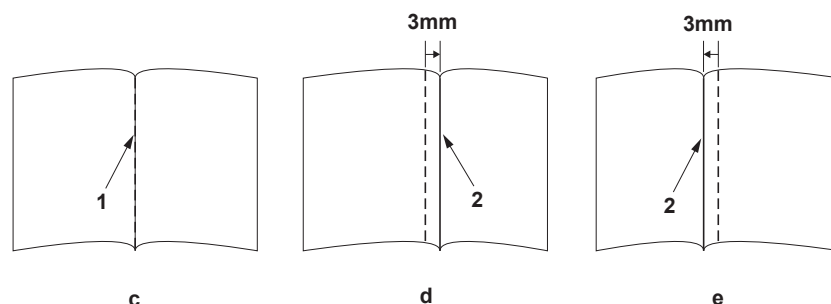
距离折叠位置 (2) 的距离：±3mm 内

[中折り位置確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. 以下の用紙を使用し、中折りモードの2枚折りテストコピーを行う。
用紙は、中心に線 (1) を引いておくこと。(a)
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11")、B4, LGL (8.5" × 14")、A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. 用紙 (c) の中心線 (1) と、コピーサンプルの中折り位置 (2) のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値> 中折り位置 (2) のずれ：±3mm 以内



Adjusting centerfold position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow BOOKLET POS ADJ1.
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow BOOKLET POS ADJ2.
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Adjust the setting value.
When the centerfold position too far right copy example (d): Increase the setting value.

When the centerfold position too far left copy example (e): Decrease the setting value.

3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the centerfold position indicates the value within the reference range.
<Reference value>
Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

Ajustement de la position de la page centrale dépliant

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre BOOKLET POS ADJ1.
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre BOOKLET POS ADJ2.
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.
Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliant est placée trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (d): augmenter la valeur de réglage.

Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliant est placée trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (e): diminuer la valeur de réglage.

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position de la page centrale dépliant se trouve dans la gamme de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliant (2): ±3 mm

Ajuste de la posición de plegado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y haga el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga BOOKLET POS ADJ1.
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga BOOKLET POS ADJ2.
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.
Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (d): Aumente el valor de configuración.

Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (e): Disminuya el valor de configuración.

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia de centro a la posición de plegado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde la posición (2): ±3 mm

Einstellen der Mittenfaltposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiengröße durch.
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8,5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt BOOKLET POS ADJ1.
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8,5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt BOOKLET POS ADJ2.
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes
Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheint (d): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.

Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheint (e): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.

3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Mitte der Mittenfaltposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

Regolare la posizione della piegatura centrale

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia campione.
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire BOOKLET POS ADJ1
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire BOOKLET POS ADJ2
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire BOOKLET POS ADJ3
2. Regolare il valore di impostazione
Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a destra (esempio d): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.

Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a sinistra (esempio e): Ridurre il valore di impostazione.

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione della piegatura non rientra nel valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento>
Distanza dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

調整折疊位置

1. 进入维修模式 U246, 选择 BOOKLET FOLDER (小册子折叠) 并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。
使用 A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11") 时, 请执行 BOOKLET POS ADJ1 (小册子位置调整 1)。
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时, 请执行 BOOKLET POS ADJ2 (小册子位置调整 2)。
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时, 请执行 BOOKLET POS ADJ3 (小册子位置调整 3)。

2. 调整设定值。
折疊位置远离右侧复印样本 (d) 时: 增大设定值
折疊位置远离左侧复印样本 (e) 时: 减小设定值
以 1 更改数值将折疊位置移动大约 0.55mm
3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到折疊位置的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。
<标准值>
距离折疊位置 (2) 的距离: ±3mm 内

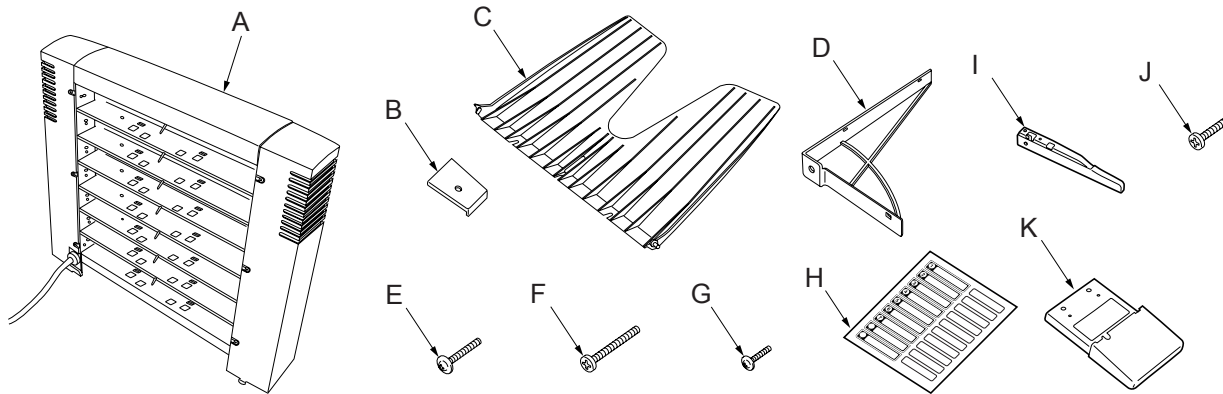
中折り位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。
A4R、LTR (8.5" × 11") の場合、BOOKLET POS ADJ1 の調整を行う。
B4、LGL (8.5" × 14") の場合、BOOKLET POS ADJ2 の調整を行う。
A3、LGR (11" × 17") の場合、BOOKLET POS ADJ3 の調整を行う。
2. 設定値を調整する。
中折り位置が右にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (d): 設定値を上げる

- 中折り位置が左にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (e): 設定値を下げる
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 約 0.55mm
3. テストコピーを行う。
4. 中折り位置のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
<基準値> 中折り位置のずれ: ±3mm 以内

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR MAILBOX

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.
Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.
P/N: 303J246010



English

Supplied parts

A Mailbox	1
B Mounting plate cover	1
C Copy eject bins	7
D Reinforcing plate	1
E TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14	2

F Taptite S binding screw M4 × 25	1
G TP screw M3 × 10	6
H Tray name label	1
I Plate foot F (for monochrome machines)	1
J Taptite S binding screw M4 × 10 (for monochrome machines)	1
K Plate foot V (for full-color machines)	2

When installing the mailbox to a monochrome machine, four pieces of (G) are not used.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Boîte à lettres	1
B Couverture de la plaque de montage	1
C Case d'éjection de copies	7
D Plaque de renfort	1
E Vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14	2

F Borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 × 25	1
G Vis TP M3 × 10	6
H Étiquette de nom de plateau	1
I Pied de plateau F (pour les machines monochromes)	1
J Borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 × 10 (pour les machines monochromes)	1
K Pied de plateau V (pour les machines entièrement en couleurs)	2

Lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine monochrome, quatre pièces de (G) ne sont pas utilisées.

Español

Partes provistas

A Buzón de correo	1
B Cubierta de la placa de montaje	1
C Bandejas de expulsión de copias	7
D Placa de refuerzo	1
E Tornillo TP Taptite S M4 × 14	2

F Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 25	1
G Tornillo TP M3 × 10	6
H Etiqueta de nombre de la bandeja	1
I Pata de placa F (para máquinas monocromáticas)	1
J Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 10 (para máquinas monocromáticas)	1
K Pata de placa V (para máquinas a todo color)	2

Cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina monocromática, no se utilizan las cuatro piezas de (G).

Deutsch

Mitgelieferte Teile

A Mailbox	1
B Abdeckung der Montageplatte	1
C Kopienausgabefächer	7
D Verstärkungsplatte	1
E TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14	2

F Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 × 25	1
G TP Schraube M3 × 10	6
H Fachnamenaukleber	1
I Plattenfuß F (für Monochrommaschinen)	1
J Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 × 10 (für Monochrommaschinen)	1
K Plattenfuß V (für Vollfarbmaschinen)	2

Wenn die Mailbox an einer Monochrommaschine angebracht wird, werden die vier Teile von (G) nicht benutzt.

Italiano

Parti comprese

A Casella postale	1
B Coperchio della piastra di montaggio	1
C Comparti di espulsione delle copie	7
D Piastra di sostegno	1
E Vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14	2

F Vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 25	1
G Vite TP M3 × 10	6
H Etichetta di nome del vassoio	1
I Piedino della piastra F (per macchine in bianco e nero)	1
J Vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 10 (per macchine in bianco e nero)	1
K Piedino della piastra V (per le macchine a colori)	2

Quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina in bianco e nero, quattro pezzi di (G) non sono utilizzati.

简体中文

附属部件

A 邮箱	1
B 固定板	1
C 接纸盘	7
D 加固板	1

E 螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 14TP	2
F 连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 25	1
G 螺丝M3 × 10TP	6
H 托盘名称标贴	1
I 底板F(黑白机用)	1
J 连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 10(黑白机用)	1
K 底板V(全彩色机用)	2

在黑白机上安装时，会剩下4个螺丝M3 × 10TP (G)。

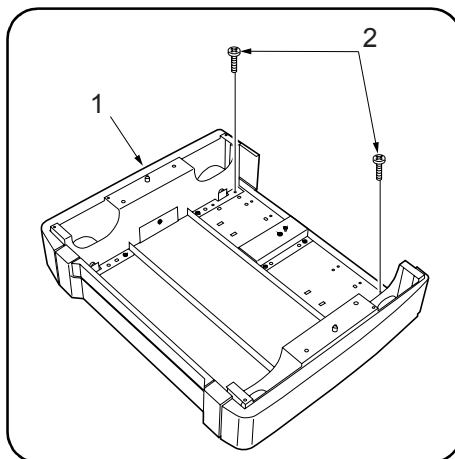
日本語

付属品

A メールボックス	1
B 取付板カバー	1
C 排出ビン	7
D 補強板	1

E ビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S	2
F ビス M4 × 25 バインドタップタイト S	1
G ビス M3 × 10TP	6
H トレイ名称シール	1
I プレートフット F (モノクロ機用)	1
J ビス M4 × 10 バインドタップタイト S (モノクロ機用)	1
K プレートフット V (フルカラー機用)	2

モノクロ機に取り付ける場合は、(G) が 4 本余ります。



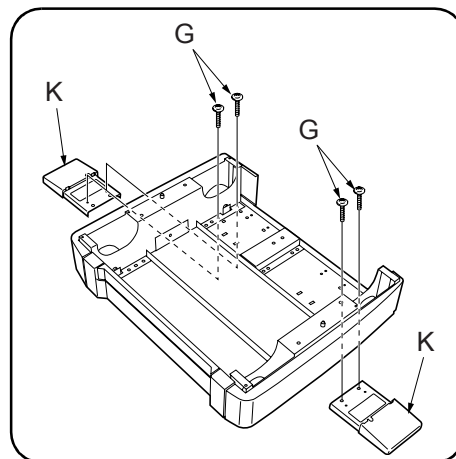
[Installation procedure]

Be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the mailbox.

[Carry out steps 1 to 3 when installing the mailbox to a full-color machine.]

Before installing the finisher, carry out the following procedure.

1. Remove the two screws (2) from the height adjusting base (1) that will be attached under the finisher.



2. Fit the two plate feet V (K) and secure them using two TP screws M3 x 10 (G) for each.
3. Install the finisher referring to the installation guide for finisher.
(Proceed to step 4.)

[Procédure d'installation]

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position d'arrêt et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant d'entreprendre l'installation de la boîte à lettres.

[Effectuer les étapes 1 à 3 lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine entièrement en couleurs.]

Avant d'installer le retoucheur, effectuer la procédure suivante.

1. Retirer les deux vis (2) de la base de réglage de hauteur (1) qui sera fixée au-dessous du retoucheur.

2. Mettre en place les deux pieds de plaque V (K) et les fixer à l'aide de deux vis TP M3 x 10 (G) pour chaque pied.
3. Installer le retoucheur en se reportant au guide d'installation du retoucheur.
(Passer à l'étape 4.)

[Procedimiento de instalación]

Asegúrese de apagar el MFP con el interruptor principal y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación del MFP de la toma de corriente de la pared antes de empezar a instalar el buzón de correo.

[Realice los pasos 1 a 3 cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina a todo color.]

Antes de instalar el finalizador, realice el siguiente procedimiento.

1. Remueva los dos tornillos (2) de la base de ajuste de altura (1) que se colocan debajo del finalizador.

2. Coloque las dos patas de placa V (K) y asegúrelas utilizando dos tornillos TP M3 x 10 (G) para cada una.
3. Instale el finalizador consultando la guía de instalación para el finalizador.
(Vaya al paso 4.)

[Installationsverfahren]

Schalten Sie vor der Installation der Mailbox unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Netzsteckdose.

[Führen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3 aus, wenn Sie die Mailbox an einer Vollfarbenmaschine anbringen.]

Bevor Sie den Finisher installieren, führen Sie das folgende Verfahren aus.

1. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (2) von der Höheneinstellbasis (1), die unter dem Finisher angebracht wird.

2. Bringen Sie die zwei Plattenfüße V (K) an, und befestigen Sie sie mit je zwei TP-Schrauben M3 x 10 (G).
3. Installieren Sie den Finisher gemäß der Installationsanleitung des Finishers.
(Zu Schritt 4 übergehen.)

[Modalità di installazione]

Non mancare di spegnere l'MFP utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP dalla presa della rete elettrica, prima di cominciare a installare la casella postale.

[Eseguire il procedimento dei passi da 1 a 3 quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina a colori.]

Prima di installare il finitore, eseguire le seguenti procedure.

1. Rimuovere le due viti (2) dalla base di regolazione dell'altezza (1) che sarà fissata sotto il finitore.

2. Inserire i due piedini della piastra V (K) e fissare ciascuno di essi utilizzando due viti TP M3 x 10 (G).
3. Installare il finitore seguendo le istruzioni della guida all'installazione del finitore.
(Procedere al passo 4.)

[安装步骤]

安装邮箱时，必须关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关，并拔下主装置的电源插头后进行安装。

[在全彩色机上安装时的步骤1~3]

安装装订器之前，先按以下步骤进行操作。

1. 拆下安装在装订器下面的高度调整台(1)上的2个螺丝(2)。

2. 将底板V(K)安装在2处后，分别用2个螺丝M3 x 10TP(G)进行固定。
3. 参照装订器安装手册，进行安装装订器。
(继续操作步骤4)

[取付手順]

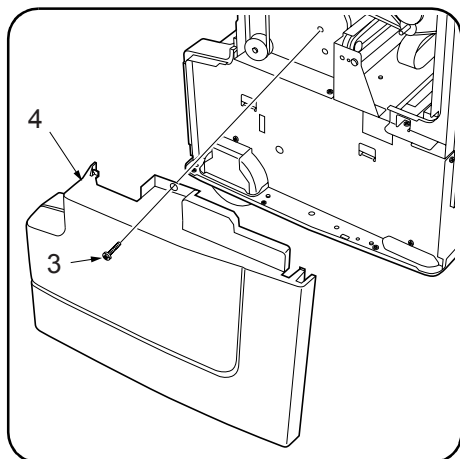
メールボックスを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを外して作業をおこなう。

[手順 1 ~ 3 はフルカラー機に取り付ける場合]

フィニッシャの設置を行う前に、次の手順を行う。

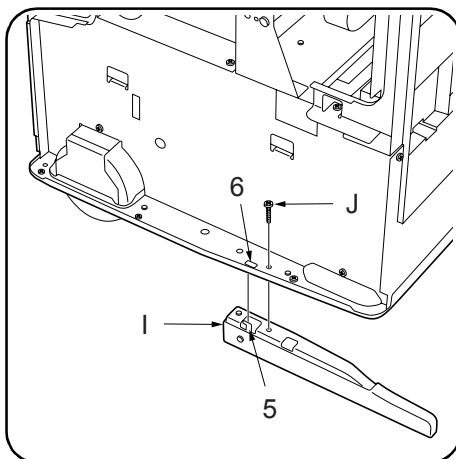
1. フィニッシャの下に取り付ける高さ調整台(1)のビス(2)2本を外す。

2. プレートフット V(K) を 2 箇所取り付け、ビス M3 x 10TP(G) 各 2 本で固定する。
3. フィニッシャの設置手順書を参照して、フィニッシャの設置を行う。
(手順 4 に進む)



[Carry out steps 1 to 3 when installing the mailbox to a monochrome machine.]

1. Open the front cover of the finisher, remove the screw (3), and remove the lower front cover (4).



2. Engage the hook portion (5) of the plate foot F (I) in the notch (6) in the finisher frame and secure the plate foot using the Taptite S binding screw M4 x 10 (J).

3. Refit the lower front cover (4) to its original position, secure it using the screw (3), and close the front cover.

[Effectuer les étapes 1 à 3 lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine monochrome.]

1. Ouvrir le couvercle avant du retoucheur, retirer la vis (3), puis retirer le couvercle inférieur avant (4).

2. Engager la partie du crochet (5) du pied de plaque F (I) dans l'encoche (6) du cadre du retoucheur, puis fixer le pied de plaque à l'aide de la borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Remettre le couvercle inférieur avant (4) à sa position d'origine, le fixer à l'aide de la vis (3), puis refermer le couvercle avant.

[Realice los pasos 1 a 3 cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina monocromática.]

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador, quite el tornillo (3) y remueva la cubierta delantera inferior (4).

2. Enganche la parte de gancho (5) de la pata de placa F (I) en la muesca (6) en el marco del finalizador y asegure la pata de placa utilizando el tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta delantera inferior (4) a su posición original, asegúrela utilizando el tornillo (3) y cierre la cubierta delantera.

[Führen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3 aus, wenn Sie die Mailbox an einer Monochrommaschine anbringen.]

1. Öffnen Sie die Frontabdeckung des Finishers, entfernen Sie die Schraube (3), und nehmen Sie die untere Frontabdeckung (4) ab.

2. Hängen Sie den Hakenteil (5) des Plattenfußes F (I) in die Kerbe (6) im Finisherrahmen ein, und sichern Sie den Plattenfuß mit der Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 x 10 (J).

3. Bringen Sie die untere Frontabdeckung (4) wieder an ihrer ursprünglichen Position an, sichern Sie sie mit der Schraube (3), und schließen Sie die Frontabdeckung.

[Eseguire il procedimento dei passi da 1 a 3 quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina in bianco e nero.]

1. Aprire il coperchio anteriore del finitore, rimuovere la vite (3) e poi il coperchio anteriore inferiore (4).

2. Inserire la parte del gancio (5) del piedino della piastra F (I) nella cavità (6) del telaio del finitore e fissare il piedino della piastra utilizzando la vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Reinserire il coperchio anteriore inferiore (4) nella sua posizione iniziale, fissarlo utilizzando la vite (3) e chiuderlo.

[在黑白机上安装时的步骤1~3]

1. 打开装订器的前盖板，拆下1个螺丝(3)，然后取下前下盖板(4)。

2. 将底板F(I)的挂钩部(5)钩在装订器框架部的凹口(6)处，并用1个连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 x 10(J)进行固定。

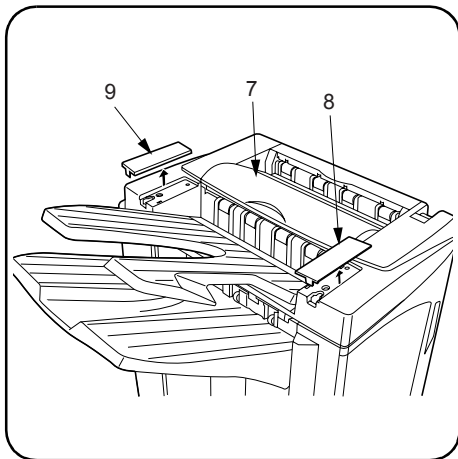
3. 按原样装好前下盖板(4)，并用1个螺丝(3)进行固定，关闭前盖板。

[手順1 ~ 3 はモノクロ機に取り付ける場合]

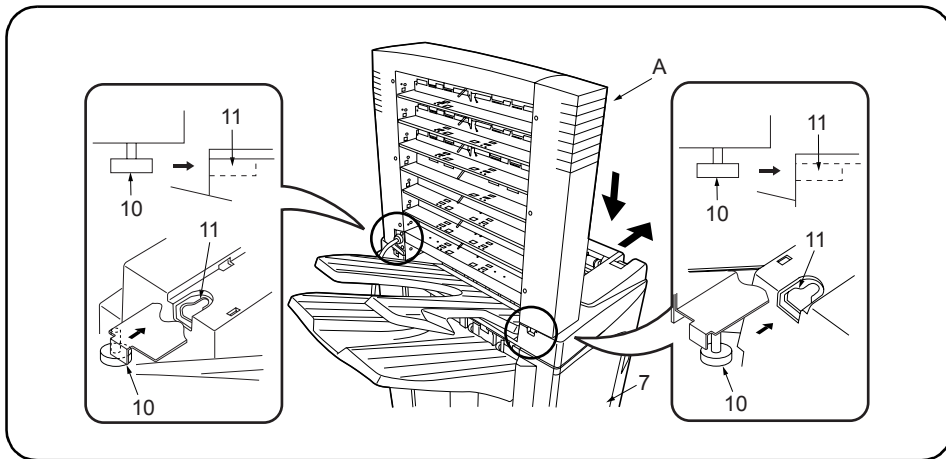
1. フィニッシャーの前カバーを開け、ビス (3) 1本を外し、前下カバー(4)を取り外す。

2. プレートフット F(I) のフック部 (5) をフィニッシャーフレーム部の切り欠き (6) に引っ掛け、ビス M4 x 10 バインドタップタイト S(J) 1本で固定する。

3. 前下カバー(4)を元通り取り付けビス (3) 1本で固定し、前カバーを閉じる。



4. Remove the front top cover (8) and rear top cover (9) at the top of the finisher (7) using a flat-blade screwdriver or the like.



5. Fit the pins (10) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (11) located at the front and rear of the top of the finisher (7) as shown in the illustration and attach the mailbox (A) to the finisher (7).

4. Retirer le couvercle supérieur avant (8) et le couvercle supérieur arrière (9) situés en haut du retoucheur (7) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate ou d'un outil équivalent.

5. Fixer les broches (10) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière du bas de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (11) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière du haut du retoucheur (7), comme indiqué sur l'illustration, puis fixer la boîte à lettres (A) au retoucheur (7).

4. Remueva la cubierta superior delantera (8) y la cubierta superior trasera (9) en la parte superior del finalizador (7) utilizando un destornillador de punta plana o similar.

5. Coloque los pasadores (10) ubicados en la parte delantera y trasera del fondo del buzón de correo (A) las muescas (11) ubicadas en la parte superior del finalizador (7) tal como en la figura e instale el buzón de correo (A) en el finalizador (7).

4. Entfernen Sie die vordere obere Abdeckung (8) und die hintere obere Abdeckung (9) an der Oberseite des Finishers (7) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

5. Stecken Sie die Stifte (10), die sich vorne und hinten an der Unterseite der Mailbox (A) befinden, in die Aussparungen (11) vorne und hinten an der Oberseite des Finishers (7), wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, und bringen Sie die Mailbox (A) an den Finisher (7) an.

4. Rimuovere il coperchio superiore anteriore (8) e il coperchio superiore posteriore (9) dalla parte superiore del finitore (7) utilizzando un cacciavite a punta piatta, o un attrezzo simile.

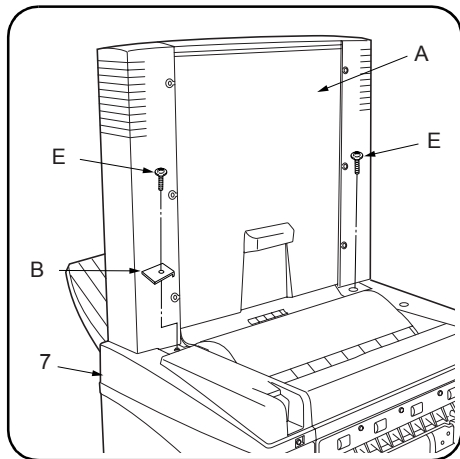
5. Inserire i perni (10) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A) nelle cavità (11) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte superiore del finitore (7) come mostrato in illustrazione e installare la casella postale (A) sul finitore (7).

4. 用一字形螺丝刀拆下装订器(7)上部的顶罩前盖板(8)和顶罩后盖板(9)。

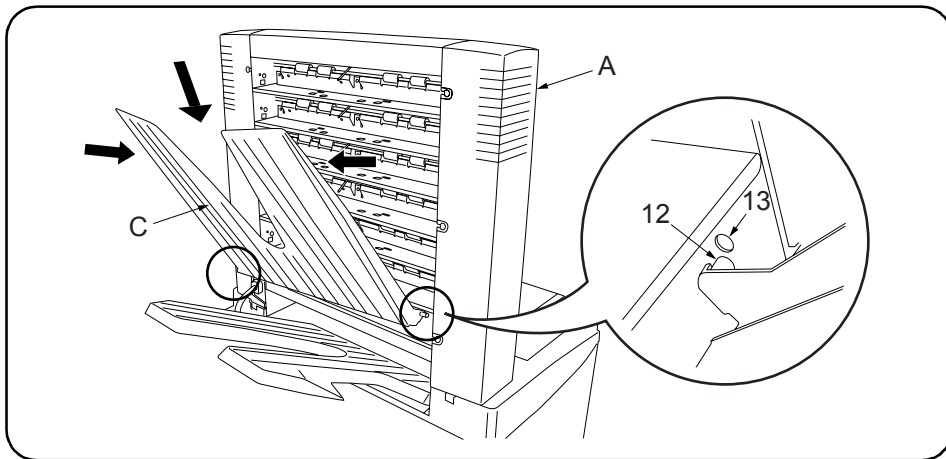
5. 按图所示将邮箱(A)下部的前后销(10)插入装订器(7)上部的前后凹部(11)内,使邮箱(A)装在装订器(7)上。

4. フィニッシャー(7)上部の天カパー前フタ(8)、天カパー後フタ(9)をマイナスドライバーなどで取り外す。

5. メールボックス(A)下部の前後にあるピン(10)をフィニッシャー(7)上部の前後にある切り欠き部(11)にイラストのように挿入し、メールボックス(A)をフィニッシャー(7)に取り付ける。



6. Secure the front connection portion of the mailbox (A) and the finisher (7) with the mounting plate cover (B) using a TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14 (E) and secure the rear connection portion using a TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14 (E).



7. Fit the seven copy eject bins (C) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.
While pressing both ends of each copy eject bin (C) to bend it a little, fit the bin at a nearly upright angle as shown in the illustration by inserting the front and rear pins (12) into the round holes (13) at the front and rear of the mailbox (A).

6. Fixer la partie de connexion avant de la boîte à lettres (A) et du retoucheur (7) avec le couvercle de plaque de montage (B) à l'aide d'une vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E), et fixer la partie de connexion arrière à l'aide d'une Vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E).

7. Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (C) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut.
Tout en appuyant sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection de copies (C) de manière à la plier légèrement, fixer la case à un angle presque droit, comme indiqué sur l'illustration, en insérant les broches avant et arrière (12) dans les trous ronds (13) situés à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A).

6. Asegure la parte de conexión delantera del buzón de correo (A) y finalizador (7) con la cubierta de la placa de montaje (B) utilizando un tornillo de TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E) y asegure la parte de conexión trasera utilizando un tornillo de TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E).

7. Fije las siete bandejas de expulsión de copias (C) en la sección de expulsión del buzón de correo (A) de la bandeja más baja a la más alta.
Mientras presiona ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (C) para doblarlo un poco, fije la bandeja en un ángulo casi vertical tal como en la figura, insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (12) en los orificios redondos (13) en los lados delantero y trasero del buzón de correo (A).

6. Befestigen Sie den vorderen Verbindungsabschnitt der Mailbox (A) und des Finishers (7) mit der Abdeckung der Montageplatte (B) und einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14 (E), und befestigen Sie den hinteren Verbindungsabschnitt mit einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14 (E).

7. Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (C) in den Ausgabeabschnitt der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten.
Drücken Sie bei jedem Kopienausgabefach (C) beide Enden zusammen, um es ein wenig zu biegen, und setzen Sie dabei das Fach in einem fast aufrechten Winkel ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, indem Sie den vorderen und hinteren Stift (12) in die Rundlöcher (13) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) einsetzen.

6. Fissare la parte di collegamento anteriore della casella postale (A) e del finitore (7) con il coperchio della piastra di montaggio (B) utilizzando una vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E) e fissare la parte di collegamento posteriore utilizzando una vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E).

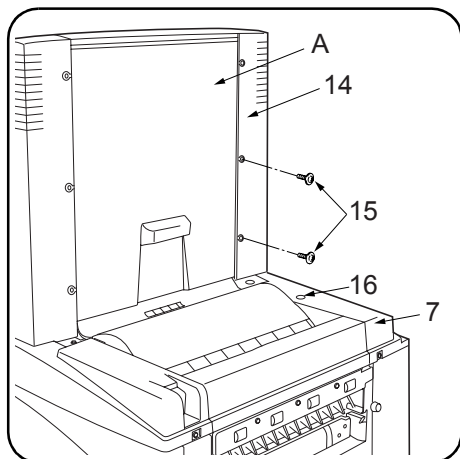
7. Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (C) nella parte di espulsione della casella postale (A), cominciando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto.
Premendo alle due estremità di uno scomparto di emissione delle copie (C) in modo da piegarle un poco, installare lo scomparto come mostrato in illustrazione mantenendolo quasi ad angolo retto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (12) nei fori rotondi (13) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A).

6. 将固定板(B)和1个螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 14TP(E), 固定在邮箱(A)和装订器(7)的前侧连接部上, 并将1个螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 14TP(E)固定在后侧的连接部上。

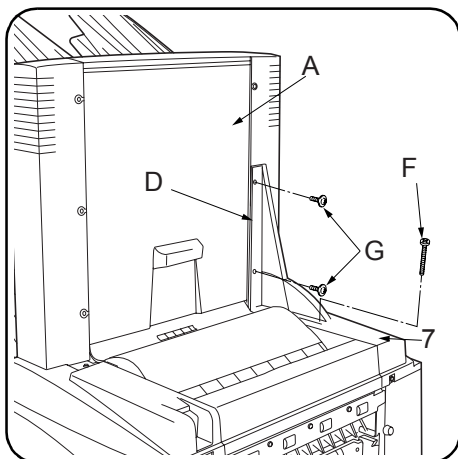
7. 从邮箱(A)的排出部下面起按顺序安装7个接纸盘(C)。
轻轻按下接纸盘(C)的左右使之前倾(如图所示呈竖起状态的角度), 将前后销(12)插入邮箱(A)的前后圆孔(13)内。

6. メールボックス(A)とフィニッシャー(7)の前側の接続部を取付板カバー(B)と共にビスM4 × 14TP タップタイトS(E)1本で、後側の接続部をビスM4 × 14TP タップタイトS(E)1本で固定する。

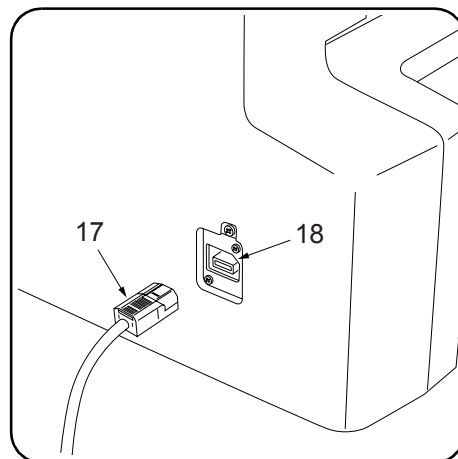
7. 排出ビン(C)7枚をメールボックス(A)の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。
排出ビン(C)の左右を押し少したわませながら、イラストのように立てた状態の角度で、前後のピン(12)をメールボックス(A)の前後の丸穴(13)に挿入する。



8. Remove the two screws (15) located as shown in the illustration that secure the side cover (14) of the mailbox (A), and remove the blanking seal (16) from the finisher (7).



9. Attach the reinforcing plate (D) to the mailbox (A) and the finisher (7) using the two TP screws M3 × 10 (G) and the Taptite S binding screw M4 × 25 (F).



10. Connect the signal lines (17) of the mailbox (A) to the connector (18) at the rear part of the finisher.

8. Retirer les deux vis (15) situées aux endroits indiqués sur l'illustration, qui fixent le couvercle latéral (14) de la boîte à lettres (A), puis retirer le joint d'obturation (16) du retoucheur (7).

9. Fixer la plaque de renfort (D) sur la boîte à lettres (A) et le retoucheur (7) à l'aide des deux vis TP M3 × 10 (G) et de la borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 × 25 (F).

10. Brancher les lignes de signal (17) de la boîte à lettres (A) au connecteur (18) situé sur le côté arrière du retoucheur.

8. Remueva los dos tornillos (15) ubicados tal como en la figura, que aseguran la cubierta lateral (14) del buzón de correo (A) y remueva el sello de blanqueo (16) del finalizador (7).

9. Instale la placa de refuerzo (D) en el buzón de correo (A) y el finalizador (7) utilizando los dos tornillos TP M3 × 10 (G) y el tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 25 (F).

10. Conecte las líneas de señal (17) del buzón de correo (A) en el conector (18) de la parte trasera del finalizador.

8. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (15), die wie in der Abbildung gezeigt angeordnet sind und mit denen die Seitenabdeckung (14) der Mailbox (A) befestigt ist, und entfernen Sie die Blindabdichtung (16) vom Finisher (7).

9. Bringen Sie die Verstärkungsplatte (D) mit den zwei TP-Schrauben M3 × 10 (G) und der Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 × 25 (F) an der Mailbox (A) und dem Finisher (7) an.

10. Schließen Sie die Signalleitungen (17) der Mailbox (A) an den Anschluss (18) am hinteren Teil des Finishers an.

8. Rimuovere le due viti (15) posizionate come indicato in illustrazione e che fissano il coperchio laterale (14) della casella postale (A), quindi rimuovere la gomma di tappaggio (16) dal finitore (7).

9. Fissare la piastra di sostegno (D) sulla casella postale (A) e sul finitore (7) utilizzando le due viti TP M3 × 10 (G) e la vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 25 (F).

10. Collegare le linee di segnale (17) della casella postale (A) al connettore (18) sulla parte posteriore del finitore.

8. 拆下固定在邮箱(A)上横盖板(14)的(如图所示的位置)2个螺丝(15),并揭下装订器(7)上遮挡的贴纸(16)。

9. 将加固板(D)用2个螺丝M3×10TP(G)和1个连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4×25(F)安装在邮箱(A)和装订器(7)上。

10. 将邮箱(A)的信号线(17)连接在装订器后侧的连接插座(18)上。

8. メールボックス (A) の横カバー (14) を固定しているイラストの位置のビス (15) 2 本を外し、フィニッシャー (7) の目隠しシール (16) をはがす。

9. 補強板 (D) をビス M3 × 10TP (G) 2 本とビス M4 × 25 バインドタップタイト S (F) 1 本でメールボックス (A) およびフィニッシャー (7) に取り付ける。

10. メールボックス (A) の信号線 (17) をフィニッシャー後側のコネクタ (18) に接続する。

TONER

11. Insert the MFP power plug to the outlet and turn the MFP main switch on to check the operation.

11. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position de marche pour vérifier le fonctionnement.

11. Enchufe el cable eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP para verificar el funcionamiento.

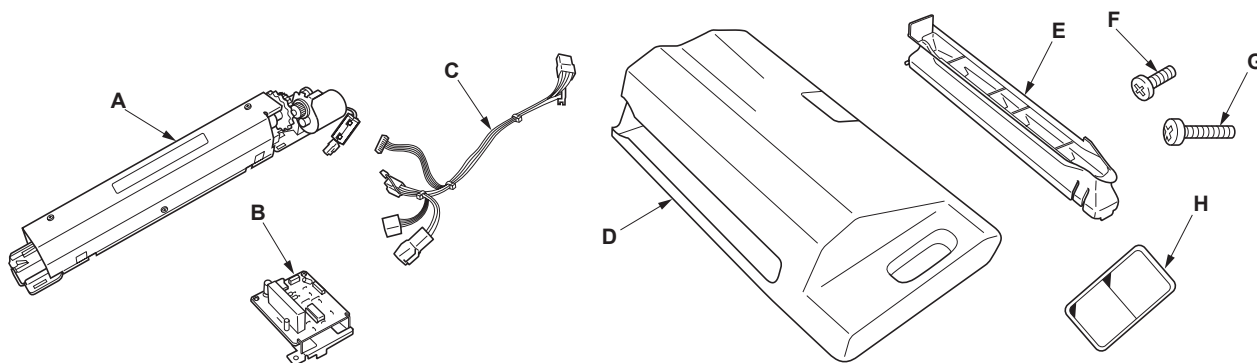
11. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Netzsteckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des MFP ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

11. Inserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa della rete elettrica e accenderla utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione in modo da controllare il funzionamento.

11. 将MFP主机的电源插头插入插座，然后按下主开关并确认是否接通。

11. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にして動作を確認する。
www.tonerplus.com.ua

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR HOLE PUNCH UNIT



English

Supplied parts

A Hole punch unit.....	1
B Punch PCB	1
C Power cord	1
D Waste hole punch box	1
E Guide.....	1

F M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw	1
G M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw	2
H Label	1

Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Perforatrice	1
B Carte de perforation.....	1
C Cordon d'alimentation	1
D Bac de récupération de la perforatrice	1
E Guide	1

F Vis S taraudée M4 × 8	1
G Vis S taraudée M4 × 10	2
H Etiquette.....	1

Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Perforadora.....	1
B PCB de perforación	1
C Cable de alimentación	1
D Caja para desechos de la perforación	1
E Guía	1

F Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8.....	1
G Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10.....	2
H Etiqueta.....	1

Asegúrese de quitar cualquier cinta de fijación o material de amortiguación colocado en las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Lochereinheit	1
B Locherplatine	1
C Netzkabel	1
D Lochungsabfallbehälter	1
E Führung	1

F M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben	1
G M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben	2
H Aufkleber.....	1

Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Unità di perforazione	1
B Scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione ..	1
C Cavo di alimentazione	1
D Scarto perforazione	1
E Guida	1

F Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8	1
G Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10	2
H Etichetta.....	1

Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属部件

A 打孔单元.....	1
B 打孔单元电路板.....	1
C 电源线.....	1
D 打孔纸屑盒.....	1
E 导向板.....	1

F M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉.....	1
G M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉.....	2
H 标签	1

请务必拆下附带在附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

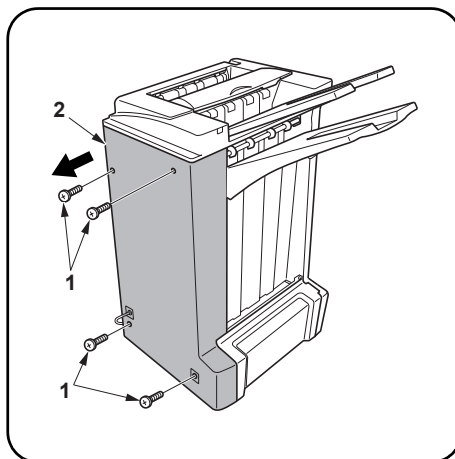
日本語

付属品

A パンチユニット.....	1
B パンチ基板.....	1
C 電線.....	1
D パンチくずボックス.....	1
E ガイド.....	1

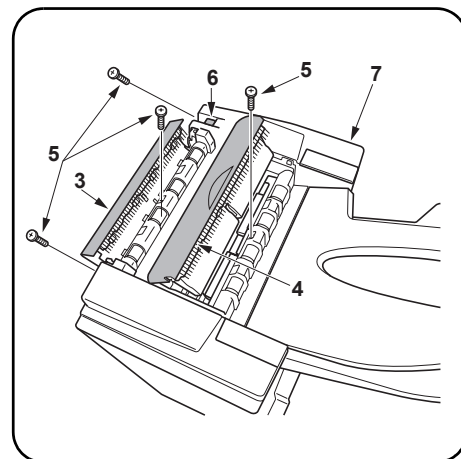
F ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S	1
G ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S	2
H ラベル	1

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



Removing the cover

1. Remove the four screws (1) to remove the back cover (2) from the document finisher.



2. Open the upper cover (3) and tray C (4) on the document finisher.
3. Remove four screws (5) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) to remove the top cover (7).

Installation Procedure

Before installing the hole punch unit, make sure the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.

Install the document finisher first and then install the hole punch unit.

Procédure d'installation

Avant d'installer la perforuse s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est hors tension et que le câble d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.

Installer d'abord le finisseur de document, puis installer la perforatrice.

Enlèvement du capot.

1. Retirer les quatre vis (1) pour retirer le capot arrière (2) du finisseur de document.

2. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) du finisseur de document.
3. Retirer quatre vis (5) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur (7).

Procedimiento de instalación

Antes de instalar la perforadora, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación de la MFP esté desconectado y que el cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente de la pared.

Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la perforadora.

Extracción de la cubierta

1. Quite los cuatro tornillos (1) para quitar la cubierta posterior (2) del finalizador de documentos.

2. Abra la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) del finalizador de documentos.
3. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para quitar la cubierta superior (7).

Einbauverfahren

Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Lochereinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Lochereinheit an.

Entfernen der Abdeckung

1. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (1) und entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (2) vom Dokument-Finisher.

2. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) am Dokument-Finisher.
3. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), und die obere Abdeckung (7) zu entfernen.

Procedura di installazione

Prima di installare l'unità di perforazione, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa. Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di perforazione.

Rimuovere il coperchio

1. Togliere le quattro viti (1) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (2) dalla finitrice.

2. Aprire il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) della finitrice.
3. Togliere quattro viti (5) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per rimuovere il coperchio (7).

安裝步驟

安裝打孔單元前，請確定 MFP 的主電源開關已經關閉並且電源線已從電源插座上拔下。首先安裝裝訂器，然後安裝打孔單元。

拆下盖板

1. 從裝訂器上拆下 4 顆螺釘 (1) 以便拆下后盖板 (2)。

2. 打開裝訂器的上盖板 (3) 和托盤 C (4)。
3. 拆下 4 顆螺釘 (5) 并按住整理器釋放杆 (6) 以便拆下上盖板 (7)。

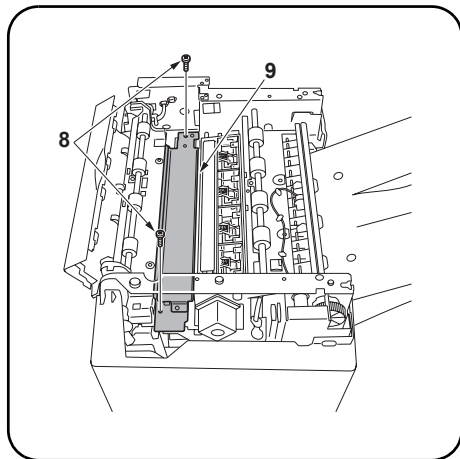
設置手順

パンチユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、パンチユニットを設置すること。

カバーの取り外し

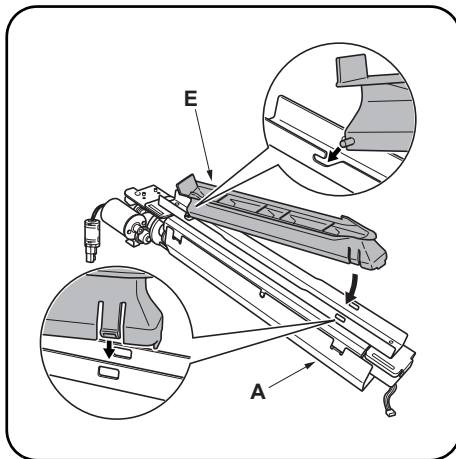
1. ビス (1) 4 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャの後カバー (2) を取り外す。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャの上カバー (3) とトレイ C (4) を開く。
3. ビス (5) 4 本を外し、フィニッシャ解除レバー (6) を押しながら天カバー (7) を取り外す。



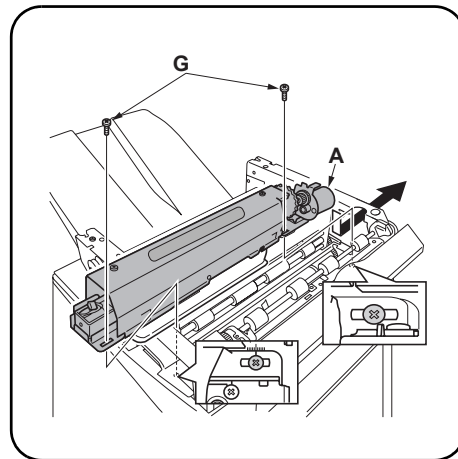
Removing the guide plate

4. Remove two screws (8) to remove the guide plate (9).



Installing the guide

5. Engage the projection and the pawl of the guide (E) with the hole punch unit (A) to install the guide.



Installing the hole punch unit

6. Tilt the hole punch unit (A) to place it through the hole in the upper side of the document finisher.
7. Fix the hole punch unit (A) with two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G). Install the hole punch unit so that M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (G) is placed at the center of each screw hole.

Enlèvement de la plaque de guidage.

4. Retirer deux vis (8) pour retirer la plaque de guidage (9).

Installation du guide

5. Engager la projection et le cliquet du guide (E) dans la perforatrice (A) pour installer le guide.

Installation de la perforatrice

6. Incliner la perforatrice (A) pour la faire passer par l'orifice de la partie supérieure du finisseur de document.
7. Fixer la perforatrice (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G). Installer la perforatrice pour que les vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) soit placées au centre de chaque orifice de vis.

Extracción de la placa guía

4. Quite los dos tornillos (8) para quitar la placa guía (9).

Instalación de la guía

5. Acople el resalto y el trinquete de la guía (E) con la perforadora (A) para instalar la guía.

Instalación de la perforadora

6. Incline la perforadora (A) para colocarla a través del agujero del lado superior del finalizador de documentos.
7. Fije la perforadora (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G). Instale la perforadora de forma que los tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) queden en el centro de cada agujero de tornillo.

Entfernen der Führungsplatte

4. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (8), um die Führungsplatte abzunehmen (9).

Anbringen der Führung

5. Bringen Sie den Vorsprung und die Sperrklinke der Führung (E) mit der Lochereinheit (A) in Eingriff, um die Führung einzubauen.

Anbringen der Lochereinheit

6. Kippen Sie die Lochereinheit (A), um sie durch das Loch an der oberen Seite des Dokument-Finishers einzuführen.
7. Nun die Lochereinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) befestigen. Stellen Sie sicher, dass die Lochereinheit so angebracht wird, dass sich die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (G) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Schraublochs befindet.

Rimuovere la piastra guida

4. Togliere due viti (8) per rimuovere la piastra guida (9).

Installare la guida

5. Agganciare la parte sporgente e il dentello della guida (E) all'unità di perforazione (A) per installare la guida.

Installare l'unità di perforazione

6. Inclinare l'unità di perforazione (A) in modo da inserirla dentro la cavità nella parte superiore della finitrice.
7. Fissare l'unità di perforazione (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G). Installare l'unità di perforazione in modo che la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) sia piazzata al centro di ogni apposito foro.

拆下导向板

4. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (8) 以便拆下导向板 (9)。

安装导向板

5. 将导向板 (E) 的突起部和卡爪与打孔单元 (A) 啮合, 安装导向板。

安装打孔单元

6. 将打孔单元 (A) 倾斜, 从装订器上部的孔中穿过去。
7. 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 固定打孔单元 (A)。
安装打孔单元, 让 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 放在每个螺钉孔的中央。

ガイド板の取り外し

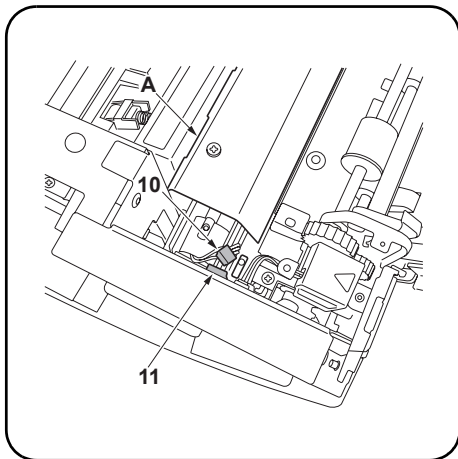
4. ビス (8) 2 本を外し、ガイド板 (9) を取り外す。

ガイドの取り付け

5. ガイド (E) の突起とツメをパンチユニット (A) に引っ掛け、取り付ける。

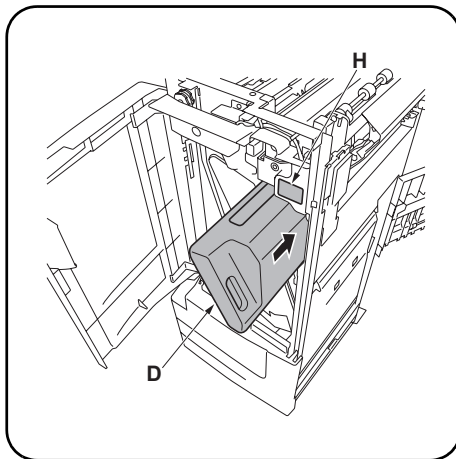
パンチユニットの取り付け

6. パンチユニット (A) を傾け、ドキュメントフィニッシャー上部の穴に通す。
7. ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本でパンチユニット (A) を固定する。
ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) がビス穴の中心の位置になるように取り付けること。



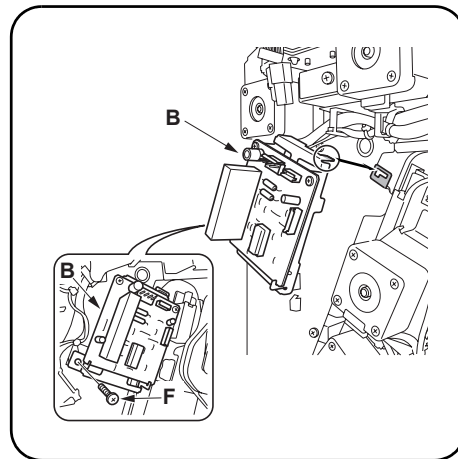
Connecting the connector (120V/220V/230V/240V models only. Except for Swedish specification)

8. Connect the 3P-connector (10) on the hole punch unit (A) to the 3P-connector (11) inside the document finisher.



Installing the waste hole punch box

9. Open the front cover of the document finisher and insert the waste hole punch box (D) along the guide (E) which was installed in step 5.
10. Clean the upper right cover of the waste hole punch box (D) with alcohol and adhere the label (H) on the concave section of the box.
11. Close the front cover of the document finisher.



Installing the punch PCB

12. Engage the pawl on the upper side of the punch PCB (B) with the groove at the back of the document finisher.
13. Secure the punch PCB (B) with M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw (F).

Connexion du connecteur (Modèles 120V/220V/230V/240V seulement. Sauf pour les spécifications suédoises)

8. Connecter le connecteur 3P (10) de la perforatrice (A) au connecteur 3P (11) à l'intérieur du finisseur de document.

Installation du bac de récupération de la perforatrice

9. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) le long du guide (E) installé à l'étape 5.
10. Nettoyer le capot supérieur droit du bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (H) sur la partie concave du bac.
11. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

Installation de la carte de perforation

12. Engager le cliquet de la partie supérieure de la carte de perforation (B) dans la rainure à l'arrière du finisseur de document.
13. Fixer la carte de perforation (B) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (F).

Conexión del conector (Modelos de 120 V/220 V/230 V/240 V solamente. Excepto para las especificaciones suecas)

8. Conecte el conector de 3 contactos (10) de la perforadora (A) en el conector de 3 contactos (11) del interior del finalizador de documentos.

Instalación la caja para desechos de la perforación

9. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos e introduzca la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) a lo largo de la guía (E) que fue instalada en el paso 5.
10. Limpie la cubierta superior derecha de la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) con alcohol y pegue la etiqueta (H) en la sección cóncava de la caja.
11. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

Instalación del PCB de perforación

12. Acople el trinquete del lado superior del PCB de perforación (B) con las ranuras de la parte posterior del finalizador de documentos.
13. Asegure el PCB de perforación (B) con el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (F).

Anschließen des Steckers (nur bei 120 V-, 220 V-, 230 V- und 240 V-Modellen)

8. Stecken Sie den 3-poligen Stecker (10) der Lochereinheit (A) in die 3-polige Buchse (11) innerhalb des Dokument-Finishers ein.

Anbringen des Lochungsabfallbehälters

9. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und bauen Sie dann den Lochabfallbehälter (D) entlang der in Schritt 5 installierten Führung (E) ein.
10. Reinigen Sie die rechte obere Abdeckung des Lochabfallbehälters (D) mit Alkohol und bringen Sie danach den Aufkleber (H) am konkaven Teil des Behälters an.
11. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

Anbringen der Locherplatine

12. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke auf der oberen Seite der Locherplatine (B) in die Nut auf der Rückseite des Dokument-Finishers eingreifen.
13. Befestigen Sie die Locherplatine (B) mit der M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (F).

Collegare il connettore (solo per i modelli 120V/220V/230V/240V. Eccetto per la specificazione svedese)

8. Collegare il connettore a 3 piedini (10) dell'unità di perforazione (A) al connettore a 3 piedini (11) all'interno della finitrice.

Installare lo scarto perforazione (Contenitore degli scarti per la perforazione).

9. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice e inserire lo scarto perforazione (D) lungo la guida (E) installata nel passo 5.
10. Pulire il pannello superiore destro dello scarto perforazione (D) con alcool e incollare l'etichetta (H) nella sezione concava del contenitore.
11. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

Installare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione

12. Agganciare il dentello che si trova nella parte superiore della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) nel foro sulla parte posteriore della finitrice.
13. Fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) con una viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (F).

- 连接插头
(仅适用于 120V/220V/230V/240V 型号。
除瑞典规格)
8. 将打孔单元 (A) 上的 3P 插头 (10) 连接到装订器内的 3P 插头 (11)。

安装打孔纸屑盒

9. 打开装订器的前盖板并沿着在步骤 5 中安装的导向板 (E) 插入打孔纸屑盒 (D)。
10. 用酒精清洁打孔纸屑盒 (D) 的右上盖板, 并将标签 (H) 粘到盒的凹面。
11. 关闭装订器的前盖板。

安装打孔单元电路板

12. 将打孔单元电路板 (B) 的上部卡爪与装订器后部的沟槽啮合。
13. 用 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (F) 固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。

コネクタの接続 (120V/220V/230V/240V 仕様のみ。ただしスウェーデン仕様は除く)

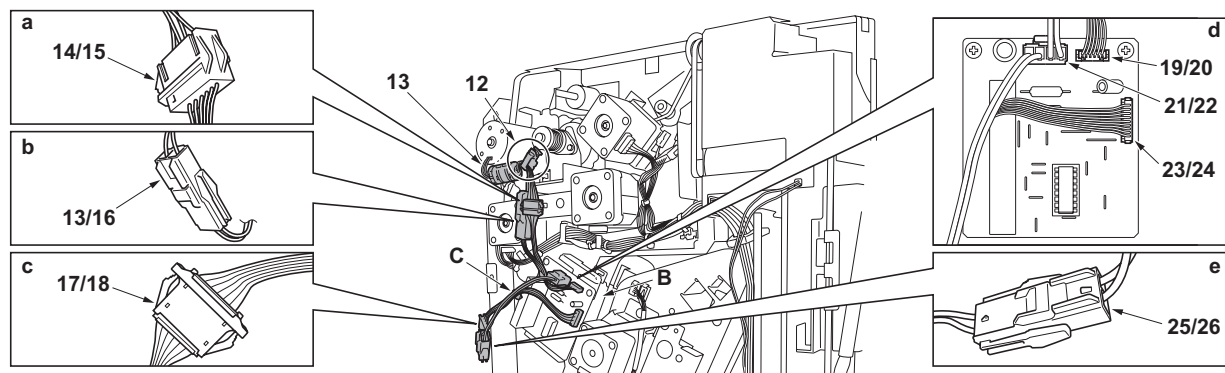
8. パンチユニット (A) の 3P コネクタ (10) をドキュメントフィニッシャの 3P コネクタ (11) に接続する。

パンチくずボックスの取り付け

9. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開き、手順 5 で取り付けしたガイド (E) に沿ってパンチくずボックス (D) を挿入する。
10. パンチくずボックス (D) 右上のカバーをアルコール清掃し、凹部に合わせてラベル (H) を貼り付ける。
11. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを閉じる。

パンチ基板の取り付け

12. パンチ基板 (B) の上部のツメをドキュメントフィニッシャ後側の溝に引っ掛ける。
13. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (F) 1 本でパンチ基板 (B) を固定する。



14. Open the wire saddle (12) and put the 2P-connector (13) on the motor through the wire saddle to fix the punch PCB (B).
 15. Connect the power cord (C) to the punch PCB (B).
 Figure (a): 6P-connector (14) of power cord (C) and 6P-connector (15) of sensor
 Figure (b): 2P-connector (13) of power cord (C) and 2P-connector (16) of motor
 Figure (c): 9P-connector (17) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (18) of document finisher power cord

- Figure (d): 6P-connector (19) of power cord (C) and YC3 connector (20) of punch PCB (B)
 Figure (d): 4P-connector (21) of power cord (C) and YC1 connector (22) of punch PCB (B)
 Figure (d): 9P-connector (23) of power cord (C) and YC2 connector (24) of punch PCB (B)
 Figure (e): 9P-connector (25) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (26) of document finisher power cord

14. Ouvrir la selle de câble (12) et faire passer le connecteur 2P (13) dans le moteur par la selle de câble pour fixer la carte de perforation (B).
 15. Connecter le cordon d'alimentation (C) et la carte de perforation (B).
 Figure (a): connecteur 6P (14) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 6P (15) du capteur
 Figure (b): connecteur 2P (13) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 2P (16) du moteur
 Figure (c): connecteur 9P (17) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (18) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document

- Figure (d): connecteur 6P (19) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC3 (20) de la carte de perforation (B)
 Figure (d): connecteur 4P (21) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC1 (22) de la carte de perforation (B)
 Figure (d): connecteur 9P (23) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC2 (24) de la carte de perforation (B)
 Figure (e): connecteur 9P (25) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (26) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document

14. Abra la placa de cable (12) y ponga el conector de 2 contactos (13) en el motor a través de la placa de cable para fijar el PCB de perforación (B).
 15. Conecte el cable de alimentación (C) en el PCB de perforación (B).
 Figura (a): Conector de 6 contactos (14) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 6 contactos (15) del sensor
 Figura (b): Conector de 2 contactos (13) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 2 contactos (16) del motor
 Figura (c): Conector de 9 contactos (17) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (18) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos

- Figura (d): Conector de 6 contactos (19) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC3 (20) del PCB de perforación (B)
 Figura (d): Conector de 4 contactos (21) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC1 (22) del PCB de perforación (B)
 Figura (d): Conector de 9 contactos (23) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC2 (24) del PCB de perforación (B)
 Figura (e): Conector de 9 contactos (25) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (26) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos

14. Öffnen Sie den Kabelhalter (12) und führen Sie den 2-poligen Stecker (13) durch den Kabelhalter am Motor, um die Locherplatine (B) zu befestigen.
 15. Schließen Sie das Netzkabel (C) an der Locherplatine (B) an.
 Abbildung (a): 6-poliger Stecker (14) des Netzkabels (C) und 6-poliger Stecker (15) des Sensors
 Abbildung (b): 2-poliger Stecker (13) des Netzkabels (C) und 2-poliger Stecker (16) des Motors
 Abbildung (c): 9-poliger Stecker (17) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (18) des Dokument-Finishers-Netzkabels

- Abbildung (d): 6-poliger Stecker (19) des Netzkabels (C) und YC3-Stecker (20) der Locherplatine (B)
 Abbildung (d): 4-poliger Stecker (21) des Netzkabels (C) und YC1-Stecker (22) der Locherplatine (B)
 Abbildung (d): 9-poliger Stecker (23) des Netzkabels (C) und YC2-Stecker (24) der Locherplatine (B)
 Abbildung (e): 9-poliger Stecker (25) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (26) des Dokument-Finisher-Netzkabels

14. Aprire la slitta del filo (12) e inserire il connettore a 2 piedini (13) sul motore attraverso la slitta in modo da fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).
 15. Collegare il cavo di alimentazione (C) alla scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).
 Figura (a): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (14) e connettore sensore a 6 piedini (15)
 Figura (b): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 2 piedini (13) e connettore motore a 2 piedini (16)
 Figura (c): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (17) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (18)

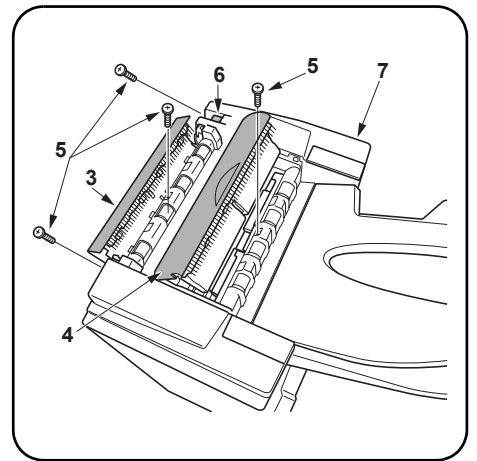
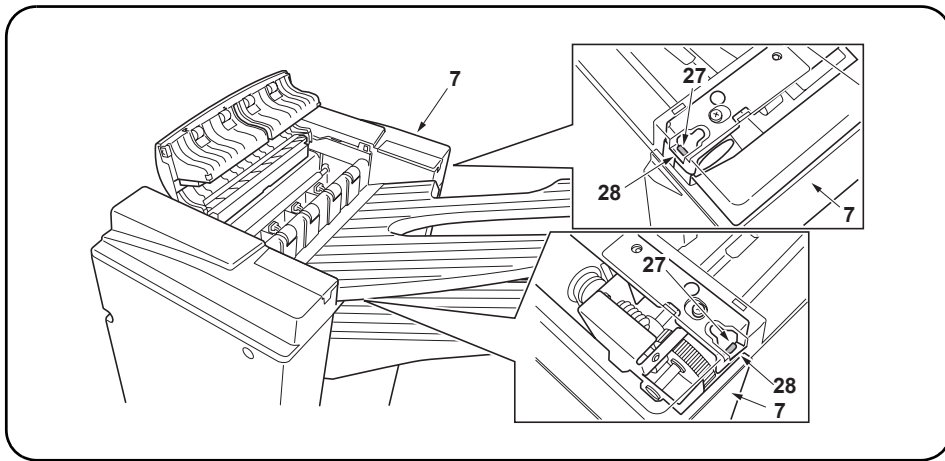
- Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (19) e connettore YC3 (20) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
 Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 4 piedini (21) e connettore YC1 (22) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
 Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (23) e connettore YC2 (24) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
 Figura (e): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (25) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (26)

14. 打开电线束线夹 (12) 并将电机上的 2P 插头 (13) 穿过电线束线夹, 固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。
 15. 将电源线 (C) 连接到打孔单元电路板 (B)。
 图 (a): 电源线 (C) 的 6P 插头 (14) 和传感器的 6P 插头 (15)
 图 (b): 电源线 (C) 的 2P 插头 (13) 和电机的 2P 插头 (16)
 图 (c): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (17) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (18)

- 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 6P 插头 (19) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC3 插头 (20)
 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 4P 插头 (21) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC1 插头 (22)
 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (23) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC2 插头 (24)
 图 (e): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (25) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (26)

14. ワイヤーサドル (12) を開き、モータの 2P コネクタ (13) をワイヤーサドル (12) へ通して固定する。
 15. 電線 (C) をパンチ基板 (B) と接続する。
 図 (a): 電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (14) とセンサの 6P コネクタ (15)
 図 (b): 電線 (C) の 2P コネクタ (13) とモータの 2P コネクタ (16)
 図 (c): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (17) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (18)

- 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (19) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC3 コネクタ (20)
 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 4P コネクタ (21) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC1 コネクタ (22)
 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (23) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC2 コネクタ (24)
 図 (e): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (25) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (26)



Installing the cover

16. Engage the pawl (27) of the document finisher with the concave section (28) at the back of the top cover (7) which was removed in step 3. After that, reinstall the top cover (7) by pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) with four screws (5).
If the pawl (27) is not securely engaged with the concave section, the top cover (7) is loose, which may cause incorrect operation of the document finisher.
17. Close the upper cover (3) and the tray C (4) which were opened in step 2.

Installation du capot

16. Engager le cliquet (27) du finisseur de document dans la partie concave (28) de l'arrière du capot supérieur (7) retiré à l'étape 3. Ensuite, réinstaller le capot supérieur (7) en serrant le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) à l'aide de quatre vis (5).
Si le cliquet (27) n'est pas bien engagé dans la partie concave, le capot supérieur (7) est lâche, ce qui peut entraîner un fonctionnement incorrect du finisseur de document.
17. Refermer le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) ouverts à l'étape 2.

Instalación de la cubierta

16. Acople el trinquete (27) del finalizador de documentos con la sección cóncava (28) de la parte posterior de la cubierta superior (7) que fue quitada en el paso 3. Después, presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (7) con cuatro tornillos (5).
Si el trinquete (27) no está firmemente acoplado con la sección cóncava, la cubierta superior (7) quedará floja, lo que podrá causar un funcionamiento incorrecto del finalizador de documentos.
17. Cierre la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) que fueron abiertas en el paso 2.

Anbringen der Abdeckung

16. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke (27) des Dokument-Finishers in den konkaven Teil (28) auf der Rückseite der oberen Abdeckung (7) eingreifen, die zuvor in Schritt 3 entfernt wurde. Drücken Sie danach den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), um die obere Abdeckung (7) mit den vier Schrauben (5) zu befestigen.
Wenn die Sperrklinke (27) nicht gut in den konkaven Teil eingreift, ist die obere Abdeckung (7) locker. Dabei kann es zu einer Funktionsstörung im Dokument-Finisher kommen.
17. Schließen Sie die in Schritt 2 geöffnete obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) wieder.

Installare il pannello

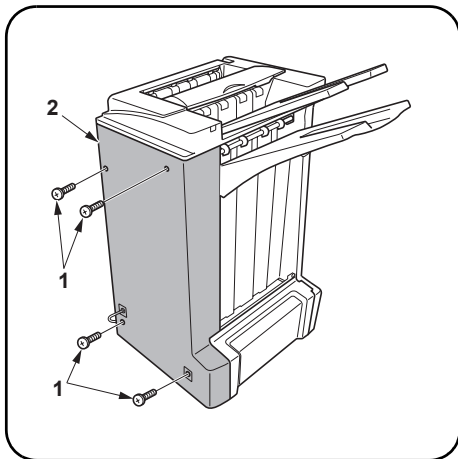
16. Agganciare il dentello (27) della finitrice alla sezione concava (28) sul retro del coperchio (7) rimosso al passo 3. In seguito, premi la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per reinstallare il coperchio (7) con quattro viti (5).
Se il dentello (27) non è fermamente agganciato alla sezione concava, il coperchio (7) risulta allentato e ciò può causare il malfunzionamento della finitrice.
17. Chiudere il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) aperti nel passo 2.

安装盖板

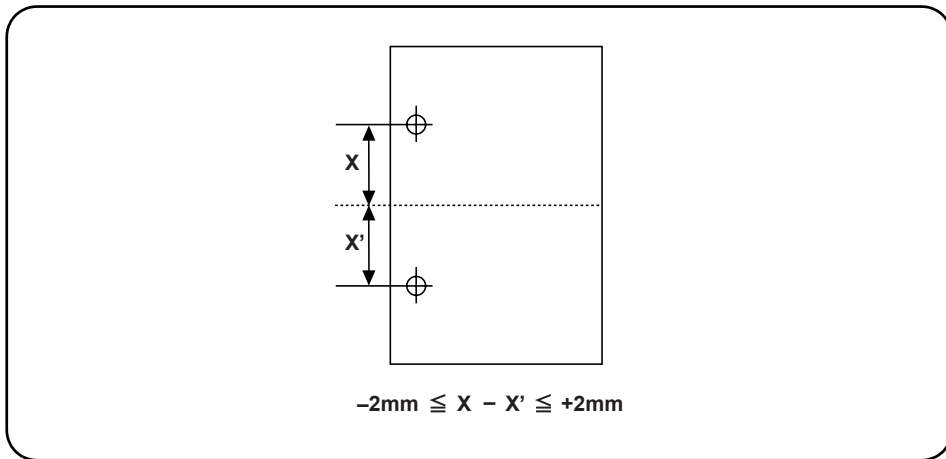
16. 将装订器的卡爪 (27) 与在步骤 3 中拆下的上盖板 (7) 后凹面 (28) 啮合。之后, 按下装订器释放杆 (6), 用 4 颗螺钉重新安装上部盖板 (7)。
如果卡爪 (27) 未与凹面牢固地啮合, 上盖板 (7) 会松动, 可能会造成装订器的异常操作。
17. 关闭在步骤 2 中打开的上盖板 (3) 和托盘 C (4)。

カバーの取り付け

16. ドキュメントフィニッシャのツメ (27) を、手順 3 で外した天カバー (7) 裏側の凹部 (28) に引っ掛け、フィニッシャ解除レバー (6) を押しながら天カバー (7) をはめ込み、ビス (5) 4 本で元通り取り付ける。
ツメ (27) が確実に引っ掛けられていない場合、天カバー (7) が浮いた状態になり、ドキュメントフィニッシャが正常に動作しない恐れがある。
17. 手順 2 で開いた上カバー (3) とトレイ C (4) を閉じる。



18. Use four screws (1) to reinstall the back cover (2) which was removed from the document finisher in step 1.



[Checking the center of the punch hole]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
3. Check for any off-centering in the punch holes. If any off-centering is observed, follow the procedure below to adjust the hole position.
<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes: ± 2 mm

18. Utiliser quatre vis (1) pour réinstaller le capot arrière (2) retiré du finisseur de document à l'étape 1.

[Vérification du centre des perforations]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur d'alimentation principal sous tension.
2. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.
3. Vérifier tout décentrage des perforations. Si des décentrages se produisent, suivre la procédure ci-dessous pour ajuster la position de perforation.
<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations: ± 2 mm

18. Utilice cuatro tornillos (1) para volver a instalar la cubierta posterior (2) que fue quitada del finalizador de documentos en el paso 1.

[Comprobación del centro del agujero perforado]

1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.
3. Compruebe que no haya ningún agujero perforado descentrado. Si lo hay, siga el procedimiento de abajo para ajustar la posición del agujero.
<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados: ± 2 mm

18. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (1), um die hintere Abdeckung (2) zu befestigen, welche in Schritt 1 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurde.

[Überprüfen der Stanzlöcherzentrierung]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.
2. Führen Sie im Lochungsmodus einen Test aus, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.
3. Prüfen Sie auf nicht zentrierte Löcher. Sollte dies der Fall sein, folgen Sie dem nachfolgendem Verfahren, um die Lochposition zu korrigieren.
<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher: ± 2 mm

18. Utilizzare quattro viti (1) per reinstallare il pannello posteriore (2) rimosso dalla finitrice nel passo 1.

[Verificare la centratura dei fori di perforazione]

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
3. Verificare che i fori di perforazione siano correttamente centrati. Nel caso in cui non lo siano, eseguire la procedura indicata qui di seguito per regolarne la posizione.
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione: ± 2 mm

18. 用 4 顆螺釘 (1) 重新安裝在步驟 1 中從裝訂器上拆下的後蓋板 (2)。

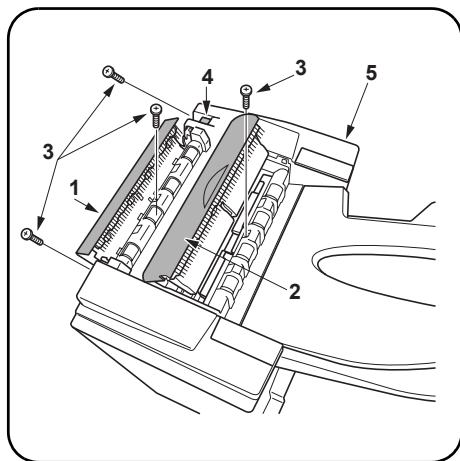
[检查打孔的中央]

1. 將 MFP 插入電源插座，打開主電源開關。
2. 在打孔模式中，從 MP 托盤進紙進行測試複印。
3. 檢查打孔是否偏離中央。如果觀察到有偏離中央的情況，按照下列步驟調整打孔位置。
<標準值> 打孔的垂直間隙: ± 2 mm

18. 手順 1 で外したドキュメントフィニッシャーの後カバー (2) をビス (1) 4 本で元通り取り付け。

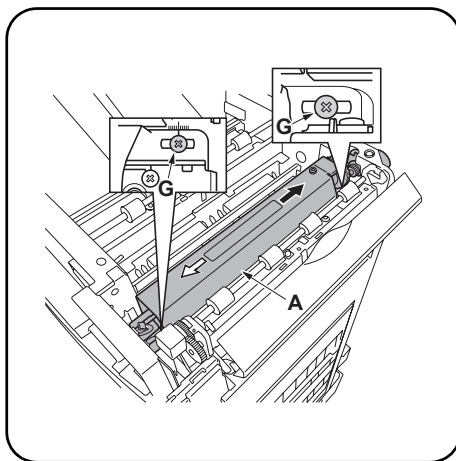
[パンチ穴のセンター位置確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
3. パンチ穴のセンター位置のずれを確認する。パンチ穴が中心からずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
<基準値> パンチ穴のずれ: ± 2 mm



Centering punch-holes

1. Open the upper cover (1) and the tray C (2) of the document finisher.
2. Remove four screws (3) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (4) to remove the top cover (5).

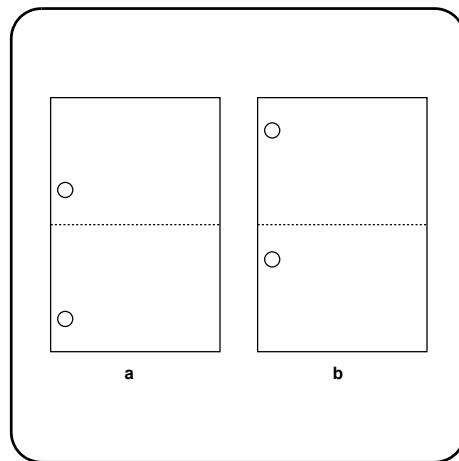


3. Loosen two M4 x 10 tap Tight S screws (G) of the hole punch unit (A).

4. Adjust the position of the hole punch unit (A).

When holes are punched too far lower copy example (a): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the black arrow.
When holes are punched too far upper copy example (b): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the white arrow.

5. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.
6. Perform a test copy.



Centrage des perforations

1. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (1) et le bac C (2) du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer quatre vis (3) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur (4) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur (5).

3. Desserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (G) de la perforatrice (A).

4. Ajuster la position de la perforatrice (A).

Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop bas dans l'exemple de copie (a): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche noire.

Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop haut dans l'exemple de copie (b): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche blanche.

5. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.
6. Effectuer une copie de test.

Centrado de los agujeros de perforación

1. Abra la cubierta superior (1) y la bandeja C (2) del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los cuatro tornillos (3) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (4) para quitar la cubierta superior (5).

3. Afloje dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (G) de la perforadora (A).

4. Ajuste la posición de la perforadora (A).

Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia abajo en el ejemplo de copia (a): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha negra.

Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia arriba en el ejemplo de copia (b): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha blanca.

5. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.
6. Haga una copia de prueba.

Zentrieren der Stanzlöcher

1. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (1) sowie das Fach C (2) des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (3) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (4), um die obere Abdeckung (5) zu entfernen.

3. Lösen Sie die beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) der Lochereinheit (A).

4. Stellen Sie die Position der Lochereinheit (A) ein.

Wenn die Löcher zu weit unten durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (a): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils.

Wenn die Löcher zu weit oben durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (b): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des weißen Pfeils.

5. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.
6. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.

Centratura dei fori di perforazione

1. Aprire il pannello superiore (1) e il vassoio C (2) della finitrice.
2. Togliere quattro viti (3) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (4) per rimuovere il coperchio (5).

3. Allentare due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (G) dell'unità di perforazione (A).

4. Regolare la posizione dell'unità di perforazione (A).

Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in basso (esempio a): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia nera.

Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in alto (esempio b): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia bianca.

5. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.
6. Eseguire una copia di prova.

将打孔调整居中

1. 打开装订器的上盖板 (1) 和托盘 C (2)。
2. 拆下 4 颗螺钉 (3) 并按住整理器释放杆 (4) 以便拆下上盖板 (5)。

3. 松开打孔单元 (A) 的 2 颗 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。

4. 调整打孔单元 (A) 的位置。

打孔远离下部复印样本 (a) 时: 将打孔单元 (A) 滑向黑色箭头指示的方向。

打孔远离上部复印样本 (b) 时: 将打孔单元 (A) 滑向白色箭头指示的方向。

5. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息, 请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。
6. 进行测试复印。

パンチ穴のセンター位置調整

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの上カバー (1) とトレイ C (2) を開く。
2. ビス (3) 4 本を外し、フィニッシャー解除レバー (4) 押しながら天カバー (5) を取り外す。

3. パンチユニット (A) のビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を緩める。

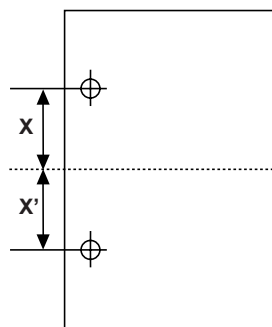
4. パンチユニット (A) の位置調整を行う。

パンチ穴が下にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (a): パンチユニット (A) を黒矢印の方向へずらす。

パンチ穴が上にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (b): パンチユニット (A) を白矢印の方向へずらす。

5. 手順 2 で外した天カバー (5) をビス (3) 4 本で元通り取り付け。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。

6. テストコピーを行う。



7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 until the vertical gap of the punch holes on the copy sample are within the reference value.
8. After adjustment, tighten two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G) loosened in step 3.
9. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.

<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes: ±2 mm

7. Répéter les étapes 1 à 6 jusqu'à ce que l'espace vertical des perforations de l'échantillon de copie se trouve à l'intérieur de la valeur de référence.
8. Après l'ajustement, resserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) desserrées à l'étape 3.
9. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.

<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations: ±2 mm

7. Repita los pasos 1 a 6 hasta que la separación vertical de los agujeros perforados en la muestra de la copia cumplan con el valor de referencia.
8. Después de hacer el ajuste, apriete dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) aflojados en el paso 3.
9. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.

<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados: ±2 mm

7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 6, bis der Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher auf der Testkopie innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
8. Nach der Einstellung sind die beiden in Schritt 3 gelösten M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) wieder festzuziehen.
9. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.

<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher: ±2 mm

7. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 6 finché la distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione nella copia campione non rientra nel valore di riferimento.
8. Dopo la regolazione, serrare le due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) allentate nel passo 3.
9. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.

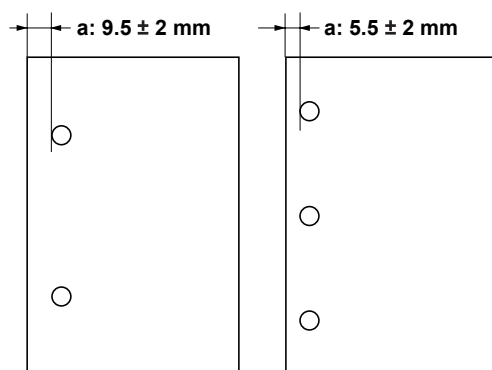
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione: ±2 mm

7. 重复步骤 1 至 6 直到复印样本上打孔垂直间隙在标准值范围之内。
8. 调整后，拧紧在步骤 3 中松开的 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。
9. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息，请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。

<标准值> 打孔的垂直间隙: ±2mm

7. コピーサンプルのパンチ穴のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 6 を繰り返す。
8. 調整終了後、手順 3 で緩めたビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を締め付ける。
9. 手順 2 で外した天カバー (5) をビス (3) 4 本で元通り取り付ける。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。

<基準値> パンチ穴のずれ: ± 2mm



[Checking distance from leading edge to the punch holes]

1. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
2. Check the distance from the paper leading edge to the punch holes (a). If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.
<Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification: 9.5 ± 2 mm
Distance (a) in inch specification: 5.5 ± 2 mm

Adjusting distance from leading edge to the punch holes

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select FINISHER 3000 and PUNCH POS ADJ mode.
2. Adjust the setting value.
If (a) is shorter than the reference value, increase the setting value.
If (a) is larger than the reference value, decrease the setting value.
Changing the value by 1 moves the punching position by approximately 0.49 mm

[Vérification de la distance du bord d'entrée aux perforations]

1. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.
2. Vérifier la distance entre le bord d'entrée du papier et les perforations (a). Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.
<Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques: 9,5 ± 2 mm
Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces: 5,5 ± 2 mm

Ajustement de la distance entre le bord d'entrée et les perforations

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner FINISHER 3000 et le mode PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Ajuster la valeur de réglage.
Si (a) est inférieur à la valeur de référence, augmenter la valeur de réglage.
Si (a) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, diminuer la valeur de réglage.
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position de perforation d'environ 0,49 mm.

[Comprobación de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados]

1. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.
2. Compruebe la distancia del borde delantero del papel a los agujeros perforados (a). Si la distancia no se encuentra dentro del valor de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico: 9,5 ± 2 mm
Distancia (a) en pulgadas: 5,5 ± 2 mm

Ajuste de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione FINISHER 3000 y el modo PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.
Si (a) es inferior al valor de referencia, aumente el valor de configuración.
Si (a) es superior al valor de referencia, disminuya el valor de configuración.
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de perforación 0,49 mm aproximadamente.

[Überprüfen des Abstands von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern]

1. Führen Sie im Lochermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.
2. Überprüfen Sie den Abstand von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern (a). Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist die Einstellung gemäß den nachfolgenden Schritte durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a): 9,5 ± 2 mm
Abstand in Zoll (a): 5,5 ± 2 mm

Einstellen des Abstands von der Vorderkante zu den Stanzlöchern

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein und wählen Sie dann FINISHER 3000 und PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Regeln Sie den Einstellungswert.
Wenn (a) kleiner als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu erhöhen.
Wenn (a) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu reduzieren.
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1 verschiebt die Lochstanzposition um 0,49 mm.

[Verificare la distanza distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione]

1. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
2. Controllare la distanza tra i fori di perforazione e il bordo anteriore del foglio (a). Se la distanza non è compresa tra gli intervalli di riferimento, eseguire i passaggi successivi per regolarne la posizione.
<Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unità metrica: 9,5 ± 2 mm
Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici: 5,5 ± 2 mm

Impostazione della distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare le modalità FINISHER 3000 e PUNCH POS ADJ (regola posizione di cucitura).
2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.
Nel caso in cui (a) sia minore del valore di riferimento, aumentare il valore di impostazione.
Se (a) è maggiore del valore previsto, ridurre il valore di impostazione.
La modifica del valore 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di cucitura di circa 0,49 mm

[检查前边到打孔的距离]

1. 在打孔模式中，从 MP 托盘进纸进行测试复印。
2. 检查纸张前边到打孔 (a) 的距离。如果距离超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整位置。
<标准值> 公制规格的距离 (a): 9.5 ± 2mm
英制规格的距离 (a): 5.5 ± 2mm

调整前边到打孔的距离

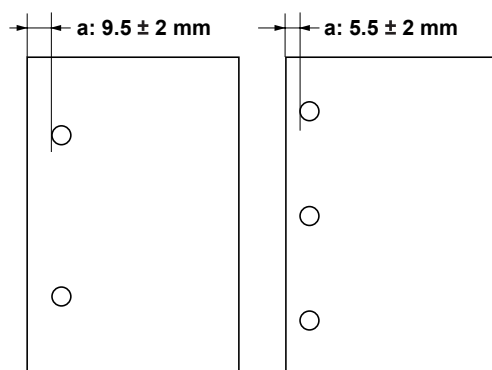
1. 进入维修模式 U246，选择 FINISHER 3000（整理器 3000）和 PUNCH POS ADJ（打孔位置调整）模式。
2. 调整设定值。
如果 (a) 短于标准值，请增大设定值。
如果 (a) 长于标准值，请减小设定值。
以 1 更改数值将打孔位置移动大约 0.49mm

[パンチ穴の先端位置確認]

1. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
2. パンチ穴の用紙先端からの位置 (a) を確認する。位置のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
<基準値> センチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 9.5 ± 2mm
インチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 5.5 ± 2mm

パンチ穴の先端位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 にセットし、FINISHER 3000、PUNCH POS ADJ を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。
(a) が基準値より短い場合: 設定値を上げる。
(a) が基準値より長い場合: 設定値を下げる。
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 約 0.49mm



3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the leading edge to the punch hole indicates the value within the reference range.
 <Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification: 9.5 ± 2 mm
 Distance (a) in inch specification: 5.5 ± 2 mm

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la distance entre le bord d'entrée et la perforation indique une valeur se trouvant à l'intérieur de la gamme de référence.
 <Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques: $9,5 \pm 2$ mm
 Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces: $5,5 \pm 2$ mm

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del borde de entrada al agujero perforado indique una distancia comprendida dentro del valor de referencia.
 <Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico: $9,5 \pm 2$ mm
 Distancia (a) en pulgadas: $5,5 \pm 2$ mm

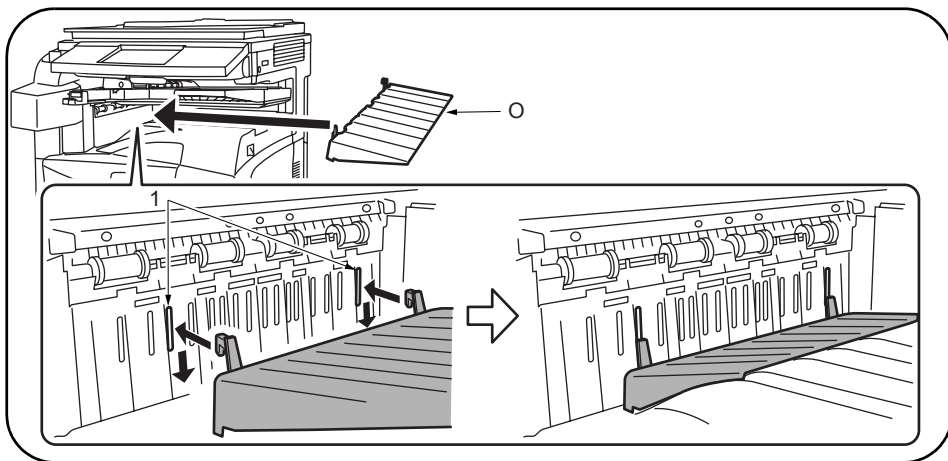
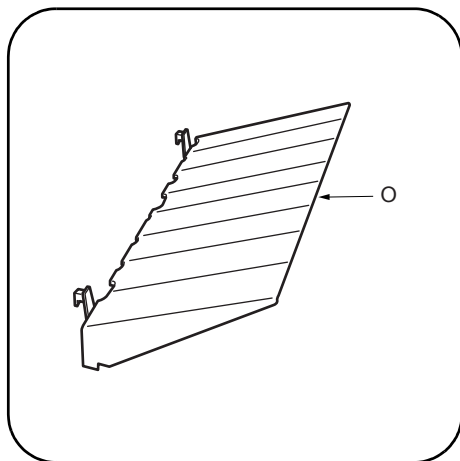
3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Vorderkante zur Lochung innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
 <Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a): $9,5 \pm 2$ mm
 Abstand in Zoll (a): $5,5 \pm 2$ mm

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione non rientra negli intervalli di riferimento.
 <Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unità metrica: $9,5 \pm 2$ mm
 Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici: $5,5 \pm 2$ mm

3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到前边到打孔的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。
 <标准值> 公制规格的距离 (a): 9.5 ± 2 mm
 英制规格的距离 (a): 5.5 ± 2 mm

3. テストコピーを行う。
4. パンチ穴の用紙先端までの位置が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
 <基準値> センチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 9.5 ± 2 mm
 インチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 5.5 ± 2 mm

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR BUILT-IN FINISHER



English

Adding procedure to the finisher installation

The following step is added after step 24 on page 10.

Supplied parts

O Sub tray 1

Insert the two hooks of the sub tray (O) into the two slits (1) of the MFP eject section to attach the sub tray.

Français

Ajout d'une procédure à l'installation du finisseur

L'étape suivante est ajoutée après l'étape 24 de la page 10.

Pièces fournies

O Plateau secondaire 1

Insérer les deux crochets du plateau secondaire (O) dans les deux fentes (1) de la section d'éjection du MFP pour fixer le plateau secondaire.

Español

Agregando un procedimiento a la instalación del finalizador

Se agrega el siguiente paso después del paso 24 en la página 10.

Partes suministradas

O Bandeja secundaria 1

Inserte los dos ganchos en la bandeja secundaria (O) en las dos ranuras (1) en la sección de expulsión de MFP para instalar la bandeja secundaria.

Deutsch

Hinzufügung eines Verfahrens zur Fixierer-Installation

Der folgende Schritt wird nach Schritt 24 auf Seite 10 hinzugefügt.

Gelieferte Teile

O Hilfsablage 1

Die zwei Haken der Hilfsablage (O) in die zwei Schlitze (1) des MFP-Auswerfabchnitts einführen, um die Hilfsablage anzubringen.

Italiano

Procedura addizionale per l'installazione del finitore

Il seguente passo viene aggiunto dopo il passo 24 a pagina 10.

Parti fornite

O Sottovassoio 1

Inserite i due ganci del sottovassoio (O) nelle due fessure (1) della sezione di espulsione dell'MFP per montare il sottovassoio.

简体中文

安装装订器时的补充步骤

在第 10 页的步骤 24 后面补充以下步骤。

附属部件

O 辅助托盘 1

将辅助托盘 (O) 上的挂钩 (2 处) 挂在 MFP 本体排纸部的 2 处切口 (1) 上。

日本語

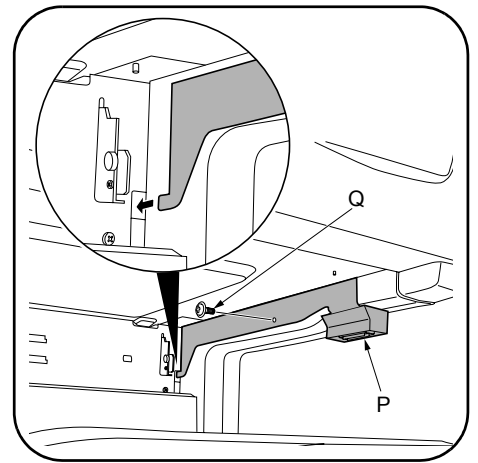
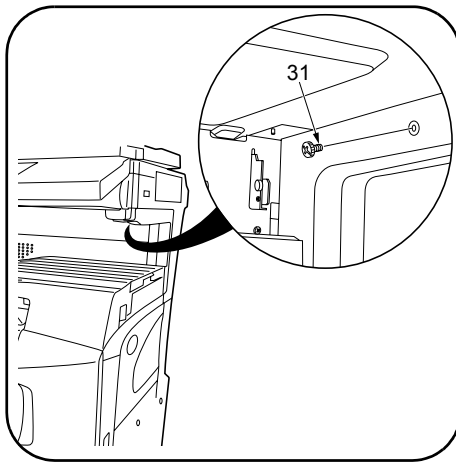
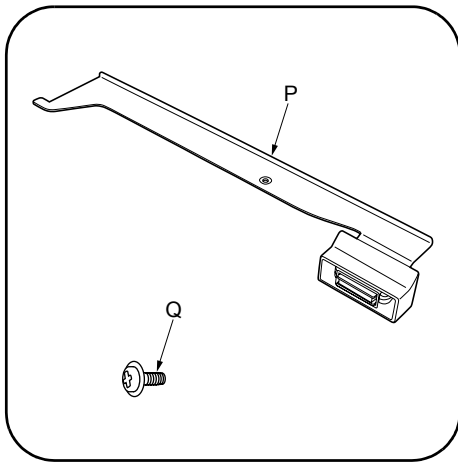
フィニッシャ設置時の手順追加

10 ページ 手順 24 の後に、次の手順を追加。

付属品

O サブトレイ 1

サブトレイ (O) のフック部 2 箇所を MFP 本体排出部のスリット (1) 2 箇所に引っ掛けて取り付ける。



English

Adding procedure to the finisher installation

Add the following steps after step 14 on page 7.

Supplied parts

P Magnet assembly	1
Q TP Screw M3 × 10	1

1. Remove the pin (31).

2. Position the magnet assembly (P) and secure it with the TP screw M3 × 10 (Q).

Français

Ajout d'une procédure à l'installation du finisseur

Ajouter les étapes suivantes après l'étape 14 de la page 7.

Pièces fournies

P Ensemble d'aimant	1
Q Vis TP M3 × 10	1

1. Retirer la goupille (31).

2. Mettre en place l'ensemble d'aimant (P) et le fixer à l'aide de la vis TP M3 × 10 (Q).

Español

Agregando un procedimiento a la instalación del finalizador

Añada los siguientes pasos después del paso 14 en la página 7.

Partes suministradas

P Conjunto del imán	1
Q Tornillo TP M3 × 10	1

1. Retire el pasador (31).

2. Instale el conjunto del imán (P) y asegúrelo con el tornillo TP M3 × 10 (Q).

Deutsch

Hinzufügung eines Verfahrens zur Fixierer-Installation

Fügen Sie die folgenden Schritte nach Schritt 14 auf Seite 7 hinzu.

Gelieferte Teile

P Magneteinheit	1
Q TP-Schraube M3 × 10	1

1. Den Stift (31) entfernen.

2. Die Magneteinheit (P) anbringen und mit der TP-Schraube M3 × 10 (Q) befestigen.

Italiano

Procedura addizionale per l'installazione del finitore

Aggiungete i seguenti passi dopo il passo 14 a pagina 7.

Parti fornite

P Unità magnete	1
Q Vite TP M3 × 10	1

1. Rimuovete il perno (31).

2. Collocate l'unità magnete (P) e fissatela con la vite TP M3 × 10 (Q).

简体中文

安装装订器时的补充步骤

在第 7 页步骤 14 后面追加以下内容。

附属部件

P 磁铁组件	1
Q 螺丝 M3 × 10TP	1

1. 拆下卡销 (31)。

2. 安装磁铁组件 (P)，用螺丝 M3 × 10TP (Q) 固定。

日本語

フィニッシャ設置時の手順追加

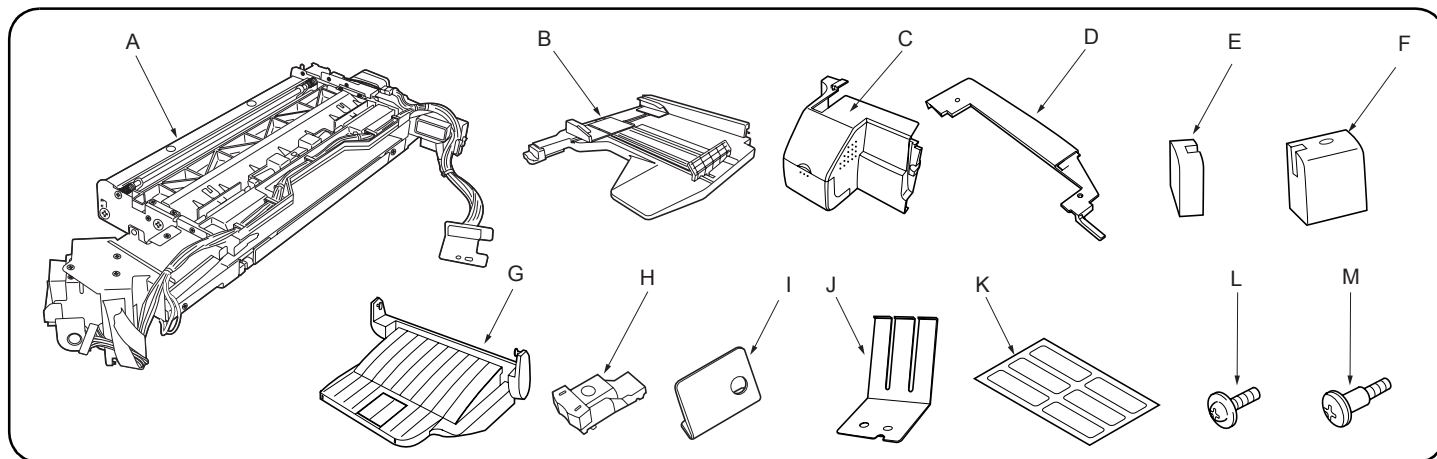
7 ページ 手順 14 の後に、次の手順を追加。

付属品

P 組立マグネット	1
Q ビス M3 × 10TP	1

1. ピン (31) を取り外す。

2. 組立マグネット (P) を取り付け、ビス M3 × 10TP (Q) で固定する。



English

Supplied parts

A Transfer unit	1
B Intermediate tray	1
C Staple cover	1
D Large ejection cover	1

E Front ejection cover	1
F Rear ejection cover	1
G Copy tray	1
H Staple cartridge	1
I Flat spring ejection	1
J Ground plate	1
K Pull label	1
L TP screw M3 x 05	7
M Operation section securing pin	1

Français

Pièces fournies

A Unité de transfert	1
B Plateau intermédiaire	1
C Couvercle d'agrafes	1
D Grand couvercle d'éjection	1

E Couvercle d'éjection avant	1
F Couvercle d'éjection arrière	1
G Plateau à copies	1
H Cartouche d'agrafes	1
I Dispositif d'éjection à ressort plat	1
J Plaque de masse	1
K Etiquette Tirez	1
L Vis TP M3 x 05	7
M Broche de fixation de la section de commande	1

Español

Partes suministradas

A Unidad de transferencia	1
B Bandeja intermedia	1
C Cubierta de grapas	1
D Cubierta de expulsión grande	1

E Cubierta de expulsión frontal	1
F Cubierta de expulsión trasera	1
G Bandeja de copias	1
H Cartucho de grapas	1
I Expulsión por resorte plano	1
J Placa a tierra	1
K Etiqueta de tiro	1
L Tornillo TP M3 x 05	7
M Pasador de fijación de la sección de funcionamiento	1

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Transfereinheit	1
B Zwischenablage	1
C Hefterabdeckung	1
D Große Auswurfabdeckung	1

E Vordere Auswurfabdeckung	1
F Hintere Auswurfabdeckung	1
G Kopienablage	1
H Heftklammerpatrone	1
I Blattfederauswurf	1
J Grundplatte	1
K Abziehaufkleber	1
L TP-Schraube M3 x 05	7
M Bedienteil-Sicherungsstift	1

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Unità di trasferimento	1
B Vassoio intermedio	1
C Coperchio della graffatrice	1
D Coperchio grande di espulsione carta	1

E Coperchio frontale di espulsione carta	1
F Coperchio posteriore di espulsione carta	1
G Vassoio copie	1
H Cartuccia della graffatrice	1
I Molla piatta a espulsione	1
J Piastra di terra	1
K Etichetta staccabile	1
L Vite TP M3 x 05	7
M Perno di fissaggio della sezione di comando	1

简体中文

附属部件

A 输送组件	1
B 中间托盘	1
C 装订订盖板	1
D 排纸盖板(大)	1

E 排纸盖板(前)	1
F 排纸盖板(后)	1
G 排纸托盘	1
H 订书钉盒	1
I 板簧排纸器	1
J 地线板	1
K PULL标签	1
L 螺丝M3 x 05TP	7

M 操作部固定卡销	1
-----------------	---

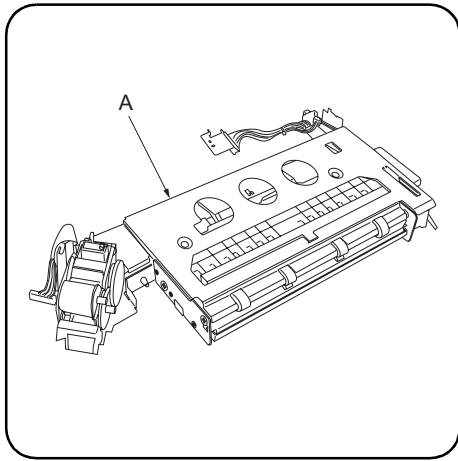
日本語

付属品

A 搬送ユニット	1
B 中間トレイ	1
C ステープルカバー	1
D 排出カバー大	1

E 排出カバー前	1
F 排出カバー後	1
G 排出トレイ	1
H ステープルカートリッジ	1
I 板バネ排出	1
J アース版	1
K PULL ラベル	1
L ビス M3 x 05TP	7

M 操作部固定ピン	1
-----------------	---



Note

When placing the transfer unit (A) on the floor or the like, be sure to place it upside down. If not, the stapler mounting plate may be deformed, resulting in a malfunction.

Remarque

Lorsqu'on place l'unité de transfert (A) sur le sol ou sur une surface équivalente, veiller à la placer sens dessus dessous. Sinon, la plaque de montage de l'agrafeuse risque d'être déformée, ce qui causera des anomalies de fonctionnement.

Nota

Cuando se coloca la unidad de transferencia (A) en el piso o similar, asegúrese de colocarlo al revés. de lo contrario, la placa de montaje del grapador puede deformarse, provocando un mal funcionamiento.

Hinweis

Wenn die Transfereinheit (A) auf den Boden oder dergleichen gestellt wird, muss sie auf den Kopf gestellt werden. Anderenfalls kann die Heftermontageplatte verformt werden, was zu einer Funktionsstörung führt.

Nota

Quando si posiziona l'unità di trasferimento (A) sul pavimento o in luoghi simili, occorre posizionarla rovesciata. In caso contrario, la piastra di montaggio della pinzatrice potrebbe venire deformata, provocando malfunzionamenti.

[注意事項]

将输送组件 (A) 放在地板等上时, 务必翻过来放置。否则会使装订器安装板变形, 造成故障的原因。

[注意事項]

搬送ユニット (A) を床等に置く場合には、必ず裏返しにした状態で置く。そのまま置くとステープラ取付板が変形し、不具合の原因となる。

Preparation

When installing a finisher, be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet.

Préparation

Lors de l'installation d'un finisseur, veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale.

Preparación

Cuando se instala un finalizador, asegúrese de desconectar el interruptor principal del MFP y desenchufar el cable eléctrico del tomacorriente de la pared.

Vorbereitung

Schalten Sie vor der Installation des Fixierers unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab.

Preparazione

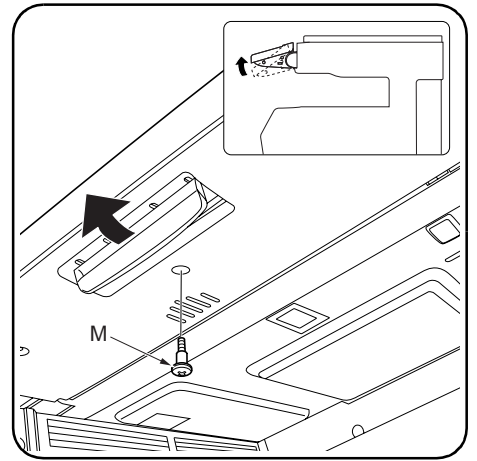
Al momento dell'installazione della finitrice, assicuratevi innanzitutto di spegnere l'MFP e scollegare il cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di rete.

[安装步骤]

安装装订器时, 必须先切断MFP主机的主电源开关, 并拔下MFP主机上的电源插头后, 再进行安装作业。

[取付手順]

フィニッシャーを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを外して作業を行うこと。



1. Pull the lever toward the front side to raise the operation section, and secure it using the operation section securing pin (M).

Note

After the finisher is installed, the operation section is secured and the angle cannot be adjusted.

2. Open the left transfer cover and the front cover.

1. Tirer le levier vers l'avant pour élever la section de commande, et le fixer à l'aide de la broche de fixation de la section de commande (M).

Note

Une fois que le finisseur a été installé, la section de commande est fixée et il est impossible de régler l'angle.

2. Ouvrir le couvercle de transfert gauche et le couvercle avant.

1. Tira de la palanca hacia el lado delantero para que suba la sección de funcionamiento y asegure utilizando el pasador de fijación de la sección de funcionamiento (M).

Nota

Después de instalar el finalizador, la sección de funcionamiento queda fijada y no puede ajustar el ángulo.

2. Abra la cubierta de transferencia izquierda y la cubierta frontal.

1. Den Hebel zur Vorderseite ziehen, um den Bedienteil anzuheben, und diesen mit dem Bedienteil-Sicherungsstift (M) sichern.

Hinweis

Nach der Installation des Fixierers wird der Bedienteil gesichert, und der Winkel kann nicht mehr verändert werden.

2. Die linke Transferabdeckung und die Frontabdeckung öffnen.

1. Tirare la leva verso il lato frontale per sollevare la sezione di comando, e fissarla usando il perno di fissaggio della sezione di comando (M).

Nota

Dopo che avete installato il finitore, la sezione di comando è stata assicurata e l'angolo non può essere regolato.

2. Aprite il coperchio di trasferimento sinistro e quindi il coperchio frontale.

1. 将把柄向跟前拉, 使操作部推向上方, 然后用操作部固定卡销(M)进行固定。

注意:

安装装订器时, 操作部已被固定, 不能进行角度调整。

2. 打开输送左盖板和前盖板。

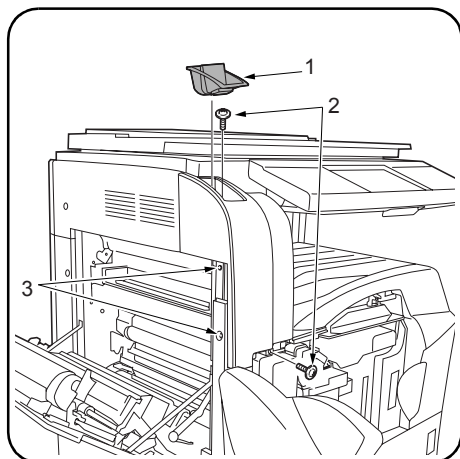
1. レバーを手前に引いて、操作部を上方向に持ち上げ、操作部固定ピン (M) で固定する。

注意

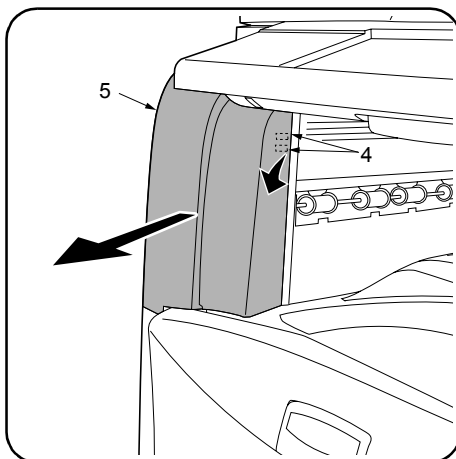
フィニッシャーを取り付けると、操作部は固定となり、角度調整はできません。

2. 搬送左カバーおよび前カバーを開ける。

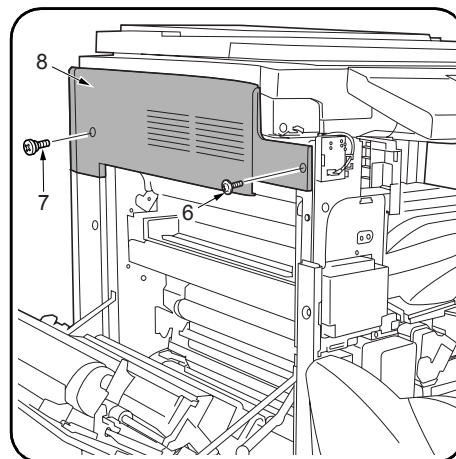
TONER



3. Remove the staple holder (1), remove the two screws (2) from the upper side and the front side, and loosen the two screws (3) on the left side.



4. Open the hook (4) on the right side and remove the left front cover (5).



5. Remove the screw (6) and the pin (7) to remove the upper left cover (8).

3. Retirer le support d'agrafes (1), retirer les deux vis (2) du côté supérieur et du côté avant, et desserrer les deux vis (3) du côté gauche.

4. Ouvrir le crochet (4) se trouvant sur le côté droit et retirer le couvercle avant gauche (5).

5. Retirer la vis (6) et la broche (7) pour enlever le couvercle supérieur gauche (8).

3. Desmonte el soporte de grapas (1), saque los dos tornillos (2) del lado superior y el lado delantero y afloje los dos tornillos (3) en el lado izquierdo.

4. Abra el gancho (4) en el lado derecho y desmonte la cubierta delantera izquierda (5).

5. Quite el tornillo (6) y el pasador (7) para desmontar la cubierta superior izquierda (8).

3. Den Heftklammerhalter (1) entfernen, die zwei Schrauben (2) an der Ober- und Vorderseite herausdrehen, und die zwei Schrauben (3) auf der linken Seite lösen.

4. Den Haken (4) auf der rechten Seite öffnen, und die linke Frontabdeckung (5) abnehmen.

5. Die Schraube (6) und den Stift (7) entfernen, um die obere linke Abdeckung (8) abzunehmen.

3. Rimuovete il vassoio graffette (1), rimuovete le due viti (2) dal lato superiore e dal lato frontale e allentate le due viti (3) sul lato sinistro.

4. Aprite il gancio (4) che si trova sul lato destro e rimuovete il coperchio frontale sinistro (5).

5. Rimuovere la vite (6) e il perno (7) per rimuovere il coperchio superiore sinistro (8).

3. 拆下装订钉盒(1), 卸下上侧和前侧的2个螺丝(2), 接着松弛2个左侧螺丝(3)。

4. 打开右侧支架部(4), 取下左前盖板(5)。

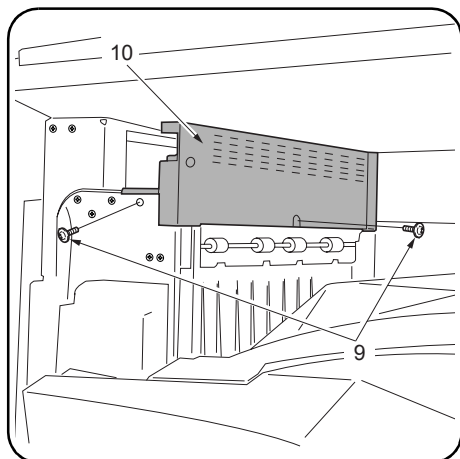
5. 拆下1个螺丝(6)和1个卡销(7)后, 取下左上盖板(8)。

3. ステープルホルダー(1)を取り外し、上側と前側のビス(2)2本を外して、左側のビス(3)2本をゆるめる。

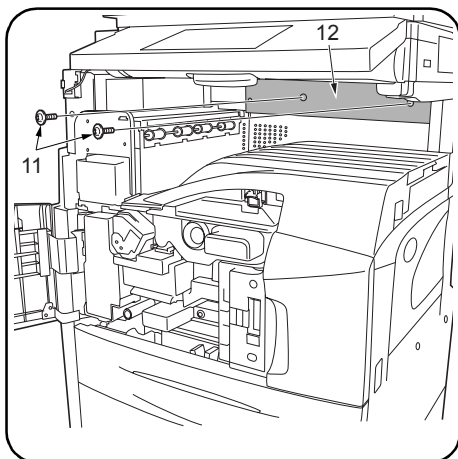
4. 右側の引っかけ部(4)を開いて左前カバー(5)を取り外す。

5. ビス(6)1本およびピン(7)1本を外して左上カバー(8)を取り外す。

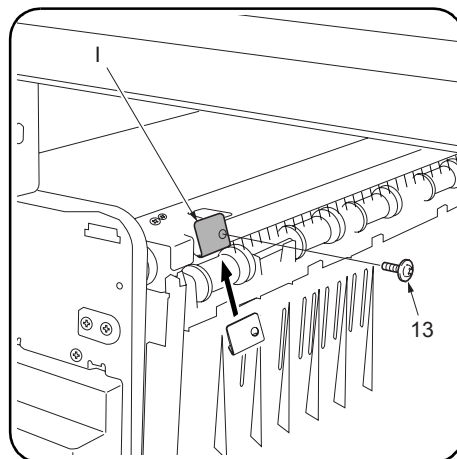
TONER



6. Remove the two screws (9) and then remove the ejection cover (10) with the mounting plate.



7. Remove the two screws (11) and then remove the inner ejection cover (12).



8. Remove the screw (13) located at the front of the static charge eliminator of the MFP, fit the flat spring ejection (I) from the lower side, and secure it with the removed screw (13).

6. Enlever les deux vis (9), puis enlever le couvercle d'éjection (10) avec la plaque de montage.

7. Enlever les deux vis (11), puis enlever le couvercle d'éjection interne (12).

8. Retirer la vis (13) située à l'avant du dispositif d'élimination de charge statique du MFP, mettre en place le dispositif d'éjection à ressort plat (I) par le côté inférieur, puis le fixer à l'aide de la vis retirée (13).

6. Saque los dos tornillos (9) y desmonte la cubierta de expulsión (10) con la placa de montaje.

7. Saque los dos tornillos (11) y desmonte la cubierta de expulsión interior (12).

8. Quite el tornillo (13) ubicado en el frente del eliminador de carga estática del MFP, encaje la expulsión por resorte plano (I) del lado inferior y asegúrelo con el tornillo quitado (13).

6. Die zwei Schrauben (9) entfernen, und dann die Auswurfabdeckung (10) mit der Montageplatte abnehmen.

7. Die zwei Schrauben (11) entfernen, und dann die innere Auswurfabdeckung (12) abnehmen.

8. Die Schraube (13) an der Vorderseite des Entstörers für statische Aufladung des MFP entfernen, dann den Blattfederauswurf (I) von der Unterseite einpassen und mit der entfernten Schraube (13) befestigen.

6. Rimuovete ora le due viti (9) e quindi il coperchio di espulsione (10) con la piastra di montaggio.

7. Rimuovete le due viti (11) e quindi il coperchio interno di espulsione (12).

8. Rimuovere la vite (13) situata nella parte frontale dell'eliminatore di cariche statiche dell'MFP, montare la molla piatta a espulsione (I) nel lato inferiore e fissarla con la vite rimossa (13).

6. 卸下2个螺丝(9), 然后将排纸盖板(10)的整个安装板拆下。

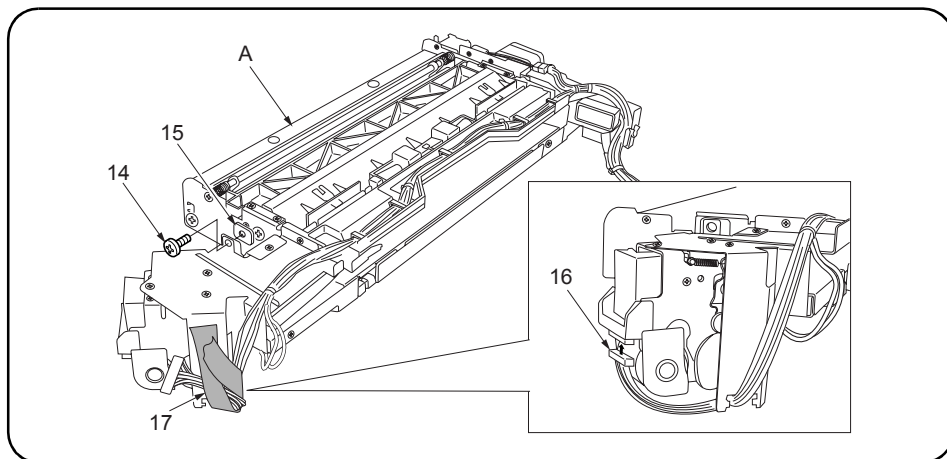
7. 卸下2个螺丝(11), 然后拆下排纸内盖板(12)。

8. 拆下本体上除静电器前的1个固定螺丝(13)后, 从下面嵌入板簧排纸器(I), 并用拆下的1个螺丝(13)加以固定。

6. ビス (9) 2 本を外し、排出カバー (10) を取付板ごと取り外す。

7. ビス (11) 2 本を外し、排出内カバー (12) を取り外す。

8. 本体の除電器手前の固定ビス (13) 1 本を取り外し、板バネ排出 (I) を下からはめ込み、取り外したビス (13) 1 本で取り付け。



9. Remove the blue screw (14) from the transfer unit (A) and then remove the securing plate (15).
10. Remove the securing tape (17) from the 13-pin connector (16), pass the wire under the stapler motor, and connect the wire with the 13-pin connector (16).

-
9. Retirer la vis bleue (14) de l'unité de transfert (A) puis enlever la plaque de fixation (15).
 10. Retirer la bande de fixation (17) du connecteur à treize broches (16), passer le fil au-dessous du moteur de l'agrafeuse, et connecter le fil à l'aide du connecteur à treize broches (16).

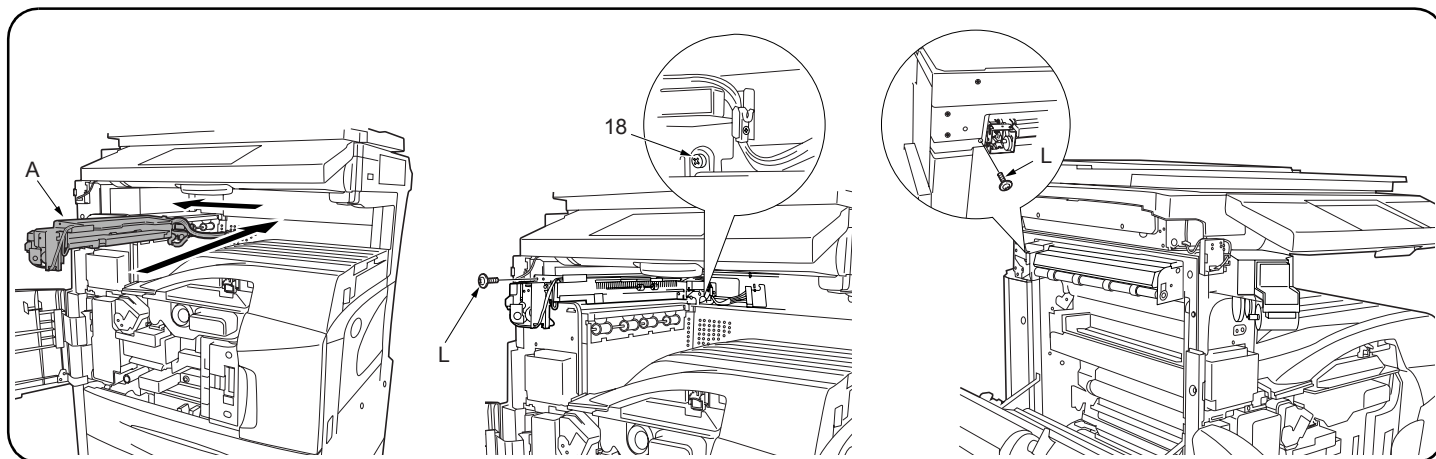
-
9. Quite el tornillo azul (14) de la unidad de transferencia (A) y desmonte la placa de fijación (15).
 10. Despegue la cinta de fijación (17) del conector de 13 pasadores (16), pase el cable por debajo del motor del grapador y conecte el cable con el conector de 13 pasadores (16).

-
9. Die blaue Schraube (14) von der Transfereinheit (A) entfernen, und dann die Halteplatte (15) abnehmen.
 10. Das Sicherungsband (17) vom 13-poligen Steckverbinder (16) entfernen, dann das Kabel unter dem Heftermotor hindurchführen und an den 13-poligen Steckverbinder (16) anschließen.

-
9. Rimuovete la vite blu (14) dall'unità di trasferimento (A) e poi rimuovete la piastra di fissaggio (15).
 10. Rimuovere il nastri di sicurezza (17) dal connettore a 13 pin (16), far passare il filo sotto il motore della pinzatrice e collegare il filo con il connettore a 13 pin (16).

-
9. 拆下输送组件(A)的1个蓝色螺丝(14)后，取下固定板(15)。
 10. 揭下13脚插头(16)的1条固定胶带(17)后，将电线穿过装订器马达下面连接13脚插头(16)。

-
9. 搬送ユニット (A) の青ビス (14) 1 本を外して固定板 (15) を取り外す。
 10. 13P コネクタ (16) の固定テープ (17) 1 本を取り外し、ステープルモータの下に電線を通して 13P コネクタ (16) を接続する。



- 11.** Insert the transfer unit (A) into the MFP from the front side and slide it to the left.
Secure the unit using two TP screws M3 × 05 (L) and the pin (18) that has been fitted to the transfer unit (A).

- 11.** Insérer l'unité de transfert (A) dans le MFP depuis l'avant et le faire glisser vers la gauche.
Fixer l'unité avec deux vis TP M3 × 05 (L) et la goupille (18) qui a été ajustée dans l'unité de transfert (A).

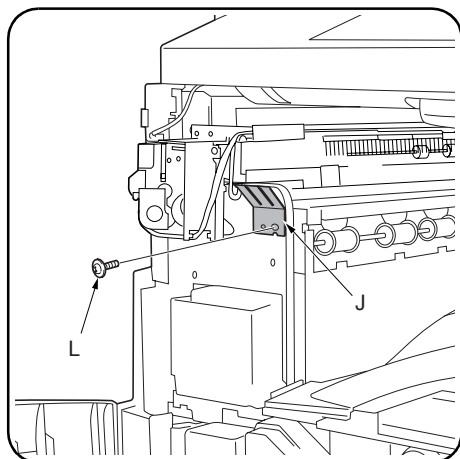
- 11.** Inserte la unidad de transferencia (A) en el MFP desde el lado delantero y deslice hacia la izquierda.
Asegure la unidad utilizando dos tornillos TP M3 × 05 (L) y el pasador (18) colocado en la unidad de transferencia (A).

- 11.** Die Transfereinheit (A) von vorn in den MFP einführen und nach links schieben.
Die Einheit mit zwei TP-Schrauben M3 × 05 (L) und dem an der Transfereinheit (A) angebrachten Stift (18) sichern.

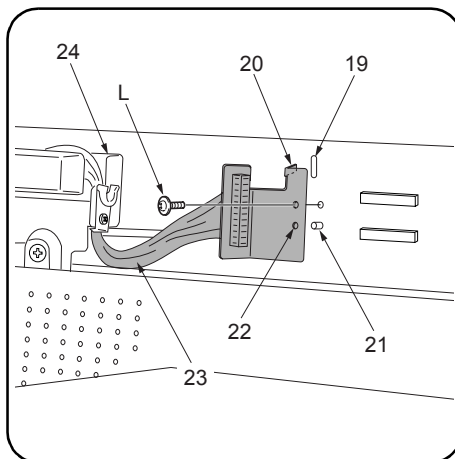
- 11.** Inserite nell'MFP l'unità di trasferimento (A) dal lato frontale e quindi fatela scorrere a sinistra.
Fissate l'unità usando due viti TP M3 × 05 (L) e il perno (18) che avete inserito nell'unità di trasferimento (A).

- 11.** 从MFP主机的前面插入输送组件(A)，并向左侧滑动。
用2个螺丝M3 × 05TP(L)和安装在输送组件(A)上的1个卡销(18)进行固定。

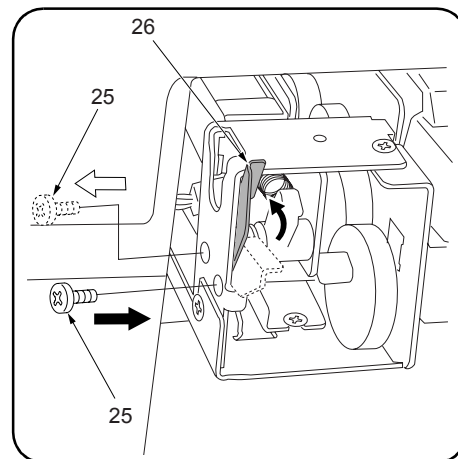
- 11.** 搬送ユニット (A) をMFP 本体の機械前側より挿入し、左側にスライドする。
ビス M3 × 05TP(L) 2 本と搬送ユニット (A) に取り付けられているピン (18) 1 本で固定する。



12. Fit the ground plate (J) using a TP screw M3 × 05 (L).



13. Fit the hook (20) and the hole (22) of the transfer unit (A) to the oblong hole (19) and the projection (21) of the frame of the MFP and secure the unit using a TP screw M3 × 05 (L).
Arrange the cable (23) to position it under the metal fittings (24).



14. Remove the screw (25) from the left rear side of the MFP, turn the lever (26) upward, and fit the screw (25) again to the lower hole.

12. Placer la plaque de masse (J) à l'aide d'une vis TP M3 × 05 (L).

13. Placer le crochet (20) et l'orifice (22) de l'unité de transfert (A) dans l'orifice oblong (19) et dans la saillie (21) du cadre du MFP, et fixer l'unité à l'aide d'une vis TP M3 × 05 (L).
Arranger le câble (23) pour le mettre en place au-dessous des garnitures en métal (24).

14. Enlever la vis (25) du côté arrière gauche du MFP, tourner le levier (26) vers le haut, et replacer la vis (25) dans l'orifice inférieur.

12. Encaje la placa de tierra (J) utilizando un tornillo TP M3 × 05 (L).

13. Encaje el gancho (20) y el orificio (22) de la unidad de transferencia (A) al orificio alargado (19) y la saliente (21) del armazón del MFP y asegure la unidad utilizando un tornillo TP M3 × 05 (L).
Instale el cable (23) para ubicarlos debajo de los herrajes de metal (24).

14. Saque el tornillo (25) del lado trasero del MFP, mueva la palanca (26) hacia arriba, y fije el tornillo (25) de nuevo en el orificio inferior.

12. Die Grundplatte (J) mit einer TP-Schraube M3 × 05 (L) befestigen.

13. Den Haken (20) und das Loch (22) der Transfereinheit (A) in das Langloch (19) und den Vorsprung (21) des MFP-Rahmens einpassen, und die Einheit mit einer TP-Schraube M3 × 05 (L) sichern.
Das Kabel (23) unter den Metallbeschlägen (24) hindurchführen.

14. Die Schraube (25) von der linken Rückseite des MFP entfernen, den Hebel (26) nach oben drehen, und die Schraube (25) wieder in das untere Loch einpassen.

12. Montate la piastra di terra (J) usando una vite TP M3 × 05 (L).

13. Inserite il gancio (20) e il foro (22) dell'unità di trasferimento (A) nel foro oblungo (19) e nella sporgenza (21) del telaio dell'MFP e assicurate l'unità usando una vite TP M3 × 05 (L).
Disponete il cavo (23) in modo da farlo scorrere al di sotto del supporto metallico (24).

14. Rimuovete la vite (25) dal lato posteriore sinistro dell'MFP, girate la leva (26) verso l'alto e inserite di nuovo la vite (25) nel foro inferiore.

12. 用1个螺丝M3 × 05TP(L)装上地线板(J)。

13. 将输送组件(A)的挂钩(20)和孔(22)对准MFP主机机架的长孔(19)和突起部(21)进行安装,并用1个螺丝M3 × 05TP(L)进行固定。
应使电线(23)配置在金属件(24)的下侧。

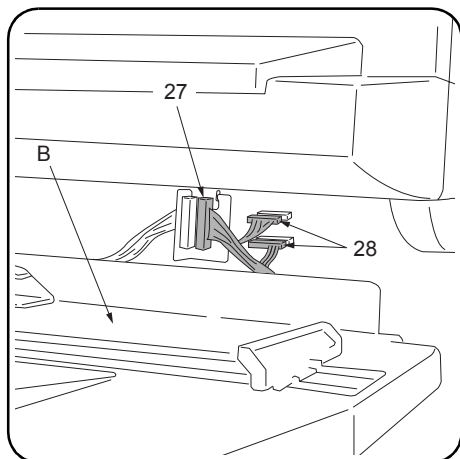
14. 拆下MFP主机左后侧的1个螺丝(25), 将把柄(26)向上方转动, 再用螺丝(25)固定在下侧孔。

12. アース板 (J) をビス M3 × 05TP(L) 1本で取り付ける。

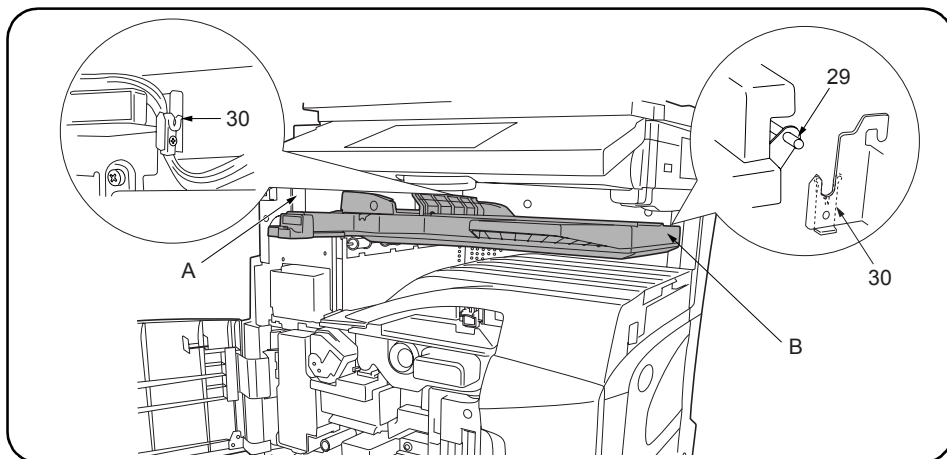
www.tonerplus.com.ua

13. 搬送ユニット (A) のフック (20) と穴 (22) を MFP 本体フレームの長穴 (19) と突起部 (21) に合わせて取り付け、ビス M3 × 05TP (L) 1 本で固定する。
電線 (23) が金具 (24) の下側になるように配線する。

14. MFP 本体左後側のビス (25) 1 本を取り外し、レバー (26) を上方向に回転させ、下側の穴に再度ビス (25) を取り付け。



- 15.** Insert the intermediate tray (B) and connect the connector (white) (27) of the intermediate tray (B) to the transfer unit. Connect the connectors (gray) (28) to the connectors of the MFP as shown in the illustration.
Connect the gray connector (28) with more pins to the upper connector and the gray connector (28) with less pins to the lower connector.



- 16.** Hang the right and left pins (29) of the intermediate tray (B) on the recessed portions (30) of the MFP and the transfer unit (A).
Raise the intermediate tray (B) and set it as shown in the illustration.

- 15.** Insérer le plateau intermédiaire (B) et connecter le connecteur (blanc) (27) du plateau intermédiaire (B) à l'unité de transfert. Connecter les connecteurs (gris) (28) aux connecteurs du MFP comme montré dans l'illustration.
Connecter le connecteur (gris) (28) avec le plus grand nombre de broches au connecteur supérieur et le connecteur (gris) (28) avec le plus petit nombre de broches au connecteur inférieur.

- 16.** Accrocher les goupilles droite et gauche (29) du plateau intermédiaire (B) sur les parties en retrait (30) du MFP et de l'unité de transfert (A).
Elever le plateau intermédiaire (B) et le placer comme indiqué sur l'illustration.

- 15.** Inserte la bandeja intermediaria (B) y conecte el conector (blanco) (27) de la bandeja intermediaria (B) en la unidad de transferencia. Conecte los conectores (grises) (28) en los conectores del MFP tal como aparece en las figuras.
Conecte el conector (gris) (28) con más patillas en el conector superior y el conector (gris) (28) con menos patillas en el conector inferior.

- 16.** Cuelgue los pasadores derecho e izquierdo (29) de la bandeja intermediaria (B) en las partes entradas (30) del MFP y la unidad de transferencia (A).
Suba la bandeja intermediaria (B) y fije tal como aparece en la figura.

- 15.** Die Zwischenablage (B) einführen, und den Steckverbinder (weiß) (27) der Zwischenablage (B) an die Transfereinheit anschließen. Die Steckverbinder (grau) (28) an die Steckverbinder des MFP anschließen, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.
Schließen Sie den Steckverbinder (grau) (28) mit mehr Stiften an den oberen Steckverbinder, und den Steckverbinder (grau) (28) mit weniger Stiften an den unteren Steckverbinder an.

- 16.** Den rechten und linken Stift (29) der Zwischenablage (B) in die Aussparungen (30) des MFP und der Transfereinheit (A) einhängen.
Die Zwischenablage (B) anheben und gemäß der Abbildung einstellen.

- 15.** Inserite il vassoio intermedio (B) e collegatene il connettore (bianco) (27) all'unità di trasferimento. Quindi collegate i connettori (grigio) (28) ai connettori dell'MFP, come illustrato in figura.
Collegate il connettore (grigio) (28) con più contatti al connettore superiore e il connettore (grigio) (28) con meno contatti al connettore inferiore.

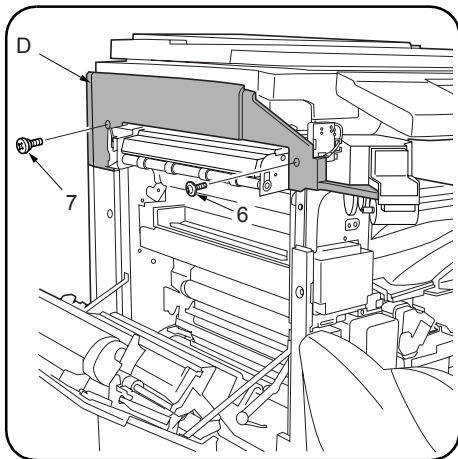
- 16.** Appendete i perni destro e sinistro (29) del vassoio intermedio (B) sulle parti rientranti (30) dell'MFP e dell'unità di trasferimento (A).
Sollevate il vassoio intermedio (B) e regolatelo come illustrato in figura.

- 15.** 插入中间托盘(B), 将中间托盘(B)的连接插头(白)(27)连接在输送组件的连接插座上。如图所示, 将连接插头(灰色)(28)连接在本体的连接插座上。
将连接插头(灰色)(28)的电线数多的一侧朝上, 电线数少的一侧朝下进行连接。

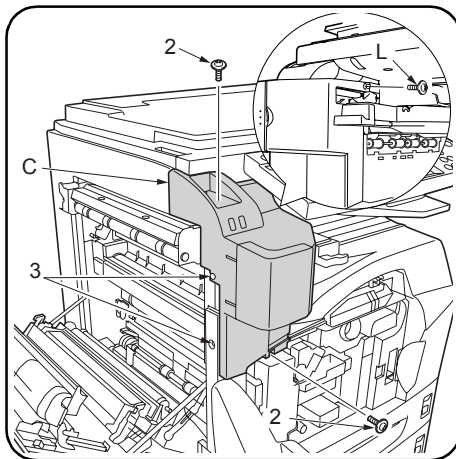
- 16.** 将中间托盘(B)的左右卡销(29)挂在本体和输送组件(A)的凹部(30)上。
将中间托盘(B)向上提起, 如图所示进行固定。

- 15.** 中間トレイ (B) を挿入し、中間トレイ (B) のコネクタ (白) (27) を搬送ユニットのコネクタに接続する。コネクタ (グレー) (28) を図のように本体のコネクタに接続する。
コネクタ (グレー) (28) は電線数の多い方を上側に、少ない方を下側に接続する。

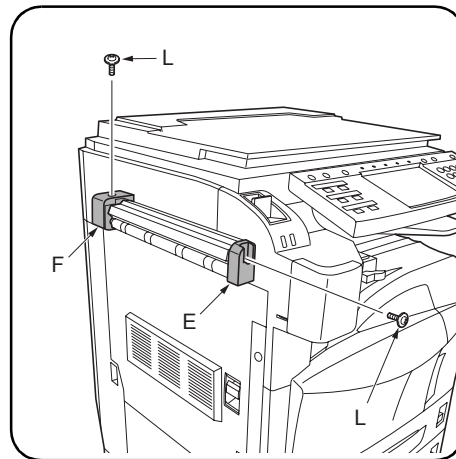
- 16.** 中間トレイ (B) の左右のピン (29) を本体および搬送ユニット (A) の凹部 (30) に引っ掛ける。
中間トレイ (B) を持ち上げ、図のようにセットする。



17. Fit the large ejection cover (D) with the screw (6) that has fixed the upper left cover in step 5 and the screw (7) each.



18. Fit the staple cover (C) using the two screws (3) on the left side to secure and using the two screws (2) that have been removed in step 3 and a TP screw M3 × 05 (L).



19. Refit the staple holder that has been removed in step 3 to its original position and close the transfer left cover and the front cover.
20. Attach the front ejection cover (E) and the rear ejection cover (F) using a TP screw M3 × 05 (L) each.

17. Fixer le grand couvercle d'éjection (D) à l'aide de la vis (6) qui fixait auparavant le couvercle supérieur gauche à l'étape 5 et la vis (7) respectivement.

18. Fixer le couvercle d'agrafes (C) à l'aide des deux vis (3) sur le côté gauche pour le fixer et à l'aide des deux vis (2) qui ont été enlevées dans l'étape 3 et une vis TP M3 × 05 (L).

19. Remettre le support d'agrafes retiré auparavant lors de l'étape 3 à sa position d'origine, et refermer le couvercle de transfert gauche et le couvercle avant.
20. Fixer le couvercle d'éjection avant (E) et le couvercle d'éjection arrière (F) à l'aide d'une vis TP M3 × 05 (L).

17. Encaje la cubierta de expulsión grande (D) con el tornillo (6) que está fijado en la cubierta superior izquierda en el paso 5 y el tornillo (7) a cada una.

18. Encaje la cubierta de grapas (C) utilizando los dos tornillos (3) en el lado izquierdo para asegurar y utilizando los dos tornillos (2) que se retiraron en el paso 3 y un tornillo TP M3 × 05 (L).

19. Vuelva a colocar el soporte de grapas que fue desmontado en el paso 3 a su posición original y cierre la cubierta izquierda de transferencia y la cubierta delantera.
20. Instale la cubierta de expulsión frontal (E) y la cubierta de expulsión trasera (F) utilizando un tornillo TP M3 × 05 (L) cada uno.

17. Die große Auswurfabdeckung (D) jeweils mit der Schraube (6), die in Schritt 5 an der oberen linken Abdeckung angebracht wurde, und der Schraube (7) befestigen.

18. Die Hefterabdeckung (C) zur Sicherung mit den zwei Schrauben (3) auf der linken Seite sowie mit den in Schritt 3 entfernten zwei Schrauben (2) und einer TP-Schraube M3 × 05 (L) befestigen.

19. Den in Schritt 3 entfernten Heftklammerhalter wieder an seiner ursprünglichen Stelle anbringen, und dann die linke Transferabdeckung und die Frontabdeckung schließen.
20. Die vordere Auswurfabdeckung (E) und die hintere Auswurfabdeckung (F) mit je einer TP-Schraube M3 × 05 (L) befestigen.

17. Montate il coperchio grande di espulsione carta (D) con la vite (6) che fissa il coperchio superiore sinistro nel passo 5 e con una vite (7) per ciascuno.

18. Montate il coperchio della graffatrice (C) usando le due viti (3) sul lato sinistro per fissare e le due viti (2) che sono state rimosse nel passo 3 e una vite TP M3 × 05 (L).

19. Vuelva a colocar el soporte de grapas que fue desmontado en el paso 3 a su posición original y cierre la cubierta izquierda de transferencia y la cubierta delantera.
20. Utilizzando una vite TP M3 × 05 (L) ciascuno, montate il coperchio frontale di espulsione carta (E) ed il coperchio posteriore di espulsione carta (F).

17. 用步骤5固定的左上盖板的螺丝(6)和卡销(7)各1个, 装上排纸盖板(大)(D)。

18. 用左侧的2个螺丝(3)固定装书钉盖板(C), 并用步骤3拆下的2个螺丝(2)和1个螺丝M3 × 05TP(L)进行固定。

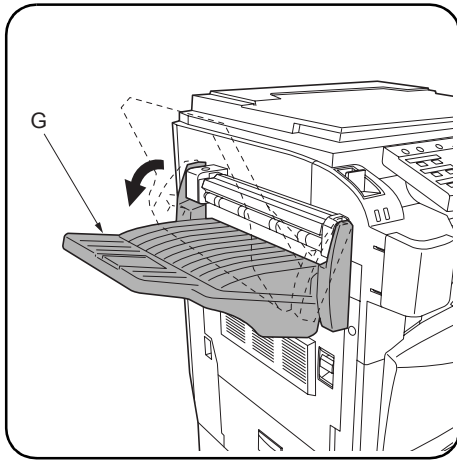
19. 按原样装好在步骤3卸下的装书钉盒, 关闭输送左盖板和前盖板。
20. 分别用1个螺丝M3 × 05TP(L)装上排纸盖板(前)(E)和排纸盖板(后)(F)。

17. 手順5で左上カバーを固定していたビス (6) およびピン (7) 各1本で、排出カバー大 (D) を取り付けます。

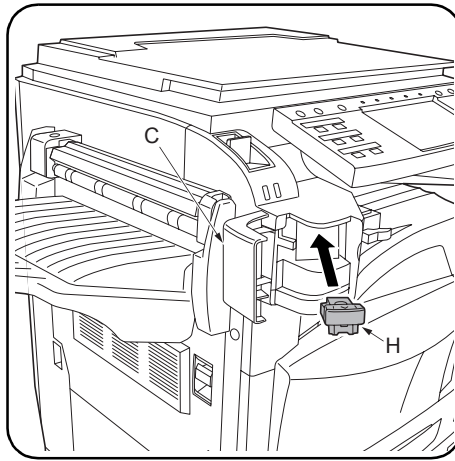
18. ステープルカバー (C) を左側のビス (3) 2本で固定し、手順3で外したビス (2) 2本とビス M3 × 05TP (L) 1本で取り付けます。

19. 手順3で取り外したステープルホルダーを元どおり取り付け、搬送左カバーおよび前カバーを閉める。
20. 排出カバー前 (E) および排出カバー後 (F) をビス M3 × 05TP (L) 各1本で取り付けます。

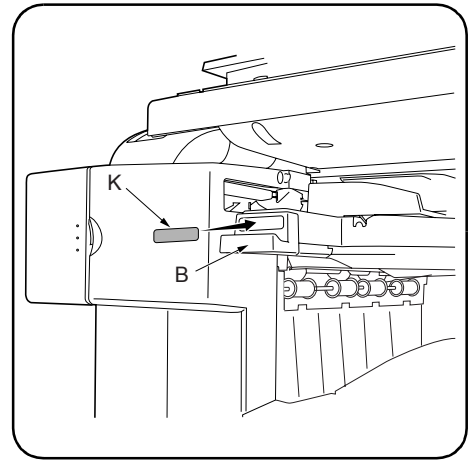
TONER



21. Attach the copy tray (G).



22. Open the staple cover (C) and insert the staple cartridge (H) into the stapler.
23. Close the staple cover (C).



24. After cleaning with alcohol, attach the Pull label (K) written in the adequate language onto the label on the intermediate tray (B) as required.

21. Fixer le plateau à copies (G).

22. Ouvrir le couvercle d'agrafes (C) et insérer la cartouche d'agrafes (H) dans l'agrafeuse.
23. Refermer le couvercle d'agrafes (C).

24. Après avoir nettoyé avec de l'alcool, fixer l'étiquette Tirer (K) écrite dans la langue adéquate sur l'étiquette sur le plateau intermédiaire (B) comme nécessaire.

21. Instale la bandeja de copias (G).

22. Abra la cubierta de grapas (C) e inserte el cartucho de grapas (H) en el grapador.
23. Cierre la cubierta de grapas (C).

24. Después de limpiar con alcohol, pegue la etiqueta de tiro (K) escrito en el idioma adecuado en la etiqueta en la bandeja intermediaria (B) según sea necesario.

21. Die Kopienablage (G) anbringen.

22. Die Hefterabdeckung (C) öffnen, und die Heftklammerpatrone (H) in den Hefter einsetzen.
23. Die Hefterabdeckung (C) schließen.

24. Je nach Bedarf den Abziehaufkleber (K) der entsprechenden Sprache nach der Reinigung mit Alkohol auf den Aufkleber an der Zwischenablage (B) anbringen.

21. Montate il vassoio delle copie (G).

22. Aprire il coperchio della graffatrice (C) e inserire la cartuccia della graffatrice (H).
23. Chiudere il coperchio della graffatrice (C).

24. Dopo che avete pulito con alcol, fissate l'etichetta staccabile (K) scritta nella lingua appropriata sull'etichetta del vassoio intermedio (B) come richiesto.

21. 装上排纸托盘(G)。

22. 打开装书订盖板(C)后, 将订书钉盒(H)插入装订器里。
23. 关上装书订盖板(C)。

24. 根据需要, 用酒精将中间托盘(B)的标签处擦净后, 贴上使用语言的PULL标签(K)。

21. 排出トレイ (G) を取り付け。

22. ステープルカバー(C) を開き、ステープルカートリッジ (H) をステープルに挿入する。
23. ステープルカバー(C) を開める。

24. 必要に応じて、中間トレイ (B) のラベルの上に、アルコール清掃後言語に合った PULL ラベル (K) を貼り付ける。

Operation check

1. Insert the power plug of the MFP into an outlet and turn the main switch on.
2. Select the staple mode and make a stapled copy to check that stapling is performed properly.

Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans une prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Sélectionner le mode d'agrafeuse et effectuer une copie agrafée pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'agrafeuse.

Verificación del funcionamiento

1. Enchufe el cable eléctrico del MFP en un tomacorriente y conecte el interruptor principal.
2. Seleccione el modo de grapas y haga una copia grapada para comprobar que el grapado se hace correctamente.

Betriebsprüfung

1. Den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Netzsteckdose einstecken, und den Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Den Heftmodus wählen und eine geheftete Kopie anfertigen, um zu prüfen, ob die Heftung korrekt durchgeführt wird.

Verifica di funzionamento

1. Inserite il cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa di rete e quindi accendetela.
2. Selezionate il modo graffatrice e quindi eseguite una copia graffata, in modo da verificare che la graffatrice funzioni correttamente.

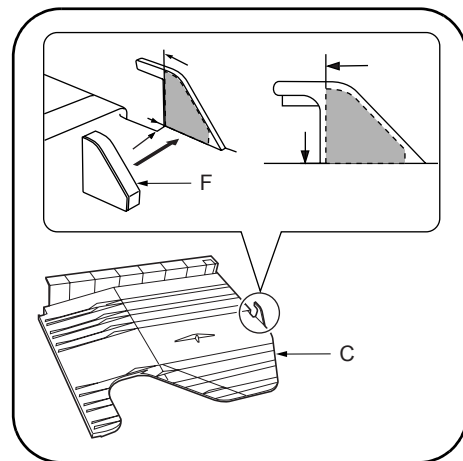
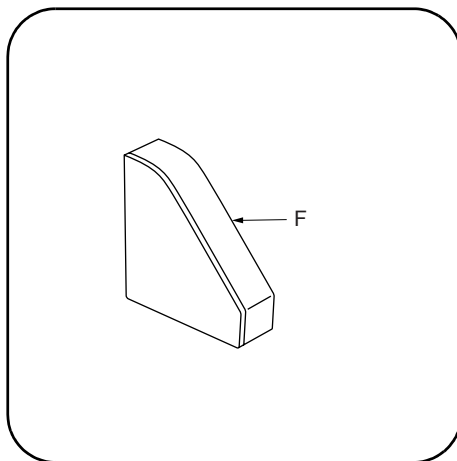
[确认操作情况]

1. 将MFP主机的电源插头插入插座后，接通主电源开关。
2. 选择装订模式后，进行装订复印，确认是否可以装订。

[動作確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. ステープルモードを選択して、ステープルコピーを行い、ステープルされるか確認する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR JOB SEPARATOR



English

Adding procedure to the job separator installation (metric specifications only)

The following step is added after step 9 on page 4.

Supplied parts

F Eject stopper A3 1

After using alcohol to clean the portion of the job separator tray (C) shown in the figure, adhere the eject stopper A3 (F) along the reference lines.

Français

Ajout d'une procédure à l'installation du séparateur de travaux (pour spécifications métriques seulement)

L'étape suivante est ajoutée après l'étape 9 de la page 4.

Pièces fournies

F Butée d'éjection A3 1

Après avoir utilisé de l'alcool pour nettoyer le plateau du séparateur de travaux (C) montré dans la figure, faire adhérer la butée d'éjection A3 (F) le long des lignes de référence.

Español

Agregando un procedimiento a la instalación del separador de trabajos (sólo para las especificaciones métricas)

Se agrega el siguiente paso después del paso 9 en la página 4.

Partes suministradas

F Tope de expulsión de A3 1

Después de utilizar alcohol para limpiar la parte de la bandeja del separador de trabajos (C) que aparece en la figura, pegue el tope de expulsión de A3 (F) por las líneas de referencia.

Deutsch

Hinzufügung eines Verfahrens zur Jobtrenner-Installation (nur metrische Spezifikationen)

Der folgende Schritt wird nach Schritt 9 auf Seite 4 hinzugefügt.

Gelieferte Teile

F Auswerfanschlag A3 1

Den in der Abbildung gezeigten Abschnitt der Jobtrennerablage (C) mit Alkohol reinigen, dann den Auswerfanschlag A3 (F) innerhalb der Bezugslinien ankleben.

Italiano

Procedura addizionale per l'installazione del separatore (solo per le specifiche metriche)

Il seguente passo viene aggiunto dopo il passo 9 a pagina 4.

Parti fornite

F Fermo di espulsione A3 1

Dopo avere usato l'alcol per pulire la parte del vassoio del separatore (C) illustrata in figura, fare aderire il fermo di espulsione A3 (F) lungo le linee di riferimento.

简体中文

安装作业分离器时的补充步骤 (仅限英寸规格产品)

在第 4 页的步骤 9 后面补充以下步骤。

附属部件

F 排纸挡块 A3 1

用酒精擦净作业分离器排纸托盘 (C) (图示位置) 后, 沿着基准线贴上排纸挡块 A3 (F)。

日本語

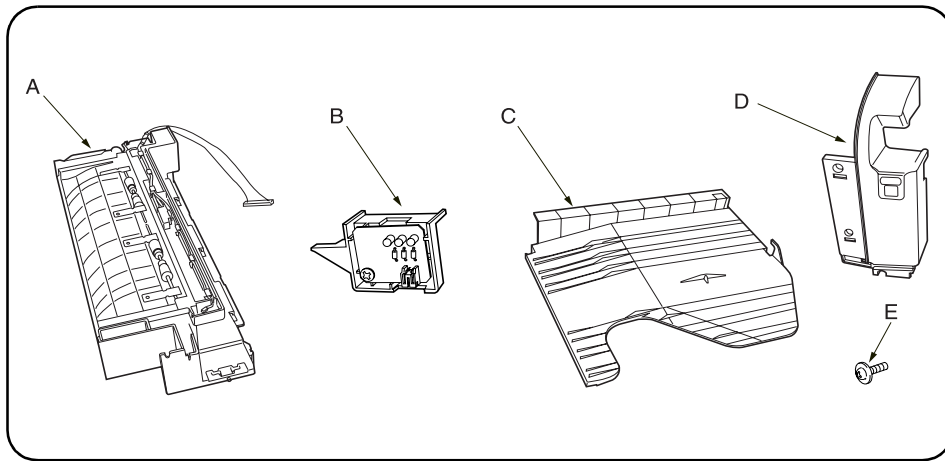
ジョブセパレータ設置時の手順追加 (センチ仕様のみ)

4 ページ、手順 9 の後に、次の手順を追加。

付属品

F 排出ストッパ A3 1

ジョブセパレータ排出トレイ (C) の図の位置をアルコール清掃後、排出ストッパ A3 (F) を基準に沿って貼り付ける。



English

E TP screw M3 × 05 1

Supplied part

A Job separator.....	1
B LED PCB.....	1
C Job separator copy tray.....	1
D Left front cover JS.....	1

Procedure

Caution: When installing a job separator, be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet.

Français

E Vis TP M3 × 05 1

Pièce fournie

A Séparateur de travaux.....	1
B LED PCB.....	1
C Plateau de copies du séparateur de travaux.....	1
D Couvercle avant gauche JS.....	1

Procédure

Précaution: Lors de l'installation d'un séparateur de travaux, veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale.

Español

E Tornillo TP M3 × 05 1

Parte provista

A Separador de trabajos.....	1
B PCB en LED.....	1
C Bandeja de copias del separador de trabajos.....	1
D Cubierta delantera izquierda JS.....	1

Procedimiento

Precaución: Cuando se instala un separador de trabajos, asegúrese de desconectar el interruptor principal del MFP y desenchufar el cable eléctrico del tomacorriente de la pared.

Deutsch

E TP-Schraube M3 × 05..... 1

Gelieferte Teile

A Jobtrenner.....	1
B LED-Leiterplatte.....	1
C Jobtrenner-Kopienablage.....	1
D Linke Frontabdeckung JS.....	1

Vorgang

Vorsicht: Schalten Sie vor der Installation des Jobtrenners unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab.

Italiano

E Vite TP M3 × 05 1

Parte fornita

A Separatore.....	1
B Scheda LED.....	1
C Vassoio copie del separatore.....	1
D Coperchio frontale sinistro del separatore.....	1

Procedura

Attenzione: Al momento dell'installazione del separatore, assicuratevi innanzitutto di spegnere l'MFP e scollegare il cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di rete.

简体中文

E 螺丝M3 × 05TP 1

附属部件

A 作业分离器.....	1
B LED电路板.....	1
C 作业分离器排纸托盘.....	1
D 左前盖板JS.....	1

[安装步骤]

安装作业分离器时，必须先切断MFP主机的主电源开关，并拔下MFP主机上的电源插头后，再进行安装作业。

日本語

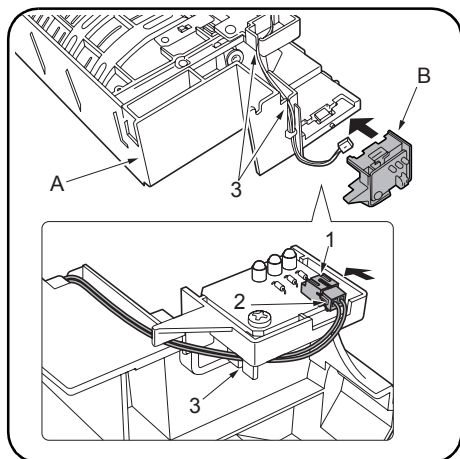
E ビス M3 × 05TP 1

付属品

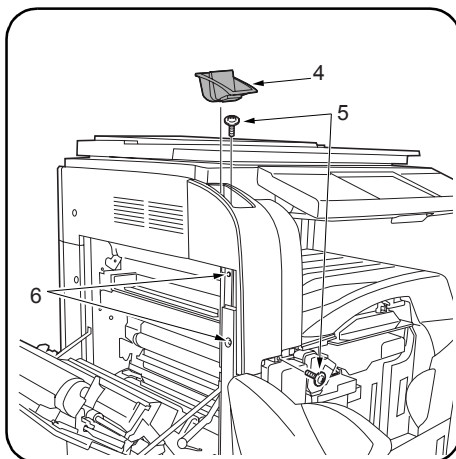
A ジョブセパレータ.....	1
B LED基板.....	1
C ジョブセパレータ排出トレイ.....	1
D 左前カバーJS.....	1

[取付手順]

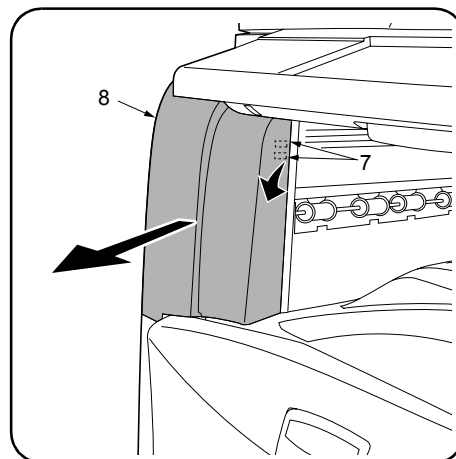
ジョブセパレータを取り付ける際は、必ずMFP本体のメインスイッチをOFFにし、電源プラグを外して作業を行うこと。



1. Insert the LED PCB (B) into the job separator (A).
Connect the 2-pin connector (2) of the job separator (A) into the 2-pin connector (1) of the LED PCB (B) by arranging the wire into the three grooves (3) of the job separator (A).



2. Open the left transfer cover and the front cover.
3. Remove the staple holder (4), remove the two screws (5) from the upper side and the front side, and loosen the two screws (6) on the left side.



4. Open the hook (7) on the right side and remove the left front cover (8).

1. Insérer le LED PCB (B) dans le séparateur de travaux (A).
Brancher le connecteur à deux broches (2) du séparateur de travaux (A) dans le connecteur à deux broches (1) du LED PCB (B) en plaçant le fil dans les trois rainures (3) du séparateur de travaux (A).

2. Ouvrir le couvercle de transfert gauche et le couvercle avant.
3. Retirer le support d'agrafes (4), retirer les deux vis (5) du côté supérieur et du côté avant, et desserrer les deux vis (6) du côté gauche.

4. Ouvrir le crochet (7) se trouvant sur le côté droit et retirer le couvercle avant gauche (8).

1. Inserte el PCB en LED (B) en el separador de trabajos (A).
Conecte el conector de 2 patillas (2) del separador de trabajos (A) en el conector de 2 patillas (1) del PCB en LED (B) colocando el cable en las tres ranuras (3) del separador de trabajos (A).

2. Abra la cubierta de transferencia izquierda y la cubierta frontal.
3. Desmonte el soporte de grapas (4), saque los dos tornillos (5) del lado superior y el lado delantero y afloje los dos tornillos (6) en el lado izquierdo.

4. Abra el gancho (7) en el lado derecho y desmonte la cubierta delantera izquierda (8).

1. Die LED-Leiterplatte (B) in den Jobtrenner (A) einführen.
Den 2-poligen Steckverbinder (2) des Jobtrenners (A) mit dem 2-poligen Steckverbinder (1) der LED-Leiterplatte (B) verbinden, indem das Kabel in den drei Nuten (3) des Jobtrenners (A) angeordnet wird.

2. Die linke Transferabdeckung und die Frontabdeckung öffnen.
3. Den Heftklammerhalter (4) entfernen, die zwei Schrauben (5) an der Ober- und Vorderseite herausdrehen, und die zwei Schrauben (6) auf der linken Seite lösen.

4. Den Haken (7) auf der rechten Seite öffnen, und die linke Frontabdeckung (8) abnehmen.

1. Inserite la scheda LED (B) nel separatore (A).
Collegate il connettore a 2 pin (2) del separatore (A) nel connettore a 2 pin (1) della scheda LED (B) disponendo il cavo all'interno delle tre scanalature (3) del separatore (A).

2. Aprite il coperchio di trasferimento sinistro e quindi il coperchio frontale.
3. Rimuovete il vassoio graffette (4), rimuovete le due viti (5) dal lato superiore e dal lato frontale e allentate le due viti (6) sul lato sinistro.

4. Aprite il gancio (7) che si trova sul lato destro e rimuovete il coperchio frontale sinistro (8).

1. 在作业分离器 (A) 上插入LED印刷电路板 (B)。将作业分离器 (A) 的2脚插头 (2) 连在作业分离器的3处槽 (3) 电线上, 然后连接在LED印刷电路板 (B) 的2脚插头 (1) 上。

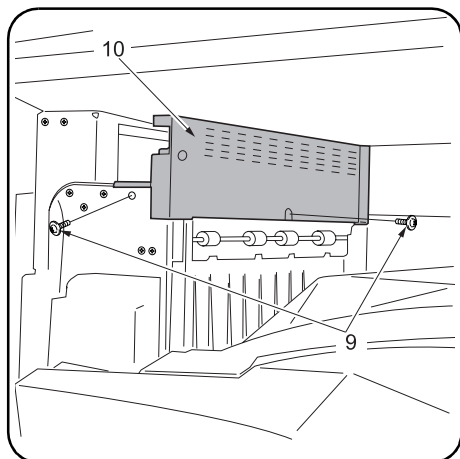
2. 打开输送左盖板和前盖板。
3. 拆下装书钉盒 (4), 卸下上侧和前侧的2个螺丝 (5), 接着松弛2个左侧螺丝 (6)。

4. 打开右侧支架部 (7), 取下左前盖板 (8)。

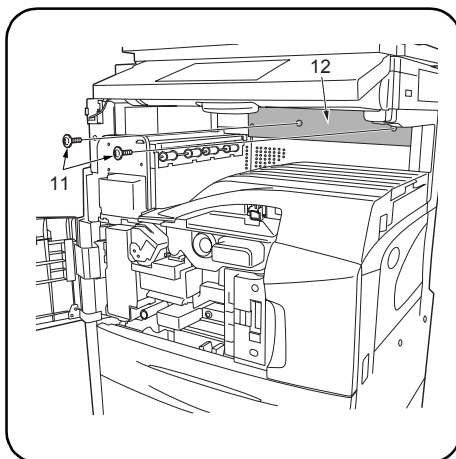
1. ジョブセパレータ (A) にLED基板 (B) を挿入する。
ジョブセパレータ (A) の2Pコネクタ (2) を、ジョブセパレータの溝 (3) 3ヶ所に電線を配線して、LED基板 (B) の2Pコネクタ (1) に接続する。

2. 搬送左カバーおよび前カバーを開ける。
3. ステープルホルダー (4) を取り外し、上側と前側のビス (5) 2本を外して、左側のビス (6) 2本をゆるめる。

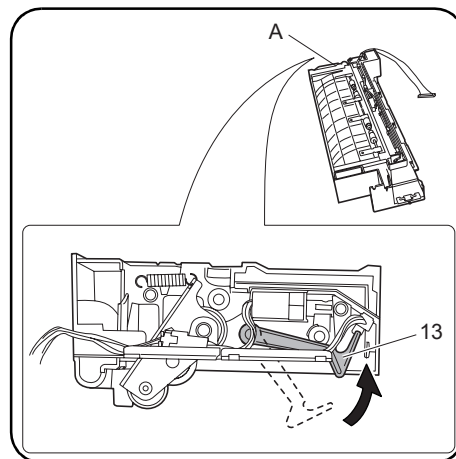
4. 右側の引っ掛け部 (7) を開いて左前カバー (8) を取り外す。



5. Remove the two screws (9) and remove the ejection cover (10) with the mounting plate.



6. Remove the two screws (11) and then remove the inner ejection cover (12).



7. If the branch pressure lever (13) on the rear side of the job separator (A) has lowered, raise it.

5. Enlever les deux vis (9) et enlever le couvercle d'éjection (10) avec la plaque de montage.

6. Enlever les deux vis (11), puis enlever le couvercle d'éjection interne (12).

7. Si le levier de pression fourchu (13) situé sur le côté arrière du séparateur de travaux (A) est abaissé, le relever.

5. Saque los dos tornillos (9) y desmonte la cubierta de expulsión (10) con la placa de montaje.

6. Saque los dos tornillos (11) y desmonte la cubierta de expulsión interior (12).

7. Si bajó la palanca de presión de ramal (13) en el lado trasero del separador de trabajos (A) levántela.

5. Die zwei Schrauben (9) entfernen, und dann die Auswurfabdeckung (10) mit der Montageplatte abnehmen.

6. Die zwei Schrauben (11) entfernen, und dann die innere Auswurfabdeckung (12) abnehmen.

7. Falls der Zweigdruckhebel (13) auf der Rückseite des Jobtrenners (A) abgesenkt ist, muss er angehoben werden.

5. Rimuovete ora le due viti (9) e quindi il coperchio di espulsione (10) con la piastra di montaggio.

6. Rimuovete le due viti (11) e quindi il coperchio interno di espulsione (12).

7. Se la leva a pressione del braccio (13) situata sul lato posteriore del separatore (A) è abbassata, sollevatela.

5. 卸下2个螺丝 (9), 然后将排纸盖板 (10) 的整个安装板拆下。

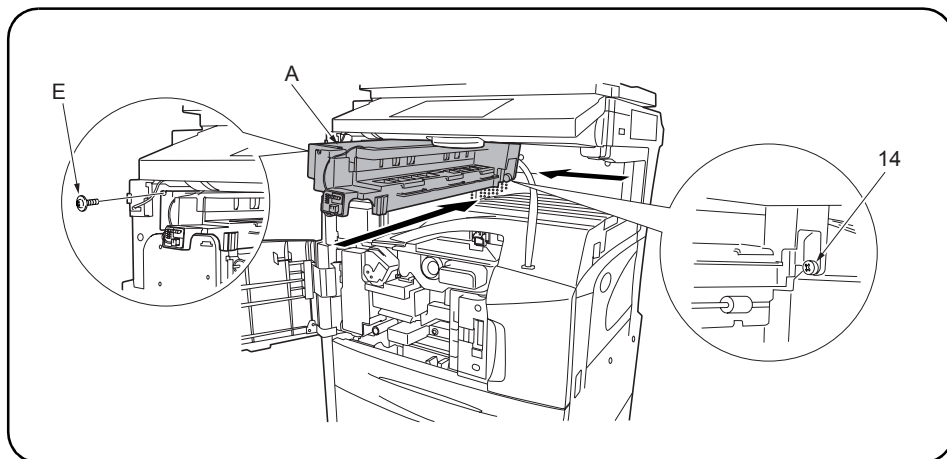
6. 卸下2个螺丝 (11), 然后拆下排纸内盖板 (12)。

7. 如果作业分离器 (A) 后侧的分歧按压把柄 (13) 朝下方状态时, 把它向上提起。

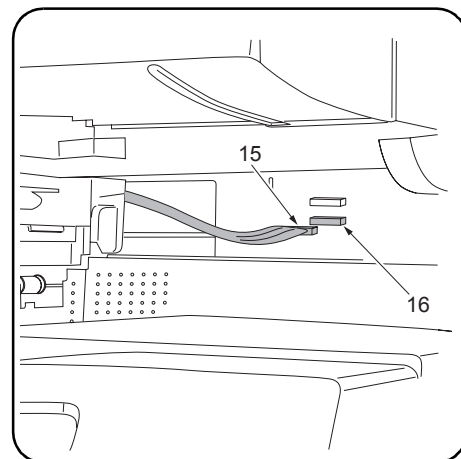
5. Бис (9) 2 本を外し、排出カバー (10) を取付板ごと取り外す。

6. Бис (11) 2 本を外し、排出内カバー (12) を取り外す。

7. ジョブセパレータ (A) 後側の分歧押圧レバー (13) が下方方向に下がっている場合は上げる。



8. Insert the job separator (A) into the MFP from the front side and slide it to the left. Secure the rear side using a pin (14) and the front side using a TP screw M3 × 05 (E).



9. Connect the connector (15) of the job separator to the lower connector (16) of the MFP.

8. Insérer le séparateur de travaux (A) dans le MFP depuis le côté avant et le faire glisser vers la gauche. Fixer l'arrière à l'aide d'une goupille (14) et l'avant à l'aide d'une vis TP M3 × 05 (E).

9. Connecter le connecteur (15) du séparateur de travaux au connecteur inférieur (16) du MFP.

8. Inserte el separador de trabajos (A) en el MFP del lado delantero y deslice hacia la izquierda. Asegure el lado trasero utilizando un pasador (14) y el lado delantero utilizando un tornillo TP M3 × 05 (E).

9. Conecte el conector (15) del separador de trabajos en el conector inferior (16) del MFP.

8. Den Jobtrenner (A) von der Vorderseite in den MFP einführen und nach links schieben. Die Rückseite mit einem Stift (14), und die Vorderseite mit einer TP-Schraube M3 × 05 (E) sichern.

9. Den Steckverbinder (15) des Jobtrenners an den unteren Steckverbinder (16) des MFP anschließen.

8. Inserite il separatore (A) nell'MFP dal lato frontale e fatelo scorrere a sinistra. Assicurate il lato posteriore usando un pernetto (14) e il lato frontale usando una vite TP M3 × 05 (E).

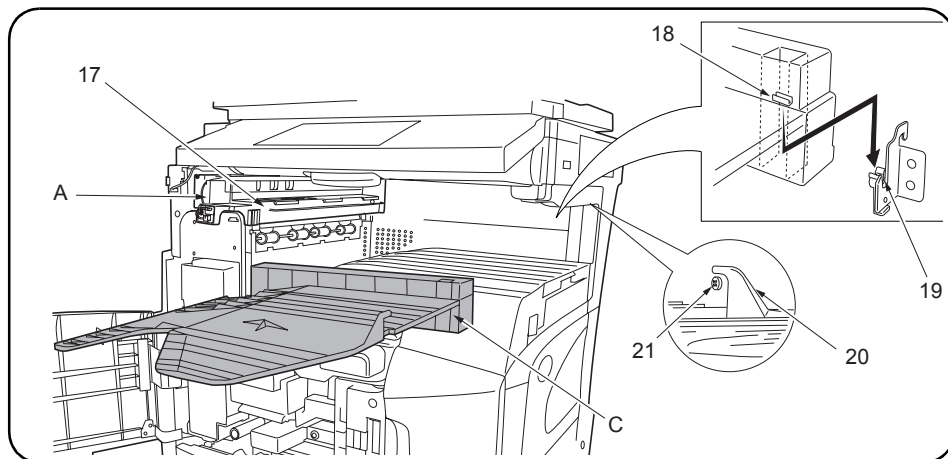
9. Collegate il connettore (15) del separatore al connettore inferiore (16) dell'MFP.

8. 从MFP主机的前侧插入作业分离器 (A) 后，向左侧滑动。用1个卡销 (14) 固定后侧，然后再用1个螺丝M3 × 05TP (E) 固定前侧。

9. 将作业分离器的连接插头 (15) 连接在本体的连接插座(下侧) (16) 上。

8. ジョブセパレータ (A) をMFP本体の機械前側より挿入し、左側にスライドする。後側をピン (14) 1本で固定してから前側をビスM3 × 05TP (E) 1本で固定する。

9. ジョブセパレータのコネクタ (15) を本体のコネクタ(下側) (16) に接続する。



- 10. Attach the job separator tray (C) to the rail (17) of the job separator (A) by sliding it from the front side.**
 Insert the fitting section (18) on the right side of the job separator tray (C) into the recessed portion (19) of the MFP.
 Put the hook (20) on the right side onto the pin (21) located inside the MFP.

- 10. Fixer le plateau du séparateur de travaux (C) au rail (17) du séparateur de travaux (A) en le faisant glisser depuis l'avant.**
 Insérer la section de la garniture (18) en le côté droit du séparateur de travaux (C) dans la partie en retrait (19) du MFP.
 Mettre le crochet (20) sur le côté droit sur la goupille (21) située dans le MFP.

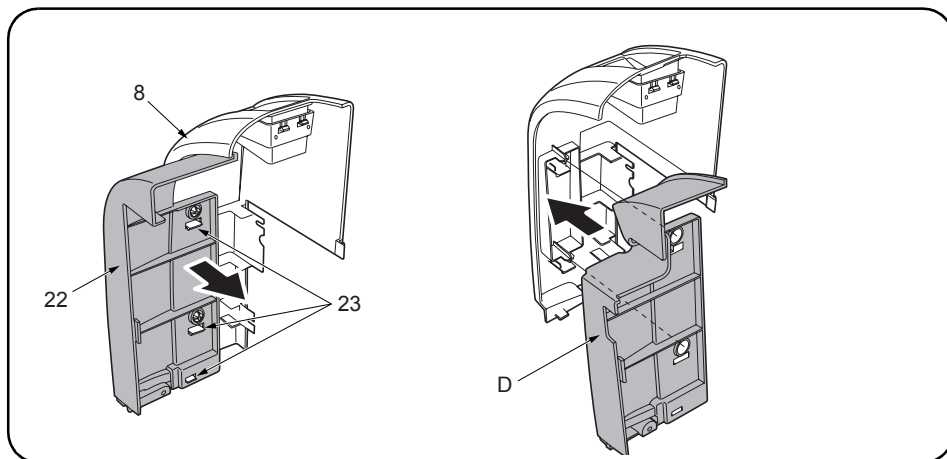
- 10. Instale la bandeja del separador de trabajos (C) en el carril (17) del separador de trabajos (A) deslizando por el lado delantero.**
 Inserte la sección de fijación (18) en el lado derecho de la bandeja del separador de trabajos (C) en la parte entrada (19) del MFP.
 Ponga el gancho (20) en el lado derecho del pasador (21) ubicado dentro del MFP.

- 10. Die Jobtrennerablage (C) von der Vorderseite auf die Schiene (17) des Jobtrenners (A) schieben.**
 Die Passkante (18) auf der rechten Seite der Jobtrennerablage (C) in die Aussparung (19) des MFP einführen.
 Den Haken (20) auf der rechten Seite auf den Stift (21) im Inneren des MFP setzen.

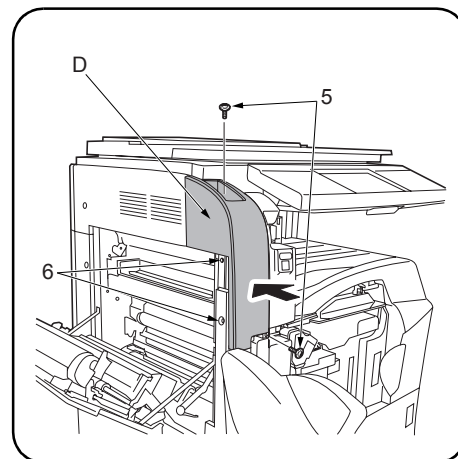
- 10. Montate il vassoio del separatore (C) sulla rotaia (17) del separatore stesso, facendolo scorrere dal lato frontale.**
 Inserite la sezione di montaggio (18) situata sul lato destro del vassoio del separatore (C) nella posizione rientrante (19) dell'MFP.
 Mettete il gancio (20) situato sul lato destro sul perno (21) che si trova all'interno dell'MFP.

- 10. 将作业分离器托盘 (C) 从前侧滑动装入作业分离器 (A) 的导板 (17) 上。**
 将作业分离器排纸托盘 (C) 的右侧安装部 (18) 插入本体的凹部 (19)。
 将右侧的挂钩 (20) 放在MFP主机内侧的卡销 (21) 上。

- 10. ジョブセパレータ (A) のレール (17) にジョブセパレータ排出トレイ (C) を前側よりスライドさせて取り付け。**
 ジョブセパレータ排出トレイ (C) 右側の取付部 (18) を本体の凹部 (19) に挿入する。
 右側面のフック (20) を MFP 本体内側のピン (21) の上に乗せる。



11. Release the three tabs (23) of the left front cover (8) that has been removed in step 4 to remove the white right side section (22), and fit the left front cover JS (D).



12. Fit the left front cover JS (D) using the two screws (6) on the left side to secure and using the two screws (5) that have been removed in step 3.

11. Libérer les trois languettes (23) du couvercle avant gauche (8) retiré auparavant lors de l'étape 4 pour retirer la section blanche du côté droit (22), et placer le couvercle avant gauche JS (D).

12. Placer le couvercle avant gauche JS (D) à l'aide des deux vis (6) sur le côté gauche pour le fixer et en utilisant les deux vis (5) retirées auparavant lors de l'étape 3.

11. Suelte las tres lengüetas (23) de la cubierta delantera izquierda (8) que fue desmontada en el paso 4 para desmontar la sección del lado derecho blanca (22), y encaje la cubierta delantera izquierda JS (D).

12. Encaje la cubierta delantera izquierda JS (D) utilizando los dos tornillos (6) en el lado izquierdo y utilizando los dos tornillos (5) que fueron desmontados en el paso 3.

11. Die drei Laschen (23) der in Schritt 4 entfernten linken Frontabdeckung (8) lösen, um den weißen rechten Seitenteil (22) abzunehmen, und die linke Frontabdeckung JS (D) anbringen.

12. Die linke Frontabdeckung JS (D) mit den zwei Schrauben (6) auf der linken Seite und mit den in Schritt 3 entfernten zwei Schrauben (5) befestigen.

11. Rilasciate le tre linguette (23) situate sul coperchio frontale sinistro (8), che avete rimosso nel passo 4, per rimuovere la sezione laterale bianca destra (22) e montate il coperchio frontale sinistro JS (D).

12. Montate il coperchio frontale sinistro JS (D) usando le due viti (6) sul lato sinistro per fissarlo e usando le due viti (5) che sono state rimosse nel passo 3.

11. 解除在步骤4拆下的左前盖板 (8) 的3处卡爪 (23), 取下右侧部(白色) (22) 后, 装上左前盖板JS (D)。

12. 用2个左侧螺丝 (6) 固定左前盖板JS (D), 用步骤3拆下的2个螺丝 (5) 进行固定。

11. 手順4で取り外した左前カバー (8) のツメ (23) 3ヶ所を解除して、右側部 (白) (22) を外し、左前カバーJS (D) を取り付け。

12. 左前カバーJS (D) を左側のビス (6) 2本で固定し、手順3で外したビス (5) 2本で取り付け。

13. Refit the staple holder that has been removed in step 3 to its original position and close the transfer left cover and the front cover.

Operation check

1. Insert the power plug of the MFP into an outlet and turn the main switch on.
2. Press "Org./Paper/Finishing" and "Output Tray" on the touch panel in this order to select "Job separator Tray".

3. Make a test copy to check that a copy is ejected to the job separator tray (C).

13. Remettre le support d'agrafes retiré auparavant lors de l'étape 3 à sa position d'origine, et refermer le couvercle de transfert gauche et le couvercle avant.

Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans une prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Presser "Org./Papier/Finition" et "Bac de sortie" sur l'écran tactile dans cet ordre pour sélectionner "Plateau du sépar. trav."

3. Effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier que la copie est éjectée dans le plateau du séparateur de travaux (C).

13. Vuelva a colocar el soporte de grapas que fue desmontado en el paso 3 a su posición original y cierre la cubierta izquierda de transferencia y la cubierta delantera.

Verificación del funcionamiento

1. Enchufe el cable eléctrico del MFP en un tomacorriente y conecte el interruptor principal.
2. Presione "Org./papel/Finalizando" y "Bandeja de salida" en el panel de toque para seleccionar "Band. de separad. trab."

3. Haga una copia de prueba para verificar que la copia sale a la bandeja del separador de trabajos (C).

13. Den in Schritt 3 entfernten Heftklammerhalter wieder an seiner ursprünglichen Stelle anbringen, und dann die linke Transferabdeckung und die Frontabdeckung schließen.

Betriebsprüfung

1. Den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Netzsteckdose einstecken, und den Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Die Tasten "Org./Papier/Endbearbeitung" und "Druckablage" auf dem Sensorbildschirm in dieser Reihenfolge drücken, um "Job Separator-Fach" zu wählen.

3. Eine Probekopie anfertigen, um zu prüfen, ob die Kopie in die Jobtrennerablage (C) ausgeworfen wird.

13. Montate nuovamente il vassoio graffette che è stato rimosso nel passo 3 nella sua posizione originale e chiudete il coperchio di trasferimento sinistro e quindi il coperchio frontale.

Verifica di funzionamento

1. Inserite il cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa di rete e quindi accendetela.
2. Premete "Org./Carta/Finitura" e "Vassoia di uscita" sul pannello a sfioramento in questo ordine per selezionare "Vass. separat. Lavori".

3. Effettuate una copia di prova per verificare che essa venga espulsa sul vassoio del separatore (C).

13. 按原样装好在步骤3卸下的装书钉盒，关闭输送左盖板和前盖板。

[确认操作情况]

1. 将MFP主机的电源插头插入插座后，接通主电源开关。
2. 按下触控板，顺序表示出“原稿/纸张/装订”、“出纸口”，选定“作业分离器”。

3. 进行试印，确认纸张是否排在作业分离器托盘 (C) 上。

13. 手順3で取り外したステーブルホルダーを元どおり取り付け、搬送左カバーおよび前カバーを閉める。

[動作確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. タッチパネルで「原稿 / 用紙 / 仕上げ」、「排紙先」を順に押し「ジョブセパレータ」を選択する。

3. テストコピーを行い、用紙がジョブセパレータ排出トレイ (C) に排出されたことを確認する。



INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR FAX System (M)

English

To install the FAX circuit board, see page 1.
To install the FAX circuit board as Dual FAX, see page 10.

Français

Pour installer la carte à circuits FAX, se reporter à la page 1.
Pour installer la carte à circuits FAX comme FAX double, se reporter à la page 10.

Español

Para instalar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX, vea la página 1.
Para instalar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en el FAX dual, vea la página 10.

Deutsch

Angaben zur Installation der FAX-Leiterplatte finden Sie auf Seite 1.
Angaben zur Installation der FAX-Leiterplatte als Dual FAX finden Sie auf Seite 10.

Italiano

Per installare la scheda a circuiti FAX, vedere pagina 1.
Per installare la scheda a circuiti FAX come Dual FAX, vedere pagina 10.

简体中文

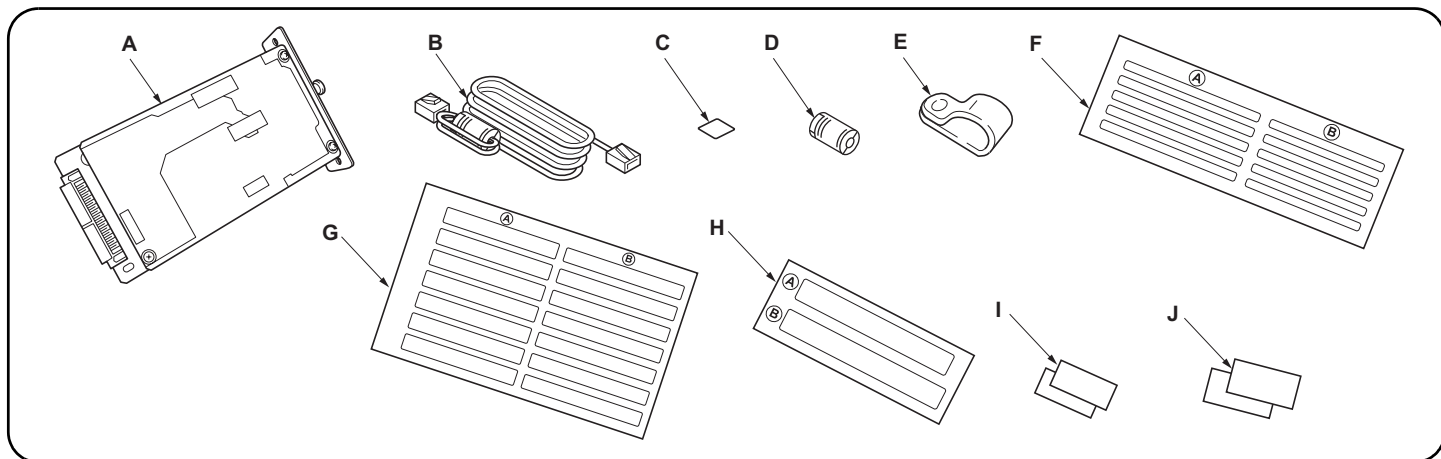
安装传真组件时…从第 1 页开始
安装多插口组件时…从第 10 页开始

TONER

日本語

www.tonerplus.com.ua

ファクスシステムを設置する場合…1 ページから始める
マルチポートを設置する場合…10 ページから始める
FAX 標準機にマルチポートを設置する場合…10 ページから始める



Supplied parts

A	FAX circuit board	1
B	Modular connector cable (100 V/120 V/Australian models only)	1
C	Terminal seal	1
D	Ferrite core 100 V/120 V/Australian/New Zealand models	1
	110 V/230 V models	2
E	Clamp	1

F	Alphabet label	1
G	FAX operation section label (except for 100 V model)	1
H	FAX operation section label (100 V model)	1
I	JATE label (100 V model only)	2
J	Approval label (Australian/New Zealand models only)	2

Precautions

- Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.
- Be sure to turn the MFP switch OFF and unplug the MFP from the power supply before installing the fax system.

Pièces fournies

A	Carte à circuits FAX	1
B	Câble du connecteur modulaire (modèles pour l'Australie/100 V/120 V seulement)	1
C	Joint de borne	1
D	Noyau de ferrite modèles pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande/ 100 V/120 V	1
	modèles 110 V/230 V	2

E	Collier	1
F	Etiquette de l'alphabet	1
G	Etiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (sauf pour le modèle 100 V)	1
H	Etiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (modèle 100 V)	1
I	Etiquette JATE (modèle 100 V seulement)	2
J	Etiquette d'approbation (modèles pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement)	2

Précautions

- Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- Veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher le MFP de la prise secteur avant d'installer le système fax.

Piezas suministradas

A	Tarjeta de circuitos de fax	1
B	Cable conector modular (sólo para modelos de 100 V/120 V/ Australianos)	1
C	Sello del terminal	1
D	Núcleo de ferrita Modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australianos/ Nuevo Zelandés	1
	Modelos de 110 V/230 V	2

E	Abrazadera	1
F	Etiqueta de alfabeto	1
G	Etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (excepto para el modelo de 100 V)	1
H	Etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (modelo de 100 V)	1
I	Etiqueta JATE (sólo para el modelo de 100 V)	2
J	Etiqueta de aprobación (sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés)	2

Precauciones

- Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- Asegúrese de apagar el MFP colocando el interruptor principal a OFF y desenchufe el MFP del suministro de red eléctrica antes de instalar el sistema de fax.

Gelieferte Teile

A	FAX-Leiterplatte	1
B	Modulkabel (nur 100-V/120-V/Australien-Modell)	1
C	Verschlusskappe	1
D	Ferritkern 100-V/120-V/Australien/Neuseeland-Modell	1
	110-V/230-V-Modell	2
E	Schelle	1

F	Alphabetaufkleber	1
G	Aufkleber für FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (außer 100-V-Modell)	1
H	Aufkleber für FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (100-V-Modell)	1
I	JATE-Aufkleber (nur 100-V-Modell)	2
J	Genehmigungsaufkleber (nur Australien/ Neuseeland-Modell)	2

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

- Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.
- Schalten Sie den Netzschalter des MFP aus und trennen Sie den MFP vom Netz, bevor Sie das Faxsystem installieren.

Parti di forniture

A	Scheda a circuiti FAX	1
B	Cavo connettore modulare (solo modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia)	1
C	Guarnizione terminale	1
D	Nucleo di ferrite Modelli da 100V/120 V/Australia/Nuova Zelanda	1
	Modelli da 110 V/230 V	2

E	Fascetta	1
F	Etichetta alfabetica	1
G	Etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (eccetto per il modello da 100 V)	1
H	Etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (modello da 100 V)	1
I	Etichetta JATE (solo per il modello da 100 V)	2
J	Etichetta di approvazione (solo modelli Australia/Nuova Zelanda)	2

Precauzioni

- Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.
- Assicurarsi di aver spento l'interruttore dell'MFP e di aver sfilato la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di installare il sistema fax.

同装品

A	传真电路板	1
B	电话线 (仅适用于 100V/120V/ 澳大利亚型号)	1
C	端子密封	1
D	铁芯 100V/120V/ 澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号	1
	110V/230V 型号	2

E	卡夹	1
F	英文字母标签	1
G	传真操作部标签 (100V 型号以外)	1
H	传真操作部标签 (仅适用于 100V 型号)	1
I	JATE 标签 (仅适用于 100V 型号)	2
J	规格标签 (仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号)	2

注意事項

- 如果同装品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- 请务必关闭 MFP 的开关并拔下电源插头再安装传真组件。

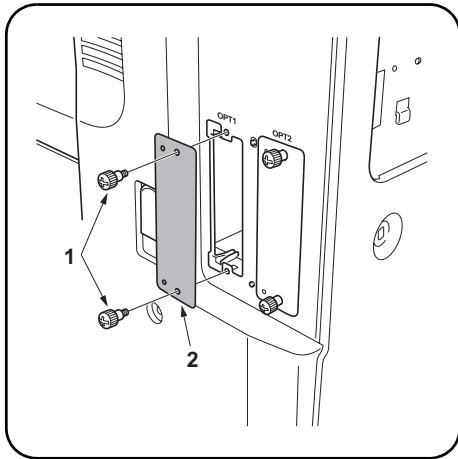
同梱品

A	FAX 基板	1
B	モジュラーケーブル (100V, 120V, オーストラリア仕様のみ)	1
C	端子シール	1
D	フェライトコア 100V, 120V, オーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様	1
	110V, 230V 仕様	2

E	クランプ	1
F	アルファベットラベル (100V 仕様以外)	1
G	FAX 操作部ラベル (100V 仕様以外)	1
H	FAX 操作部ラベル (100V 仕様)	1
I	JATE ラベル (100V 仕様のみ)	2
J	規格ラベル (オーストラリア / ニュージー ランド仕様のみ)	2

注意事項

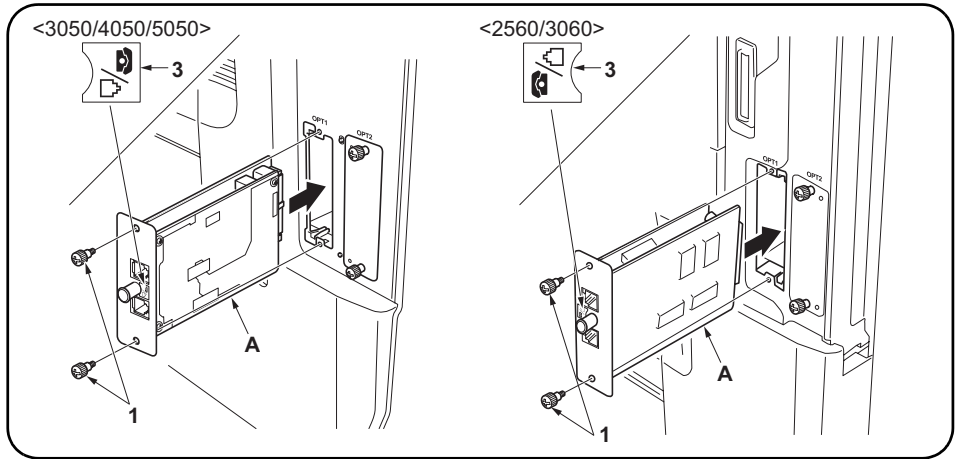
- 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。
- ファクスシステムを設置する場合は、MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなう。



Procedure

Remove the cover.

1. Remove two screws (1) and then remove OPT1 cover (2).



Install the FAX circuit board.

2. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT1 and secure the board with two screws (1) that have been removed in step 1.
Do not touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal. Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A).
<When installing in 3050/4050/5050>
Direct the label (3) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward right side and insert the board along the groove.
<When installing in 2560/3060>
Direct the label (3) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward left side and insert the board along the groove.

Procédure

Retirer le couvercle.

1. Retirer les deux vis (1), puis le couvercle OPT1 (2).

Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

2. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT1 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (1) retirées à l'étape 1.
Ne pas toucher la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A). Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A).
<Installation sur les modèles 3050/4050/5050>
Diriger l'étiquette (3) située sur la carte à circuits FAX (A) vers la droite et insérer la carte le long de la rainure.
<Installation sur les modèles 2560/3060>
Diriger l'étiquette (3) située sur la carte à circuits FAX (A) vers la gauche et insérer la carte le long de la rainure.

Procedimiento

Desmonte la cubierta.

1. Quite dos tornillos (1) y desmonte la cubierta OPT1 (2).

Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de fax.

2. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT1 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (1) que ha quitado en el paso 1.
No toque el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A). Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A).
<Cuando instale en 3050/4050/5050>
Orienta la etiqueta (3) de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) hacia la derecha e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.
<Cuando instale en 2560/3060>
Orienta la etiqueta (3) de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX (A) hacia la izquierda e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

Verfahren

Entfernen der Abdeckung.

1. Die beiden Schrauben (1) herausdrehen und Abdeckung OPT1 (2) abnehmen.

Einbauen der FAX-Leiterplatte.

2. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT1 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt 1 ausgebauten Schrauben (1) befestigen.
Die Kontakte der FAX-Leiterplatte (A) nicht berühren. Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) beim Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten.
<Bei Einbau in 3050/4050/5050>
Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (3) nach rechts zeigt.
<Bei Einbau in 2560/3060>
Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (3) nach links zeigt.

Procedura

Rimuovere il coperchio.

1. Rimuovere le due viti (1), quindi rimuovere il coperchio OPT1 (2).

Montaggio della scheda a circuiti FAX.

2. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT1 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (1) rimosse nell'operazione 1.
Non toccare il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A). Per inserire il circuito FAX (A), tenere l'estremità superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX.
<Quando si installa nel 3050/4050/5050>
Rivolgere l'etichetta (3) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) verso il lato destro e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.
<Quando si installa nel 2560/3060>
Rivolgere l'etichetta (3) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) verso il lato sinistro e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

安裝步驟

拆下盖板

1. 拆下 2 顆螺釘 (1)，然後拆下 OPT1 盖板 (2)。

安裝傳真電路板

2. 沿著 OPT1 的溝槽插入傳真電路板 (A) 並用在步驟 1 中拆下的兩顆螺釘 (1) 固定電路板。
不要觸碰傳真電路板 (A) 端子。按住傳真電路板的頂部和底部，或者按住電路板的突出部將傳真電路板 (A) 插入。
<安裝在 3050/4050/5050 型號上時>
將標籤 (3) 放在傳真電路板 (A) 上，朝向右側，然後沿著溝槽插入電路板。
<安裝在 2560/3060 型號上時>
將標籤 (3) 放在傳真電路板 (A) 上，朝向左側，然後沿著溝槽插入電路板。

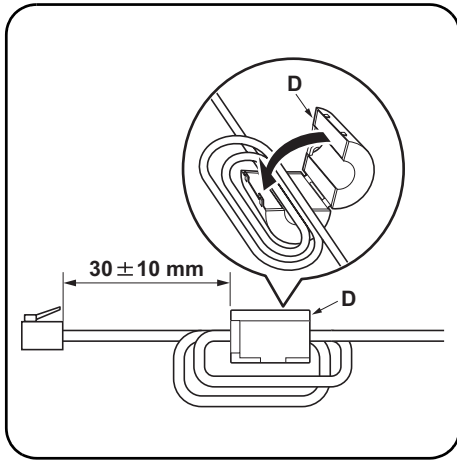
設置手順

カバーの取り外し

1. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、OPT1 のカバー (2) を取り外す。

FAX 基板の取り付け

2. OPT1 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 1 で外したビス (1) 2 本で固定する。
FAX 基板 (A) の端子に触れないこと。FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下が突起を持つこと。
< 4050/5050 に設置する場合>
FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (3) を右側に向け、挿入すること。
< 2560/3060 に設置する場合>
FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (3) を左側に向け、挿入すること。



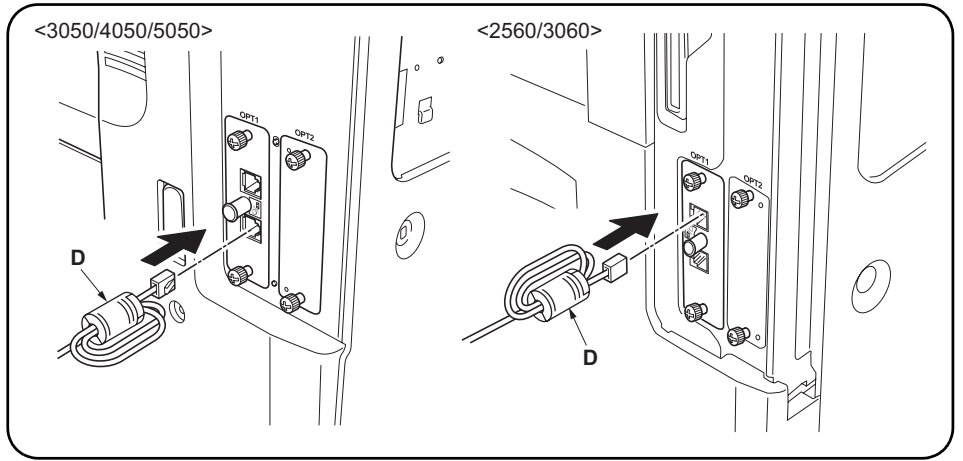
Install the ferrite core

(for 110 V/230 V/New Zealand models only).

3. Install the ferrite core (D) onto the modular connector cable.

Be sure to loop the cord three times through the ferrite core.

Make a gap of 30 mm ± 10 mm between the ferrite core and the terminal.



Connect the MFP to the telephone line.

4. Plug the telephone line modular connector cable with the ferrite core (D) into the line terminal, and then connect the line terminal to the telephone line.

For 100 V/120 V/Australian models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).

Installer le noyau de ferrite (modèles pour la Nouvelle-Zélande/110 V/230 V seulement).

3. Installer le noyau de ferrite (D) dans le câble du connecteur modulaire.

Veiller à enrouler trois fois le cordon autour du noyau de ferrite.

Un écart de 30 mm ± 10 mm entre le noyau de ferrite et la borne est requis.

Connetter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.

4. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire de la ligne de téléphone avec le noyau de ferrite (D) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter la borne de la ligne à la ligne de téléphone.

Pour les modèles pour l'Australie/100 V/120 V, utiliser le câble du connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

Instale el núcleo de ferrita (sólo para los modelos de 110 V/230 V/Nuevo Zelandés).

3. Instale el núcleo de ferrita (D) en el cable conector modular.

Asegúrese de dar tres vueltas al cable a través del núcleo de ferrita.

Deje una separación de 30 mm ± 10 mm entre el núcleo de ferrita y el terminal.

Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.

4. Enchufe el cable conector modular de la línea telefónica con el núcleo de ferrita (D) en el terminal de línea, y seguidamente conecte el terminal de línea a la línea telefónica.

Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australiano, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

Aufsetzen des Ferritkerns

(nur für 110-V/230-V/Neuseeland-Modell).

3. Ferritkern (D) auf das Modulkabel aufsetzen.

Das Kabel dreimal durch den Ferritkern führen.

Zwischen Ferritkern und Buchse muss ein Abstand von 30 mm ± 10 eingehalten werden.

Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.

4. Telefonmodulkabel mit dem Ferritkern (D) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Telefondose anschließen.

Das mitgelieferte Modularsteckermodul (B) für das 100-V/120-V/Australien-Modell verwenden.

Montare il nucleo di ferrite (solo per modelli da 110 V/230 V/Nuova Zelanda).

3. Montare il nucleo di ferrite (D) sul cavo connettore modulare.

Avere cura di avvolgere tre volte il cavo attorno al nucleo di ferrite.

Lasciare una distanza di 30 mm ± 10 mm tra il nucleo di ferrite e il terminale.

Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.

4. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare della linea del telefono con il nucleo di ferrite (D) nel terminale della linea, quindi collegare il terminale della linea alla linea del telefono.

Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

安裝鐵芯（仅适用于 110V/230V/ 新西兰型号）

3. 將鐵芯 (D) 安裝到電話線。

請務必將電話線纏繞鐵芯三圈。

在鐵芯和端子間保留 30mm ± 10mm 的間隙。

將 MFP 連接到電話線

4. 將纏繞在鐵芯 (D) 上的電話線插入電話線端子，然後將電話線端子連接到電話線。

100V/120V/ 澳大利亞型號必須使用附屬的電話線 (B)。

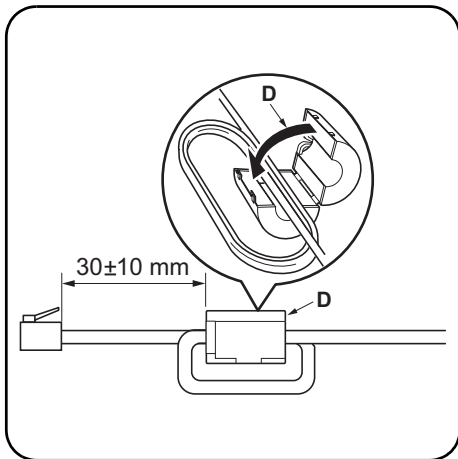
TONER

フェライトコアの取り付け
(110V/230V/ ニュージーランド仕様のみ)
3. モジュラーコードにフェライトコア (D) を取り付ける。コードをフェライトコアに必ず3回通すこと。
フェライトコアと端子の間隔を 30mm ± 10mm あけること。

電話回線との接続

4. ライン端子に、電話回線からのモジュラーコードのフェライトコア (D) が取り付けられている側のプラグを差し込み、電話回線へ接続する。

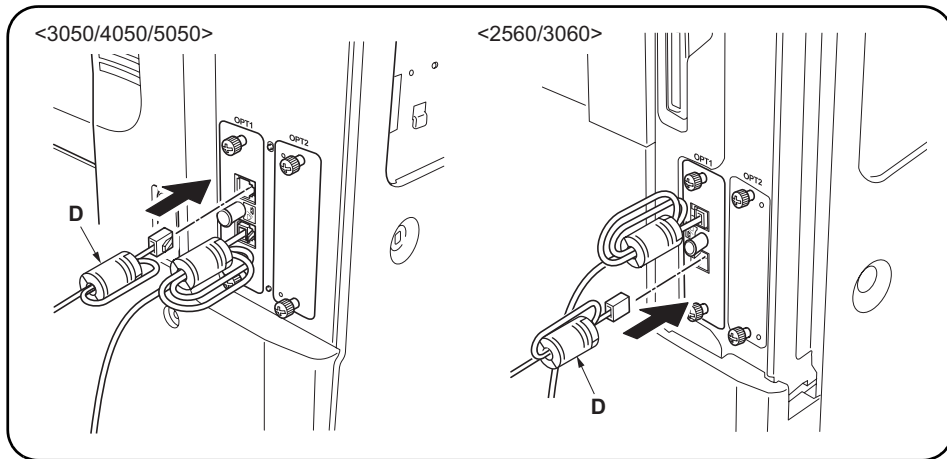
100V/120V/ オーストラリア仕様は付属のモジュラーコード (B) を使用すること。



Install the ferrite core (telephone line of the separate phone).

5. When connecting a separate phone to the MFP, attach the ferrite core (D) to the telephone line of the separate phone.

Be sure to loop the cord twice through the ferrite core.



Connect the MFP to the separate phone (except for New Zealand model).

6. Plug the separate phone line with the ferrite core (D) into the line terminal, and then connect the line terminal to the separate phone line.

If you don't connect the MFP to the separate phone, wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).

Installer le noyau de ferrite (ligne du téléphone séparé).

5. Lors de la connexion d'un téléphone séparé au MFP, fixer le noyau de ferrite (D) à la ligne du téléphone séparé.

Veiller à enrouler deux fois le cordon autour du noyau de ferrite.

Connetter le MFP au téléphone séparé (sauf modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande).

6. Brancher la ligne de téléphone séparé avec le noyau de ferrite (D) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter la borne de la ligne à la ligne de téléphone séparé.

Si le MFP n'est pas connecté au téléphone séparé, nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphone avec de l'alcool et apposer le joint de borne (C).

Instale el núcleo de ferrita (línea telefónica del teléfono independiente).

5. Al conectar un teléfono separado al MFP, coloque el núcleo de ferrita (D) a la línea telefónica del teléfono separado.

Asegúrese de dar dos vueltas al cable a través del núcleo de ferrita.

Conecte el MFP al teléfono separado (excepto para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés).

6. Enchufe la línea del teléfono separado con el núcleo de ferrita (D) en el terminal de línea, y seguidamente conecte el terminal de línea a la línea del teléfono separado.

Si no conecta el MFP a un teléfono separado, limpie la superficie del terminal telefónico con alcohol y pegue el sello del terminal (C).

Aufsetzen des Ferritkerns (Telefonleitung mit separatem Telefon).

5. Beim Anschließen eines separaten Telefons an den MFP den Ferritkern (D) auf die Telefonleitung des separaten Telefons aufsetzen.

Das Kabel zweimal durch den Ferritkern führen.

Anschließen des MFP an das separate Telefon (außer Neuseeland-Modell).

6. Das Kabel des separaten Telefons mit dem Ferritkern (D) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Dose für das separate Telefon anschließen.

Wenn der MFP nicht an das separate Telefon angeschlossen wird, die Oberfläche der Telefonbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und Verschlusskappe (C) einsetzen.

Montare il nucleo di ferrite (linea telefonica del telefono separato).

5. Nel caso in cui si colleghi un telefono separato all'MFP, montare il nucleo di ferrite (D) sulla linea del telefono separato.

Avere cura di avvolgere due volte il cavo attorno al nucleo di ferrite.

Collegamento dell'MFP al telefono separato (eccetto per il modello Nuova Zelanda).

6. Collegare la linea del telefono separato con il nucleo di ferrite (D) al terminale della linea, quindi collegare il terminale della linea alla linea del telefono separato.

Nel caso in cui non si colleghi l'MFP al telefono separato, pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con dell'alcol e applicare la guarnizione terminale (C).

安装铁芯（其它电话的电话线）

5. 将其它电话连接到 MFP 时，将铁芯 (D) 安装到该部电话的电话线。

请务必将电话线缠绕铁芯两圈。

将 MFP 连接到其它电话（新西兰型号以外）

6. 将缠绕在铁芯 (D) 上的其它电话线插入电话线端子，然后将电话线端子连接到其它电话线。

（外付け電話と接続しない場合、TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。）

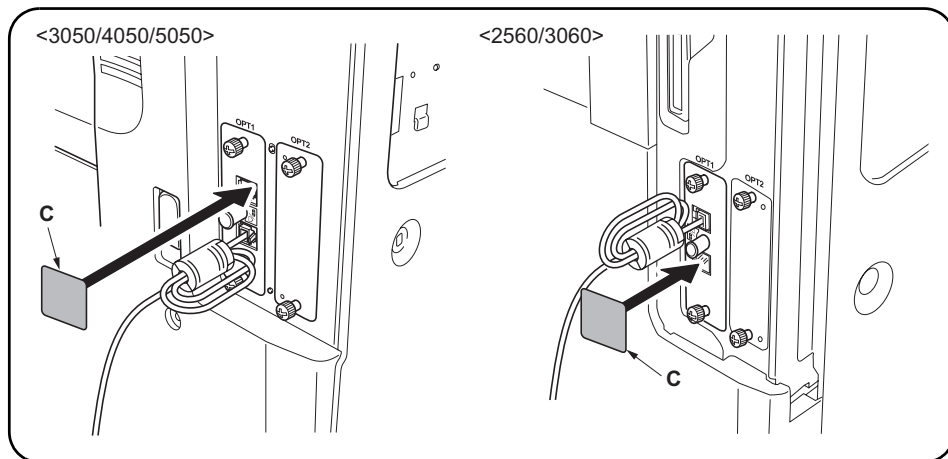
フェライトコアの取り付け（外付け電話の電話線）

5. 外付け電話と MFP 本体を接続する場合、外付け電話からの電話線にフェライトコア (D) を取り付けます。**コードをフェライトコアに必ず 2 回以上通すこと。**

外付け電話との接続（ニュージーランド仕様以外）

6. TEL 端子に、外付け電話からの電話線のフェライトコア (D) が取り付けられている側のプラグを差し込み、外付け電話と接続する。

（外付け電話と接続しない場合、TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。）



Seal the terminal (for New Zealand model).

7. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).
Perform this procedure for New Zealand model only.

Fermer hermétiquement la borne (modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande).

7. Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande seulement.

Selle el terminal (para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés).

7. Realice este procedimiento sólo para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés.

Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse (für Neuseeland-Modell).

7. Dieses Verfahren nur für das Neuseeland-Modell anwenden.

Sigillare il terminale (per il modello Nuova Zelanda).

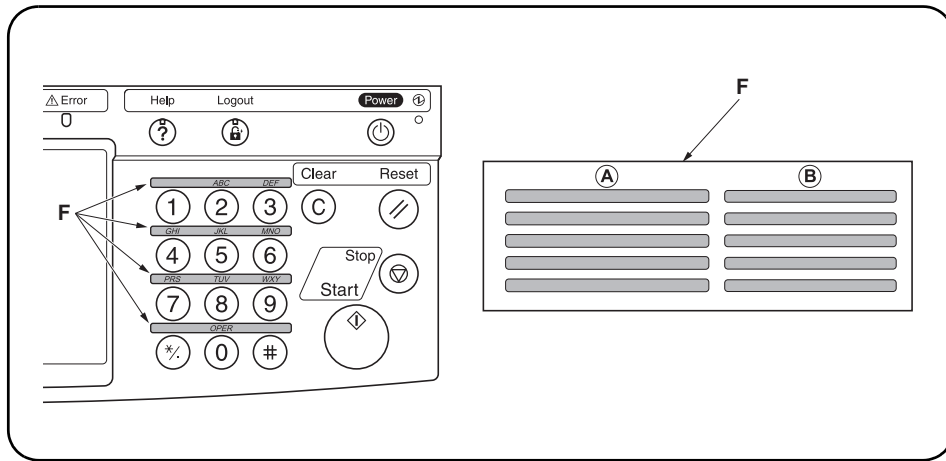
7. Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello Nuova Zelanda.

安装端子密封（仅适用于新西兰型号）

7. 该操作步骤仅适用于新西兰型号。

端子シールの貼り付け（ニュージーランド仕様のみ）

7. TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。
この手順はニュージーランド仕様のみおこなう。



Attach the alphabet labels.

8. Wipe the area above the numeric keys at the right side of the operation panel with alcohol and adhere the alphabet labels (F) here.
In Asia and Oceania, use PQRS TUV WXYZ label, and do not use PRS TUV WXY and OPER labels.

<When installing in 3050/4050/5050>

Adhere the alphabet labels (F) that ① is shown.

<When installing in 2560/3060>

Adhere the alphabet labels (F) that ② is shown.

Fixer les étiquettes de l'alphabet.

8. Nettoyer la surface au-dessus des touches numériques à droite du panneau de commande et y coller les étiquettes de l'alphabet (F).
En Asie et Océanie, utiliser l'étiquette PQRS TUV WXYZ et pas les étiquettes PRS TUV WXY et OPER.

<Installation sur les modèles 3050/4050/5050>

Apposer les étiquettes de l'alphabet (F) de manière que ① soit montré.

<Installation sur les modèles 2560/3060>

Apposer les étiquettes de l'alphabet (F) de manière que ② soit montré.

Fije las etiquetas de alfabeto.

8. Limpie la zona situada encima de las teclas numéricas, en el lado derecho del panel de trabajo, y pegue aquí las etiquetas de alfabeto (F).
En Asia y Oceanía, utilice la etiqueta PQRS TUV WXYZ y no use las PRS TUV WXY ni las OPER.

<Cuando instale en 3050/4050/5050>

Pegue las etiquetas de alfabeto (F) indicadas en ①.

<Cuando instale en 2560/3060>

Pegue las etiquetas de alfabeto (F) indicadas en ②.

Anbringen der Alphabetaufkleber.

8. Den Bereich über den Zifferntasten auf der rechten Seite des Bedienfeldes abwischen und die Alphabetaufkleber (F) hier anbringen.
In Asien und Ozeanien den Aufkleber PQRS TUV WXYZ verwenden; nicht die Aufkleber PRS TUV WXY und OPER verwenden.

<Bei Einbau in 3050/4050/5050>

Die bei ① gezeigten Buchstabenaufkleber (F) anbringen.

<Bei Einbau in 2560/3060>

Die bei ② gezeigten Buchstabenaufkleber (F) anbringen.

Applicazione delle etichette alfabetiche.

8. Pulire l'area sopra i tasti numerici sul lato destro del pannello operativo e attaccare qui le etichette alfabetiche (F).
In Asia ed Oceania, utilizzare l'etichetta PQRS TUV WXYZ e non utilizzare le etichette PRS TUV WXY e OPER.

<Quando si installa nel 3050/4050/5050>

Applicare le etichette alfabetiche (F) che sono indicate da ①.

<Quando si installa nel 2560/3060>

Applicare le etichette alfabetiche (F) che sono indicate da ②.

安装英文字母标签

8. 擦拭操作面板右侧数字键上的区域，然后将英文字母标签 (F) 粘在此处。
在亚洲和大洋州，请使用 PQRS TUV WXYZ 标签，而不要使用 PRS TUV WXY 和 OPER 标签。

<安装在 3050/4050/5050 型号上时>

将印刷的 ① 的英文字母标签 (F) 粘在此处。

<安装在 2560/3060 型号上时>

将印刷的 ② 的英文字母标签 (F) 粘在此处。

アルファベットのラベルの貼り付け (100V 仕様以外)

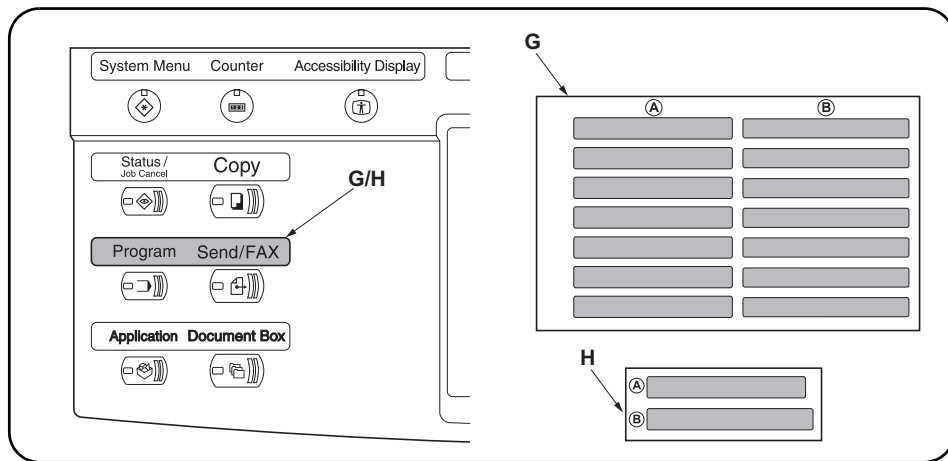
8. 操作パネル右側のテンキー上側をアルコール清掃し、アルファベットのラベル (F) を貼り付ける。
アジア・オセアニアでは「PRS TUV WXY」および「OPER」のラベルを使用せず、「PQRS TUV WXYZ」のラベルを使用すること。

<4050/5050 に設置する場合>

① と印刷されているアルファベットのラベル (F) を貼り付ける。

<2560/3060 に設置する場合>

② と印刷されているアルファベットのラベル (F) を貼り付ける。



Attach the FAX operation section label.

- Wipe the label surface shown in the figure with alcohol and adhere the FAX operation section label (G) of the corresponding language.

<When installing in 3050/4050/5050>

Adhere the FAX operation section label (G) that ① is shown.

<When installing in 2560/3060>

Adhere the FAX operation section label (G) that ② is shown.

Fixer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX.

- Essuyer avec de l'alcool la surface de l'étiquette montrée sur l'illustration, et apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (G) de la langue correspondante.

<Installation sur les modèles 3050/4050/5050>

Apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (G) de manière que ① soit montré.

<Installation sur les modèles 2560/3060>

Apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (G) de manière que ② soit montré.

Coloque la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX.

- Limpiar la superficie de la etiqueta que aparece en la figura con alcohol y pegar la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (G) del correspondiente idioma.

<Cuando instale en 3050/4050/5050>

Pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (G) indicada en ①.

<Cuando instale en 2560/3060>

Pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (G) indicada en ②.

Anbringen des Aufklebers für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt.

- Die in der Abbildung gezeigte Klebefläche des Aufklebers mit Alkohol reinigen, und den Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (G) der entsprechenden Sprache anbringen.

<Bei Einbau in 3050/4050/5050>

Den bei ① gezeigten Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (G) anbringen.

<Bei Einbau in 2560/3060>

Den bei ② gezeigten Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (G) anbringen.

Fissare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX.

- Pulire con alcol la superficie dell'etichetta indicata nella figura e applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (G) della lingua corrispondente.

<Quando si installa nel 3050/4050/5050>

Applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (G) indicata da ①.

<Quando si installa nel 2560/3060>

Applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (G) indicata da ②.

粘贴传真操作部标签

- 用酒精擦拭图示位置的标签贴面后，粘贴相应语言的传真操作部标签 (G)。

<安装在 3050/4050/5050 型号上时>

将印刷的 ① 的传真操作部标签 (G) 粘在此处。

<安装在 2560/3060 型号上时>

将印刷的 ② 的传真操作部标签 (G) 粘在此处。

FAX 操作部ラベルの貼り付け

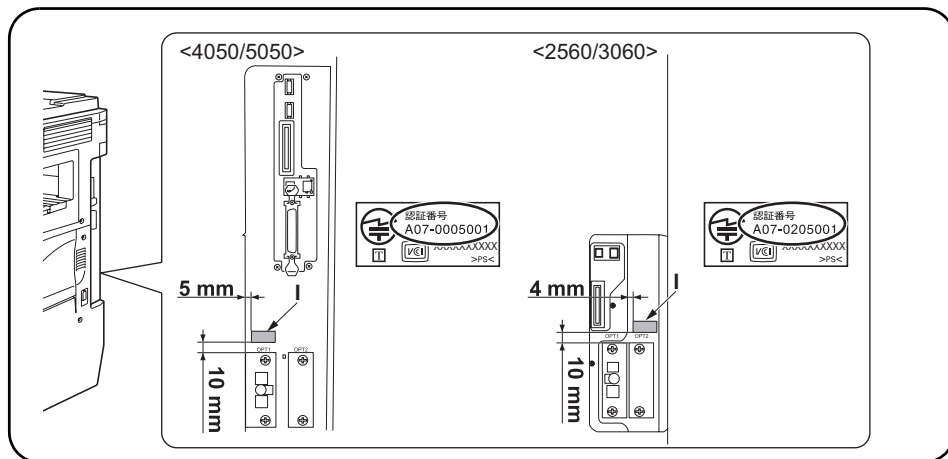
- イラストの位置のラベル上面をアルコール清掃後、該当する言語の FAX 操作部ラベル (H) を貼り付ける。

<4050/5050 に設置する場合>

① と印刷されている FAX 操作部ラベル (H) を貼り付ける。

<2560/3060 に設置する場合>

② と印刷されている FAX 操作部ラベル (H) を貼り付ける。



Attach the JATE label (for 100 V model only).
10. Perform this procedure for 100 V model only.

Fixer l'étiquette JATE (modèle 100 V seulement).
10. Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle 100 V seulement.

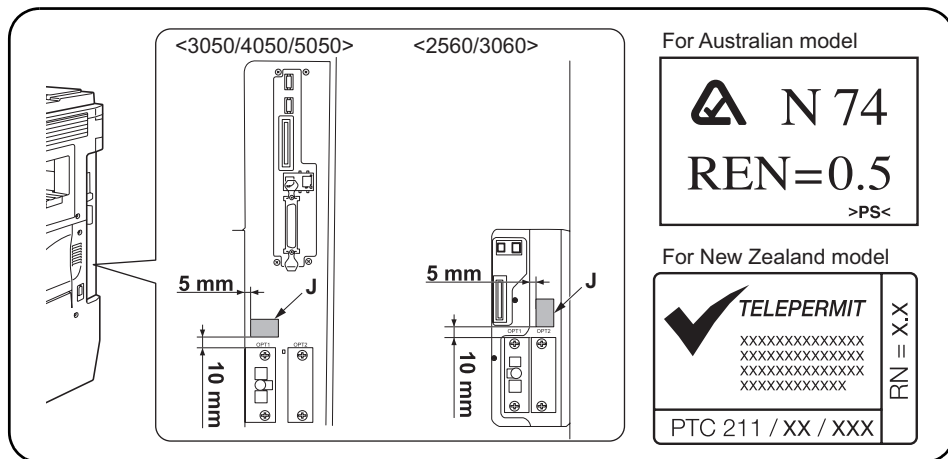
Coloque la etiqueta JATE (sólo para el modelo de 100 V).
10. Realice el procedimiento sólo para el modelo de 100 V.

Den JATE-Aufkleber anbringen (nur für 100-V-Modell).
10. Dieses Verfahren nur für das 100-V-Modell anwenden.

Applicare l'etichetta JATE (solo per il modello da 100 V).
10. Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello da 100 V.

粘貼 JATE 标签（仅适用于 100V 型号）
10. 该步骤仅适用于 100V 型号时操作。

JATE ラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様のみ）
10. アルコール清掃後、製品に合わせて JATE ラベル（I）を貼り付ける。
 < 4050/5050 に設置する場合 >
 認証番号「A07-0005001」の JATE ラベル（I）を貼り付ける。
 < 2560/3060 に設置する場合 >
 認証番号「A07-0205001」の JATE ラベル（I）を貼り付ける。



Attach the approval label (for Australian/New Zealand model only).

11. Attach the approval label (J) after wiping with alcohol.

Perform this procedure for Australian/New Zealand model only.

When installing the optional Dual FAX (when adding the FAX circuit board to OPT2), proceed to the following procedures.

When not installing, proceed to page 14.

Fixer l'étiquette d'approbation (modèle pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement).

11. Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement.

Lorsqu'on installe le FAX double en option (lorsqu'on ajoute la carte à circuits FAX à l'OPT2), effectuer les procédures suivantes.

Si on ne l'installe pas, passer à la page 14.

Coloque la etiqueta de aprobación (sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés)

11. Realice este procedimiento sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés.

Cuando instale el FAX dual opcional (cuando agrega la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX a OPT2), vaya a los siguientes procedimientos. Cuando no lo instala, vaya a la página 14.

Den Genehmigungsaufkleber anbringen (nur für Australien/Neuseeland-Modell).

11. Dieses Verfahren nur für das Australien/Neuseeland-Modell anwenden.

Wenn das optionale Dual FAX installiert wird (Hinzufügen der FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2), mit den folgenden Verfahren fortfahren. Erfolgt diese Installation nicht, mit Seite 14 fortfahren.

Applicare l'etichetta di approvazione (solo per il modello Australia/Nuova Zelanda).

11. Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello Australia/Nuova Zelanda.

Quando si installa il Dual FAX opzionale (quando si aggiunge la scheda a circuiti FAX all'OPT2), continuare con la seguente procedura. Se non si esegue l'installazione passare alla pagina 14.

粘貼規格標籤（仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号）

11. 该步骤仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号时操作。

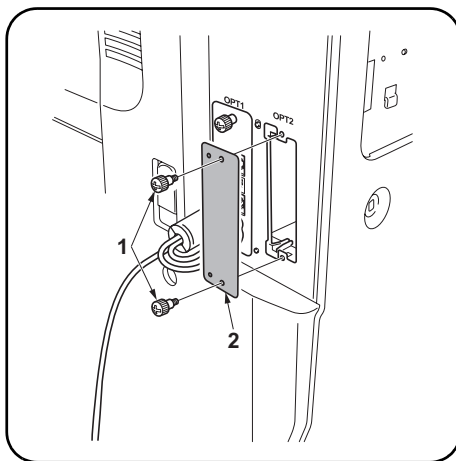
安装选购件的多插口组件时（将传真电路板安装在 OPT2 上时），请按以下步骤进行。不安装时，按第 14 页的要求进行操作。

規格ラベルの貼り付け（オーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様のみ）

11. アルコール清掃後、規格ラベル（J）を貼り付ける。

この手順はオーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様のみおこなう。

オプションのマルチポートを設置する場合（FAX 基板を OPT2 に増設する場合）は、次の手順に進む。設置しない場合は、14 ページへ進む。



Install the Dual FAX

Refer to page 1 for the supplied parts.
When adding the FAX circuit board to OPT2, the second FAX operation section label (G) and the approval label (J) are not required. Bring back and discard the approval label.

Remove the cover.

1. Remove two screws (1) and then remove OPT2 cover (2).

Installer le FAX double.

Pour plus de détails concernant les pièces fournies, se reporter à la page 1.
Lorsqu'on ajoute la carte à circuits FAX à l'OPT2, la deuxième étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (G) et l'étiquette d'approbation (J) ne sont pas nécessaires. Détacher et jeter l'étiquette d'approbation.

Retirer le couvercle.

1. Retirer les deux vis (1), puis le couvercle OPT2 (2).

Instale el FAX dual

Consulte la página 1 de las piezas suministradas.
Cuando agrega la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX a OPT2, no se necesitan ni la segunda etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (G) ni la etiqueta de aprobación (J). Retírelas y deshágase de la etiqueta de aprobación.

Desmonte la cubierta.

1. Quite dos tornillos (1) y desmonte la cubierta OPT2 (2).

Installieren des Dual FAX

Die mitgelieferten Teile sind auf Seite 1 aufgelistet.
Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt wird, werden der zweite Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (G) und der Genehmigungsaufkleber (J) nicht benötigt. Den Genehmigungsaufkleber zurückbringen und wegwerfen.

Entfernen der Abdeckung.

1. Die beiden Schrauben (1) herausdrehen und Abdeckung OPT2 (2) abnehmen.

Installare il Dual FAX

Fare riferimento alla pagina 1 per le parti in dotazione.
Quando si aggiunge la scheda a circuiti FAX all'OPT2, la seconda etichetta della sezione di funzionamento FAX (G) e l'etichetta di approvazione (J) non sono necessarie. Togliere e smaltire l'etichetta di approvazione.

Rimuovere il coperchio.

1. Rimuovere le due viti (1), quindi rimuovere il coperchio OPT2 (2).

安装多插口组件

同梱品時、参照第 1 頁。
在 OPT2 上增设传真电路板时，不需要粘贴第 2 张的传真操作部标签 (G) 和规格标签 (J)。规格标签拿回去后应立即作废弃处理。

拆下盖板

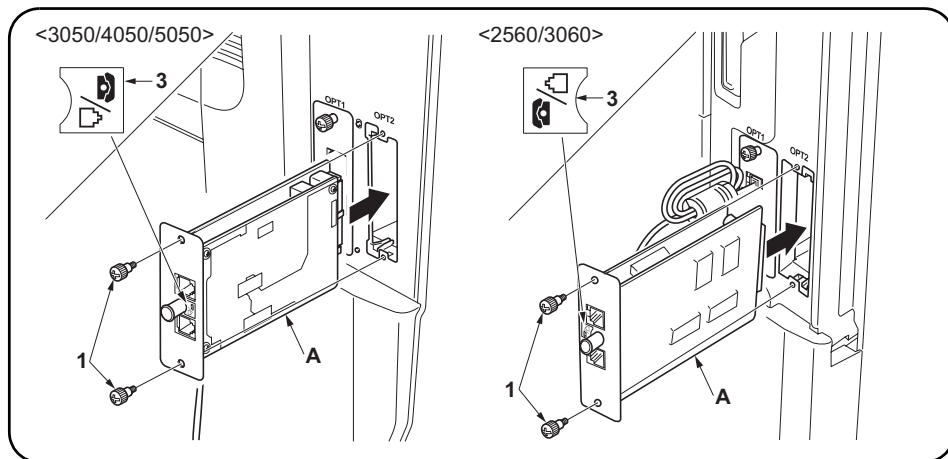
1. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (1)，然后拆下 OPT2 盖板 (2)。

マルチポートの設置

同梱品は 1 ページを参照する。
OPT2 に FAX 基板を増設する場合、2 枚目の FAX 操作部ラベル (H)・JATE ラベル (I)・規格ラベル (J) を貼る必要はない。規格ラベルは持ち帰り、廃棄すること。
FAX 標準機に増設する場合は、マルチポートの設置手順をおこなう。

カバーの取り外し

1. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、OPT2 のカバー (2) を取り外す。



Install the FAX circuit board.

2. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT2 and secure the board with two screws (1) that have been removed in step 1.

Do not touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal. Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A).

<When installing in 3050/4050/5050>

Direct the label (3) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward right side and insert the board along the groove.

<When installing in 2560/3060>

Direct the label (3) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward left side and insert the board along the groove.

Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

2. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT2 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (1) retirées à l'étape 1.

Ne pas toucher la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A). Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A).

<Installation sur les modèles 3050/4050/5050>

Diriger l'étiquette (3) située sur la carte à circuits FAX (A) vers la droite et insérer la carte le long de la rainure.

<Installation sur les modèles 2560/3060>

Diriger l'étiquette (3) située sur la carte à circuits FAX (A) vers la gauche et insérer la carte le long de la rainure.

Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de fax.

2. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT2 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (1) que ha quitado en el paso 1.

No toque el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A). Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A).

<Cuando instale en 3050/4050/5050>

Oriente la etiqueta (3) de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) hacia la derecha e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

<Cuando instale en 2560/3060>

Oriente la etiqueta (3) de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX (A) hacia la izquierda e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

Installieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

2. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT2 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt 1 ausgebauten Schrauben (1) befestigen.

Die Kontakte der FAX-Leiterplatte (A) nicht berühren. Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) beim Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten.

<Bei Einbau in 3050/4050/5050>

Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (3) nach rechts zeigt.

<Bei Einbau in 2560/3060>

Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (3) nach links zeigt.

Installare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

2. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT2 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (1) rimosse nell'operazione 1.

Non toccare il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A). Per inserire il circuito FAX (A), tenere l'estremit superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX.

<Quando si installa nel 3050/4050/5050>

Rivolgere l'etichetta (3) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) verso il lato destro e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

<Quando si installa nel 2560/3060>

Rivolgere l'etichetta (3) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) verso il lato sinistro e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

安裝傳真電路板

2. 沿著 OPT2 的溝槽插入傳真電路板 (A) 並用在步驟 1 中拆下的兩顆螺釘 (1) 固定電路板。

不要觸碰傳真電路板 (A) 端子。按住傳真電路板的頂部和底部，或者按住電路板的突出部將傳真電路板 (A) 插入。

<安裝在 3050/4050/5050 型號上時>

將標籤 (3) 放在傳真電路板 (A) 上，朝向右側，然後沿著溝槽插入電路板。

<安裝在 2560/3060 型號上時>

將標籤 (3) 放在傳真電路板 (A) 上，朝向左側，然後沿著溝槽插入電路板。

FAX 基板的取り付け

2. OPT2 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 1 で外したビス (1) 2 本で固定する。

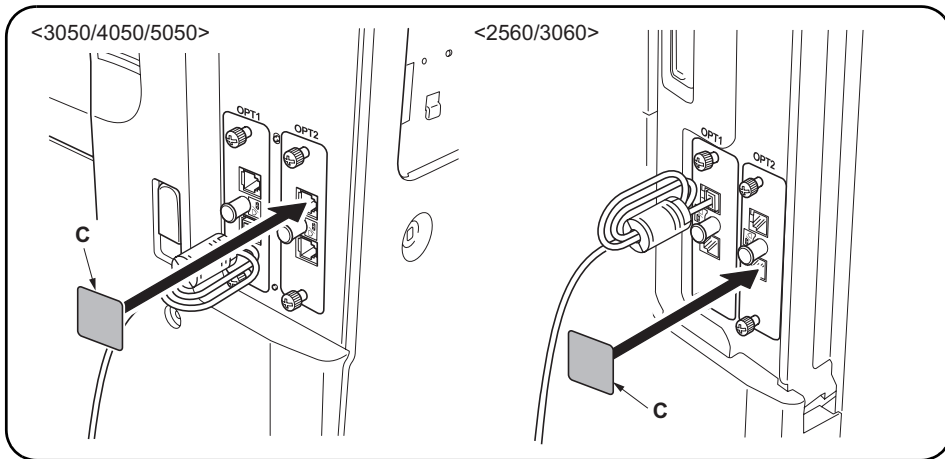
FAX 基板 (A) の端子に触れないこと。FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下か突起を持つこと。

< 4050/5050 に設置する場合>

FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (3) を右側に向け、挿入すること。

< 2560/3060 に設置する場合>

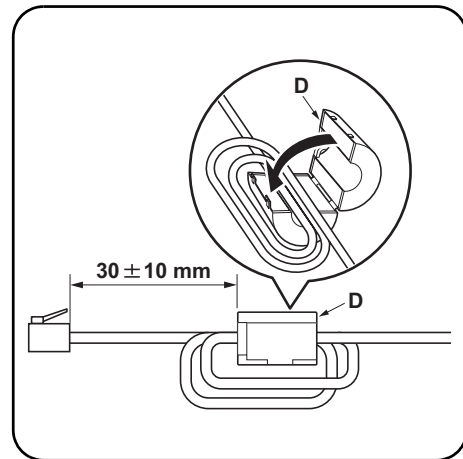
FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (3) を左側に向け、挿入すること。



Seal the terminal.

3. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).

The telephone terminal on the FAX circuit board installed to OPT2 is unavailable (invalid). Seal the terminal securely to prevent a user from connecting a separate phone.



Install the ferrite core (for 110 V/230 V/New Zealand models only).

4. Install the ferrite core (D) onto the modular connector cable.

Be sure to loop the cord three times through the ferrite core.

Keep an interval of 30 mm ± 10 mm between the ferrite core and the terminal.

Fermer hermétiquement la borne.

3. Nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphone avec de l'alcool, et apposer le joint de borne (C).

La borne de téléphone de la carte à circuits FAX installée sur l'OPT2 n'est pas utilisable (invalide). Fermer hermétiquement la borne pour empêcher tout utilisateur de connecter un téléphone séparé.

Installer le noyau de ferrite (modèles pour la Nouvelle-Zélande/110 V/230 V seulement).

4. Installer le noyau de ferrite (D) dans le câble du connecteur modulaire.

Veiller à enrouler trois fois le cordon autour du noyau de ferrite.

Un écart de 30 mm ± 10 mm entre le noyau de ferrite et la borne est requis.

Selle el terminal.

3. Limpie la superficie del terminal de teléfono con alcohol y pegue el sello de terminal (C).

El terminal de teléfono de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX instalado en el OPT2 no está disponible (inválido). Selle firmemente el terminal para evitar que un usuario conecte un teléfono por separado.

Instale el núcleo de ferrita (sólo para los modelos de 110 V/230 V/Nuevo Zelandés).

4. Instale el núcleo de ferrita (D) en el cable conector modular.

Asegúrese de dar tres vueltas al cable a través del núcleo de ferrita.

Deje una separación de 30 mm ± 10 mm entre el núcleo de ferrita y el terminal.

Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse.

3. Die Oberfläche der Telefonanschlussbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und die Verschlusskappe (C) anbringen.

Die Telefonanschlussbuchse der in OPT2 installierten FAX-Leiterplatte ist nicht verfügbar (ungültig). Die Anschlussbuchse vollkommen versiegeln, um den Anschluss eines separaten Telefons zu verhindern.

Aufsetzen des Ferritkerns

(nur für 110-V/230-V/Neuseeland-Modell).

4. Ferritkern (D) auf das Modulkabel aufsetzen.

Das Kabel dreimal durch den Ferritkern führen.

Zwischen Ferritkern und Buchse muss ein Abstand von 30 mm ± 10 eingehalten werden.

Sigillare il terminale.

3. Pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con alcol e fare aderire la guarnizione terminale (C).

Il terminale del telefono sulla scheda a circuiti FAX installata su OPT2 non è disponibile (invalido). Sigillare il terminale saldamente per prevenire a un utente di collegare un telefono separato.

Montare il nucleo di ferrite (solo per modelli da 110 V/230 V/Nuova Zelanda).

4. Montare il nucleo di ferrite (D) sul cavo connettore modulare.

Avere cura di avvolgere tre volte il cavo attorno al nucleo di ferrite.

Lasciare una distanza di 30 mm ± 10 mm tra il nucleo di ferrite e il terminale.

安装端子密封

3. 用酒精擦拭电话端子表面并粘上端子密封 (C)。

安装在 OPT2 上的传真电路板的电话端子不可使用 (无效)。为了避免用户错误与其它电话连接, 必须确实粘贴好端子密封。

安装铁芯 (仅适用于 110V/230V/ 新西兰型号)

4. 将铁芯 (D) 安装到电话线。

请务必注意将电话线缠绕铁芯三圈。

在铁芯和端子之间保留 30mm ± 10mm 间隙。

端子シールの貼り付け

3. TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。

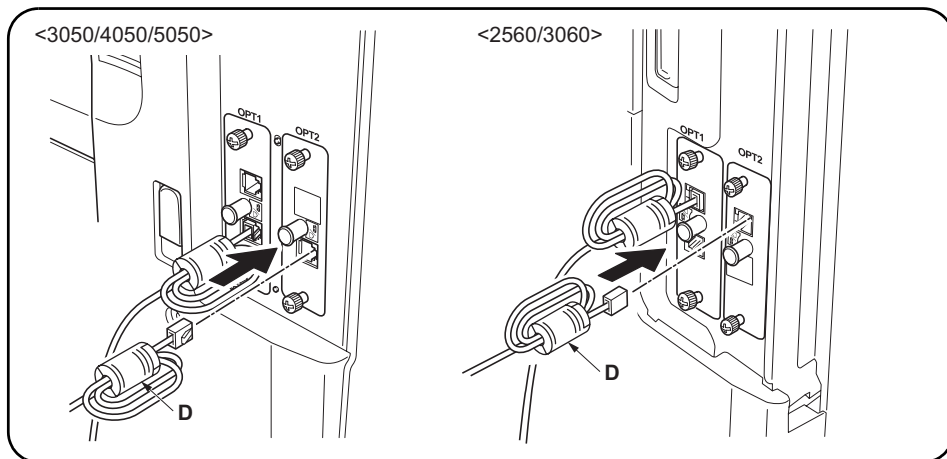
OPT2 に取り付けした FAX 基板の TEL 端子は使用不可 (無効) となる。ユーザが誤って外付け電話を接続しないよう確実に貼り付けること。

フェライトコアの取り付け

(110V/230V/ ニュージーランド仕様のみ)

4. モジュラーコードにフェライトコア (D) を取り付ける。コードをフェライトコアに必ず 3 回通すこと。

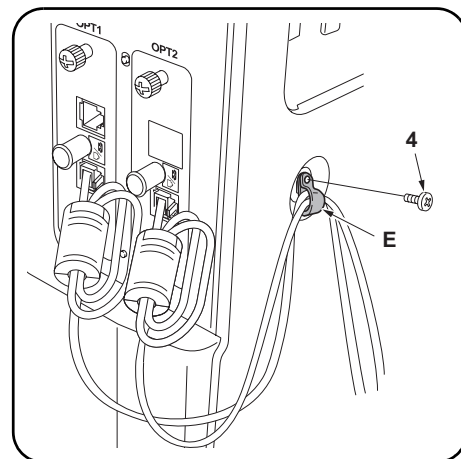
フェライトコアと端子の間隔を 30mm ± 10mm あけること。



Connect the MFP to the telephone line.

5. Insert the plug with ferrite core (D) into the line terminal. Connect the other plug to the telephone line.

For 100 V/120 V/Australian models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).



Secure the modular connector cable (only when installing in 3050/4050/5050).

6. Remove the screw (4) from the rear cover.
7. Attach the clamp (E) to the two modular connector cables and secure it with the screw (4).

Connecter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.

5. Insérer la fiche munie du noyau de ferrite (D) dans la borne de la ligne. Connecter l'autre fiche à la ligne de téléphone.

Pour les modèles pour l'Australie/100 V/120 V, utiliser le câble du connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

Fixer le câble du connecteur modulaire (seulement pour l'installation dans les modèles 3050/4050/5050).

6. Retirer la vis (4) du couvercle arrière.
7. Poser le collier (E) sur les deux câbles du connecteur modulaire, et le fixer à l'aide de la vis (4).

Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.

5. Conecte el enchufe con el núcleo de ferrita (D) en el terminal. Conecte el otro enchufe en la línea telefónica.

Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australiano, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

Asegure el cable de conector modular (solo cuando instale en 3050/4050/5050).

6. Saque el tornillo (4) de la cubierta trasera.
7. Instale la abrazadera (E) en los dos cables de conector modular y asegúrelo con el tornillo (4).

Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.

5. Den Stecker mit Ferritkern (D) in die Leitungsbuchse stecken. Den anderen Stecker an die Telefondose anschließen.

Das mitgelieferte Modularsteckerkabel (B) für das 100-V/120-V/Australien-Modell verwenden.

Sichern des Modulkabels

(nur bei Einbau in 3050/4050/5050).

6. Die Schraube (4) von der Rückabdeckung entfernen.
7. Die Klemme (E) an den beiden Modulkabeln anbringen und mit der Schraube (4) sichern.

Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.

5. Inserire lo spinotto con il nucleo di ferrite (D) nel terminale della linea. Collegare l'altro spinotto alla linea del telefono.

Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

Fissare il cavo connettore modulare (solo quando si installa nel 3050/4050/5050).

6. Rimuovere la vite (4) dal coperchio posteriore.
7. Montare la fascetta (E) ai due cavi connettori modulari e fissarli con la vite (4).

将 MFP 连接到电话线

5. 将缠绕在铁芯 (D) 上的电话线插入电话线端子。将另一个插头与电话线连线。

100V/120V/ 澳大利亚型号必须使用附属的电话线 (B)。

固定电话线

(仅适用于安装 3050/4050/5050 型号)

6. 拆下 1 颗后盖板螺钉 (4)。
7. 用卡夹 (E) 夹住 2 根电话线, 并用 1 颗螺钉 (4) 固定。

電話回線との接続

5. フェライトコア (D) が取り付けられているプラグをライン端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、電話回線へ接続する。

100V/120V/ オーストラリア仕様は付属のモジュラーコード (B) を使用すること。

モジュラーコードの固定

(4050/5050 に設置する場合のみ)

6. 後カバーのビス (4) 1 本を外す。
7. モジュラーコード 2 本にクランプ (E) を取り付け、ビス (4) 1 本で固定する。

Initialize the FAX circuit board.

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on the main power.
2. **If the FAX circuit board has been installed only in OPT1 or installed both in OPT1 and OPT2 (to initialize all FAX circuit boards)**

Perform the maintenance mode U600 to initialize the fax control assembly.

If the FAX circuit board has been added to OPT2 (to initialize the FAX circuit board in OPT2)

Initialize OPT2 by pressing [PORT SELECT], [P2], and the Start key in this order in the maintenance mode U698 and executing the maintenance mode U600.

If [ALL] is selected in U698, both OPT1 and OPT2 are initialized.

For details, see the service manual.

Refer to the operation guide to create a FAX Box.

Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.

1. Brancher le MFP sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.
2. **Si la carte à circuits FAX a été installée dans l'OPT1 seulement, ou a été installée dans l'OPT1 et dans l'OPT2 (pour initialiser toutes les cartes à circuits FAX)**

Exécuter le mode de maintenance U600 pour initialiser l'ensemble de commande de fax.

Si la carte à circuits FAX a été ajoutée à l'OPT2 (pour initialiser la carte à circuits FAX dans l'OPT2)

Initialiser l'OPT2 en appuyant sur [PORT SELECT], [P2] et la touche Départ dans cet ordre en mode de maintenance U698, et exécuter le mode de maintenance U600.

Si [ALL] est sélectionné dans U698, l'OPT1 et l'OPT2 sont tous deux initialisés.

Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

Se reporter au manuel d'utilisation pour créer une Boîte de FAX.

Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.

1. Conecte el MFP a un receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. **Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se instaló solo en OPT1 o se instaló tanto en OPT1 como OPT2 (para inicializar todas las tarjetas de circuito de FAX)**

Ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar el conjunto de control de fax.

Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se agregó a OPT2 (para inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en OPT2)

Inicialice el OPT2 presionando [PORT SELECT], [P2] y la tecla de Inicio en ese orden en el modo de mantenimiento U698 y ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U600.

Si se selecciona [ALL] en U698, se inicializan ambos OPT1 y OPT2.

Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

Consulte la guía de uso para crear un Buzón de FAX.

Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

1. Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose stecken und Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. **Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte nur in OPT1 oder sowohl in OPT1 als auch in OPT2 installiert worden ist (um alle FAX-Leiterplatten zu initialisieren)**

Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen, um die Faxsteuerbaugruppe zu initialisieren.

Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt worden ist (um die FAX-Leiterplatte in OPT2 zu initialisieren)

OPT2 initialisieren. Dazu [PORT SELECT], [P2] und die Start-Taste im Wartungsmodus U698 in dieser Reihenfolge drücken und den Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen.

Wenn [ALL] in U698 gewählt wird, werden OPT1 und OPT2 initialisiert.

Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

Schlagen Sie zur Erzeugung einer FAX-Box in der Einführung nach.

Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

1. Collegare l'MFP ad una presa di corrente e portare l'interruttore principale su On.
2. **Se la scheda a circuiti FAX è stata installata solo nell'OPT1 o in entrambi l'OPT1 e l'OPT2 (per inizializzare tutte le schede di circuito FAX)**

Eseguire il modo di manutenzione U600 per inizializzare il gruppo di controllo fax.

Se la scheda a circuiti è stata aggiunta all'OPT2 (per inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX nell'OPT2)

Inizializzare OPT2 premendo [PORT SELECT], [P2] e il tasto Avvio in questo ordine nel modo di manutenzione U698 ed eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U600.

Se viene selezionato [ALL] nel modo U698, entrambi OPT1 e OPT2 sono inizializzati.

Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

Leggere la guida alle funzioni per creare una Casella FAX.

传真电话板的初始化

1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源。
2. 仅限于在 OPT1 或 OPT1 和 OPT2 上同时安装传真电路板时（全部的传真电路板初始化）
执行维修保养模式 U600，初始化传真控制组件。
在 OPT2 上增设时（OPT2 的传真电路板初始化）
只进行 OPT2 初始化时，在维修保养模式 U698 状态下，按顺序按下“PORT SELECT”、“P2”、开始键，执行维修保养模式 U600。
在 U698 状态下设定“ALL”时，会使 OPT1 和 OPT2 均初始化，这一点请多加注意。
有关详细信息，请参见维修手册。

参照操作手册，作成传真盒。

FAX 基板の初期化

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. OPT1 のみまたは OPT1 と OPT2 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合（すべての FAX 基板を初期化）
メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。
OPT2 に増設した場合（OPT2 の FAX 基板を初期化）
メンテナンスモード U698 で「PORT SELECT」、P2、スタートキーの順に押し、メンテナンスモード U600 を実行する。
U698 で「ALL」を設定すると OPT1 と OPT2 両方を初期化するので注意すること。
詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

使用説明書を参照し、ファクスボックスを作成する。

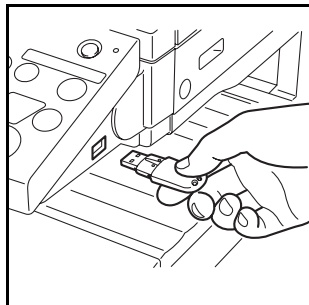
INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR Data Security Kit (C)

Data Security Kit (C) Installation Guide For MFP Models

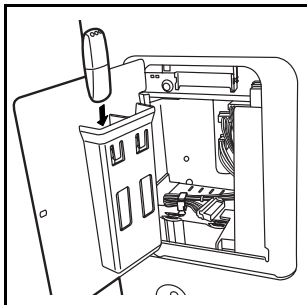
Guide d'installation du kit de sécurité des données (C) pour les modèles MFP

Guía de instalación del Kit de seguridad (C) para los modelos MFP

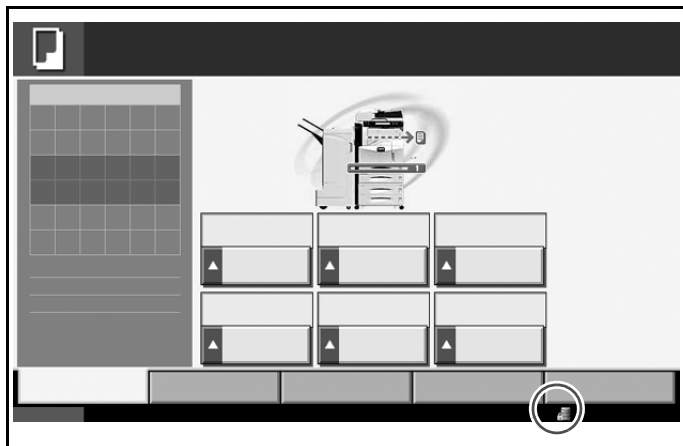
A



C



B



Français

Pièces fournies

Clé USB 1

Précautions avant l'activation

- L'activation du kit de sécurité des données supprime toutes les données enregistrées sur le disque dur par le client. Avant l'activation, vérifier avec le client si les données peuvent être supprimées.
- Veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal de l'appareil hors tension.

Procédure d'activation

1. Insérer la clé USB dans l'emplacement de mémoire USB de l'appareil et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension. (voir illustration A.)
2. Lorsque l'écran d'accueil s'ouvre, le message *L'installation du Kit de sécurité va commencer. s'affiche. Appuyer sur [OK].*
3. Suivre les instructions à l'écran pour retirer la clé USB et mettre l'interrupteur principal hors tension.
4. Mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension. L'écran de saisie du code de cryptage s'affiche.
Demander au client de changer le code de cryptage. L'utilisation de la valeur par défaut du code de cryptage (000000) n'affecte pas la fiabilité de la sécurité des données. Si le client désire changer le code, prier le client d'effectuer les opérations suivantes.
Appuyer sur [Code de cryptage].
Appuyer sur [Retour arrière] pour effacer 000000. Entrer le code de cryptage (caractères alphanumériques de 6 chiffres), puis appuyer sur [OK].
Rappeler au client de bien se souvenir du code de cryptage entré.
5. Appuyer sur [OK]. Le formatage du disque dur commence.
6. Lorsque le formatage est terminé, suivre les instructions à l'écran pour mettre l'interrupteur principal hors, puis sous tension.
7. Lorsque l'écran d'accueil s'ouvre, vérifier qu'une icône du disque dur () s'affiche dans l'angle inférieur droit de l'écran. (voir illustration B.)
8. Laisser la clé USB utilisée dans l'emplacement correspondant situé au dos du couvercle central gauche à l'arrière de l'appareil. (voir illustration C.)

www.tonerplus.com.ua

English

Supplied Parts

USB Key 1

Precautions before Activating

- Activating the Data Security Kit will delete all data stored in the hard disk by the customer. Before activating, check with the customer if the data can be deleted.
- Be sure that the Main Power Switch of the machine is turned off.

Activating Procedure

1. Insert the USB Key into the USB Memory Slot of the machine and turn the Main Power Switch on. (See Illustration A.)
2. After the opening screen is displayed, the *Activating security function. message is displayed. Press [OK].*
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to remove the USB Key and turn the Main Power Switch off.
4. Turn the Main Power Switch on. The encryption code entry screen is displayed. Ask the customer to change the encryption code. Using the default value of the encryption code (000000) will not affect the data security reliability. If the customer desires to change the code, lead the customer to follow the steps below.
Press [Encryption Code].
Press [Back Space] to delete 000000. Enter the encryption code (6-digit alphanumeric characters) and then press [OK].
Remind the customer not to forget the encryption code entered.
5. Press [OK]. Hard disk formatting begins.
6. When formatting finishes, follow the onscreen instructions to turn the Main Power Switch off and on again.
7. After the opening screen is displayed, confirm that a hard disk icon () is shown in the lower right corner of the screen. (See Illustration B.)
8. Keep the used USB Key in the USB Key Box on the back side of the left-center cover that is attached to the back side of the machine. (See Illustration C.)

Español

Piezas suministradas

Llave USB 1

Precauciones antes de la activación

- Al activar el kit de seguridad, se eliminarán todos los datos que el cliente tenga almacenados en el disco duro. Antes de iniciar la activación, pida al cliente que confirme que los datos se pueden eliminar.
- Asegúrese de que el interruptor principal esté apagado.

Procedimiento de activación

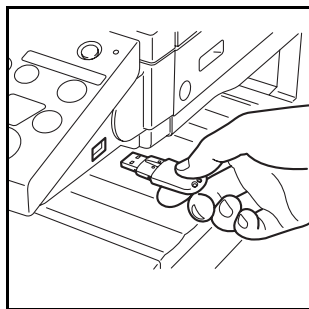
1. Inserte la llave USB en la ranura de memoria USB de la máquina y encienda el interruptor principal. (Consulte la ilustración A.)
2. Después de la pantalla inicial, aparecerá el mensaje *Comenzará instalación de kit de seguridad. Pulse [OK].*
3. Siga las instrucciones que aparecen en pantalla para retirar la llave USB y apague el interruptor principal.
4. Encienda el interruptor principal. Aparecerá la pantalla de introducción del código de cifrado.
Pida al cliente que cambie el código de cifrado. Si usa el valor predeterminado del código de cifrado (000000), la fiabilidad de la seguridad de los datos no se verá afectada. Si el cliente desea cambiar el código, avise al cliente que debe seguir los pasos a continuación.
Pulse [Encriptación Código].
Pulse [Retroceso] para borrar 000000. Introduzca el código de cifrado (6 caracteres alfanuméricos) y pulse [OK].
Advierta al cliente que no debe olvidar el código de cifrado introducido.
5. Pulse [OK]. Se inicia el formateo del disco duro.
6. Cuando termine el formateo, siga las instrucciones que aparecen en pantalla para apagar y encender el interruptor principal.
7. Después de que aparezca la pantalla inicial, compruebe que se muestra un icono de disco duro () en el ángulo superior derecho de la pantalla. (Consulte la ilustración B.)
8. Conserve la llave USB utilizada en su receptáculo, situado en el lado posterior de la cubierta central izquierda instalada en la parte de atrás de la máquina. (Consulte la ilustración C.)

Datensicherheits-Kit (C) – Installationsanleitung für MFP-Modelle

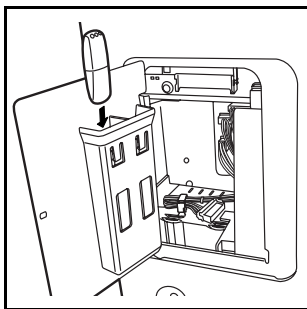
Kit Sicurezza Dati (C) - Guida all'installazione per i modelli MFP

Data Security Kit (C) 複合機用設置手順書

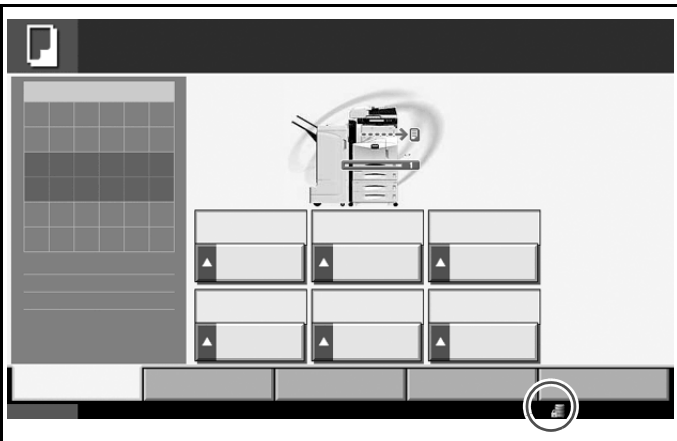
A



C



B



Italiano

Componenti forniti

Chiave USB 1

Precauzioni prima dell'attivazione

- Attivando il Kit Sicurezza Dati tutti i dati memorizzati dal cliente sul disco rigido verranno eliminati. Prima di iniziare l'attivazione, verificare con il cliente che i dati possano essere eliminati.
- Accertarsi che l'interruttore di alimentazione principale della macchina sia spento.

Procedura di attivazione

1. Inserire la chiave USB nel relativo slot di memoria della macchina e accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale. (vedere Figura A.)
2. Una volta visualizzata la schermata iniziale, viene visualizzato il messaggio *Verrà avviata l'installazione del Kit sicurezza*. Premere [OK].
3. Seguire le istruzioni sullo schermo per la rimozione della chiave USB e spegnere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale.
4. Accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale. Viene visualizzata la schermata per l'immissione della chiave di crittografia. Chiedere al cliente di modificare la chiave di crittografia. L'utilizzo del valore predefinito della chiave di crittografia (000000) non influisce sull'affidabilità della sicurezza dati. Se il cliente desidera modificare la chiave di crittografia, è necessario che esegua i passi descritti qui in basso.
Premere [Chiave di crittografia]
Premere [Backspace] per eliminare 000000. Immettere la chiave di crittografia (6 caratteri alfanumerici) e poi premere [OK].
Ricordare al cliente di non dimenticare la chiave di crittografia immessa.
5. Premere [OK]. La formattazione del disco rigido ha inizio.
6. Al termine della formattazione, seguire le istruzioni sullo schermo per spegnere e riaccendere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale.
7. Una volta aperta la schermata iniziale, verificare che un'icona del disco rigido (📀) sia visualizzata nell'angolo inferiore destro dello schermo. (vedere Figura B.)
8. Conservare la chiave USB nell'apposito scomparto situato sul retro della copertura centrale sinistra, fissata alla parte posteriore della macchina. (vedere Figura C.)

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

USB-Schlüssel 1

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen vor der Aktivierung

- Durch Aktivieren des Datensicherheits-Kits werden alle Daten gelöscht, die vom Kunden auf der Festplatte gespeichert wurden. Fragen Sie vor der Aktivierung den Kunden, ob die Daten gelöscht werden können.
- Stellen Sie sicher, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet ist.

Aktivierungsverfahren

1. Stecken Sie den USB-Schlüssel in den USB-Speichersteckplatz des Geräts ein und schalten Sie den Netzschalter ein. (Siehe Abbildung A.)
2. Zuerst wird der Eröffnungsbildschirm angezeigt, dann wird die Nachricht *Sicherheits-Kit wird installiert* angezeigt. Drücken Sie [OK].
3. Folgen Sie den Anweisungen, die auf dem Bildschirm angezeigt werden, um den USB-Schlüssel zu entfernen, und schalten Sie den Netzschalter aus.
4. Schalten Sie den Netzschalter ein. Das Dialogfeld zur Eingabe des Verschlüsselungscodes wird angezeigt. Bitten Sie den Kunden, den Verschlüsselungscode zu ändern. Die Verwendung des Standardwertes für den Verschlüsselungscode (000000) hat keinen Einfluss auf die Zuverlässigkeit der Datensicherheit. Falls der Kunde den Code ändern möchte, weisen Sie ihn an, die folgenden Schritte auszuführen.

Drücken Sie [Verschlüssel.- code].

Drücken Sie [Rücktaste], um 000000 zu löschen. Geben Sie den Verschlüsselungscode (6-stellige alphanumerische Zeichenfolge) ein, und drücken Sie [OK].

Erinnern Sie den Kunden daran, dass er den eingegebenen Verschlüsselungscode nicht vergessen darf.

5. Drücken Sie [OK]. Die Festplatte wird formatiert.
6. Nach der Formatierung werden Sie auf dem Bildschirm aufgefordert, den Netzschalter aus und wieder einzuschalten.
7. Wenn der Eröffnungsbildschirm angezeigt wird, stellen Sie sicher, dass ein Festplattensymbol (📀) unten rechts auf dem Bildschirm angezeigt wird. (Siehe Abbildung B.)
8. Bewahren Sie den USB-Schlüssel in der USB-Schlüsselpackung hinten in der linken mittleren Abdeckung auf, die sich hinten am Gerät befindet. (Siehe Abbildung C.)

日本語

付属部品

USB キー 1

導入前の注意事項について

- データセキュリティキットを導入すると、お客様がハードディスクに保存したデータは全て削除される。お客様に削除して問題ないことを確認してから、導入作業を行う。
- 機械の電源が切れていることを確認してから、手順を行う。

導入手順

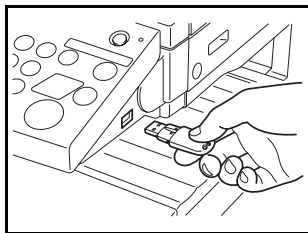
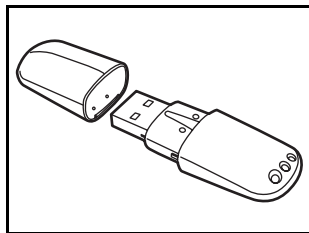
1. 機械の USB メモリスロットに USB キーを挿入し、主電源スイッチを入れる。(イラスト A 参照)
2. オープニング画面が表示されたあと、「**セキュリティ機能を起動します。**」が表示されるので、[OK]を押す。
3. 画面の指示にしたがって、USB キーを抜き、主電源スイッチを切る。
4. 主電源スイッチを入れる。暗号化コードを入力する画面が表示される。暗号化コードは工場出荷時 (000000) のまま運用してもセキュリティ上問題ない。お客様が変更を希望された場合は、以下の手順で変更してもらう。
[暗号化コード]を押す。
[バックスペース]を押して、「000000」を消してから、暗号化コード (英数字 6 文字) を入力して、[OK]を押す。
お客様に、暗号化コードを忘れないよう注意を促すこと。
5. [OK]を押す。ハードディスクのフォーマットが開始される。
6. フォーマットが終了したら、画面の指示にしたがって、主電源スイッチを切る。
7. 主電源スイッチを入れる。オープニング画面が表示されたあと、画面右下 (イラスト B 参照) にハードディスクアイコン (📀) が表示されているか確認する。
8. 使用後の USB キーは、本体後側のカバー (イラスト C 参照) 裏側の USB キーBOX に収納する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR UG-30

UG-30 Installation Guide

Guide d'installation de l'UG-30

Guía de instalación de UG-30



English

Supplied parts

USB Key 1

Precautions before Activating

Be sure that the Main Power Switch of the machine is turned off.

Activating Procedure

1. Insert the USB Key into the USB Memory Slot of the machine and turn the Main Power Switch on.
2. After the opening screen appeared, the message *Activating high compression PDF and PDF encryption functions.* is displayed. Press [OK].
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to remove the USB Key and turn the Main Power Switch off.
4. Turn the Main Power Switch on. The high compression PDF and PDF encryption functions are now available.

For details on the high compression PDF and PDF encryption functions, refer to the Operation Guide of the machine.

Keep the USB key carefully.

The functions may be unavailable caused by the malfunction in the machine. Perform the procedure above to reactivate the functions.

Français

Pièces fournies

Clé USB 1

Précautions avant l'activation

Veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal de l'appareil hors tension.

Procédure d'activation

1. Insérer la clé USB dans l'emplacement de mémoire USB de l'appareil et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Lorsque l'écran d'accueil s'ouvre, le message *L'installation des fonctions de haute compression* s'affiche. Appuyer sur [OK].
3. Suivre les instructions à l'écran pour retirer la clé USB et mettre l'interrupteur principal hors tension.
4. Mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension. Les fonctions de haute compression PDF et de cryptage PDF sont maintenant disponibles.

Pour plus d'informations sur ces fonctions, consulter le guide d'utilisation de l'appareil.

Conserver soigneusement la clé USB.

Les fonctions peuvent ne pas être disponibles en cas de dysfonctionnement de l'appareil.

Effectuer la procédure ci-dessus pour les réactiver.

Español

Piezas suministradas

Llave USB 1

Precauciones antes de la activación

Asegúrese de que el interruptor principal esté apagado.

Procedimiento de activación

1. Inserte la llave USB en la ranura de memoria USB de la máquina y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Después de la pantalla inicial, aparecerá el mensaje *Comenzará instalación de PDF de alta compresión.* Pulse [OK].
3. Siga las instrucciones que aparecen en pantalla para retirar la llave USB y apague el interruptor principal.
4. Encienda el interruptor principal. Ya están disponibles las funciones PDF de alta compresión y cifrado PDF.

Para conocer detalles acerca de las funciones PDF de alta compresión y cifrado PDF, consulte la Guía de uso de la máquina.

Conserve cuidadosamente la llave USB.

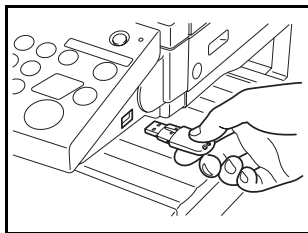
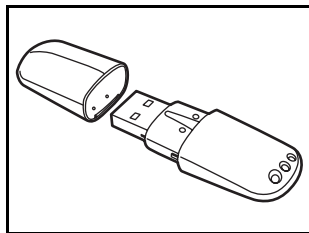
Es posible que las funciones no estén disponibles a causa de algún fallo de la máquina.

Ejecute el procedimiento anterior para reactivar las funciones.

UG-30 Installationsanleitung

UG-30 - Guida all'installazione

UG-30 設置手順書



Italiano

Componenti forniti

Chiave USB 1

Precauzioni prima dell'attivazione

Accertarsi che l'interruttore di alimentazione principale della macchina sia spento.

Procedura di attivazione

1. Inserire la chiave USB nel relativo slot di memoria della macchina e accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale.
2. Una volta visualizzata la schermata iniziale, viene visualizzato il messaggio *Verrà avviata l'installazione delle funzionalità*. Premere [OK].
3. Seguire le istruzioni sullo schermo per la rimozione della chiave USB e spegnere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale.
4. Accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale. Le funzioni di crittografia e compressione elevata PDF sono ora disponibili.

Per maggiori dettagli sulle funzioni sopra citate, fare riferimento alla Guida operativa della macchina.

Conservare con cura la chiave USB.

È possibile che le funzioni non siano disponibili a causa di un'anomalia a carico della macchina.

Eseguire la procedura sopra riportata per riattivare le funzioni.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

USB-Schlüssel 1

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen vor der Aktivierung

Stellen Sie sicher, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet ist.

Aktivierungsverfahren

1. Stecken Sie den USB-Schlüssel in den USB-Speichersteckplatz des Geräts ein und schalten Sie den Netzschalter ein.
2. Nach der Anzeige des Eröffnungsbildschirms wird die Meldung *Funktionen für hoch komprimierte und verschlüsselte PDF-Dateien* angezeigt. Drücken Sie [OK].
3. Folgen Sie den Anweisungen, die auf dem Bildschirm angezeigt werden, um den USB-Schlüssel zu entfernen, und schalten Sie den Netzschalter aus.
4. Schalten Sie den Netzschalter ein. Die Funktionen für hoch komprimierte und verschlüsselte PDF-Dateien stehen jetzt zur Verfügung.

Weitere Informationen zu den Funktionen für hoch komprimierte und verschlüsselte PDF-Dateien finden Sie in der Betriebsanleitung für das Gerät.

Bewahren Sie den USB-Schlüssel sorgfältig auf.

Die Funktionen stehen möglicherweise aufgrund einer Fehlfunktion im Gerät nicht zur Verfügung.

Aktivieren Sie die Funktionen mit dem obigen Verfahren erneut.

日本語

付属部品

USB キー 1

使用前の注意事項

機械の電源が切れていることを確認してから、手順を行ってください。

使用手順

1. 機械の USB メモリスロットに USB キーを挿入し、主電源スイッチを入れてください。
2. オープニング画面が表示されたあと、「高圧縮 PDF および PDF 暗号化機能を起動します。」が表示されるので、[OK]を押してください。
3. 画面の指示にしたがって、USB キーを抜き、主電源スイッチを切ってください。
4. 主電源スイッチを入れてください。高圧縮 PDF および PDF 暗号化機能が使用できるようになります。

高圧縮 PDF および PDF 暗号化機能についての詳細は、本体の使用説明書をご覧ください。

USB キーは大切に保管してください。

機械の故障などで、機能が無効になることがあります。その場合は、上記手順を行うと機能を再起動させることができます。

KYOCERA MITA EUROPE B.V.

Hoeksteen 40, 2132 MS Hoofddorp,
The Netherlands
Phone: +31.20.654.0000
Home page: <http://www.kyoceramita-europe.com>
Email: info@kyoceramita-europe.com

KYOCERA MITA NEDERLAND B.V.
Beechavenue 25, 1119RA Schiphol-Rijk
The Netherlands
Phone: +31.20.58.77.200

KYOCERA MITA (UK) LTD
8 Beacontree Plaza
Gillette Way Reading Berks RG2 0BS,
U.K.
Phone: +44.1189.311.500

KYOCERA MITA ITALIA S.p.A.
Via G. Verdi, 89 / 91, 20063 Cernusco s/N
Milano, Italy
Phone: +39.02.92179.1

S.A. KYOCERA MITA BELGIUM N.V.
Hermesstraat 8A, 1930 Zaventem,
Belgium
Phone: +32.2.720.9270

KYOCERA MITA FRANCE S.A.
Parc Les Algorithmes Saint Aubin
91194 GIF-SUR-YVETTE,
France
Phone: +33.1.6985.2600

KYOCERA MITA ESPAÑA S.A.
Edificio Kyocera, Avda de Manacor No. 2,
28290 Las Matas (Madrid),
Spain
Phone: +34.91.631.8392

KYOCERA MITA FINLAND OY
Kirvesmiehenkatu 4, 00880 Helsinki,
Finland
Phone: +358.9.4780.5200

KYOCERA MITA (SCHWEIZ)
Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich
Switzerland
Phone: +41.1.908.4949

KYOCERA MITA DEUTSCHLAND GMBH
Otto-Hahn-Str. 12 D-40670 Meerbusch,
Germany
Phone: +49.2159.918.0

KYOCERA MITA GMBH AUSTRIA
Eduard-Kittenberger-Gasse 95,
1230 Wien,
Austria
Phone: +43.1.86338.210

KYOCERA MITA SVENSKA AB
■ Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista,
Sweden
Phone: +46.8.546.55000

KYOCERA MITA NORGE
Postboks 150 Oppsal, NO 0619 Oslo
Olaf Helsetsvai 6, NO 0694 Oslo,
Norway
Phone: +47.22.62.73.00

KYOCERA MITA DANMARK A/S
Ejby Industrivej 1, DK-2600 Glostrup,
Denmark
Phone: +45.5687.1100

KYOCERA MITA PORTUGAL LDA.
Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisbon,
Portugal
Phone: +351.21.842.9100

KYOCERA MITA SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD.
527 Kyalami Boulevard,
Kyalami Business Park Midrand,
South Africa
Phone: +27.(0)11.540.2600

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:
225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008,
U.S.A.
Phone: (973) 808-8444

KYOCERA MITA AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.
Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road, North Ryde,
N.S.W. 2113 Australia
Phone: (02) 9888-9999

KYOCERA MITA NEW ZEALAND LTD.
1-3 Parkhead Place, Albany
P.O. Box 302 125 NHPC, Auckland,
New Zealand
Phone: (09) 415-4517

KYOCERA MITA (THAILAND) CORP., LTD.
9/209 Ratchada-Prachachem Road,
Bang Sue, Bangkok 10800, Thailand
Phone: (02) 586-0320

KYOCERA MITA SINGAPORE PTE LTD.
121 Genting Lane, 3rd Level,
Singapore 349572
Phone: 67418733

KYOCERA MITA HONG KONG LIMITED
11/F., Mita Centre,
552-566, Castle Peak Road,
Tsuen Wan, New Territories,
Hong Kong
Phone: 24297422

KYOCERA MITA TAIWAN Corporation.
7F-1~2, No.41, Lane 221, Gangchi Rd.
Neihu District, Taipei, Taiwan, 114. R.O.C.
Phone: (02) 87511560

KYOCERA MITA Corporation

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku
Osaka 540-8585, Japan
Phone: (06) 6764-3555
<http://www.kyoceramita.com>

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:

225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-6000

New York Branch:

1410 Broadway 23rd floor
New York, NY 10018
TEL : (917) 286-5400
FAX : (917) 286-5402

Northeastern Region:

225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-4401

Midwestern Region:

201 Hansen Court Suite 119
Wood Dale, Illinois 60191
TEL : (630) 238-9982
FAX : (630) 238-9487

Western Region:

14101 Alton Parkway,
Irvine, California 92618-7006
TEL : (949) 457-9000
FAX : (949) 457-9119

Southeastern Region:

1500 Oakbrook Drive,
Norcross, Georgia 30093
TEL : (770) 729-9786
FAX : (770) 729-9873

Southwestern Region:

2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 550-8987
FAX : (972) 252-9786

National Operation Center & National Training Center:

2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 659-0055
FAX : (972) 570-5816

Latin America Division:

8240 N.W. 52nd. Terrace Dawson Building,
Suite 108 Miami, Florida 33166
TEL : (305) 421-6640
FAX : (305) 421-6666

KYOCERA MITA CANADA, LTD.

6120 Kestrel Road, Mississauga,
Ontario L5T 1S8, Canada
TEL : (905) 670-4425
FAX : (905) 670-8116

KYOCERA MITA MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V.

Av. 16 de Septiembre #407
Col. Santa Inés,
Azcapotzalco México,
D.F. 02130, México
TEL : (55) 5383-2741
FAX : (55) 5383-7804



©2008 KYOCERA MITA Corporation
<http://www.kyoceramita.com>

KYOCERA is a trademark of Kyocera Corporation

Printed in U.S.A.